EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

New Hello! & Treasure Island

By A Group Of Supervisors

FREE GIFT
NOT FOR SALE

للصف الأول الثانوى الفصل الدراسى الأول

طبعة جديدة

طبق لأحدث تعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤







UNIT
1

Getting away

SB pages 6 : 15 WB pages 88 : 93

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :** An article about ecotourism; two blogs about the summer holidays
- **Writing :** An essay on ecotourism
- **Listening :** A story about travelling and what happened when something went wrong
- **Speaking :** Describe an event
- **Language :** Past simple and past continuous
- **Life skills :** Collaboration

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 6 : 9 WB pages 88 & 89



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

conservation (n)	حماية البيئة - صيانة	lean - leaned / leant (v)	ينحني / يميل - يتكئ
conservationist (n)	من أنصار حماية البيئة	material (n - adj)	مادة خام - قماش - مادي
ecosystem (n)	النظام البيئي	spicy (adj)	حار - متبّل بالبهارات
eco-tourism (n)	السياحة البيئية	sustainable (adj)	مستدام - صديق للبيئة
endangered (adj)	مُعرَّض للخطر - مُهدّد بالانقراض	swell - swelled - swollen (up) (v)	يتورّم - يتضخّم - يتزايد
environment (n)	البيئة	trek(ked) (n - v)	رحلة طويلة (سيرًا) - يسير لمسافة طويلة
environmentally (adv)	بيئيا	unique (adj)	فريد من نوعه / مُميّز
impact(ed) (n - v)	تأثير - أثر - يؤثر		
isolated (adj)	بعيد / نائي - مُنعزل		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

annoyed (adj)	متضايق - منزعج	internal (adj)	داخلي
attractions (n)	عوامل الجذب	introduce(d) (v)	يطرح - يُقدّم - يُضيف
beauty (n)	الجمال	Lemur (n)	قرد الليمور
bite - bit - bitten (n - v)	عضّة - يعض	limited (adj)	محدود
considerate (of) (adj)	مُتفهّم - مُراعي لـ	locals (n)	السكان المحليين
coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية	orangutan (n)	انسان الغاب - الكسلان
council (n)	مَجلس - قنصلية	otherwise (adv)	وإلّا
create(d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر - يُوجِد	path (n)	طريق مشاة - ممر
destination (n)	مَقصد - وجهة سفر	plaza (n)	ساحة / فِناء
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمّر	properly (adv)	بشكل ملائم - على أكمل وجه
disaster (n)	كارثة - مُصيبة	provide(d) (v)	يوفر - يُزوّد بـ
disconnected (adj)	منفصل / منعزل	public (adj)	عام - شعبي
dragon (n)	تِنين	rebuild - rebuilt (v)	يعيد بناء
eco-hotel (n)	فندق صديق للبيئة	remote (adj)	بعيد / نائي
eco-trip (n)	رحلة صديقة للبيئة	resident (n)	ساكن / نزيل
educate(d) (v)	يُعلّم	site (n)	موقع

else (adv)	أيضا - آخر	solution (n)	حل
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد / يتواجد	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية - تذكار
fussy eater (n)	شخص صعب الإرضاء في الطعام	sunbathe(d) (v)	يأخذ حمام شمس - يتعرض للشمس
giant (adj - n)	عملاق	victim (n)	ضحية
harm(ed) (n - v)	ضرر - يضر بـ	volunteer(ed) (n/v)	متطوع - يتطوع
historic (adj)	تاريخي	voluntourist (n)	سائح متطوع
including (prep)	بما في ذلك - متضمنًا	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرِّية

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
conservationist (n) من حُماة البيئة	a person whose job is to help protect natural things such as wild animals الحيوانات البرية, forests, etc.
ecotourism (n) السياحة البيئية	a type of holiday that helps local people السكان المحليين and doesn't damage the natural environment
endangered (adj) مُعرَّض للخطر	in danger of disappearing الإختفاء forever للأبد
impact (n) أثر / تأثير	the effect أثر that an action or a person has on someone or something
isolated (adj) منعزل	disconnected from منفصل عن other people and places
lean (v) يميل	to be in a sloping position وضع مائل
materials (n) مواد (خام)	the things that are used for making or doing something
spicy (adj) مُتبل بالبهارات	containing chilli فلفل حار or other spices that give a burning حارق feeling with pleasantly strong taste
sustainable (adj) صديق للبيئة - مستدام	able to continue without بدون causing damage ضرر to the environment
swell (up) (v) يتورم / يلتهب	to get bigger and rounder أكثر إستدارة than normal
trek (n) رحلة طويلة (سيرًا)	a hike / walk on a difficult journey
unique (adj) فريد - مميز	special or the only one of its type or quality



Exercise On Vocabulary
● Understand

● ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Try not to eat too much .... food. It is very tasty, but can cause you to feel uncomfortable. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. spicy b. healthy c. flavourless d. cool
2. He lives in a/an .... area. It's very remote. (أسلوط ٢٠٢٣)
   a. isolated b. near c. insulated d. close
3. It's great to work in a pleasant .... (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. improvement b. government c. belongings d. environment
4. Village people build their houses with local .... (ابشواي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. tourists b. environments c. animals d. materials
5. Hotels should be built of .... friendly natural materials. (سنورس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. environment b. environmental
   c. environmentally d. environmentalist
6. Cycling is a totally .... form of transport. (منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. temporary b. sustainable c. recyclable d. nonrenewable
7. Some species of animals face extinction; that means they are .... (بلقاس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. isolated b. insulated c. endangered d. popular
8. Some places have a limited .... on tourists because they have a unique ecosystem. (القليوبية - الخصوص ٢٠٢٣)
   a. impact b. support c. system d. opportunity
9. Providing holidays to isolated and endangered places means .... (القليوبية - الخصوص ٢٠٢٣)
   a. ecosystem b. ecotourism c. environment d. conservation
10. Salma wants to be a/an .... to protect animals and plants. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
   a. extremist b. conservationist c. psychiatrist d. capitalist
11. Water .... has become a must. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. donating b. conservation c. wasting d. support
12. The Komodo dragon is .... to Indonesia. It doesn't live anywhere else. (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. impact b. unique c. sustainable d. ecotourism

13. Pollution can have disastrous effects on the delicately balanced .... (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢م)

a. industry b. culture c. civilization d. ecosystem

14. He was .... out of the bridge rail, watching the boats go by. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٣م)

a. developing b. swelling c. leaning d. diving

15. When she was bitten by a mosquito, her arm .... up. (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣م)

a. leaned b. swelled c. spelled d. trekked

2 Important Vocabulary

16. I .... to look after my baby sister when my mother goes out.

a. volunteer b. harm c. avoid d. lean

17. Luxor is an important tourist ....

a. population b. attraction c. conservation d. path

18. I am travelling to Aswan in three days. It is my next ....

a. community b. material c. destination d. ecotourism

19. In prison, criminals are .... from the outside world.

a. fussy b. internal c. spicy d. disconnected

20. Try to be .... of other people's feelings.

a. isolated b. unique c. considerate d. giant

21. When the food is .... prepared, it is both healthy and tasty.

a. spicy b. properly c. otherwise d. environmentally

22. .... work for a charity جمعية خيرية and get no money.

a. Volunteers b. Conservationists

c. Residents d. Voluntourists

23. "............ " means related to the environment.

a. Re- b. Ex- c. Eco- d. In-

24. Some .... work in the tourist industry.

a. include b. including c. local d. locals

25. The tourists lay on the beach to ....

a. introduce b. blow c. sunbathe d. exist

26. Pollution .... the environment.

a. volunteers b. harms c. avoids d. leans

27. Air pollution is really a/an ....

a. disaster b. council c. environment d. eco-hotel

28. The heart is one of the .... organs.

a. fussy b. internal c. spicy d. disconnected

29. One of the .... in the hotel is an important man from Canada.
a. solutions b. attractions c. residents d. victims
30. A/An .... enjoys themselves without damaging the environment.
a. volunteer b. conservationist c. resident d. eco-tourist
31. I paid for everything, ... the drinks.
a. include b. including c. never d. ever
32. A good team member .... new ideas and finds solutions to work problems.
a. introduces b. blows c. sunbathes d. exists
33. You have to arrive early, ... you won't be allowed in يسمح لك بالدخول.
a. spicy b. properly c. otherwise d. environmentally
34. Some ancient Egyptian statues still .... in the temple.
a. introduce b. blow c. sunbathe d. exist
35. I stayed in a/an .... ; it does not cause harm to nature.
a. disaster b. council c. environment d. eco-hotel
36. Some children are .... eaters. Mothers find it difficult to know what they like.
a. fussy b. internal c. spicy d. disconnected
37. He was elected as a member of the city ....
a. disaster b. council c. environment d. eco-tourism

3 Definitions

38. .... means special or the only one.
a. Exotic b. Sustainable c. Unique d. Material
39. .... is a type of holiday that helps local people and doesn't damage the natural environment.
a. Ecotourism b. Eco-trip c. Ecosystem d. Eco-hotel
40. A .... means something that is used for making or doing something.
a. castle b. path c. material d. coral
41. .... means that an activity can be repeated because it does not harm the environment.
a. Exotic b. Spicy c. Crowded d. Sustainable
42. A/An .... is the effect that an action or a person has on someone or something.
a. impact b. advantage c. lettuce d. load

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

bring	problems	يسبب مشكلات	go	diving	يمارس رياضة الغوص
cause	problems	يسبب مشكلات	have	a holiday	يحصل على اجازة
catch	a flight (to)	يسافر بالطائرة (إلى)		an impact (on)	له أثر (على)
create	jobs for	يوفر وظائف لـ	make	notes	يُدون ملاحظات
do	something different	يفعل شيئًا مختلفًا	provide	a holiday (to)	ينظم رحلات (إلى)
find	a solution (to)	يجد حلًا (لـ)	start	university	يبدأ الدراسة الجامعية
get	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	take	a taxi	يأخذ تاكسي

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
advantage	ميزة	merit, upside
crowded	مُزدحم - مكتظ	congested, busy
impact	أثر - إنطباع	effect, influence
isolated	بعيد / نائي - مُنعزل	remote, faraway
material	قماش	fabric, cloth
spicy	متبّل بالبهارات	hot
trek	رحلة طويلة (سيرًا)	hike, journey
unique	فريد من نوعه / مُميَّز	special, unusually good

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage, demerit, downside	عيب - سلبية
crowded	مزدحم - مكتظ	empty, deserted.	فارغ - مهجور
isolated	بعيد / ناءٍ	close, nearby, neighbouring	قريب - مجاور
isolated	مُنعزل / انطوائي	sociable	اجتماعي
sustainable	مستدام - صديق للبيئة	unsustainable	غير مستدام
unique	فريد - مميز	ordinary, everyday, common, normal	عادي

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

conservation	
conserve (d) (v) يصون - يحمي	- It is important to conserve the environment.
conservation (n) الصيانة	- The conservation of the environment is important.
conservationist (n) من حُماة البيئة	- Conservationists work hard to protect the environment.
conservative (adj) تقليدي - مُحافظ على التقاليد	- My father is a conservative person.
endangered	
danger (n) الخطر	- A careless driver puts his life in danger.
endanger(ed) (v) يُعرِّض للخطر - يخاطر بـ	- A careless مهمل driver endangers his life.
endangered (adj) مُعرَّض للخطر	- The life of a careless driver is endangered.
dangerous (adj) خطر	- It is dangerous to travel with a careless driver.
environment	
environment (n) البيئة	- We all must protect يحمي the environment.
environmentalist (n) خبير بيئي	- Some environmentalists have talked to us about how to protect the environment.
environmental (adj) بيئي	- Pollution is an environmental problem.
environmentally (adv) بيئيا	- Cars that run on electricity are environmentally friendly.
isolated	
isolate(d) (v) يَعزِل - يَفصِل	- It is important to isolate coronavirus patients.
isolation (n) العُزلة - الفصل	- The isolation of coronavirus patients is important.
isolated (adj) منعزل - منفصل	- Coronavirus patients must be isolated from other people.

material		
material (n)	مادة (خام)	- Wood is a hard material.
material (n)	قماش	- This shirt is made of soft material.
material (adj)	مادي - ملموس	- The police have material evidence دليل مادي that he is a thief.
lean		
lean(ed) - leant (v)	يميل / ينحني - يتكئ	- Don't lean on this dirty wall.
lean (adj)	نحيف / منحوت الجسد	- He was lean, tall, and muscular ذو عضلات.
lean (adj)	خالٍ من الدهون	- My children like lean meat.
leaning (adj)	مائل	- Don't go near this leaning wall.
spicy		
spice(d) (v)	يتبل (يضع توابل)	- Mum has spiced the fish.
spice (n)	تابل (مفرد توابل)	- Mum has put spices into the fish.
spicy (adj)	حِرّيف - حار - متبّل بالبهارات	- I like spicy food.
sustainable		
sustain(ed) (v)	يحافظ على - يُبقي	- A speaker should sustain the listener's interest.
sustainability (n)	استمرارية / استدامة	- Conservationists are interested in environmental sustainability.
sustainable (adj)	مُستدام - صديق للبيئة	- Cycling is a sustainable activity.
volunteer		
volunteer(ed) (v)	يتطوع	- Sama and her friends volunteered to help the old woman.
volunteer (n)	مُتطوِّع	- Sama and her friends were the volunteers who helped the old woman.
voluntary (adj)	تطوعي	- We thanked Sama and her friends for their voluntary work.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at least	على الأقل	go on holiday	يأخذ إجازة
close to	قريب من	in progress	مستمر
environmentally friendly	صديق للبيئة	keep ... safe	يُبقي ... في أمان
except for	فيما عدا	make sure	يتأكد - يتيقن
famous for	مشهور بـ	riding on boats	ركوب المراكب
first of all,	قبل كل شيء	that's all for now	هذا كل ما لدي الآن
for example,	على سبيل المثال	the local council	المجلس المحلي
from all around the world	من كل أرجاء العالَم	tourist destinations	أماكن يقصدها السياح
go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب	tourist industry	النشاط السياحي

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

benefit from	يستفيد من	introduce ... to	يُعرِّف ... بـ/على
blow ... off	يُسقِط - يُطيِّر	keep ... as	يحتفظ بـ ... كـ
cycle across	يقود الدراجة عبر	lean ... on / against	يسند ... على
disappear from	يختفي من	lean on /against	يتكئ على
educate ... about	يُعلِّم ... عن	lean out of	ينحني إلى خارج
find out (about)	يكتشف/يعرف (عن)	manage to	يتمكن أن
get ... back	يسترد - يستعيد	trek across / through	يسير مسافة طويلة عبر
get to	يصل إلى	trek into / in	يسير مسافة طويلة إلى داخل / في
go back (to)	يعود/يرجع (إلى)		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

arrive – reach – get to

- **arrive (v)** يَصل (فعل لازم لا يتبعه مفعول)
  - My father hasn't arrived yet.
- **arrive at (v)** يَصل إلى (مكان صغير نسبيًا مثل المدرسة/المطار/المحطة .....)
  - Rodayna arrived at Cairo Airport at 9:00.
- **arrive in (v)** يَصل إلى (مكان كبير نسبيًا مثل مدينة/دولة .....)
  - Rodayna arrived in Cairo at 9:00.
- **get to (v)** يَصل إلى (مكان كبير أو صغير)
  - Rodayna got to Cairo Airport at 9:00.
  - Rodayna got to Cairo at 9:00.

• reach (v) — نصل إلي (بدون حرف جر)

- Rodayna reached Cairo Airport at 9:00.

contain - include - consist of

• ... contain + (شيء موجود بداخله) ... — يحتوي علي

- This bag contains some books and pens.

• ... include + (بعض مكونات الشيء) ... — يتضمن/ يشتمل علي

- The program of the trip includes a visit to the High Dam.

• ... consist of + (كل مكونات الشيء) ... — يتكون من

- My flat consists of three bedrooms, a reception, a kitchen and two bathrooms.

educate - teach - learn - bring up

• educate + شخص/أشخاص (v) — يُعلم/يُدرس لـ (غالبًا في مدرسة أو جامعة)

- This school educates disabled children.

• teach (v) — يُدرس/يعمل بالتدريس (بدون مفعول)

- Mr Nasser teaches at a secondary school.

• teach + المادة/الموضوع (v) — يُدرس (+ مفعول)

- Mr Nasser teaches English at a secondary school.

• teach + شخص + to/how to +inf. (v) — يُعلم ... كيف ...

- Mr Nasser teaches students to speak English.
- Mr Nasser teaches students how to speak English.

• learn + المادة/الموضوع (v) — يتعلم (+ مفعول)

- Ahmed learns English at a secondary school.

• learn + to/how to +inf. (v) — يتعلم كيف ...

- Ahmed learns to speak English at a secondary school.
- Ahmed learns how to speak English at a secondary school.

• bring up + شخص/أشخاص = raise (v) — يُربي/يهذب (+مفعول)

- This great woman has brought up her children alone.

= This great woman has raised her children alone.

else

١- تستخدم (else) بعد أدوات الإستفهام بمعنى (أيضا):

• Q.W. أداة استفهام + else ...? أيضا

- What else do you want?
- Where else will you go?

٢- تستخدم (else) بمعنى (اخر) بعد الكلمات التالية:

someone	somebody	something	somewhere
anyone	anybody	anything	anywhere
everyone	everybody	everything	everywhere
no one	nobody	nothing	nowhere

- Ahmed didn't take your camera. Someone else took it.
- Do you want to eat something else ?

endangered / dangerous

• **endangered (adj)** مُعرَّض للخطر
- The workers in the cave الكهف are endangered.

• **dangerous (adj)** خطير
- The scorpion العقرب is very dangerous.

national - international - local

• **national (adj)** قومي/وَطني
- Salah is the captain of the national team.
- October 6th is a national holiday.

• **international (adj)** دُوَلي/عالمي
- The Suez Canal is important for international trade.التجارة

• **local (adj)** إقليمي/ مَحَلّي
- He works in the local council.

• **local (adj)** مكاني/موضِعِي
- There is a local pain الم in my leg.

• **local (n)** من السكان المحليين (من أهل المنطقة)
- One of the locals guided us to the bank.

unique - special - private

• **unique (adj) = unusually good or special** مميز جدا
- I had a unique offer to spend two weeks in Paris.

• **unique (adj) = the only one of its kind** فريد من نوعه
- Each person has unique fingerprints.بصمات اصابع

• **special (adj)** مميز/ خاص
- She has special language skills.

• **private (adj)** خاص (= شخصي)
- Mr Ashraf has a private car.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Scientists are trying to eliminate the .... of burning oil on the environment. (شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)
   a. impact b. safety c. respect
   d. development e. effect

2. "My uncle lives in an isolated village." The word 'isolated' can be replaced by .... (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. close b. remote c. smart
   d. distant e. violent

3. "The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for their unique animals." 'unique' is an antonym for "............" and "............". (دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. common b. small c. normal
   d. strong e. cheap

4. Pollution .... so many problems.
   a. brings b. does c. goes
   d. causes e. takes

5. The old man sat down and leant .... the wall to rest.
   a. on b. of c. against
   d. from e. in

6. When I was young, I liked very much to trek .... the countryside.
   a. cross b. across c. though
   d. although e. through

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You must .... a note of everything you hear from your teachers. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. trek b. safe c. do d. make

2. Plastic is used to .... electric wires. (ادفو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. isolate b. insulate c. burn d. break

3. Generous people are always ready to .... voluntary work. (الفيوم - ابشواي ٢٠٢٢)
   a. do b. make c. give d. take

4. The museum is opened daily .... for Fridays. (الجيزة – الدقي ٢٠٢٠)
   a. except b. accept c. expectedly d. exist

UNIT 1

5. My brother .... university last year.
   a. went b. started c. took d. brought
6. When I first visited Cairo, I .... lost.
   a. had b. introduced c. got d. found
7. "I went trekking along the beach." The word 'trekking' here is a synonym of ....
   a. fishing b. hiking c. losing d. fabricating
8. The village benefited .... the new canal.
   a. from b. of c. to d. about
9. The tourist .... is very important.
   a. factory b. ecotourism c. ecosystem d. industry
10. When the fan was turned on, its air blew the paper ....
   a. off b. of c. to d. at
11. Don't ask Aliaa for help. Ask somebody ....
   a. also b. else c. too d. b & c
12. We have to .... electricity to avoid paying much money.
   a. conserve b. conservation c. conservationist d. conservative
13. .... does the least harm to the environment.
   a. Ecotourists b. Ecotourism c. Ecology d. Ecosystem
14. .... do no harm to the environment.
   a. Ecotourists b. Ecotourism c. Ecology d. Ecosystem
15. Never put your life in ....
   a. endanger b. endangered c. danger d. dangerous
16. Never .... your life.
   a. endanger b. endangered c. danger d. dangerous
17. He is an .... who works hard to stop damaging nature.
   a. environment b. environmental
   c. environmentalist d. environmentally
18. It is necessary ضروري to keep your children in .... from bad company الصُحبة.
   a. isolate b. isolated c. isolating d. isolation
19. I refused to park my car next to the .... wall that looked as if it was going to fall.
   a. lean b. leant c. leaning d. leans

PART III **READING & LISTENING**

1 Reading Texts

Ecotourism – is this the future? *(SB page 6)*

What is ecotourism ?



Ecotourism[1] is about **providing**[2] holidays to places which are often **endangered**[3] and **isolated**[4]. The holidays are designed to have a **limited**[5] **impact**[6] on the local environment and to **educate**[7] tourists about **conservation**[8].

Egypt is **developing**[9] ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea **coast**[10]. Tourists can stay in hotels built of **environmentally friendly**[11] **natural**[12] **materials**[13]. When tourists go **diving**[14], they are taught how to **avoid**[15] **damaging**[16] the fish and keeping the special **coral reefs**[17] safe.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its **ecosystem**[18] (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there don't **exist**[19] anywhere **else**[20] in the world. **Lemurs**[21], for example, only live in Madagascar.

The Galapagos **Islands**[22] in **Ecuador** are famous for the **unique**[23] animals, such as the **giant**[24] **turtles**[25] which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is **sustainable**[26]. Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo **National Park**[27] in **Indonesia** is a **popular**[28] ecotourism **destination**[29]. Much of Indonesia's endangered **wildlife**[30], **including**[31] the Komodo **dragon**[32], can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand.

(1) السياحة البيئية
(2) توفير
(3) مُعرض للخطر
(4) منعزل
(5) محدود
(6) أثر
(7) يُعلِّم
(8) حماية البيئة
(9) نامٍ
(10) ساحل
(11) صديق للبيئة
(12) طبيعي
(13) مواد
(14) الغوص
(15) يتجنب
(16) إتلاف
(17) الشِعاب المرجانية
(18) النظام البيئي
(19) يوجد
(20) آخر
(21) قرود الليمور
(22) جُزر
(23) فريد
(24) عملاق
(25) سلاحف مائية
(26) ملائم للبيئة
(27) الحديقة الوطنية
(28) مشهور
(29) مقصد
(30) الحياة البرية
(31) بما في ذلك
(32) التنين

Working Together

(SB page 9)



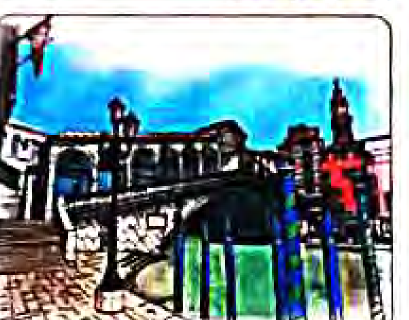
Last year, I went to the Faroe Islands for a few days as a (**voluntourist**)[1] – I was both a **tourist**[2] and a **volunteer**[3]. I helped the **locals**[4] to rebuild **paths**[5] and **walls**[6]. It was very hard work, but great **fun**[7] and I met other volunteers from all around the world.

While I was working on the islands, I talked to the people who live there about life in such a **remote**[8] place. On the second day, I **climbed**[9] to the top of a **hill**[10] when the wind **blew**[11] my hat off. **Fortunately**[12], the family I was staying with gave me another, much **warmer**[13] hat which I kept as a **souvenir**![14]

(1) سائح متطوع
(2) سائح
(3) متطوع
(4) السكان المحليين
(5) ممرات
(6) أسوار
(7) متعة
(8) بعيد / نائي
(9) يتسلق
(10) تل
(11) طيَّرت
(12) لحسن الحظ
(13) أدفأ
(14) تذكار

A popular problem!

(WB page 88)

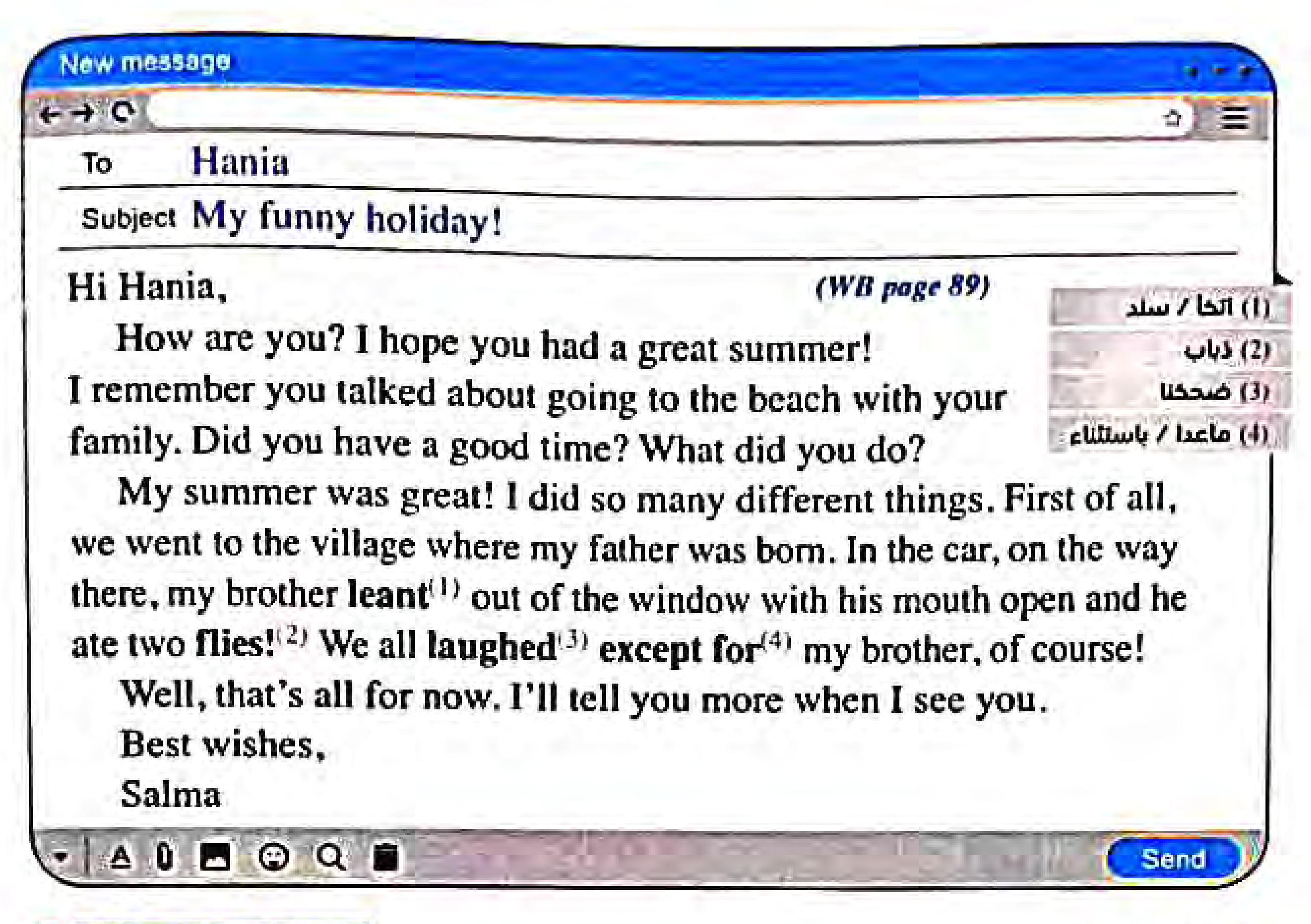


Venice is famous for being a city with many canals, **colourful**[1] **carnivals**[2], amazing **plazas**[3] and **historic**[4] buildings. However, the city is a **victim**[5] of its own **beauty**[6]. Venice has a **population**[7] of only 55,000, but the city is visited by twenty million tourists every year. This tourism **creates**[8] a lot of jobs for the local population, but it also **causes**[9] many problems.

Many of the 59,000 tourists a day enjoy riding on boats along the canals, but the large **cruise ships**[10] can **damage**[11] the historic buildings. The **narrow**[12] streets can be very **crowded**[13] and it is difficult for local people to **move**[14] around the city.

The **local council**[15] are trying to find a **solution**[16] which keeps both the tourists and local **residents**[17] happy. They are also trying to **encourage**[18] tourists to visit other beautiful **sites**[19] around Venice.

(1) مثيرة / ملونة
(2) احتفالات
(3) أسواق - ساحات
(4) تاريخي
(5) ضحية
(6) الجمال
(7) السكان
(8) تخلق
(9) تسبب
(10) مراكب سياحية
(11) تتلف
(12) ضيق
(13) مزدحم
(14) يتحرك
(15) مجلس محلي
(16) حل
(17) سكان
(18) يشجع
(19) معالم / مناظر


New message

To Hania

Subject My funny holiday!

Hi Hania, *(WB page 89)*

How are you? I hope you had a great summer!
I remember you talked about going to the beach with your family. Did you have a good time? What did you do?

My summer was great! I did so many different things. First of all, we went to the village where my father was born. In the car, on the way there, my brother **leant**(1) out of the window with his mouth open and he ate two **flies**!(2) We all **laughed**(3) **except for**(4) my brother, of course!

Well, that's all for now. I'll tell you more when I see you.

Best wishes,

Salma

Send

(1) اتكأ / سند
(2) ذباب
(3) ضحكنا
(4) ما عدا / باستثناء

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 8)

Luca : Last summer I decided not to **go on holiday**(1) to Greece with my friends, but do something different.

Klara : So, where did you go?

Luca : Well, as I'm studying **Biology**(2) I thought I'd go to Indonesia to find out more about the **orangutans**(3) there. So, I booked a holiday with an **ecotourism**(4) company and went to Borneo.

Klara : What was it like ?

Luca : A bit of a **disaster**(5) although I did love the rainforests. When we got to Jakarta, we caught an **internal flight**(6) to Borneo, but my **luggage**(7) never arrived, so I had to buy new clothes. The next morning, we took a boat up the river to the orangutan centre and while I was **leaning**(8) out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera.

(1) يذهب في إجازة
(2) علم الأحياء
(3) إنسان الغابة
(4) السياحة البيئية
(5) كارثة
(6) رحلة جوية داخلية
(7) أمتعة
(8) منحنى



Klara : Oh, no. Did you manage to get it back ?

Luca : No way, the river's really deep, so I just had to leave it, but I was very **annoyed**[9], but at least I had my phone. It took two days to get to the centre so while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans and what the **conservationists**[10] are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide **introduced**[11] us to the people working there and then we had dinner.

(9) متضايق
(10) حماة البيئة
(11) يقدم
(12) مُتبل بالبهارات
(13) شخص صعب إرضاؤه فيما يخص الأكل
(14) يسير في رحلة
(15) عنكبوت
(16) يتورم
(17) بشكل صحيح

Klara : What was the food like ?

Luca : It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very **spicy**[12]. I don't like spicy food, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish though as I was so hungry.

Klara : Well, I'm glad to hear you're not such a **fussy eater**[13] anymore. What did you do every day ?

Luca : We got up about six every morning as that's when the sun rises, had breakfast and then **trekked**[14] into the forest to learn about the orangutans from the people who are looking after them.

Klara : Did you feed them ?

Luca : No, they're wild animals, not pets. We just observed them, made notes and took photos. We also learnt about other animals, birds and insects in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a **spider**[15] bit me while I was sleeping and my arm **swelled up**[16].

Klara : So, what happened ?

Luca : I had to go to hospital-but as the nearest hospital was 200 km away, I had to go by helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre, but as soon as I got back I was ill. One of the tourists was making the dinner that night and he wasn't a good cook. He didn't clean the fish **properly**[17] and everybody was sick. I'm staying at home this summer!

3 Video script section

Do tourists usually stop and think about the impact they have on the place they're visiting ?

The tourist offices in cities which are popular with tourists think about how tourism affects their cities. They consider the **advantages**(1) and **disadvantages**(2). They try to help **local**(3) people cope with lots of visitors in the streets of their city.

(1) مزايا
(2) عيوب
(3) محلى
(4) يعلن عن
(5) مجتمع
(6) البيئة
(7) المواصلات العامة
(8) مراع لشعور الآخرين

A good example is Amsterdam in the Netherlands. Twenty years ago, the city's tourism office was spending a lot of money **advertising**(4) the city, but they don't do this anymore. The city has about 18 million visitors a year and that is more than enough for a **community**(5) of 1.5 million local people.

In future, people should think more about the **environment**(6) and local people when they are travelling. For example, they should use **public transport**(7) if they can, and try not to travel when the roads and trains are very busy with local people travelling to work. There is plenty of space for everyone if we are **considerate**(8) of each other !

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. How do tourist offices help local people ?
2. Why doesn't the tourism office in Amsterdam advertise its city today ?
3. How and when should tourists travel around a country ?

PART IV LANGUAGE

The Past Simple Tense : زمن الماضى البسيط :

١ يتكون الماضى البسيط فى الجمل الخبرية المبنية للمعلوم من :

Subject فاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل ....

ex. - Ahmed visited his friends yesterday. - They saw a show last night.

٢ عند النفى :

Subject فاعل + did not / didn't + inf. ....

ex. - Ahmed did not (didn't) visit his friends yesterday.
- They did not (didn't) see a show last night.

٣ عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

Did + subject فاعل + inf. ...... ?

ex. - Did you tidy your room ? - Yes, I did.
- Did Omar do his homework ? - No, he didn't.

٤ عند السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + did/didn't + subject + inf. ...... ?

ex. - Where did you watch the match ? - Why didn't you stay at a hotel ?

٥ يتحول زمن الماضي البسيط لصيغة المبنى للمجهول باستخدام الصيغة التالية :

Object مفعول + was/were + p.p. التصريف الثالث ....

ex. - They watched a film last night. (معلوم)
- A film was watched last night (by them). (مجهول)

٦ كلمات وتعبيرات زمنية تستخدم في الجمل لتشير إلى الماضي :

yesterday أمس	last ... الماضي ...	ago منذ
once ذات مرة	once upon a time ذات مرة	the other day مؤخرًا
in the past في الماضي	in ancient times قديمًا in 2011 ... etc	previously فيما سبق

ex. - I met some old friends in the club the other day.
- Mr Mohammed moved to his new house two weeks ago.

تستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية مع عادات الماضي البسيط :

always – usually – sometimes – never ... etc.

ex. - Sama always got up early when she was a student.

Mini Test 1 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A week ago, I .... an apple tree in my garden.
   a. plant b. have planted c. planted d. had planted
2. A week ago, an apple tree .... in my garden.
   a. plant b. were planted c. planted d. was planted
3. They .... their animals yesterday.
   a. didn't feed b. haven't fed c. don't feed d. hadn't fed

4. Their animals .... yesterday.
a. didn't feed b. weren't fed c. don't feed d. aren't fed

5. Ahmed read an interesting story ....
a. everyday b. ago c. now d. the other day

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ لاحظ استخدام (was / were) فى الماضى البسيط :

- He was at school yesterday. (إثبات)
- He wasn't at school yesterday. (نفى)
- Was he at school yesterday? (سؤال بـ"هل")
- Where was he yesterday? (سؤال بـ"أداة إستفهام")

٢ لاحظ استخدام (had) فى الماضى البسيط :

- She had lunch at two o'clock. (إثبات)
- She didn't have lunch at two o'clock. (Not : hadn't) (نفى)
- Did she have lunch at two o'clock? (Not : Had she) (سؤال بـ"هل")
- When did she have lunch? (Not : When had) (سؤال بـ"أداة إستفهام")

Mini Test 2 ○ Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Hassan .... at school yesterday.
a. isn't b. doesn't be c. wasn't d. didn't be

2. .... at school yesterday?
a. Was Hassan b. Did Hassan be c. Had Hassan d. Did Hassan have

3. Where .... yesterday?
a. did Hassan be b. does Hassan be c. were Hassan d. was Hassan

4. I .... lunch at home yesterday.
a. haven't b. hadn't c. don't have d. didn't have

5. .... lunch at home yesterday?
a. Had you b. Did you have c. You had d. Do you have

Uses استخدامات

يُستخدم الماضى البسيط فى حالات كثيرة منها :

١ التعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى (عادة مع تعبير زمنى ماضى) :

ex. - I visited my grandmother last Friday.
- My father built this house ten years ago.

٢ سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي:

ex. The baby was called Oliver Twist. He was sent to the orphanage.

٣ بعد (If) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية:

ex. - If I studied hard, I'd pass this exam.

Past Habits عادات الماضي

١ يمكن استخدام الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن عادات الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر:

1. Subj. + used to إعتاد أن + inf. ......

ex. - He used to swim in the sea. - She didn't use to wear glasses.

2. It was + someone's / صفة ملكية + habit عادة + to + inf. ......

ex. - It was his habit to swim in the sea.

٢ الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن شئ كان معتاد في الماضي :

يمكن استخدام (subj. + was / were + used to + n / (inf. + ing)).

ex. - They were used to working in the sun.

- I was used to (eating) salty food.

٣ للتعبير عن التعود على القيام بشئ في الماضي نستخدم:

(subj. + got / became / grew + used to + n / (inf. + ing)).

ex. - I got used to the (freezing) weather in Canada.

- I grew used to working on a farm.

Mini Test 3 ○ Apply

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. If we .... by the sea, we'd go swimming every day.
   a. live b. lived c. is lived d. was lived
2. When I was a student, I .... up early.
   a. get b. used to getting
   c. was used to get d. was used to getting
3. .... go for a walk every week?
   a. Was he used to b. Did he use c. Did he use to d. He used to

Notes for Advanced level ملاحظات للفائقين

١ يُمكن استخدام (did + inf.) في الجمل المثبتة للتوكيد :

- You saw who stole the money yesterday.
= You did see who stole the money yesterday.

٢ لاحظ استخدام جملة الماضي البسيط في الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن شيء غير متحقق في المضارع :

1. I wish + subject + past simple

- I wish Sama had enough time to help me.
= Salma can't help me because she doesn't have enough time.

2. It is + (about/almost/high) + time + subject + past simple

- It is high time you returned home. = You are still out.

3. Subj. فاعل + would + rather/sooner + فاعل مختلف عن الفاعل الأول + past simple

- I'd rather you arrived on time. = You don't arrive on time.

في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد (would rather / sooner) فيأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر ويكون هذا أسلوب تعبير عن التفضيل :

Subj. فاعل + would + rather/sooner + inf.

- I'd rather go shopping in the afternoon.

٣ يستخدم الماضي التام وليس الماضي البسيط في حالة وجود تعبير زمني يدل على الماضي بعد (I wish / I'd rather / It's (about / almost) time)

- I'd rather she had arrived home earlier yesterday.

General Exercise On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. I .... prep. 3 exams two months ago.
   a. take   b. took   c. have taken   d. was taken
2. Salah .... Liverpool and won Player of the Year Award.
   a. joined   b. was joined   c. joins   d. was joining
3. I .... have many friends at my first school.
   a. don't   b. doesn't   c. didn't   d. never

UNIT 1

4. I .... had many friends at my first school.

a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't d. never

5. Rokaya didn't .... the mobile ringing.

a. hears b. hear c. heard d. hearing

6. Did Sama .... mum with the housework ?

a. was helping b. helps c. helped d. help

7. What .... Karim do when he cut his finger?

a. did b. do c. does d. has

8. Why did Rahma look tired when she .... the door?

a. shuts b. shut c. was shut d. shutting

9. .... well yesterday!

a. Did you play b. You played c. Do you play d. How did you play

10. .... well yesterday?

a. Did you play b. You played c. Do you play d. How did you play

11. A: .... yesterday? B: Quite well.

a. Did you play b. You played c. Do you play d. How did you play

12. I .... off my tablet and I went out.

a. turn b. turned c. was turned d. was turning

13. My tablet .... off and I went out.

a. turn b. turned c. was turned d. was turning

14. I .... tired, so I went to bed.

a. was b. wasn't c. didn't be d. b & c

15. I .... tired, so I worked for three more hours.

a. was b. wasn't c. didn't be d. b & c

16. .... the best students at your first school.

a. They were b. Were they c. Did they be d. Are they

17. .... her lunch.

a. Did she have b. Had she c. She hadn't d. She didn't have

18. .... her lunch?

a. Did she have b. Had she c. She hadn't d. She didn't have

19. Why .... millions of people go to America in the 19th century?

(بورسعيد٢٣ ٢٠)

a. did b. do c. does d. have

20. We can't go home by bus. The last bus .... thirty seconds ago. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)

a. left   b. has left   c. have left   d. will leave

2 Special cases

21. He .... to sit down until he had apologised. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)

a. didn't allow   b. don't allow   c. wasn't allowed   d. was allowed

22. Who .... ? (إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)

a. were the complaints made by?   b. did you make the complaints?

c. were you made the complaints?   d. was the complaint made?

23. My grandfather always .... to work when he was young. (السويس ٢٠٢٣)

a. walk   b. walks   c. walked   d. has walked

24. He got used to .... in an office. (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)

a. work   b. works   c. worked   d. working

25. Before joining the university, I .... living away from my family. (ساقلتة ٢٠٢٣)

a. used   b. didn't use to   c. used to   d. wasn't used to

26. I .... a car which cost me only 100,000 pounds.

a. offer   b. offered   c. was offered   d. was offering

27. The door .... and we went in.

a. opened   b. was opened   c. a & b   d. opens

28. I .... the door and we went in.

a. opened   b. was opened   c. a & b   d. opens

29. At the age of five, I ....to swim. (الدقو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. learned   b. learn   c. have learnt   d. was learnt

30. As a boy, Mr Mohammed .... for his good behaviour. (الدقو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. used to be praised   b. was praising

c. used to praise   d. praised

31. He used to be calm, but now he .... (منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)

a. doesn't   b. isn't   c. is   d. does

32. She .... the money she needed. (بركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)

a. wasn't given   b. didn't give   c. gave   d. gives

33. I'd rather you .... out alone late at night. (دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)

a. haven't gone   b. not to go   c. didn't go   d. not going



34. People used to be helpful but now they .... (ادع حملاي ٢٠٢٣)

a. don't b. haven't c. won't d. aren't

3 Check your understanding

35. He doesn't smoke any longer. This means that he .... smoke.

a. used to b. still c. any more d. didn't

36. Which of the following is correctly structured?

a. I used to studying hard. b. I was used to study hard.

c. I got used to study hard. d. I became used to studying hard.

37. I don't have enough time for hobbies. I wish I .... enough time for hobbies.

a. had b. have had c. had had d. didn't have

38. I didn't have enough time for hobbies when I was a child. I wish I .... enough time for hobbies when I was a child.

a. had b. have had c. had had d. didn't have

39. "She wishes she were tall." What does this mean?

a. She was tall. b. She wasn't tall.

c. She isn't tall. d. She is tall.

40. "I'd rather you didn't use my mobile." This means that .... my mobile.

a. I wanted you to use b. I didn't want you to use

c. I want you to use d. I don't want you to use

41. "You have to pay the bill الفاتورة right now." Which of the following gives the same meaning?

a. It is about time you paid the bill

b. It is about time you had paid the bill

c. It is time you pay the bill

d. It is time you have paid the bill

42. Mum always set the table for lunch.

a. This is a present habit. b. This was a past habit.

c. This always takes place. d. This never took place.

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 10 & 11 WB pages 90 & 91



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

active (adj)	نشيط	noisy (adj)	مُزعج - صاخب
ancient (adj)	قديم - عتيق	over the moon	في منتهى السعادة
beautiful (adj)	جميل	old (adj)	قديم - عجوز
boring (adj)	مُمل	peace (n)	السلام - السَكينة
busy (adj)	مشغول - مزدحم	peaceful (adj)	هادئ / ذو سَكينة
calm (adj)	هادئ - ساكن	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
crowded (adj)	مُزدحم	quiet (n - adj)	هدوء - هادئ
exciting (adj)	مثير	relax(ed) (v)	يسترخي
exotic (adj)	غريب / نادر - أجنبي	relaxing (adj)	مُريح
loads of	الكثير من	stuck (adj)	عالق - محشور
modern (adj)	حديث		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

actually (adv)	في الواقع / بالفعل	grow - grew - grown (v)	يزرع - ينمو
adventure (n)	مغامرة		
awful (adj)	مُفظع / شديد	guide(d) (n - v)	مُرشد - يُرشد
brilliant (adj)	رائع / خلّاب - ذكي	on board	على متن (طائرة/سفينة)
castle (n)	قلعة	paradise (n)	جَنّة
cheap (adj)	رخيص الثمن	resort (n)	منتجع سياحي
cruise (n)	نزهة	sight (n)	منظر - البصر - أحد المعالم
damage(d) (v/n)	يتلف - يدمر - تلف	steal - stole - stolen (v)	يسرق
distance (n)	مسافة - بُعد	stressed (adj)	مُجهَد - مضغوط
expect(ed) (v)	يتوقع	teenager (adj - n)	مُراهِق
explore(d) (v)	يستكشف	tiny (adj)	ضئيل الحجم
fascinating (adj)	جميل / خلّاب	underwater (adj-adv)	تحت الماء
gardening (n)	بستنة / فلاحة البساتين	unusual (adj)	غير مألوف
glad (adj)	مسرور / مبتهج	worry(ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise		Understand
ancient (adj)	قديم/عتيق	very old
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	having a lot of people or things
exciting (adj)	مثير	making you feel excited
exotic (adj)	غريب / نادر - أجنبي	unusual and often from a different country
modern(adj)	حديث / معاصر	new and connected مرتبط to the present
orangutan (n)	إنسان الغابة	a large ape قرد with long arms and long orange-brown hair
peaceful (adj)	ملئ بالسكينة	feeling calm, quiet, without any problems
relaxing (adj)	مريح	making you feel relaxed and not stressed

Exercise On Vocabulary

● Understand

• ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Students complain about being .... in the class for a long time. (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. struck b. studied c. studying d. stuck
2. They had .... of things to do. This means they were very busy. (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. loaf b. lot c. loaves d. loads
3. Nuclear power الطاقة النووية must be used for .... purposes أغراض. (الفيوم - ابشواي ٢٠٢٢)
   a. annoying b. peaceful c. upsetting d. notorious
4. The Great Pyramid is a/an .... monument.
   a. active b. exotic c. crowded d. ancient
5. My father still uses his .... phone which does not even connect to the internet.
   a. noisy b. old c. busy d. modern
6. She is .... , intelligent, hard working and polite.
   a. beautiful b. boring c. awful d. stressed
7. I spent the weekend in a/an .... place where it is calm and peaceful.
   a. crowded b. endangered c. relaxing d. swollen

8. I couldn't find a seat in the .... bus.
a. active b. exotic c. crowded d. ancient

9. I can't enjoy my time in this .... street. It makes me nervous.
a. noisy b. peaceful c. quiet d. modern

10. I enjoy the .... of the night in the countryside.
a. noise b. quiet c. guide d. village

11. After this long and tiring متعب day, you need to ....
a. realize b. respect c. resort d. relax

12. Being .... is the opposite of being lazy.
a. active b. exotic c. crowded d. ancient

13. Smartphones are .... inventions.
a. noisy b. old c. busy d. modern

14. It is the fourth time I have watched this .... film.
a. awful b. boring c. exciting d. stressed

15. I saw some .... birds on the beach. They do not belong to this area.
a. active b. exotic c. crowded d. ancient

16. She is so .... doing the housework that she couldn't answer the phone.
a. noisy b. old c. busy d. modern

17. What a/an .... match! I'll turn off the TV.
a. beautiful b. boring c. exciting d. stressed

2 Important Vocabulary

18. I hate using social media. They make me .... (إدارة الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠٢٢)
a. pleased b. stressed c. dressed d. praised

19. I don't want to go to the park. .... , I am meeting some friends in the club.
a. Environmentally b. Otherwise c. Actually d. Naturally

20. Secondary school students are ....
a. adults b. teenagers c. granddads d. toddlers

21. Smoking .... smokers' health.
a. describes b. benefits c. develops d. damages

22. He lives in a .... village. It takes you a long time to go there.
a. nearby b. near c. remote d. close

23. I find this novel extremely للغاية .... It interests me a lot.
a. fascinating b. fascinated c. boring d. bored

UNIT 1

24. While we were camping in the forest, some monkeys .... our food.
   a. fed   b. protected   c. stole   d. benefitted
25. We have to .... our children about nature conservation.
   a. learn   b. educate   c. study   d. steal
26. The tourists enjoyed the .... of the sun shining on the statue of Ramses.
   a. sight   b. cruise   c. turtle   d. article
27. This fascinating island is a tourist ....
   a. mosquito   b. paradise   c. pool   d. Sahara
28. People who go on holidays in mountains and rainforests like ....
   a. resorts   b. designs   c. adventures   d. respect
29. I enjoyed the .... on the Nile from Luxor to Aswan.
   a. cruise   b. ecotourism   c. drive   d. unique
30. When I visited London for the first time, I spent three days .... the city.
   a. swelling   b. exploring   c. leaning   d. collaborating
31. The plane I was travelling on had 125 passengers on ....
   a. broad   b. board   c. abroad   d. aboard
32. I could see some fish moving about deep in the .... water.
   a. bored   b. clear   c. sick   d. tiny
33. Mohammed Salah is an absolutely .... footballer.
   a. little   b. tiny   c. ancient   d. brilliant

3 Definitions

34. .... means too full of people or things.
   a. Awful   b. Crowded   c. Local   d. Brilliant
35. .... describes something unusual and often from a different country.
   a. Close   b. Natural   c. Exotic   d. Peaceful
36. .... means feeling calm, quiet, without any problems.
   a. Fascinating   b. Natural   c. Peaceful   d. Coral
37. A/An .... is a large ape with long arms and long orange-brown hair.
   a. lemur   b. orangutan   c. dragon   d. turtle

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	activities يمارس أنشطة	take	photos of يلتقط صوراً لـ
forget	your worries تنسى مخاوفك		a cruise يقوم برحلة بحرية
go	trekking يذهب في رحلة طويلة سيراً		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
active	نشيط	energetic, dynamic
aboard	على متن (سفينة/طائرة)	on board
ancient	قديم / عتيق	very old
beautiful	جميل	pretty, cute
boring	مُمل	dull, spiritless
busy	مزدحم	crowded, noisy
exotic	أجنبي	foreign
exotic	مُدهش / مُذهل	unusual, unconventional
over the moon	سعيد جداً	very happy, very excited, glad
quiet	هادئ	calm

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
active	نشيط - فعَّال	lazy, inactive, idle	كسول - خامل
ancient	قديم / عتيق	modern, new, recent	حديث - جديد
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
boring	مُمل	exciting, interesting	مثير
busy	مشغول	free	متفرغ
quiet	هادئ	noisy	مُزعج - صاخب
crowded	مزدحم	empty, quiet	فارغ - هادئ
exciting	مثير	boring, dull	ممل - كئيب
exotic	أجنبي	native, local	محلي
exotic	مُدهش / مُذهل	usual, familiar, ordinary	عادي - تقليدي
over the moon	سعيد جداً	sad, upset, disappointed	حزين - مُحبَط
relaxing	مُريح	stressful, tiring	ضاغط / مؤرِّق



4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

crowded	
crowd(ed) (v) يحتشد - يجتمع	- People crowd to help when there is an accident.
crowd (n) جمع من الناس - حشد	- A crowd of people came to help me.
overcrowding (n) التكدس	- People in big cities suffer from overcrowding.
crowded (adj) مزدحم	- People in big cities suffer from crowded streets.
overcrowded (adj) مزدحم جدًا - مُتكدِّس	- People in big cities suffer from overcrowded streets.
peace	
peace (n) السلام - السَّكينة	- I like the peace of the countryside at night.
peaceful (adj) هادئ / ذو سكينة	- It is peaceful in the countryside at night.
peacefully (adv) بسكينة - بسلام	- The baby is sleeping peacefully in its bed.
stick	
stick - stuck (v) يلصق - يلتصق - يَغلَق - ينحشر	- I used glue الصمغ to stick the picture.
stick (n) عصا	- My grandfather uses a stick when he walks.
sticker (n) مُلصق	- There are some stickers which have some advice about coronavirus.
stuck (adj) عالق - محشور	- I was stuck in a traffic jam. تكدس مروري

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a cruise to remember رحلة بحرية لا تُنسى	on board = aboard على متن سفينة او طائرة
be tired of يمل من	on the balcony في البلكونة
busy with مشغول بـ	on the way there في الطريق إلى هناك
go on a cruise يذهب في رحلة بحرية	there's nothing to do لا يوجد ما افعله
make good use of يُحسن استغلال	

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add to يُضيف إلى	learn about يتعلم عن
decide to يقرر أن	learn to يتعلم أن
escape from يهرب من	leave ... behind يغادر تاركًا ...
escape to يهرب إلى	stay with يقيم مع
go away يبتعد - يسافر	walk around يتنزه سيرًا
go down يهبط - ينزل - تغرب الشمس	

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

old - ancient

- old (adj) قديم
  - My grandfather still lives in his old house.
- old (adj) عجوز
  - My grandfather is a very old man.
- ancient = very old (adj) قديم جدًا/عتيق
  - The ancient Egyptians had a great civilisation.حضارة

لاحظ أن الصفة (ancient) صفة قوية لا تستخدم في صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل:

- The Great Pyramid is more ancient than the citadel.القلعة (✗)
- The Great Pyramid is much older than the citadel. (✓)

Adjectives ending in -ed / -ing

- الصفات المنتهية بـ(ed) تعني أن الموصوف (شاعر بالصفة - مُعرَّض للصفة - يعاني من الصفة):

- I feel tired / excited / bored. إنني اشعر بالتعب / السعادة / الملل

- الصفات المنتهية بـ(ing) تعني أن الموصوف (مُسبب للصفة):

- This job is tiring / pleasing / boring. هذه الوظيفة متعبة / شيقة / مملة

little

- little + اسم لا يُعد قليل (الكمية)
  - We have little work to do.
  - He gave us little information about the accident.
- little + اسم يُعد صغير (الحجم أو السن)
  - I saw a little boy selling flowers.

sight - site

- sight (n) البَصَر (القدرة علي الرؤية)
  - Taha Hussein lost his sight when he was a child.
- sight (n) مَنظر (شيء يمكن رؤيته)
  - I like the sight of green plants and colourful flowers.
- sights (n) معالم (الأماكن المشهورة أو الهامة)
  - The guide showed me the important sights in Aswan.
- site (n) موقع (مكان - موقع إلكتروني)
  - There are some tourists visiting the archaeological site. موقع أثري
  - Mr Mohammed has an educational site. (= website) موقع إلكتروني



steal - rob

- steal (stole - stolen) + الشيء المسروق + (from) ... يسرق (+مفعول) من
  - This gang العصابة stole money from the bank.
- rob (robbed) + المكان الذي يتم السرقة منه يسرق/يسطو على (+المكان)
  - The gang robbed the bank.
- rob + الشخص + of + الشيء المسروق يسرق شيء من شخص
  - A thief robbed me of my bike.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. This bird is exotic. It is unusual and rarely seen here. The antonyms of the word 'exotic' are .... and .... (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
   a. ordinary b. strange c. rare
   d. foreign e. usual
2. "I didn't enjoy reading that novel. It was boring." The antonyms of "boring" are .... (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. interesting b. exciting c. handsome
   d. confident e. pleased
3. Some students study the ancient history of Egypt. The antonyms of 'ancient' are .... (بورسعيد٢٠٢٣)
   a. recent b. odd c. modern
   d. old e. aged
4. "Adel dislikes living in busy streets." 'busy' here is similar in meaning to .... and .... (أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. narrow b. crowded c. quiet
   d. big e. noisy
5. "I respect this active student." The synonyms of the word 'active' are .... (السادس من اكتوبر٢٠٢٣)
   a. energetic b. idle c. inactive
   d. terrible e. dynamic
6. "We were over the moon when our team won the game." We were not .... (منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. happy b. pleased c. upset
   d. beautiful e. disappointed

7. The plane took off with 200 passengers .... (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
a. a board b. abroad c. on board
d. aboard e. broad

8. He was over the moon when he won the race. The phrase 'over the moon' means very .... and very .... (السيوط ٢٠٢٣)
a. excited b. disappointed c. angry
d. happy e. depressed

9. He met a very beautiful girl in the mall. The synonyms of the word "beautiful" are .... (بورسعيد - الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. pretty b. energetic c. cute
d. dull e. quiet

10. Sometimes, I go ....
a. activities b. trekking c. a hobby
d. the shopping e. diving

11. You have to do ....
a. an activity b. trekking c. mistake
d. something different e. diving

12. If someone is active, this means they are not ....
a. lazy b. inactive c. foreign
d. modern e. new

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Unfortunately, the burglar .... the house. (الفيوم - يوسف كحك ٢٠٢٢)
a. stole b. took c. robbed d. guarded

2. 'Ancient' is to .... as 'boring' is to 'exciting'.
a. excited b. new c. modern d. b & c

3. You can .... a cruise or a boat trip.
a. decide to b. go away c. go on d. trek into

4. He escaped .... prison.
a. to b. with c. from d. on

5. It is over, Sama. There's nothing ....
a. do b. doing c. to do d. to doing

6. Fans usually .... to take selfies with football stars.
a. crowd b. crowding c. crowds d. crowdedness

7. People living in a big city suffer from ....
a. crowd b. crowded c. overcrowding d. crowded



PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

James's blog

(SB page 10)



This is me on our hotel balcony in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's brilliant here and there are loads of things to do. I'm over the moon visiting Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.

My sister and I are learning to dive with some other teenagers at the resort. I love diving; it's so relaxing and you can see all these amazing fish in the sea. I want to get an underwater camera so I can take photos of them.

Last week, we were in Luxor and visited the ancient temples there. I'm not usually interested in history, but I actually found them fascinating and am really glad we went there.

Katy's blog

(SB page 10)

Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm so bored – all my friends are away or busy with their family and I'm stuck here at home. The weather's awful and there's nothing to do.

Last week, I went to stay with my grandparents for a few days, which was nice, but they live in a tiny village with no shops. I was helping Granddad in his garden most of the time. He grows all his own vegetables – he says it's cheaper than buying them.

Maybe I'll try and grow some lettuce in our garden when it stops raining. I was watching a programme on TV this morning about gardening – maybe I'll have a new hobby!



Holiday Adverts! *(WB page 90)*

A beach break

Do you want to **relax**[1] in a quiet and **peaceful**[2] place? **Escape**[3] from noisy streets and leave your busy city life **behind**[4]. Visit this amazing **paradise**[5]. Enjoy the **sunshine**[6] on **isolated**[7] beaches and swim in clean, **clear**[8] water.

Adventure time

Are you tired of **the same**[9] old, **boring**[10] places? Are you looking for an **active**[11] holiday? Then this is the holiday for you. Day one starts with diving, then day two takes you **climbing**[12] in the beautiful **Alpine mountains**[13].

Eco-trip

Ecotourism is a new way to travel for a new kind of **traveller**[14]. You can go **trekking**[15] through the **Andes**[16] and **explore**[17] ancient Machu Picchu with a local **guide**[18]. You can enjoy **peace**[19] and **quiet**[20] or you can meet the local people, all without **damaging**[21] the environment.

A cruise to remember

Why not take a calm **cruise**[22] around the **Caribbean**[23]? **On board**[24] our modern **cruise ship**[25], you can enjoy great food and **forget**[26] your **worries**[27] in our relaxing restaurants. We stop at six different islands where you can visit the crowded **markets**[28] and see many unusual sights.

(1) يسترخي
(2) هادئ - ذو سكينة
(3) يهرب
(4) خلف / وراء
(5) جنة
(6) شروق (ضوء) الشمس
(7) منعزل
(8) صافي
(9) نفس
(10) ممل
(11) نشيط - مفيد
(12) يتسلق
(13) جبال الألب
(14) مسافر
(15) تنزه سيرًا
(16) جبال الأنديز
(17) يستكشف
(18) مرشد
(19) السكينة - السلام
(20) الهدوء
(21) تدمير
(22) نزهة بحرية
(23) البحر الكاريبي
(24) متن السفينة
(25) مركب سياحية
(26) ينسى
(27) مخاوف - هموم
(28) أسواق

PART IV LANGUAGE

The Past Continuous Tense : زمن الماضي المستمر :

١ في الجملة المثبتة :

Subject فاعل + **was / were** + **(inf. + ing)** ......

ex. - Ahmed was reading a story.
- Rodayna and Heba were cooking lunch.

UNIT 1

٢ في الجملة المنفية :

Subject فاعل + was not(wasn't)/were not (weren't) + (inf. + ing) ......

ex. - Ahmed was not (wasn't) reading a story.
- Rodayna and Heba were not (weren't) cooking lunch.

٣ في السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد بمعنى «هل» :

Was/Were + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) ...... ?

ex. - Was Ahmed reading a book? - Were you eating a cake?

٤ في السؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + was/were + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) ...... ?

ex. - What was Ahmed reading ?

٥ في صيغة المبني للمجهول :

Object مفعول + was/were + being + p.p. ....

ex. - A story was being read by Ahmed.

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Some people .... on the farm from morning to afternoon that day.
   a. was worked b. were worked c. was working d. were working
2. It was not polite of him to interrupt يقاطع what I ....
   a. was doing b. did c. had done d. was done
3. What .... you doing when I called ?
   a. are b. were c. did d. had
4. Some boys .... when the teacher entered the classroom.
   a. fought b. were fought c. was fighting d. were fighting

Uses of the past continuous استخدامات

١ يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي :

ex. - I was playing on the beach last Friday afternoon.

٢ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي:

While / As / When + جملة ماضي مستمر + جملة ماضي مستمر

ex. - While I was reading a story, Ali was watching TV.

٣ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي عندما وقع حدث آخر:

While / As / When / Just as + جملة ماضي مستمر + جملة ماضي بسيط

ex. - While he was playing a tennis match, he broke his arm.
= He broke his arm while he was playing a tennis match.

While + inf. + ing + جملة ماضي بسيط

ex. - While playing a tennis match, he broke his arm.
(Not : While a tennis ...)

During + noun اسم + جملة ماضي بسيط

ex. - During a tennis match, he broke his arm. (Not : During watching ...)

When + جملة ماضي بسيط + جملة ماضي مستمر

ex. - When I arrived, Shahd was watching a cartoon.

لاحظ أنه يمكن أن يأتي (inf. + ing) بعد (during) عندما تكون صفة :

ex. - During studying hours, I didn't waste any time.

On + noun / (inf. + ing) + جملة ماضي بسيط / جملة ماضي مستمر

ex. - On my arrival at my office, the secretary was checking emails.

While + حرف جر + اسم ....

ex. - While in Alexandria, I ate fish for lunch every day.

٤ لاحظ استخدام المبني للمجهول في الصيغة التالية:

While / On + being + p.p. ......

ex. - While the food was being cooked, it smelled nice.
= While / On being cooked, the food smelled nice.

في المثال السابق استخدمنا (being cooked) وليس (cooking) لأن الجملة الثانية بدأت بـ (the food) الذي يُعتبر مفعول الجملة الأولى.

٥ يُستخدم الماضي البسيط بدلا من الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال التالية:

ex. - **Feelings** المشاعر : like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish ... etc.
- **Senses** الحواس : hear, see, smell, feel, sound, taste, appear, seem, look ... etc.
- **Mental state** الإدراك : realise, understand, know, mean, think = believe, imagine, recognise, remember, forget ... etc.
- I was hearing a noise outside. (×)
- I heard a noise outside. (✓)



لكن يمكن استخدام الماضي المستمر مع بعض الأفعال السابقة في حالة استخدامها بمعاني أخرى غير معانيها الأصلية:

ex. - I was seeing an old friend when you called. (= was meeting)
- I was having some pizza when the phone rang. (= was eating)

تذكر أن الماضي المستمر لا يُستخدم مع الأفعال اللحظية (التي لا تستغرق مدة زمنية) :

ex. - My car broke down تعطل. (Not: was breaking down)

كما أن (being) لا تُستخدم كفعل أساسي في الماضي المستمر:

ex. - While we were in the park, our children were playing around us. (Not: were being)

Mini Test 2 ○ Apply

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. My car .... down suddenly as I was driving to work.
   a. breaks b. broke c. was breaking d. was being broken
2. While I .... at the club, I played tennis.
   a. was b. was being c. am d. am being
3. Nada .... when I rang the doorbell. I felt sorry for waking her up.
   a. slept b. was slept c. has slept d. was sleeping
4. .... the film, I ate popcorn فشار and drank juice.
   a. As b. While c. During d. When
5. .... watching the film, I ate popcorn فشار and drank juice.
   a. As b. While c. During d. As soon as
6. During yesterday's match, most players .... fit.
   a. hadn't been b. weren't c. weren't being d. have been
7. I .... my toys when I was young.
   a. was loving b. am loving c. was being loved d. loved

General Exercise On Language 

○ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. From 9 to 12 last Friday, I .... an important meeting.
   a. had attended b. was attended
   c. was attending d. was being attended

2. From 9 to 12 last Friday, an important meeting ....

a. had attended	b. was attended
c. was attending	d. was being attended

3. .... doing when I called you?

a. Were you	b. You were	c. What you were	d. What were you

4. .... doing homework when I called you?

a. Were you	b. You were	c. What you were	d. What were you

5. I .... my room when Mariam came to see me, so she offered to help me. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٣)

a. decorated	b. was decorating	c. had decorated	d. was decorated

6. On seeing the fire, the man .... the fire brigade. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)

a. had called	b. was called	c. was calling	d. called

7. While .... the experiment, Ahmed fell and injured his hand. (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)

a. were doing	b. was doing	c. doing	d. do

8. I .... out of the boat when I dropped my camera. (السويس ٢٠٢٣)

a. was leaning	b. have leant	c. lean	d. am leaning

9. .... she was a little girl, she wanted to be an actress.

a. Before	b. After	c. When	d. On

10. .... my sleep, I had a nightmare كابوس.

a. While	b. As	c. When	d. During

11. The police arrested him as he........... the scene of the crime.

a. had left	b. was leaving	c. was left	d. has left

12. When Mariam was young, she used to .... in London.

a. lives	b. living	c. live	d. lived

13. On .... the monkey, my baby was frightened.

a. was seeing	b. had seen	c. he was seeing	d. seeing

2 Special cases

14. While I .... at home, my uncle suddenly knocked on the door. (الكرنك ٢٠٢٣)

a. was	b. am	c. was being	d. will be

15. While .... , the baby was laughing to the doctor. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)

a. examining	b. was examining	c. being examined	d. examined

16. While .... , I was staying in another room. (إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)

a. my room was being decorated	b. my room was decorating
c. decorated my room	d. was my room being decorated

17. .... Alex, I met my friend by chance. (منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
a. While b. During c. While in d. Just as

18. I didn't hear the telephone .... I was having a shower. (السنطة ٢٠٢٣)
a. so b. since c. at d. but

19. .... working hours, employees mustn't use mobiles. (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
a. While b. When c. During d. Why

20. I .... into a good family in the south of Egypt.
a. bore b. was born c. was bearing d. have been born

21. Amira .... well yesterday.
a. doesn't look b. didn't look c. wasn't looked d. wasn't looking

22. I .... ready to take the exam, so I postponed it أجّلته.
a. didn't be b. don't be c. wasn't d. wasn't being

23. Everybody was at the office at 08:30 yesterday. The meeting .... at nine o'clock.
a. starts b. has started c. was starting d. started

24. I wish I .... a better time.
a. have b. had had c. was had d. had

25. I wish I .... a better time last year.
a. have b. had had c. was had d. had

26. It's time you .... back my camera.
a. gave b. give c. is given d. was given

27. I'd rather .... here than in Cairo.
a. live b. lives c. lived d. had lived

28. I'd rather my grandma .... here than in Cairo before she died.
a. live b. lives c. lived d. had lived

29. Rokaya always .... to her first school on foot.
a. goes b. went c. was gone d. is gone

30. Every day, I .... my uncle when he was ill.
a. am visited b. visit c. was visited d. visited

31. .... touching the hot pan, Sama cried in pain.
a. While b. On c. When d. During

32. .... on holiday, I had a great time.
a. While b. After c. When d. During

33. I last met Ahmed while he .... off some of his British friend at the airport.
a. saw b. was seeing c. had seen d. was seen

34. When I visited my sister, she .... ill.

a. seemed b. was seeming c. had seemed d. was seemed

35. When the teacher entered the class, the pupils who .... a lot of noise soon became calm.

a. were making b. were being made

c. had been made d. were made

36. While climbing onto the mountain top, I .... a strange animal.

a. was seen b. saw c. was seeing d. had seen

37. I couldn't watch the film because my brother .... a football match.

a. has watched b. was watching c. watched d. had watched

38. Abdu............ the tree when he suddenly fell down.

a. had been climbed b. was climbing

c. climbed d. was climbed

39. .... sleeping, I had a nightmare.

a. While b. As c. When d. During

3 Check your understanding

40. Which of the following is correctly structured?

a. Was Sama being very tired? b. Was Sama very tired?

c. Did Sama be very tired? d. Sama was very tired?

41. I used to be overweight. This means I am .... now.

a. fat b. overweight

c. no longer thin d. not overweight

42. I wish I were taller. This means I ....

a. like my height b. don't like my height

c. would like to be short d. enjoy being short

43. "While on holidays, she read romantic novels." This is a .... habit.

a. past b. present c. future d. current

44. I didn't answer the phone because I .... my shower.

a. had taken b. was taken c. was taking d. had been taken

45. While drinking juice, Sama was chatting with her friends online. This means ....

a. Sama was drinking juice.

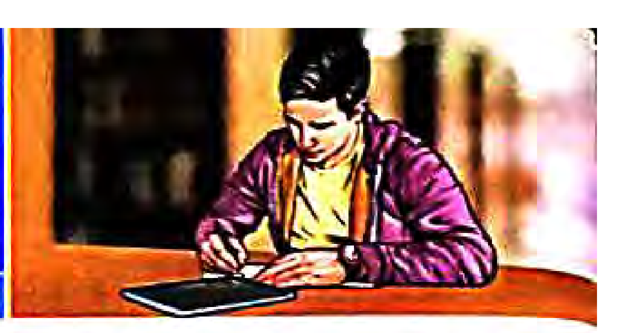
b. Sama's friends were drinking juice.

c. Sama and her friends were drinking juice.

d. Sama said her friends were drinking juice.



PART THREE | Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises



تنويه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

So

١ تستخدم مع الصفة أو الظرف بمعنى (جداً) :

→ so + adj. / adv.

ex. - You can answer this question. It is not so difficult.

- We have enough time. I don't know why you are driving so quickly.

٢ تستخدم (so + adj. / adv. + that) بمعنى (جداً لدرجة أن) :

→ so + adj. + that + جملة

ex. - The exam was so easy that all students passed it.

- He ran so slowly that he came last in the race السباق.

٣ تستخدم (so) كبديل لتكرار صفة أو ظرف بمعنى (هكذا / بهذه الطريقة) :

ex. - The weather is cold and I think it will remain يظل so (= cold) for another two days.

٤ تستخدم (so) كبديل لتكرار عبارة بمعنى (ذلك) :

ex. - A: Do you think Rokaya will come first ?

B: I think so. (= I think she will come first.)

٥ تستخدم (so) في الصيغة التالية بمعنى (وكذلك ...) :

so + فعل مساعد أو ناقص + فاعل

ex. - Mr Helmi felt sick after the meal and so did Mr Ashraf and Fady.

- My mother likes spicy food. So do I.

٦ تستخدم (so) كرابط بين جملتين بمعنى (لذلك / لهذا السبب) ويأتي بعدها جملة نتيجة :

so لذلك + جملة نتيجة

ex. - Mr Abdulrahman was tired, so he went to bed early.

٧ تستخدم (so that) كرابط بين جملتين بمعنى (حتى / لكي) ويأتي بعدها جملة نتيجة :

so that لكي / حتى + جملة غرض

ex. - I want to get an underwater camera so that I can take photos of the corals.

ing

أحيانا يُستخدم (inf. + ing) كبديل لعبارة وصل - لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

who / which / that + جملة مبنية للمعلوم = **(inf. + ing)**

ex. - I have a cousin who works for a tourist company.
= I have a cousin working for a tourist company.

with = who / which / that + have

لاحظ استخدام (with) كبديل لعبارة وصل:

who / whom / which / that + **have / has / had** + **noun** اسم
= **with** + **noun** اسم

ex. - I saw a little girl who has green eyes and long hair.
= I saw a little girl with green eyes and long hair.
- They live in a tiny village which has no shops.
= They live in a tiny village with no shops.

when + ing

يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (when) بمعنى (عند / حين) للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة بشرط أن يكون الفاعل نفس فاعل الجملة الرئيسية :

When + جملة = **When** + **(inf. + ing)**

ex. - When Sama feels tired, she stops working.
= When feeling tired, Sama stops working.

or / otherwise وإلّا

يمكن استخدام (or) أو (otherwise) في جمل شرطية بمعنى (وإلا) بدلاً من (if / unless) :

ex. - You must study hard, otherwise you won't pass the exam.
= If you don't study hard, you won't pass the exam.
= Unless you study hard, you won't pass the exam.

someone / anything ... + adj. صفة

تأتي الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها:

someone	somebody	something	somewhere
anyone	anybody	anything	anywhere
everyone	everybody	everything	everywhere
no one	nobody	nothing	nowhere

ex. - I sat next to someone important on the plane. (Not: important someone)
- Children like everything new. (Not: new everything)

It + verb to be + ... من

It + be + adj. صفة + to + inf. ..... من ... أن ...

ex. - It is difficult to understand this lesson without your teacher's help.
- It is enjoyable to spend your free time in the club.

It + be + adj. صفة + of / for + subj. فاعل + to + inf. ..... من ... أن ...

ex. - It is easy for Ayman to do this work on his own بمفرده.
- It is kind of you to help me solve my problems.

help + inf. / to + inf.

يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) أو (inf.) بعد (help):

ex. - I helped Sama to do the cooking.
= I helped Sama do the cooking.
- The babysitter helps to look after the baby.
= The babysitter helps look after the baby.

busy

..... busy with + noun اسم

ex. - The manager is busy with some clients العملاء.

..... busy + (inf. + ing)

ex. - We were busy doing the housework.

verb + object + inf. / ing

الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على متابعة الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها (inf. +ing) ليدل على متابعة جزء من الحدث:

see - watch - hear - notice

ex. - I saw the sun go down. (شاهدت الغروب بالكامل)
- I saw the sun going down. (شاهدت جزء من الغروب)

including

تُستخدم (including) كحرف جر بمعنى (بما في ذلك / مشتملاً على):

Including بما في ذلك ≠ excluding فيما عدا

ex. - I called all my family members, including my uncle who lives in Canada.

stop

تُستخدم (stop) بمعنى (يتوقف - يُوقِف - يمنع) كالتالي:

stop + to + inf. + يتوقف (عما يفعله) لكي

ex. - While Leen was doing homework, she stopped to make herself a cup of tea.

stop + (inf. + ing) (يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)

ex. - Ashraf stopped chatting with his online friends to revise for the exams.

stop + obj. مفعول + (from) + inf + ing يمنع ... من القيام بـ ...

ex. - Mr Ayman stopped us from talking to each other.
= Mr Ayman stopped us talking to each other.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I was busy .... my homework when you called. (سوهاج - حربا ٢٠٢٣)
a. doing b. does c. done d. to do

2. I know the names of all people in our street, ... little children. (سوهاج - ساقلتة ٢٠٢٣)
a. include b. including c. includes d. included

3. When .... the bank, the manager is usually exhausted.
a. leaving b. leaves c. leave d. had left

4. Children like Tom and Jerry cartoons because they are .... funny.
a. such b. such a c. so d. so much

5. She saw her father .... for work earlier than usual.
a. leaving b. to leaving c. leaves d. left

6. It is nice .... you to help her.
a. in b. with c. for d. of

7. I have to wear the uniform, ... I won't take part in يشارك في the game.
a. as b. so c. otherwise d. if

8. He writes so .... that I can't read anything.
a. bad b. badly c. good d. well

9. They are busy .... the preparations of the wedding تجهيزات الزفاف.
a. from b. to c. for d. with

10. Can you suggest .... to do?
a. a something important b. an important something
c. something important d. important something

11. Mum was .... tired that she slept in her chair.
a. so b. such c. very d. too

12. Mr Magdi helped us .... the experiment.
a. doing b. do c. to doing d. done

UNIT 1

13. It is useful .... us to have a work plan.
   a. at   b. about   c. for   d. of
14. He has a villa .... a swimming pool.
   a. of   b. with   c. into   d. out of
15. I heard a bird .... beautifully before it flew away.
   a. to sing   b. singing   c. sings   d. b & c
16. A: Is Omar ill?   B: I think .... He looks pale شاحب.
   a. it   b. this   c. so   d. as
17. The horse .... by the gate is mine.
   a. stand   b. stands   c. standing   d. to stand
18. Marwa is hard-working and so ....
   a. I am   b. am I   c. I do   d. do I
19. Shaza helped all of us .... ready for the competition المسابقة.
   a. to getting   b. got   c. getting   d. to get
20. Be careful .... you might fall.
   a. if   b. unless   c. or   d. and
21. I know the girl .... the black skirt.
   a. with   b. in   c. of   d. to

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer : (سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)

The natural world around us is really terrific. It is full of obvious and ambiguous objects. One of the most amazing things that we cannot do without is the tree. Why are trees important? A simple answer to this question is that trees give us wood which we use for making furniture and many other things. However, this answer is traditional and very limited. In the past, trees had several benefits. They supplied people with wood for building and heating. They also provided people with cool shade by the sides of the roads and in the fields. In the modern world, trees are even more important. They are the main ingredients in thousands of products.

Paper is one of the most significant wood products. Rubber is also made from some kinds of trees. In addition, some kinds of ice cream and toothpaste are made from wood. Turpentine is one of the main chemicals which are made from wood.

Scientifically, trees help the earth to breathe. They take in carbon dioxide and release oxygen. This helps to purify the **contaminated** air which affects our health badly. Botanists say that the tallest tree in the world is a Giant Sequoia. It is in California. It is 83.8 meters tall. It is between 2.300 and 2.700 years old.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. Giant Sequoia which is the tallest tree in the world is ....
   a. more than 2.700 years old.
   b. more than 83.8 kilometers tall.
   c. less than 2.300 years old.
   d. about eighty-four meters tall.
2. .... is one of the basic chemicals which are made from wood.
   a. Rubber
   b. Oxygen
   c. Turpentine
   d. Heat
3. The underlined word "**contaminated**" gives the same meaning of ....
   a. positioned
   b. fast
   c. polluted
   d. clean
4. Which of the following is NOT a benefit of trees?
   a. They supply people with wood.
   b. They help the earth to breathe.
   c. They give us light.
   d. They provide people with cool shade.
5. Which one of the following is NOT mentioned in the passage about the use of wood?
   a. Making paper.
   b. Making us warm.
   c. Making toothpaste.
   d. Making medicines.
6. The best title of the passage is ....
   a. The importance of trees
   b. Trees and shade
   c. The tallest tree in the world
   d. Toothpaste and wood
7. The second paragraph of the passage talks about ....
   a. the use of wood in the past
   b. trees purify air
   c. modern products made from wood
   d. the price of wood

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

Model Essay

Write an essay of about 150 words about voluntary work :

Voluntary work

What is voluntary work? Simply, voluntary work is work that you do for free. You do not expect or ask to be paid money or anything else for doing it. It is a type of help to the whole society or a certain group of people in society.

Voluntary work has always been very important. There are a lot of



problems and challenges تحديات that face تواجه the society. The government cannot face all these problems and challenges without the people's help. We can say that the volunteering role is complementary مُكمِّل to that of the government.

What can people volunteer? Most people would say money. That's not an accurate answer. Money is a donation not volunteering. Volunteering is mainly أساسا taking part in doing something useful or necessary for the society or the people living in it. Those who volunteer have enough time and experience with which they can help.

Voluntary work is very important. It helps with difficult problems. It creates a type of unity الاتحاد and strength in society. If you haven't volunteered so far , you had better try now.

3 Translation الترجمة

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourism is considered a main source of national income, so we should attract more tourists to visit Egypt. (الدلنجات ٢٠٢٣)

a. تُعتبر السياحة مصدراً رئيسياً من مصادر الاقتصاد القومي، ولذا علينا أن نجذب الكثير من السياح لزيارة مصر.
b. تُعتبر السياحة مصدراً رئيسياً من مصادر الدخل القومي، ولذا علينا أن نجذب الكثير من السياح لزيارة مصر.
c. تُعتبر السياحة مصدراً رئيسياً من مصادر الدخل القومي، ولذا علينا أن نجذب القليل من السياح لزيارة مصر.
d. تُعتبر السياحة مصدراً رئيسياً من مصادر الدخل الأسري، ولذا علينا أن نجذب الكثير من السياح لزيارة مصر.

2. All driverless cars will be electric and much cleaner than petrol ones. They reduce pollution as well. (شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)

a. إن قيادة السيارات الكهربائية سهل وبسيط ويساعد على تقليل التلوث.
b. لم يعد قيادة السيارات الكهربائية صعب، ولكنه أسهل بكثير من سيارات البنزين ويقلل التلوث.
c. جميع السيارات التي بلا قائد ستكون كهربية، فهي أنقى من سيارات البنزين وتقلل التلوث أيضاً.
d. إن استخدام السيارات الكهربية أنقى من السيارات البنزين لكنها تزيد الجو تلوثاً.

3. Many kinds of animals and plants are endangered, so man must pay more attention to the environment. (سنورس ٢٠٢٣)

a. كثير من الحيوانات العطوفة والنباتات مُعرَّضة للخطر، لذلك يجب أن يهتم الإنسان بالبيئة بشكل أكبر.
b. أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات والنباتات مُعرَّضة للخطر، لذلك يجب على الرجل أن يدفع اهتمام بشكل أكبر.
c. هناك أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات والنباتات الخطيرة، لذلك يجب أن يهتم الإنسان بالبيئة بشكل أكبر.
d. تتعرض الكثير من أنواع الحيوانات والنباتات للخطر، لذلك يجب أن يهتم الإنسان بالبيئة بشكل أكبر.

2. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

١. تُستخدم الطاقة الشمسية لتوليد الطاقة الكهربائية في بعض محطات الطاقة العملاقة. (أقوص ٢٣ / ٢٠)

a. Solar power is used to reduce electricity in some major power stations.
b. Solar energy is used to generate electricity in some huge power stations.
c. Solar power is used to generate electricity in all major energy stations.
d. Solar power is used to generating electricity in some major power stations.

٢. جميعنا مسئولون عن حماية البيئة، فهي ليست مهمة الدولة والمنظمات وحدها. (غرب الفيوم ٢٣ / ٢٠)

a. We are all responsible for protecting the environment. It is not the task of only the state and organizations.
b. We all have the responsibility for protecting the environment. It is the task of the state and the organizations only.
c. We are all irresponsible for protecting the environment. It is the task of the state and organizations only.
d. We all have the responsibility to prevent the environment. It is not the task of the state and organizations only.

٣. لقد أصبح من الضروري تشجيع الأبحاث العلمية التي تهدف إلى تنمية المجتمع المصري.

a. It has became necessary to encourage the scientific search which aims to develop the Egyptian society.
b. It has become necessary to encourage the scientific research which aims to develop the Egyptian society.
c. It has become necessary to encourage the scientific research which aims to develop the Egyptian industry.
d. It has become necessary to encourage the scientific research who aims to develop the Egypt society.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

conserve

- **conserve (d) (v) = preserve(d) (v)** يحفظ / يصون / يحمي
  - We should conserve the environment.
- **conserve (d) (v)** يُرشد / يقتصد في
  - Everyone must conserve energy. الطاقة
- **conserve = jam (n)** مربى
  - I like peach conserve. مربى الخوخ



- **conservation = preservation (n)** حماية أو صيانة (البيئة الطبيعية)
  - The conservation of wildlife الحياة البرية is very important.
- **conservation (n)** ترشيد / تقليل
  - Water conservation is necessary.

- ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- nature conservation حماية الطبيعة - wildlife conservation حماية الحياة البرية
- conservation groups جماعات حماية الطبيعة

- **conservationist (n)** شخص محافظ على أو صديق للبيئة
  - He is one of the conservationists who work hard to protect lions from extinction الإنقراض.

ecotourism

- **ecotourism (n)** سياحة صديقة للبيئة (أتراعي الحفاظ على البيئة والحياة الطبيعية)
  - The Red Sea coast is a promising ذو مستقبل باهر area in ecotourism.
- **ecotourist (n)** سائح صديق للبيئة
  - Some areas are visited only by ecotourists.

danger

- **danger (n)** خطر
  - Don't expose يُعرِّض your life to danger.
- **endanger(ed) (v)** يُعرِّض للخطر
  - Don't endanger your life.
- **endangerment (n)** التعريض للخطر
  - Child endangerment is a crime. جريمة
- **endangered (adj)** مُعرَّض للخطر / للإنقراض
  - Some types of animals are endangered.

environment

- **the environment (n)** البيئة (الطبيعية)

- لاحظ ضرورة استخدام (the) قبل كلمة (environment) بهذا المعنى :

- Pollution endangers the environment. (Not: endangers environment)

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- protect / conserve the environment يحمي البيئة
- harm / damage / destroy the environment يدمر البيئة
- pollute the environment يُلَوِّث البيئة
- the natural environment البيئة الطبيعية

• **environment (n)** وضع - وسط - جو عام
- In class, students must find a suitable مناسبة environment to learn.

• **environmentally (adv)** بيئياً / من الناحية البيئية
- Ecotourism is environmentally friendly.

impact

• **impact (on / upon) (n)** تأثير / انطباع
- My friends have a great impact on me.

• **impact (n)** إرتطام / اصطدام
- The force قوة of the impact made the car turn over تنقلب.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :
- have an impact له تأثير - make an impact يترك أثر / يؤثر
- a positive impact تأثير إيجابي
- a negative / damaging / adverse impact تأثير سلبي
- a long-term / lasting impact تأثير دائم
- a short-term / immediate impact تأثير لحظي
- an environmental impact أثر بيئي

• **impact (ed)(on / upon) (v)** يؤثر (على)
- The internet has impacted on life in the modern age.

isolated

• **isolate (d) .... (from) (v)** يُبعد / يعزل............(عن)
- Parents always try to isolate their children from bad friends.

• **isolate (d) .... (from) (v)** يفصل ....(عن)
- This machine isolates butter الزبدة from milk.

• **isolation (n)** العزلة
- No one can live in isolation.

• **isolation (n)** الانعزال / البُعد
- The isolation of the oasis الواحة gives it a unique فريدة culture.

• **isolated (adj)** بعيد / ناء / منفرد
- He lives in an isolated village.

• **isolated (adj)** شاعر بالعزلة أو الوحدة
- Working alone on a farm makes him feel isolated.

crowded

• **crowded (with) (adj)** مُزدحم (ملئ بالاشخاص)
- The house was crowded with guests.

• **overcrowded (with) (adj)** مكتظ بـ / متكدس بـ (خاص بالأماكن والأشياء)
- In feasts الأعياد, streets and parks are overcrowded.

UNIT 1

- **overcrowding (n)** الزحام / التكدُّس
  - Overcrowding is a serious problem in cities.
- **crowd (n)** جمع / حشد من الناس
  - There's a crowd of students near the school gate.
- **crowd (ed) (v)** يحتشد / يتجمع / يتجمهر
  - Thousands of people crowded to welcome the winning team.

- لاحظ ما يلي :

- **crowd in on** + شخص تُغالبة / تتزاحم عليه
  - Fears المخاوف crowded in on her and she was very sad.

exotic

- **exotic (adj)** غريب / نادر - أجنبي / وافد
  - This park has some exotic plants.
  - I saw some exotic birds on the beach.

lean

- **lean – (leant – leant) / (leaned – leaned) (v)** ينحني / يميل
  - He leaned and looked down from the balcony.
- **lean ... (on / against) (v)** يتكىء (على) - يسند ... على
  - I leaned against the wall.
  - He leant his bicycle against a tree.
- **lean (adj)** نحيف
  - Abdulrahman is tall and lean.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- lean years سنوات الضنك
- lean meat لحوم قليلة الشحم
- lean production انتاج مقتصد

- **leaning (adj)** مائل / مُتكئ
  - He visited the Leaning Tower of Pisa برج بيزا المائل.

material

- **material (n)** مادة (تُستخدم في صناعة الأشياء)
  - Building materials have become expensive.
- **material (n)** قماش (يُستخدم في صناعة الملابس)
  - She bought a good blouse made of soft material.
  - This material is made of Egyptian cotton.
- **material (adj)** مادي (متعلق بالمال أو المنفعة)
  - He is only interested in material benefit الفائدة المادية.
- **material (adj)** مادي = ملموس
  - The police have material evidence دليل مادي against him.

spicy

• **spicy (adj)** حرِّيف / حار - متبل بالبهارات
- I like spicy sandwiches.

• **spice - spices (n)** توابل / بهارات
- Fast food restaurants depend تعتمد on spices to make food more delicious.

• **spice (n)** اهتمام / إثارة (كلمة لا تُعد)
- Our teacher of English usually adds spice to the reading lesson.

• **spice (ed) ... with (v)** يُتبِّل .... بـ
- Mum never forgets to spice the food with hot pepper.

• **spice (ed) up (v)** يُضفي نوع من الإثارة أو التنوع
- Ahmed's funny talks أحاديث spiced (up) the long train journey.

sustainable

• **sustain (ed) (v)** يُحافظ على / يُبقي على
- It is important that a teacher sustains his student's interest اهتمام.

• **sustain (ed) (v)** يتعرض لضرر
- Their company sustained some losses الخسائر.

• **sustainable (adj)** ملائم للبيئة / صديق للبيئة
- Bicycles are sustainable means of transport وسيلة مواصلات.

• **sustainable (adj)** دائم / مُستدام / قابل للبقاء
- The government wants to achieve تحقق a sustainable economic growth نمو اقتصادي.

swell

• **swell – swelled – swollen (up) (v)** يتورم / يلتهب
- He hit his head and soon it swelled (up).

• **swell -swelled – swollen (to) (v)** يتزايد / يزداد في العدد أو الكمية
- Water in the river has swollen because of the floods. الفيضانات

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- swell with pride يشعر بالفخر الشديد
- swell with anger يستشيط غضباً
- swell-headed = big-headed مغرور

• **swelling (in / on) (n)** ورم / التهاب (في)
- She has a painful مؤلم swelling in her hand.

• **swollen (adj)** متورِّم / ملتهب
- His knee is swollen.

trek

- **trek = hike (n)** رحلة طويلة (غالباً سيراً على الأقدام كنوع من المغامرة)
  - We went on a long trek(hike) through the countryside.
- **trek(ked) = hike(d) (v)** يقوم برحلة طويلة وصعبة سيراً
  - We trekked (hiked) through the countryside.

unique

- **unique (adj)** فريد من نوعه
  - Everyone has unique fingerprints بصمات أصابع.
- **unique (adj)** مُميَّز / رائع جداً
  - We had a unique time in France.
  - لا تُستخدم الصفة (unique) في صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل :
  - This horse is more unique than that one. (✗)
  - لاحظ التعبير التالي :
- **be unique to** يتفرد به / لا يوجد إلا في
  - The Komodo dragon is unique to Indonesia. It doesn't live anywhere else.

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
eco-	مُتعلِّق بالبيئة	ecotourism السياحة البيئية ecofriendly صديق للبيئة ecology عِلم البيئة ecologist عالِم متخصص في البيئة ecosystem النظام البيئي
en-	تُكوِّن فعل	endanger يُعرِّض للخطر
teen-	بين سن ١٣ - ١٩	teenager مُراهِق
under-	تحت	underwater تحت الماء

3 suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- ing	تُكوِّن اسم / صفة	relaxing (adj) مُريح overcrowding (n) الزحام
-ed	تُكوِّن صفة	crowded مُزدحم endangered مُعرَّض للخطر
-ism	تُكوِّن اسم	tourism السياحة
-ist	تُكوِّن اسم فاعل / صفة	tourist سائح / سياحي

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Never interrupt تقاطع us while the meeting is .... progress.
   a. for b. with c. on d. in
2. .... is the air, water, and land on Earth, which is affected by man's activities.
   a. Orangutan b. Soil c. Environment d. The environment
3. Thoughts .... in on me and I found it impossible مستحيل to sleep.
   a. encouraged b. isolated c. crowded d. endangered
4. My granddad sat in his armchair before .... his stick against the wall.
   a. impacting b. isolating c. crowding d. leaning
5. He always adds .... to our journeys with his funny comments.
   a. treks b. spices c. spice d. isolation

Advanced Exercise on Language

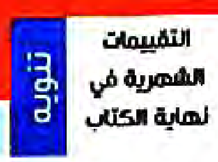
مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... my arrival home, I saw that no one was there.
   a. During b. On c. While d. As
2. .... on holiday, I met a lot of my old friends.
   a. During b. Just as c. While d. As
3. My elder brother .... watching a movie on his computer last night.
   a. used to enjoy b. was enjoying c. enjoyed d. would enjoy
4. Don't open the door until I .... you.
   a. tell b. told c. had told d. was told
5. .... to hospital in the ambulance, the injured man was put on a ventilator جهاز تنفس صناعي.
   a. While taking b. When taking
   c. On taking d. While being taken

Test on Unit 1

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create





1. Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Air pollution has a dangerous .... on the ....
   a. diversity b. impact c. university
   d. bullying e. environment (أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٣)

2. "He is on a trek through the South Gobi Desert." The word "trek" here is a synonym of .... (الفيوم – يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٣)
   a. fishing b. hike c. losing
   d. fabricating e. journey

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

3. We should protect the .... rare animals, especially in wild open reserves. (شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. endangered b. danger c. dangerous d. dangerously

4. A/An .... is someone who works to protect animals, plants etc. or to protect old buildings. (السويس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. physicist b. conservationist
   c. ecotourist d. archaeologist

5. It is important to keep your children .... from bad company.
   a. near b. insulated c. isolated d. endangered

6. The train was so late, so we got .... for three hours. (منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. stuck b. calm c. busy d. quiet

7. My grandparents live in/an .... village close to the desert.
   a. environmental b. isolated c. material d. swollen

8. I have .... of tasks to achieve before I leave the office.
   a. loads b. pros c. cons d. impacts

9. The notes you had .... helped us a lot in taking the right decision.
   a. gone b. caused c. done d. made

10. I .... a new mobile three days ago. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)
    a. buy b. bought c. have bought d. will buy

11. We always .... in the street when we were young. (سمالوط ٢٠٢٣)
    a. have played b. were playing c. played d. play

12. When .... this house built? (سلامة ٢٠٢٣)
    a. does b. was c. did d. will

13. It's time Gamal .... football with us. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)

a. play b. played c. plays d. playing

14. Omar .... across the Sahara last year. (مطروح ٢٠٢٣)

a. cycled b. cycles c. was cycling d. were cycling

15. While you .... on holiday, just relax and don't think about work. (الغربية ٢٠٢٣)

a. are b. are being c. were d. were being

16. She did some shopping during .... to Port Said. (المنوفية ٢٠٢٣)

a. visiting b. was visiting c. visited d. a visit

3. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

(الدقهلية – تمي الامديد ٢٠٢٣)

Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern اهتمام about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming الاحتباس الحراري. Desertification التصحر also leads to warmer temperatures. The hazard تهديد of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment.

Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of <u>its</u> withering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the <u>ecological</u> balance; therefore some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources: solar, wind, hydro, geothermal and biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the "methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth, 30% of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans, air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. Desertification means .... a wide area of trees.

a. clearing b. planting c. irrigating d. spraying

18. The underlined word <u>"its"</u> refers to ....

a. desertification b. global warming

c. carbon dioxide d. the environment

19. Scientists recommend .... fossil fuels in an attempt to solve the problem.
   a. using b. misusing c. reducing d. reusing

20. Burning fossil fuels .... global warming.
   a. causes of b. results of c. leads to d. results from

21. The synonym of the underlined word "ecological" is ....
   a. environmental b. biological c. chemical d. material

22. According to the passage, we .... the destructive effects of global warming.
   a. will face b. faced
   c. have never faced d. are already facing

23. The best title for this passage is "...........".
   a. National Disasters b. Global Disasters
   c. Trees and Nature d. Anthropogenic Activities

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

There's no doubt that education is the backbone of scientific progress. Without teachers, people will suffer from the darkness of ignorance. (الخميم ٢٠٢٣)

a. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقري للتقدم العملي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من آثار الجهل.

b. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقري للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المتعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.

c. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقري للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.

d. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقري للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من نور الجهل.

25. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

يجب أن نرشد استهلاكنا من المياه وإلا سوف نواجه مشكلات خطيرة في المستقبل القريب. (أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)

a. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.

b. We must not rationalize our pollution of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.

c. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will not face serious problems in the far future.

d. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will hand serious problems in the near future.

26. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words:**

"How to protect the environment"

....

....

....



UNIT **2**

Supporting the community

SB pages 16 : 25   WB pages 94 : 99

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :** A text about Egyptian people who help their communities
- **Writing :** Write a blog on a famous person; a biography of Dr Leelah Hazzah
- **Listening :** An interview with Dr Leelah Hazzah
- **Speaking :** Discussion about helping people; Making arrangements
- **Language :** Present simple and past simple; Present simple passive
- **Life skills :** Empathy

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 16 : 19 WB pages 94 & 95



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

agreement(n)	موافقة - اتفاق	long-term(adj)	طويل المدى
blood donation(n)	التبرُّع بالدم	pressure(n)	ضغط
blood pressure(n)	ضغط الدم	prestige (n - adj)	نُفوذ / هَيْبَة / وَجَاهَة - عالي الجودة
desire(d) (n - v)	رغبة - يرغب	roar(ed) (v - n)	يزأر - زئير
donate(d) (v)	يتبرع	role model(n)	قدوة - نموذج يُحتَذي
donation(n)	التبرُّع	speed(n)	سُرعة
donor(n)	مُتبرِّع	support(ed) (n - v)	دعم / مساندة - يدعم
generous(adj)	كريم - سَخِيّ	transplant(ed) (n - v)	نقل / زراعة أعضاء - يزرع عضو
intelligence(adj)	ذكاء		
iron level(n)	نسبة الحديد في الدم		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

ability(n)	قدرة	inspire(d) (v)	يُلهم - يَحثّ / يُحفِّز
admire(d) (v)	يُعجَب بـ	instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك
amongst(prep)	بين	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
based in	يوجد مقره في	maker(n)	صانع
benefit(ted) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد	movement(n)	حركة
biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	name(d) (n - v)	اسم - يُسَمِّي - يذكر اسم
cancer(n)	مرض السرطان	nickname(n)	لقب - اسم شهرة
chance(n)	فُرصة - الحظ	persuade(d) (v)	يُقنِع
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية - العمل الخيري	praise(d) (n - v)	المديح - يُثني على / يمتدح
		purpose(n)	غرض
check(ed) (v)	يفحص / يتحقق	regular(adj)	معتاد / مألوف - منتظم
compassion(n)	رحمة	relationship(n)	علاقة
cute(adj)	جذاب - جميل	reduce(d) (v)	يُقلل / يُخفِّض
documentary (n - adj)	فيلم وثائقي - وثائقي	research(ed) (n-v)	بَحث - يُجري أبحاث
finals(n)	النهائيات	respect(ed) (n - v)	احترام - يحترم
fondness(n)	غرام/إعجاب/حُب شديد	role play (n - v)	(لعبة) لتمثيل الأدوار - يُمثِّل
founder(n)	مؤسِّس	save(d) (v)	يدخر/يوفر - يُنقذ
generation(n)	جيل	score(d) (v - n)	يُحرز / يسجل - نقاط

go - went - gone (v)	يختفي/يزول	soccer(n)	كرة القدم
happiness(n)	السعادة	succeed(ed) (v)	ينجح
hometown(n)	مسقط راس	task(n)	مهمة
hunter(n)	صياد	the wild(n)	المناطق البرية
illness(n)	مرض	traditionally(adv)	بشكل تقليدي
income(n)	دخل - مورد رزق	view(n)	وجهة نظر / راي - منظر
injure(d) (v)	يُصيب - يؤذي	wish(ed) (v - n)	يتمنى - امنية
injured (adj)	مصاب		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
agreement عقد - اتفاقية	an official document وثيقة رسمية that people sign يوقع to show that they have agreed to something
blood pressure ضغط الدم	the force القوة with which blood travels يتحرك through your body
community المجتمع	all the people who live in the same area, city etc.
desire رغبة	a strong hope or wish
donate يتبرع	to allow يسمح some blood or a body organ عضو to be removed يُزال from your body so that it can be used in a hospital to help someone who is ill or injured
generous كريم	willing مستعد to give money, spend time etc., in order to help people or give them pleasure سعادة
intelligence الذكاء	having a high level of mental عقلي ability, and good at thinking clearly التفكير بوضوح and understanding ideas
iron level مستوى الحديد	the amount or quantity of iron presence وجود in your blood
long-term طويل المدى	continuing for a long period of time, or relating مرتبط بـ to what will happen in the distant بعيد future
prestige نفوذ / هيبة / وجاهة	the respect احترام and admiration إعجاب that someone or something gets because of their success or important position مكانة in society
roar زئير- يزأر	(to make) a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion, or by someone's voice



role model	قدوة	someone whose behaviour سلوك, attitudes توجهات, etc. people try to copy يقلد because they admire يعجب بـ them
transplant زراعة أعضاء - نقل		the operation عملية of moving an organ, piece of skin etc. from one person to another

Exercise On Vocabulary

● Understand

● ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. We should .... money to charities to help the poor. (المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)
   a. take b. donate c. steal d. conceal
2. Salah's skill provides a .... model for inspiring young people. (المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)
   a. role b. rule c. roll d. reel
3. The patient needs an urgent kidney .... to stay alive. (كوم أمبو ٢٠٢٣)
   a. transplant b. transaction c. transfer d. transmit
4. The shortage of blood .... will lead to serious effect on patients. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. owners b. donors c. keepers d. attackers
5. For his compassionate رحيم and .... donations to charities in Egypt, Salah has received praise. (شربين ٢٠٢٣)
   a. generous b. generosity c. general d. genre
6. Your doctor will take your blood .... to ensure that you don't have any health problems. (شربين ٢٠٢٣)
   a. treasure b. level c. pressure d. cells
7. It is important to .... our parents when they get older. (بنها ٢٠٢٣)
   a. trick b. borrow c. kick d. support
8. My brother has a strong .... to help and care for old people. (الباجور ٢٠٢٣)
   a. inquire b. desire c. inspire d. acquire
9. I usually feel frightened when the lions .... (أسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٣)
   a. roar b. shout c. whistle d. talk
10. Iron .... is the amount of iron stored in the body. (قفط ٢٠٢٣)
   a. organ b. evil c. tool d. level
11. You can't make any changes without a written .... from the minister.
   a. pressure b. intelligence c. speed d. agreement
12. High blood pressure is considered a .... disease. (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. long-term b. medium-term c. short- term d. first-term

13. Good education, money and power السلطة give people ....
a. prestige b. hometown c. conservation d. monitor

14. I am sure Rodayna will take the right decisions. I trust her ....
a. intelligent b. intelligence c. speedy d. speed

15. His .... in taking decisions makes him make mistakes.
a. support b. speed c. transplant d. prestige

16. He is known for his generous .... to charities.
a. pressures b. donors c. donations d. roars

2 Important Vocabulary

17. Mohammed Salah's .... is "the Happiness Maker".
(فتح الله كيرة الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
a. surname b. first name c. nickname d. pen name

18. I .... Aswan in winter as its weather is fantastic then.
(إدارة أسوان – أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
a. hate b. dislike c. admire d. leave

19. Eight teams play the quarter- .... of a championship. (إدفو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
a. rule b. final c. beginning d. role

20. I have a friend who works in a big company .... in Kuwait.
(سوهاج – طما ٢٠٢٠)
a. laid b. lied c. based d. basis

21. My parents always .... me when I do well at school. (البحيرة – كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٠)
a. praise b. apologise c. bully d. defend

22. It's my father's success at basketball that .... me to play the game.
(البحيرة – كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٠)
a. inspired b. aspired c. conspired d. respire

23. Unfortunately, the old man died after a short .... (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)
a. fun b. happiness c. condition d. illness

24. It was only later in her life that she found .... and peace of mind.
(البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
a. happy b. happiness c. sad d. sadness

25. My father spares no efforts لا يدخر جهداً to .... me that having a job would give me a prestige. (الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٠)
a. purchase b. insulate c. persuade d. propose

26. His .... is so low that he has to look for a second job.
a. compassion b. documentary c. income d. task

27. I look forward to returning to my .... of Assuit where I was born and educated.
a. workplace b. hometown c. track d. support

28. As a striker, you are supposed to .... goals, not to lose the ball.
a. miss b. realise c. reach d. score

29. Tourism .... national income الدخل القومي .
a. volunteers b. aims c. donates d. benefits

30. She has .... for the old and the sick.
a. compassion b. documentary c. income d. task

31. She pays تقوم بـ .... visits to her old grandma in Suez.
a. safe b. charitable c. regular d. missing

32. I will lend you the money even if I know you don't have the .... to pay it back.
a. able b. ability c. inability d. disability

33. Mr Mohammed gave each student a/an .... to do.
a. compassion b. documentary c. income d. task

3 Definitions

34. A/An .... is a strong hope or wish.
a. desire b. track c. will d. ability

35. To .... is to allow some blood or a body organ to be removed from your body so that it can be used in a hospital to help someone who is ill or injured.
a. reduce b. protect c. score d. donate

36. .... means willing to give money, spend time etc., in order to help people or give them pleasure.
a. Intelligent b. Responsible c. Generous d. Safe

37. A .... is someone whose behaviour, attitudes, etc. people try to copy because they admire them.
a. donor b. biologist c. role play d. role model

38. .... is the respect and admiration that someone or something gets because of their success or important position in society .
a. Prestige b. Generosity c. Support d. Ability

39. A/An .... is an official document that people sign to show that they have agreed to something.
a. admiration b. agreement c. pressure d. donation

40. A .... means a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion, or by someone's voice

a. success b. killing c. roar d. livestock

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

check	blood pressure يقيس ضغط الدم	have	a desire to لديه رغبة أن
check	iron level يقيس نسبة الحديد في الدم	have	health benefits ذو فوائد صحية
donate	blood يتبرع بالدم	have	health problems يعاني من مشكلات صحية
donate	money يتبرع بالمال	have	long-term illness يعاني من مرض مزمن
get	a job يحصل على عمل	have	nothing to do ليس لديه ما يقوم به
get	angry with يغضب من	have	a game لديه مباراة
give	... a chance يمنح ... فرصة	have	the ability to لديه القدرة على
give	a title يُلقب - يُسمي	make	friends يُكوّن صداقات
give	blood يتبرع بالدم	make	movements يقوم بحركات
give	work / jobs يُشغل	take	part in يشارك في

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
blood donation	التبرع بالدم	giving blood
desire	رغبة - يرغب	wish, preference, will إرادة
donate	يتبرع	give, supply
generous	كريم - سخي - جواد	open-handed, big-hearted
long-term	طويل الأمد	durable, lasting
long-term illness	مرض مزمن	serious illness
praise	يُثني على - يمتدح	appreciate, flatter
prestige (n)	نفوذ / هيبة / وجاهة	influence, esteem
prestige (adj)	عالي الجودة/ثمين	smart, costly
take part in	يشارك في	participate, join, share

UNIT 2

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
donate	يتبرع	keep, receive	يحتفظ بـ / يتسلم
generous	كريم - سخي - جواد	mean, selfish, miser, stingy	بخيل / أناني
intelligence	الذكاء	stupidity, dullness	الغباء
long-term	طويل المدى	short-term, temporary	قصير المدى - مؤقت
praise	يثني على - يمتدح	criticise, disapprove of	ينتقد - يستهجن
support	يدعم / يؤيد	oppose, neglect	يعارض / يهمل

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

intelligence		
intelligence (n)	الذكاء	- He is famous for his intelligence.
intelligent (adj)	ذكي	- He is **intelligent.**
intelligently (adv)	بذكاء	- He behaves بتصرف intelligently.
generous		
generosity (n)	الكرم / السخاء	- Generosity is a good quality.
generous (adj)	كريم / سخي - وفير	- It is good to be generous.
generously (adv)	بسخاء	- It is good to behave generously.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

around the world	حول العالم	happiness maker	صانع السعادة
away on holiday	مسافر في إجازة	in a friendly way	بشكل ودود
be a role model to	يكون قدوة لـ	love-hate relationship	علاقة حب أو كراهية
be badly injured	يصاب بشدة	send Egypt to the World Cup finals	يصعد بمصر لنهائيات كاس العالم
community centre	مركز اجتماعي	the World Blood Donor Day	اليوم العالمي للتبرع بالدم
earn regular money	يحصل على دخل منتظم		
working together	العمل معا		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

admire ... for	يُعجب بـ ... بسبب	praise ... for	يمدح ... بسبب
donate ... for / to	يتبرع بـ ... لـ	run past	يسبق في الجري
hear (...) about	يسمع (...) عن	send (...) to	يُرسل (...) إلى / يؤهل (...) لـ
hear of	يسمع بـ / يعرف عن	turn from ... to	يتحول من ... إلى ...
move to	ينتقل إلى	work with	يعمل مع / على

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

biography - autobiography

• **biography** السيرة الشخصية (يكتبها شخص عن حياة شخص آخر)

- I read the biography of President Sadat written by Anees Mansour.

• **autobiography** السيرة الشخصية (يكتبها الشخص بنفسه عن حياته)

- Al-Ayyam is Taha Hussein's autobiography.

blood transplant - blood transfusion

• **blood transplant (n)** عملية زرع الخلايا الجذعية (التي تنتج الدم)

- It is not easy for a surgeon to do a blood transplant.

• **blood transfusion (n)** نقل الدم (من شخص سليم لشخص مريض أو مصاب)

- This patient needs blood transfusion.

charity

• **charity (n)** جمعية خيرية (اسم يُعد)

- There are some charities that help poor people.

• **charity (n)** العمل الخيرى - التبرعات (اسم لا يُعد)

- Salah donates money to charity in Egypt.

forename - surname - pen name - nickname

• **forename = first name (n)** الاسم الأول (اسم الشخص نفسه)

- My Name is Rodayna Mohammed Dueshy. My first name is Rodayna.

• **surname = last name = family name (n)** اللقب (اسم العائلة)

- My Name is Rodayna Mohammed Dueshy. My surname is Dueshy.

• **pen name (n)** اسم مُستعار (يستخدمه بعض الكُتّاب بدلاً من الاسم الحقيقى)

- She wrote under the pen name of Bint El-Shatei.

• **nickname (n)** اسم الشهرة

- 'King of Egypt' is one of Salah's nicknames.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. "He spent most of his savings on his prestige car." The synonyms of the word 'prestige' are .... and .... (كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)

   a. cheap b. smart c. ugly
   d. nasty e. costly

2. "My uncle supports all his relatives." The antonyms of 'supports' are .... (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. aids b. opposes c. advocates
   d. assist e. neglects
3. When there's an accident, it is important that some people .... blood.
   a. go b. give c. do
   d. leave e. donate
4. The verbs '............' collocate with the noun 'work'.
   a. give b. make c. do
   d. go e. talk
5. My sister's success .... us to do our best. (الفيوم - ابشواي ٢٠٢٢)
   a. decreased b. encouraged c. inspired
   d. discouraged e. informed
6. He donated money to build a school. The synonyms of the word "donated" are .... (الفيوم – يوسف كحك ٢٠٢٢)
   a. grew b. gave c. received
   d. supplied e. kept
7. To be generous is a good quality. The antonyms of the word 'generous' are .... (إدارة القصر ٢٠٢٢)
   a. stingy b. kind c. cheerful
   d. selfish e. disappointed
8. "I am .... for my lost keys. I don't know where they are." Which of the following verbs can be used in the space to make sense تعطي معنى مفيد ?
   a. donating b. looking c. giving
   d. preserving e. searching
9. It is kind of you to donate money .... the poor.
   a. with b. in c. to
   d. from e. for

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The word 'desire' is a synonym for .... (شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)
   a. disappointment b. suffering c. ability d. will
2. My teacher admired me .... helping the poor old man. (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. of b. with c. in d. for
3. It is not always easy to .... new friends. (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٢)
   a. do b. look c. spend d. make

4. Some students try to .... a job during the summer holiday.
   a. go   b. make   c. get   d. leave
5. "She's a long-term illness." "Long-term" here means ....
   a. serious   b. temporary   c. short   d. simple
6. .... blood is synonymous with giving it.
   a. Transplanting   b. Transfusing   c. Pressuring   d. Donating
7. What makes people admire him more is his ....
   a. genre   b. generous   c. generosity   d. generously
8. He won't take .... the race as he is injured. (المنيا ٢٠٢٠)
   a. place   b. care of   c. part in   d. turns
9. My father praised me .... showing respect to the elderly.
   a. for   b. of   c. with   d. to
10. When I was talking with her for the first time, I found .... that she is intelligent.
   a. in   b. out about   c. out   d. b & c
11. In his ...., Taha Hussein wrote about all that happened to him in his life. (سوهاج – طما ٢٠٢٠)
   a. graphy   b. autobiography   c. biography   d. geography

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

People who help

(SB page 16)

Mohamed Salah



Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous **footballers**(1). He is **admired**(2) for his **speed**(3) and **ability**(4) to **score**(5) goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup **finals**(6) since 1990.

Salah has been **praised**(7) for his kind and **generous**(8) **donations**(9) to **charity**(10) in Egypt. He **donated**(11) money to his **hometown**(12) of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's **cancer**(13) hospital in Cairo.

(1) لاعب كرة قدم
(2) يُعجَب بـ
(3) سرعة
(4) القدرة
(5) يُحرز
(6) نهائيات
(7) يمتدح
(8) سخي / كريم
(9) تبرعات
(10) العمل الخيري
(11) تبرع بـ
(12) مسقط رأس
(13) السرطان

Salah's **desire**[14] to help others is because he wants to give young people a **chance**[15] to **succeed**[16]. He is a **role model**[17] to millions of Egyptians who gave him the **nickname**[18], **The Happiness Maker**[19].

(14) رغبة
(15) فرصة
(16) ينجح
(17) قدوة
(18) لقب
(19) صانع السعادة

Blood[1] donors[2]

(SB page 17)

Every year on 14th June, countries around the world **take part in**[3] World Blood Donor Day to **share**[4] information about the importance of giving blood.

Why should people donate blood? Donating blood can help people if they have been badly **injured**[5] or need **regular**[6] blood **transplants**[7] because they have a **long-term**[8] **illness**[9].

Giving blood can also have health **benefits**[10]. All donors have their **blood pressure**[11] and **iron levels**[12] **checked**[13] before **donation**[14], so people who donate blood can **find out**[15] quickly if they have any health problems. Giving blood can **save**[16] **lives**[17] and it is easy to do!

(1) الدم
(2) المتبرعين
(3) يشارك في
(4) يتشارك
(5) مُصاب
(6) منتظم
(7) نقل
(8) مزمن - طويل المدى
(9) مرض
(10) فوائد
(11) ضغط الدم
(12) مستويات الحديد (في الدم)
(13) يفحص
(14) التبرع
(15) يكتشف
(16) ينقذ
(17) الحياة

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 18)

Interviewer : In today's programme, we're talking to Martin Drake about Dr Leelah Hazzah, an Egyptian conservation **biologist**[1] and **founder**[2] of Lion Guardians, a conservation project in Kenya. Martin, when did Leelah become interested in lions ?

(1) عالم أحياء
(2) مؤسس

(3) زئير	(12) احترام
(4) سطح	(13) وجهات النظر
(5) بين	(14) علاقة حب وكره معاً
(6) أسباب	(15) يعجب بـ
(7) تقليدياً	(16) جمال
(8) حيوانات المزرعة	(17) الماشية
(9) الفلاحين	(18) قاتل أسود
(10) هيبة / وجاهة	(19) يقنع
(11) ثقافة	(20) مزايا

Martin : Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he listened to lions **roaring**[3] at night when he was sleeping on the **roof**[4] of their house during the summer. But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she grew up, she would find out how to save them in other countries.

Interviewer : What happened next ?

Martin : She went to America to study conservation biology and then moved to Kenya to research lions **amongst**[5] the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing. Did you know that sixty or so years ago there were about 200,000 lions in Africa ? But that number is under 20,000 now.

Interviewer : So, why are lions disappearing so quickly ?

Martin : There are several **reasons**[6]. People have built houses in the areas that lions **traditionally**[7] hunt, so they can't find enough food to eat and, so they attack the villager's **livestock**[8], you know, their cows and goats. The **villagers**[9] get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. Another reason is **prestige**[10] - in Maasai **culture**[11], young men get a lot of **respect**[12] from killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.

Interviewer : What did Leelah do ?

Martin : She lived with the Maasai for a year and listened to their **views**[13] about lions. She learnt that they have **a love-hate relationship with**[14] lions, they **admire**[15] their **beauty**[16], but hate them for eating their **cattle**[17]. She also understood the prestige that came from being **a lion killer**[18] and realised that she needed to **persuade**[19] the young men that keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she started to teach them about the **advantages**[20] of protecting lions instead.

Interviewer : Is that when she started Lion Guardians ?

Martin : Yes. Lion Guardians is an **organization**[21] that **employs**[22] local people to look for lions in order to protect them. Remember, these young men already have the skills needed to **track**[23] lions in the **wild**[24], so they are taught to become lion guardians **rather than**[25] lion killers. The organisation gives them a job and teaches them to read and write, so they can help conservations with their research.

Interviewer : How **successful**[26] is the programme ?

Martin : Very successful. Maasai men now have jobs, a regular **income**[27] and a sense of **purpose**[28]. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them with **fondness**[29].

Interviewer : And finally, what can other conservationists learn from Lion Guardians ?

Martin : The importance of listening to people in the **community**[30] and to **recognise**[31] how much **knowledge**[32] local people have. By working together, both **the locals**[33] and conservations can **benefit**[34]

Interviewer : Thank you, Martin. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see a ....

(21) منظمة
(22) توظف
(23) يرصد / يتابع
(24) الحياة البرية
(25) بدلاً من
(26) ناجح
(27) دخل
(28) هدف / غرض
(29) شغف / ولع
(30) جماعة / مجتمع
(31) يتعرف على
(32) معرفة
(33) السكان المحليين
(34) يستفيد

3 Video script section

Young people and older people don't always spend a lot of time together. But, they can do a lot to help each other.

In some **communities**[1], children and **teenagers**[2] **volunteer**[3] to **support**[4] older people. They sit and watch television with them. They help them with their shopping or other **tasks**[5] around the house.

They listen to their stories about life a long time ago. The older people don't feel so alone, they get the help they need and they can share interesting information about life in the past with the next **generation**[6].

But, what about the young people ? Well, they can learn a lot about the history of their community. They also see that older people were just like them when they were younger.

(1) مجتمعات
(2) مراهقين
(3) يتطوع
(4) يساند
(5) أعمال / واجبات
(6) جيل

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. How do volunteers help older people ?
2. How does listening to older people help them feel less alone ?
3. What can young people learn from older people ?

PART IV LANGUAGE

The Present Simple Tense : : زمن المضارع البسيط

١ في الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

Subject فاعل (I, We, They, You) + التصريف الأول للفعل ....

ex. - I get up at six o'clock every morning.
- They sometimes go for a walk on Fridays.

- يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

- Ahmed likes football very much.

- ويضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان المصدر منتهيًا بـ (ch - sh - ss - o - x).

- Aya watches action films every day.

- ويضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان المصدر منتهيًا بـ (y) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y).

- Mariam studies philosophy at Cambridge University.

٢ في النفي :

Subject فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. المصدر ....

- نستخدم (doesn't) مع المفرد الغائب :

ex. - I don't get up at six o'clock on Friday.
- Ahmed doesn't like football very much.

- ونستخدم (never) أيضًا للنفي القاطع وفي هذه الحالة تبقى (s/es/ies) في نهاية الفعل مع (he/she/it):

- He doesn't help the poor at all. = He never helps the poor.
- They don't get up late at all. = They never get up late.

٣ في السؤال بـ «هل» :

Do / Does + subject فاعل + inf. المصدر .... ?

ex. - Do you get up at six o'clock every morning ?
-Yes, I do. OR - Yes, I get up at six o'clock every morning.
- No, I don't. OR - No, I don't get up at six o'clock every morning.
- Does Aya watch action films ?
-Yes, she does. OR - Yes, she watches action films.
-No, she doesn't. OR - No, she doesn't watch action films.

٤ السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word اداة استفهام	+	do/does	+	subject فاعل	+	inf. المصدر	...?

ex. - What do you eat for lunch ?
- How often does Mr Ashraf go to the club ?

٥ فى المبنى للمجهول :

- عند تحويل زمن المضارع البسيط إلى صيغة المبنى للمجهول نستخدم :

Object المفعول	+	am / is / are	+	p.p التصريف الثالث	....

ex. Farmers grow plants. (معلوم)
- Plants are grown by farmers. (مجهول)
- Some people don't eat meat at all. (معلوم)
- Meat isn't eaten at all by some people. (مجهول)

- لا تستخدم (have / has) كفعل أساسى فى المبنى للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل آخر حسب المعنى :

have = own - possess - eat - buy - spend - take ....

ex. - I have a car. - A car is (possessed - owned) by me.
- She has lunch at two o'clock. - Lunch is eaten at two o'clock by her.

Mini Test 1 **Apply**

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My son .... football and tennis in the club.
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
2. My sons .... football and tennis in the club.
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
3. Football and tennis .... in the club.
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
4. Football .... in the club.
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
5. Does Amir .... your birthday parties?
a. attend b. attends c. is attended d. attending

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ بالنسبة للفعل (be) كفعل اساسى فى المضارع البسيط ، نستخدم (am / is / are) بمعنى (يكون / يوجد) ولا تُستخدم (do / does) فى النفى أو السؤال.

- Ali is at school. (إثبات)
- Ali isn't at school. (نفى)
- Is Ali at school? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- Where is Ali? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)

٢ بالنسبة للفعل (have) كفعل أساسى فى المضارع البسيط ، نستخدم (have / has) بمعنى (يمتلك / يتناول / يشترى .....) ونستخدم (do / does) غالباً معهما كأفعال مساعدة فى النفى أو السؤال.

- They have lunch at three o'clock. (إثبات)
- They don't have lunch at three o'clock. (نفى)
- Do they have lunch at three o'clock? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- When do they have lunch? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)

Mini Test 2 ○ Apply

○ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Ali .... at home right now. He's at school.
   a. is b. doesn't be c. isn't d. has
2. **A:** .... at home right now? **B:** No, he's at school.
   a. Is Ali b. Does Ali be c. Ali is d. Does Ali have
3. We .... lunch before my father returns home.
   a. haven't b. don't have c. aren't d. don't be
4. .... lunch before your father returns home?
   a. You have b. Have you c. Are you d. Do you have

Uses استخدامات

يُستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (Present simple) فى :

١ التعبير عن حقائق ثابتة :

ex. - The sun gives us light and heat. - People don't live under water.

٢ التعبير عن شيء حقيقى فى المضارع (حقيقة تدوم لفترة) / مواقف دائمة :

ex. - Yousif lives in Assuit. - My wife is an engineer.

٣ يدل المضارع البسيط على المستقبل بعد الروابط الزمنية لاحظ ما يلى :

when عندما - **while** بينما - **as / just as** بينما - **before** قبل -
the moment فى اللحظة التى - **by the time** قبل - **after** بعد -
once / as soon as بمجرد أن - **until / till** حتى ....

Time connector رابط زمنى + مضارع بسيط / مضارع تام + جملة مستقبل

ex. - When I arrive (have arrived) home, I will take a shower.
- Before she goes (has gone) to bed, she will kiss her mother.
- I won't call you until I know (have known) the latest news.

٤ بعد (If) فى الحالة الشرطية الأولى و الحالة الصفرية :

ex. - If I get information about this subject, I'll tell you.

٥ التعبير عن جداول المواعيد الثابتة فى المضارع والمستقبل :

ex. - My train leaves at nine tomorrow morning.

٦ يستخدم المضارع البسيط بدلًا من المضارع المستمر للتعبير عما يحدث الآن مع الأفعال التقريرية (مثل أفعال الحواس و المشاعر و الإدراك.....) :

ex. - I am wanting to speak to the manager. (✗)
- I want to speak to the manager. (✓)

Mini Test 3 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Lions .... meat.
   a. eats b. eat c. don't eat d. are eaten
2. Lions .... grass.
   a. eats b. eat c. don't eat d. are eaten
3. This soup .... very good.
   a. tastes b. taste c. is tasting d. to taste
4. My father .... in a big company. He is an accountant there.
   a. works b. work c. is working d. is worked
5. After I .... my lunch, I will take a short rest.
   a. will have b. have c. had d. had had

Present Habits عادات المضارع

Subj. فاعل + always / usually / sometimes ... etc. + فعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط ....

- Nada usually goes to the shops on Sunday.

It + is + someone's habit to + inf. ....

- It is Nada's (her) habit to go to the shops on Sunday.

Subj. فاعل + am / is / are + used to + (inf. + ing) / n. ....

- Nada is used to going to the shops on Sunday.

Subj. فاعل + no longer + inf. / (inf. + s, es, ies) فعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط ....

- He no longer eats rice. = He used to eat rice.

Subj. فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. + any longer/anymore ....

- He doesn't eat rice anymore. = He used to eat rice.

Adverbs of frequency with the present simple ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط

١ نستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد (am / is / are).

always دائمًا - **usually / normally** عادةً - **regularly** بانتظام - **often** غالبًا - **frequently** غالبًا - **sometimes** أحيانًا - **occasionally** بين حين و آخر - **little** قلما - **rarely** نادرًا - **seldom** نادرًا - **hardly ever** بالكاد - **never** مطلقًا

ex. - I always go to school on time. - I am always at school on time.

٢ كما يمكن أن نستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار هذه في بداية أو نهاية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الظرف.

ex. - Sometimes, I play football. - I play football sometimes.

٣ نستخدم تعبيرات التكرار التالية أيضًا في بداية أو نهاية الجملة.

- **once** مرة / **twice** مرتين / **three times .../ several times / many times + a / an / every + period of time**
- **every (morning - day - Monday - week - month - summer - year / on Fridays / in summer ....**

ex. - I go for a walk twice a week. - Once a month, I visit my parents.
- I take Arabic lessons on Wednesdays.
- Every morning, my mother wakes me up.

Mini Test 4 ○ Apply

○ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My father works as a doctor. He .... very busy examining patients.
 a. often is b. is often c. often has d. has often
2. Leen .... something to do. She is very busy.
 a. always have b. have always c. always has d. has always
3. I visit my grandparents .... month, in the beginning and in the middle.
 a. twice b. once c. once a d. twice a
4. Sama is used .... in Aswan.
 a. to living b. alive c. to live d. living
5. It is Omar's habit .... for walks on Fridays.
 a. going b. to going c. to go d. goes
6. Hussein .... working on the farm.
 a. is used b. is used to c. used to d. used

2 The Past Simple Tense : زمن الماضي البسيط :

تم شرح الماضي البسيط في الوحدة الأولى.



General Exercise On Language ○ Apply

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. It rarely .... in the Western Desert in the past millennium. (كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)
   a. rain b. rains c. rained d. raining
2. The young men .... to be field biologists. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. teach b. teaches c. are taught d. is taught
3. What time .... the break start in this school? (بني سويف ٢٠٢٣)
   a. do b. is c. has d. does
4. She .... stays up late on school days. (كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)
   a. doesn't b. didn't c. hasn't d. never
5. My colleagues and I usually .... breakfast together. (أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. has b. have c. are having d. have had
6. My little sister .... meals outdoors. (المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)
   a. hasn't b. never has c. isn't had d. has never
7. The community............ to look after wild animals. (أسيوط – أبو تيج ٢٠٢٣)
   a. encourages b. encouraged c. is encouraged d. encouraging
8. Tigers .... hunted as much as in the past.
   a. aren't b. isn't c. have d. weren't
9. Kareem used to play chess, but now he .... (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. doesn't b. isn't c. hasn't d. wasn't
10. He .... hard work. He is strong. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
    a. used to b. didn't use to c. gets used to d. uses to
11. When I was in Alexandria, I always .... to the beach. (المنشاة ٢٠٢٣)
    a. go b. went c. have gone d. will go
12. .... teaching students of mixed abilities? (إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
    a. Get you use to b. Have you use to
    c. Are you used to d. Did you use to
13. Don't go out until your work .... (السنطة ٢٠٢٣)
    a. does b. did c. will do d. is done
14. Father is used to buying tasty sweets for us. This sentence means this .... (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
    a. no longer happens b. never happened
    c. is a present habit d. was a past habit

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 20 & 21 WB pages 96 & 97



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

biologist(n)	عالم أحياء	livestock(n)	حيوانات المزارع
cattle(n)	الماشية	monitor(ed) (v - n)	يُراقب / يرصد - جهاز عرض
community(n)	المجتمع	organisation(n)	مؤسسة - مُنظمة
guardian(n)	حارس - الوصي	party(n)	فريق - جماعة - حزب
hunting parties	فرق الصيد	track(ed) (v - n)	يرصد - يتابع - ممر

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

achievement (n)	إنجاز - نجاح	locate(d) (v)	يضع في مكان - يحدد موقع
aim(ed) (n - v)	هدف - يُهدف	missing(adj)	مفقود - ناقص
angle (n)	زاوية	nearby(adj-adv)	قريب - مجاور
appearance (n)	ظهور - مَظهر	paw print	آثار أقدام الحيوان
disappear(ed) (v)	يختفي - يتلاشى	paws(n)	براثن - مخالب الحيوانات
empathy(n)	تعاطُف - تقدير ظروف الآخرين	protect(ed) (v)	يحمي
employ(ed) (v)	يُوظّف - يُشغّل	responsibility(n)	مسئولية
estimate(d) (v)	يُقدّر - يفترض	safe(adj)	آمن
expert(n-adj)	خبير	sense(n)	حاسة
field (n)	مجال - حقل	sign(n)	علامة/إشارة - لافتة
headquarters(n)	مركز القيادة - الفرع الرئيسي	tribe(n)	قبيلة
hunting (n)	الصيد	villagers(n)	القرويين
killings (n)	حالات القتل		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
community(n) مجتمع	people who live in a place or an area and have common مشترك interests
guardian (n) حارس - وصي	someone who is legally قانونياً responsible مسئول for looking after someone or something
livestock (n) حيوانات المزارع	animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
monitor (v) يرصد - يُراقب	to carefully watch and check a situation in order to see how it changes or progresses تتطور over عبر a period of time



UNIT 2

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The farmers build fences to protect their .... from wild animals and thieves. (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٣)
   a. wildlife b. parties c. livestock d. tracks
2. Every member of the .... must respect the freedom of others. (البلينا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. experience b. beliefs c. community d. merchant
3. The child's parents or .... must give their agreement before she has the operation. (العامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. designers b. guardians c. donors d. monitors
4. Families should .... their children's internet activity. (إدارة الشرقية - لغات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. meet b. dick c. monitor d. scam
5. The police managed to .... down the criminal. (إدارة الشرقية - لغات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. track b. tick c. trek d. truck
6. The international .... is really very worried about the problem of climate change. (المنيا – ديروموس ٢٠٢٠)
   a. security b. communication c. technology d. community
7. Farmers keep .... on their farms.
   a. kitten b. castle c. livestock d. kettle
8. He works for an international .... that helps poor people in Africa.
   a. organisation b. cancer c. maker d. presentation
9. He is an experienced ذو خبرة ....
   a. biology b. biological c. biologically d. biologist
10. Two members of the hunting .... were arrested for killing animals.
   a. livestock b. monitor c. party d. cattle

2 Important Vocabulary

11. I don't have to do your homework; it's your............ . (إدارة أسوان – أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. biography b. responsibility c. disease d. illness
12. A good citizen has a .... of duty. (الجيزة – الدقي ٢٠٢٠)
   a. skill b. sense c. responsibility d. charity
13. If there is a .... supermarket, we can shop easily. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
   a. really b. nearby c. nearly d. rarely

14. " Not all that glitters is gold"; this means you shouldn't be deceived by............ .
(أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٠)
a. appearance b. personality c. politeness d. character

15. He is really kind. He showed much .... with my difficult situation.
a. empathy b. donation c. admiration d. charitable

16. She is a doctor. She works in the medical طبي ....
a. transplant b. party c. field d. interview

17. Winning the gold medal in the Olympics is a great ....
a. loss b. movement c. achievement d. organisation

3 Definitions

18. A/An .... is someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something.
a. biologist b. guardian c. hunter d. admirer

19. .... are animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.
a. Livestock b. Parties c. Viewers d. Guardians

20. To .... is to carefully watch and check a situation in order to see how it changes or progresses over a period of time.
a. desire b. employ c. monitor d. transplant

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	research يُجري أبحاث	go	missing يتوه / يضل الطريق
	work with يقوم بأعمال مع	have	a negative impact on له أثر سلبي على
give	a sense of responsibility يعطي إحساس بالمسئولية	leave	school يقطع أو يُنهي دراسته

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
empathy	تعاطُف - تقدير ظروف الاخرين	togetherness, sympathy, understanding
monitor	يُراقب / يرصد	track, observe, watch, explore
nearby	قريب - مجاور	close, near, neighbouring
party	فوج - مجموعة	team - group
search for	يبحث عن	look for, hunt يتعقب

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
nearby	قريب - مجاور	remote, faraway, distant	نائٍ - بعيد
wild	بَرّي	domestic / tame	أليف / مستأنس

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

biologist		
biology(n)	علم الأحياء	- He is an expert in biology.
biologist(n)	عالم أحياء	- He is an experienced biologist.
biological (adj)	حيوي - خاص بالكائنات الحية	- This is a biological substance مادة.
guard		
guard(ed)(v)	يحرس	- He guards this farm.
guard (n)	حارس	- He is a guard of this farm.
guardian (n)	حارس - وصي	- He is one of the nature guardians.
kill		
kill(ed) (v)	يقتل	- This criminal killed three people.
killing (n)	القتل	- This criminal is responsible for the killing of three people.
killings (n)	حالات القتل / الضحايا	- This criminal is responsible for three killings.
killer (n)	قاتل	- This criminal is the killer of three people.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

all over	في كل أنحاء	expert at/in/on	خبير في
as much as	بنفس الكَم	from different angles	من زوايا مختلفة
be based in	مقرّه في (+ مكان)	in groups	في مجموعات
be based on	قائم على (+ الفكرة)	kill animals for sport	يصطاد الحيوانات كرياضة
be interested in	يهتم بـ	local communities	المجتمعات المحلية
early life	مرحلة مبكرة من العمر	thanks to	بفضل

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

bring ... into	يُحضر ... إلى	look after	يرعى / يعتني بـ
compare ... with	يقارن ... بـ	look for	يبحث عن
complete with	يُكمل بـ	play for	يلعب لـ (نادي مثلاً)
deal with	يتعامل مع / يواجه	search for	يبحث عن
encourage ... to	يُشجّع ... لكي	teach ...(how) to	يُعلّم ... كيف
know about	يعرف عن	worry about	يقلق على

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

be based in / be based on

• **be based in** مقره في / مكانه في
- Our company is based in Cairo.

• **be based on** مؤسس على - قائم فكرياً على
- This film has been based on a novel by Naguib Mahfouz.

every day - everyday

• **every day (adv) = daily** كل يوم (ظرف زمان يأتي غالباً في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)
- I play football every day. = - Every day, I play football.

• **everyday (adj)** يومي (صفة تأتي قبل الموصوف)
- He feels bored because of his everyday routine.

hear of / about - hear from

• **hear of / about** يعرف / يسمع بـ
- I haven't heard of / about this writer before.

• **hear from** يتلقى اتصالاً أو أخباراً من (رسالة / مكالمة / خطاب ...)
- I haven't heard from Mr Ashraf lately. I hope he is well.

angle / angel

• **angle** زاوية - جانب
- A square المربع has four angles.
- Try to look at the subject from a different angle.

• **angel** ملاك - شخص حسن الخُلُق
- Children are little angels.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. "Wild" is antonymous with .... (أول المطاير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. serious b. violent c. tame
   d. domestic e. harsh

2. Adam was .... marine life from a boat.
   a. mentoring b. monitoring c. meaning
   d. sailing e. exploring

UNIT 2

3. You can do ....
   a. work b. mistakes c. research
   d. movements e. decisions
4. "We have an outdoor camera to monitor the street outside." The verb 'monitor' in this sentence means ....
   a. watch b. give c. observe
   d. look e. wish
5. She is expert .... cooking recipes.
   a. of b. in c. for
   d. on e. to
6. "We don't allow hunting parties to kill animals." The word 'parties' here can be replaced by ....
   a. teams b. festivals c. occasions
   d. groups e. animals

• **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Success in life is based .... hard work and determination. (دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. from b. at c. in d. on
2. The loss of his job .... a negative impact on him. (الجيزة – الدقي ٢٠٢٠)
   a. had b. took c. provide d. did
3. We need to .... more research into coronavirus.
   a. go b. do c. get d. leave
4. Young men join the army after .... school or university.
   a. going b. doing c. getting d. leaving
5. When I was young, I .... missing when I was shopping with my mum.
   a. went b. did c. got d. left
6. To .... wild animals is a crime.
   a. kill b. kills c. killing d. killings
7. .... wild animals is a crime.
   a. Kill b. Kills c. Killing d. Killings
8. The lion Guardians is an organization based .... Kenya. (الإسكندرية – التوجيه العام ٢٠٢٠)
   a. on b. in c. at d. to
9. He succeeded in his life thanks .... hard work.
   a. for b. to c. from d. about
10. People don't drink as .... as camels do.
   a. long b. well c. much d. soon

11. Doing sport is part of my .... activities.

a. angel b. angle c. everyday d. every day

12. I do sport ....

a. angel b. angle c. everyday d. every day

13. Finally, I heard .... my brother in the USA. He sent me an email.

a. from b. of c. about d. b & c

14. I have just heard .... your health problems.

a. from b. of c. about d. b & c

PART III READING & LISTENING

Reading Texts

Working together

(SB page 20)



Lions are **disappearing**[1] all over Africa but there is some hope now after the **amazing**[2] work of an **organization**[3] called Lion **Guardians**[4], which is **based in**[5] Kenya, but Guardians help in **nearby**[6] Tanzania. The **aim**[7] of Lion Guardians is to help **local**[8] people to **protect**[9] their own **livestock**[10] and **reduce**[11] the number of lion **killings**[12] in the **area**[13].

Cattle[14] are important to the **villagers**[15] but they often **go missing**[16] or are **attacked**[17] by lions. Then the lions are killed **as**[18] villagers **worry**[19] about losing more livestock.

Lion Guardians is changing this. The organization works with the **community**[20] to help **both**[21] the lions and the livestock and this is done by **employing**[22] local people.

Maasai[23] men are **chosen**[24] to become guardians as they understand lions and have the **skills**[25] needed to **monitor**[26] their **movements**[27], find **missing**[28] livestock and stop **hunting parties**[29] who kill the lions for sport. They are taught to be **field**[30] **biologists**[31] and are given a **sense**[32] of **responsibility**[33].

(1) تختفي
(2) مذهل
(3) منظمة
(4) حُراس
(5) مقرها في
(6) قريب
(7) هدف
(8) محلي
(9) يحمي
(10) حيوانات المزرعة
(11) يقلل
(12) حالات القتل
(13) المنطقة
(14) الماشية
(15) القرويين
(16) تضل الطريق
(17) تهاجم
(18) لأن
(19) يقلق
(20) المجتمع
(21) كل من
(22) يوظف
(23) شعب الماساى
(24) يُختار
(25) مهارات
(26) يراقب
(27) تحركات
(28) مفقود
(29) فرق الصيد
(30) ميدانى
(31) علماء الأحياء
(32) إحساس
(33) المسئولية

UNIT 2

Lions are **monitored**[34] every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers who can then **make sure**[35] their cows are safe. Lion Guardians are very **successful**[36]. They help the future of lions **as well as**[37] the local communities.

(34) يتتبع / يراقب
(35) يتأكد
(36) ناجح
(37) بالإضافة إلى

Maasai Tracking

(WB page 96)

The Maasai are **experts**[1] at **tracking**[2] animals and lions are the most **well-known**[3] animal that they **follow**[4]. But how do they do it? The lions are tracked by the Maasai, who use all their **senses**[5] to follow them.

When a **paw print**[6] is **discovered**[7], it is checked to see if it is an old paw print or a **recent**[8] one. Then the path is followed by the Maasai until the lions are found.

While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for **signs**[9] to help them discover where they are. In the past, the Maasai might kill a lion when they found one. Today, lions are protected by the Maasai from hunting parties and at the same time the local people's cows are safe. **Thanks to**[10] the Lion Guardians, everyone is happy!

(1) خبراء
(2) التتبع
(3) معروف
(4) يتتبع
(5) حواس
(6) آثار أقدام الحيوان
(7) يكتشف
(8) حديث
(9) علامات
(10) بفضل

PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

General Exercise On Language

Apply

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Leen usually .... the 8 o'clock train to work.
   a. has caught b. is catching c. catch d. catches
2. Aya .... late for work.
   a. never is b. is never c. never has d. has never
3. When .... you usually finish studying your lessons?
   a. are b. have c. do d. does
4. Omar .... come to work late at all.
   a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't

5. Omar .... comes to work late.
a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't

6. I always .... the piano after I come home from work.
a. plays b. play c. played d. playing

7. I always .... the piano after I came home from work.
a. plays b. play c. played d. playing

8. He usually .... very quickly, so we didn't understand him.
a. speaks b. spoke c. was spoken d. speaking

9. He usually .... very quickly, so we don't understand him.
a. speaks b. spoke c. was spoken d. speaking

10. My friends often came to my birthday party and .... me nice presents.
a. have given b. were giving c. give d. gave

11. My friends often come to my birthday party and .... me nice presents.
a. have given b. were giving c. give d. gave

12. When I was on holiday, I .... tennis every day.
a. had played b. have played c. play d. played

13. When I am on holiday, I .... tennis every day.
a. had played b. have played c. play d. played

14. Sama .... an email to her friend but she has received no reply so far.
a. sends b. is sent c. sent d. was sent

15. Rubbish .... and burnt.
a. are collected b. collected c. collects d. is collected

16. Policemen .... criminals and arrest them.
a. hunt b. hunts c. are hunting d. hunted

17. They .... attend the conference last month.
a. wasn't b. weren't c. didn't d. don't

18. She .... the newspaper every morning. It is a habit of hers.
a. is reading b. has read c. read d. reads

19. She .... the newspaper every morning. It was a habit of hers.
a. is reading b. has read c. read d. reads

20. What time .... you usually arrive at school when you were a student?
a. do b. would c. did d. does

21. What time .... you usually arrive at school when you take a taxi?
    a. do   b. would   c. did   d. does
22. When I finished my work, I closed my office and .... home.
    a. return   b. returning   c. had returned   d. returned
23. The moon .... around the earth.
    a. has moved   b. will move   c. moves   d. moved

2 Special cases

24. He phoned me once he .... the message.
    a. has read   b. will read   c. reads   d. read
25. He will phone me once he .... the message.
    a. had read   b. will read   c. has read   d. read
26. .... I was twelve, my family moved into this flat.
    a. While   b. When   c. During   d. As
27. It hardly........... in Egypt.
    a. is raining   b. rains   c. have rained   d. raining
28. As a schoolboy, my uncle always .... to school on foot.
    a. gone   b. went   c. goes   d. will go
29. Mum .... by all family members.
    a. is loving   b. is being loved   c. is loved   d. loves
30. I'll phone you as soon as I........... my work.
    a. finishes   b. finish   c. will finish   d. had finished
31. We all .... in Allah.
    a. believe   b. believes   c. is believing   d. are believing
32. It is time we .... home.
    a. went   b. are going   c. go   d. have gone
33. .... the email sent before the office was closed?
    a. Are   b. Was   c. Had   d. Does
34. During his last holiday, Tamer .... football every day.
    a. is playing   b. played   c. plays   d. has played
35. He .... playing tennis.
    a. use to   b. is used to   c. used to   d. was used

36. A: Have you seen her lately?

B: Yes, I .... her when I was on my way to work the other day.

a. saw b. had seen c. have seen d. was seeing

37. All the information I read in this book .... very valuable and useful.

a. is being b. has c. is d. are

38. Ten people .... to have been injured in the crash.

a. had reported b. have reported c. were reported d. were reporting

39. Don't open the door until I .... you.

a. told b. had told c. tell d. was told

40. I am sure he .... a Samsung laptop. He just doesn't want to lend it to you.

a. is having
b. is going to have
c. will have
d. has

41. When Salma read a story, she .... interested in its moral.

a. is usually b. was usually c. usually is d. usually was

2 Check your understanding

42. "He used to work as a firefighter." This means ....

a. he is a firefighter
b. he works as a firefighter
c. he is no longer a firefighter
d. he never worked as a firefighter

43. "It is time Omar paid me back my money." This means ....

a. Omar had returned my money
b. Omar hasn't returned my money
c. Omar returned my money
d. Omar has just returned my money

44. "I'd rather Sama hadn't used my cream yesterday." This means ....

a. Sama used my cream yesterday
b. Sama didn't use my cream yesterday
c. Sama asked to use my cream yesterday
d. Sama agreed to use my cream yesterday

45. "Plants get their food from the sun". This is a ....

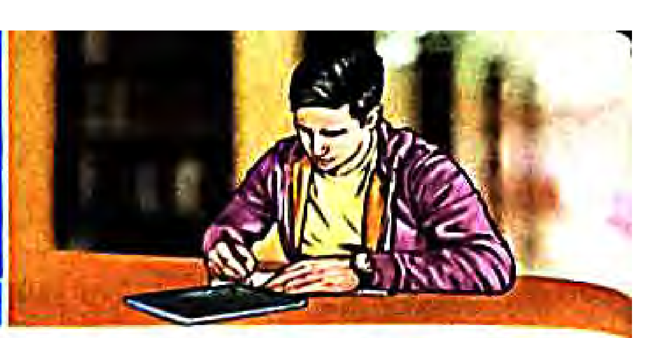
a. present habit b. past habit c. future fact d. fact

46. "I don't smoke heavily any longer." I mean that I ....

a. smoke heavily
b. used to be a heavy smoker
c. haven't stopped smoking
d. didn't use to smoke



Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises

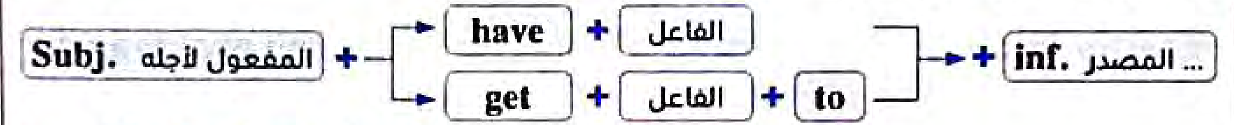


تنويه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

The Causative صيغة المفعول لأجله

- تُستخدم صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) لنعبر أن الفاعل اقنع أو دفع مالاً أو جعل شخصاً آخر يقوم بالفعل.
- نستخدم في هذه الصيغة الفعلين (have / get) حسب الزمن.
- وتتكون هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم كالتالي:



ex. - I had a doctor check my blood pressure.

(جعلت الطبيب يفحص ضغط الدم الخاص بي)

= I got a doctor to check my blood pressure.

- أما في المبني للمجهول فتتكون هذه الصيغة من :

Subj. المفعول لأجله + have / get + المفعول + p.p. تصريف ثالث ...

ex. - I had / got my blood pressure checked (by a doctor).

(لقد تم قياس ضغط الدم لديّ عن طريق الطبيب)

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

١ تُميِّز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة (أي تقارن بين أكثر من طرفين) :

ex. - English is the easiest subject.
- The lion is the most dangerous animal.
- The rabbit is the least dangerous animal.

٢ تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي:

the + adj. صفة + est / st / iest

ex.
- fast → the fastest
- large → the largest
- big → the biggest
- lazy → the laziest
- old → the oldest
- close → the closest
- thin → the thinnest
- healthy → the healthiest

٣ تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :

the most الأكثر / the least الأقل + adj. صفة

ex. - beautiful the most / the least beautiful

٤ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل بعد الاعداد الترتيبية مثل:

first / second / third/ fourth ...etc.

ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Egypt.

٥ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو ('s) الملكية:

my - his - her - your - our - their - its - .....'s

ex. - Cairo is Egypt's largest city.
- Is Sama your youngest sister?

التصريف الثالث p.p.

أحياناً يُستخدم (p.p.) كبديل لعبارة وصل - لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

who / whom / which / that + جملة مبنية للمجهول = التصريف الثالث p.p.

ex. - I have a cousin who is called Karim.
= I have a cousin called Karim.
- They have the skills which are needed to monitor wild animals.
= They have the skills needed to monitor wild animals.

as

١ تُستخدم (as) بمعنى (كـ...) ويأتي بعدها اسم يدل على الوظيفة - المرحلة العمرية - الدور - المظهر :

ex. - As a student, Sama is very clever.
- Captain Bassem works as a police officer.

٢ يأتي التصريف الثالث بعد (as) ويكون اختصارا لجملة مبنية للمجهول :

ex. - He works hard as planned.
= He works hard as it has been planned.

٣ تُستخدم (as) وبعدها جملة كرابطة بين الجمل بمعاني مختلفة :

ex. - He fell asleep as he was watching a film. (as = when /while)
- As she was ill, she didn't go to school. (As = Because)

but / but still لكن

تُستخدم (but) للتعبير عن تناقض في الفكرة الرئيسية بين الجملتين:

ex. - I asked for another glass of orange juice, but there was no more.

تُستخدم (but still) للتعبير عن تناقض في التوقع أو الرأي بين الجملتين:

ex. - There was no more orange juice, but still she asked for another glass.

UNIT 2

Thanks to بفضل / بسبب

تُستخدم (thanks to) فى سياق إيجابى للتعبير عن السبب مثل (because of) :

- thanks to / because of / due to / owing to بسبب + noun اسم / (inf. + ing)
= ... because / since / as جملة + لأن

ex. - We could solve our problems thanks to your help.
= We could solve our problems because you helped us.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I want to get a carpenter .... the front door of my house. (استفائة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. fix   b. fixed   c. to fix   d. be fixed
2. That man had his kidney .... in his brother.
   a. transplants   b. transplanted   c. transplant   d. transplanting
3. I went to the mechanic to have ....
   a. repaired my car   b. my car repaired
   c. my car repair   d. my car repairs
4. .... a teacher, I have the qualities and qualifications that make my students understand well.
   a. As   b. Like   c. Since   d. When
5. Rodayna has a cousin .... Zamzam.
   a. was called   b. called   c. is called   d. calling
6. Mr Nasser is my .... friend of them all.
   a. the best   b. the better   c. better   d. best
7. .... she was busy, she refused to help me.
   a. Because of   b. On   c. As   d. During
8. I did the job well .... agreed.
   a. like   b. for   c. since   d. as
9. We have the equipment .... for our work.
   a. needed   b. needing   c. need   d. needs
10. I have my blood pressure .... every week.
   a. check   b. checks   c. checked   d. to check
11. The last match was Salah's .... game ever.
   a. great   b. greater   c. greatest   d. the greatest

12. I arrived home .... mum was preparing lunch.

a. before b. as c. since d. on

13. As .... , ice is lighter than water.

a. know b. knows c. knew d. known

14. .... I was very tired, I didn't finish studying unit 2.

a. So b. Owing to c. Since d. Because of

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

✪ Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

(بني سويف - ٢٠٢٣)

Many people think that having a private car will solve all their transport problems in a crowded city. However, cars might be a source of trouble to their owners. Spare parts and the cost of fuel have become so expensive. Garages are crowded, so many people leave their cars for the night in the streets and that makes them exposed to theft or **fining**.

UBER is a new transport system. It aims at having a car on demand to go anywhere. This system is used in Cairo, Giza and Alexandria. Whether you are heading to your work, going on business or for a visit to someone, UBER connects you with a quick and reliable ride. The driver knows exactly where to go to as he uses GPS maps. You can pay with either cash or card. This system depends on the internet, so you don't have to worry as it is controlled and followed online. When **you** have UBER application on your mobile, you can decide where you are going. Then you will have many cars to choose from. You can easily know how long the journey takes and what you will pay. Surely you will ride a clean car which is air-conditioned. In addition, the driver, the car owner is a polite person who is usually highly educated.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. GPS maps are related to .... maps.

a. booking b. online c. offline d. unreal

2. The underlined pronoun "**you**" refers to any ....

a. driver b. car owner c. passenger d. system

3. The writer is in favour of using .... to travel around the mentioned cities.

a. UBER b. private cars c. special cars d. driverless cars

4. The underlined word "fining" in the fifth line is closest in meaning to ....
a. having a good health
b. paying money
c. achieving goals
d. using UBER app

5. UBER users shouldn't be worried of getting easily to their destinations because ....
a. The streets are full of traffic jams.
b. The UBER drivers know how to repair breakdowns.
c. You can easily know how long the journey takes.
d. UBER cars are linked to Global Positioning System.

6. Owners of private cars in busy cities may face the trouble of ....
a. parking
b. extinction
c. unemployment
d. applications

7. .... is one of the UBER drivers' personality traits.
a. Illiterate
b. Hasty
c. Knowledgeable
d. Careless

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

* Tips on writing a biography : * إرشادات خاصة بكتابة السيرة الذاتية :

عند كتابة مقال عن السيرة الذاتية لشخص ما، يمكن الاسترشاد بالنقاط التالية :

Early life: المرحلة الأولى من العمر

- Where was he / she born?
- Where did he / she live as a child?
- What did his / her parents do?
- What did he / she study?
- Did anything important happen to him / her as a child?

Description: الوصف

- Describe his / her appearance and her personality.
- How did he / she help the community ?
- What did he / she do in the past to help the community?
- Where does he / she currently live and how is he / she helping the community now?

Conclusion: الخلاصة - الخاتمة

- What is your opinion of him / her?
- Why is his / her work so important?
- What is he / she admired for?
- Why is he / she a good role model?

Model Essay

* **Write an essay of about 150 words about the person you admire :**

The person I admire

Perhaps you think I am going to write about a football star or a famous actor. These are important people, of course. However, I admire professor Magdi Yacoub. For me, he is the best role model. He is a great man for everything he has done for mankind البشرية.

Professor Yacoub was the son of a doctor who had to move to a new town every few years. This helped young Yacoub to adapt to يتكيف مع different situations. When his aunt died of a heart problem, he decided that he wanted to be a heart surgeon.

He succeeded in achieving his goal. He became a surgeon. He travelled abroad and worked with great heart surgeons in Britain and the USA. That gave him a lot of experience. He was part of the team that did the first heart transplant زراعة القلب. Queen Elizabeth II awarded him the title "Sir" for his great achievements إنجازات.

When he retired, he returned to Egypt and set up أسس Magdi Yacoub Heart Foundation in Aswan. This foundation helps people with heart problems for free.

In my opinion, Professor Magdi Yacoub is the best example of greatness among people. He doesn't think of himself. Instead, he thinks how to help the people of his own country. He doesn't care for money. He only cares for saving people's lives. He gives heart patient the hope to live. I hope we all do our best to follow his footsteps.

3 Translation الترجمة

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. The government has carried out many national projects that aim to create thousands of job opportunities and bring about a real development.

(إبتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)

a. نفذت الحكومة العديد من المشاريع القومية التي تهدف إلى خلق آلاف من فرص العمل وتحقيق استثمار حقيقي.

b. نفذت الحكومة العديد من المشاريع المحلية التي تهدف إلى خلق آلاف من فرص العمل وتحقيق تنمية حقيقية.

c. نفذت الحكومة العديد من المشاريع القومية التي تهدف إلى خلق الاف من فرص العمل وتحقيق تنمية مستدامة.

d. نفذت الحكومة العديد من المشاريع القومية التي تهدف إلى خلق آلاف من فرص العمل وتحقيق تنمية حقيقية.





2. Production must go side by side with global quality. We should improve our local products to compete in the global market. (شرق الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

a. لابد أن يسير الإنتاج جنباً إلى جنب مع الجودة العالمية، وعلينا تحسين منتجاتنا المحلية للمقارنة بين السوق العالمية.

b. لا يمكن أن يسير الإنتاج جنباً إلى جنب مع الجودة العالمية، وعلينا تحسين منتجاتنا المحلية للمنافسة في السوق العالمية.

c. لابد أن يسير الإنتاج جنباً إلى جنب مع الجودة العالمية، وعلينا تحسين منتجاتنا المحلية للمنافسة في السوق العالمية.

d. لابد أن يسير الإنتاج جنباً إلى جنب مع الجودة العالمية، وعلينا تقليل منتجاتنا المحلية للمنافسة في السوق العالمية.

---

3. Food shortage, disease and poverty are real obstacles that can hinder the progress of any society.

a. يُعتبر نقص الغذاء والمرض والفقر عقبات حقيقية يمكن أن تُعيد التقدم في أي مجتمع.

b. يُعتبر نقص الغذاء والمرض والفقر عقبات حقيقية يمكن أن تُعيق التقدم في أي مجتمع.

c. يُعتبر نقص الغذاء والمرض والفقر عقبات حقيقية يمكن أن تسبق التقدم في أي مجتمع.

d. يُعتبر نقص الغذاء والمرض والفقر عقبات حقيقية يمكن أن تُعيق التقدم في أي دولة.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

1. من أنواع العطاء التبرع بالدم لإنقاذ مريض أو مصاب في حادث. (شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)

a. Blood donation is useless method to save a patient or an injured accident.

b. Blood donation is considered one of great deeds that save a patient or a person injured in an accident.

c. Saving a patient or the injured in accidents is great job.

d. To save the injured or patients in hospitals, we donate blood.

---

2. تولي الحكومة المصرية اهتمامًا عظيمًا لتحسين معيشة المواطنين في كل ربوع مصر خاصة في الريف والعشوائيات، وتُعتبر مبادرة حياة كريمة خير دليل على ذلك. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

a. The Egyptian government pays great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all countries of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums. Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.

b. The Egyptian government pays great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums. Decent Life Initiative is the worst proof of that.

c. The Egyptian government pays great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums. Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.

d. The Egyptian government pays great intention to improving the lives of citizens in all parts of Egypt; especially the countryside and slums. Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.

٣. الأسرة الناجحة أساس المجتمع الناجح، فالأسرة تعلمنا كيف نكون أعضاء صالحين ومفيدين لمجتمعاتنا.

a. A successful family is the resource of a successful society. The family teaches us how to be good and useful members for our societies.

b. A successful family is the foundation of a successful society. The family teaches us how to be good and useful members from our societies.

c. A successful family is the foundation of a successful society. The family teaches us how to be good and useful numbers for our societies.

d. A successful family is the foundation of a successful society. The family teaches us how to be good and useful members for our societies.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

blood

- **blood (n)** الدم
  - The heart pumps blood all over the body.

- لاحظ المتلازمات التالية :

- blood pressure ضغط الدم
- blood donor مُتبرِّع بالدم
- blood transplant / transfusion نقل الدم
- blood donation = giving blood التبرُّع بالدم

community

- **community (n)** مُجتمَع
  - The governor المحافظ holds a meeting every month to discuss community problems.
- **community (n)** جالية / جَماعة / طائفة
  - The Egyptian community in France welcomed our team.

- لاحظ أن :

بصفة عامة يُستخدم فعل مفرد بعد كلمة (community) لكن في الإنجليزية البريطانية يمكن استخدام فعل جمع :

- The community is / are interested in the new educational system.

- ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- a community centre مركز اجتماعي
- community services خدمات اجتماعية
- a religious community طائفة دينية
- international community المجتمع الدولي
- the local community المجتمع المحلي
- a community leader قائد مُجتمعي
- community care رعاية اجتماعية
- minority communities الأقليات

UNIT 2

- لاحظ أن :

العلاقة بين (community) و (society) هي علاقة بين الجزء والكل، فكلمة (community) تدل على مجتمع أصغر داخل المجتمع الأكبر (society)

desire

- **desire (d) (v) = want ... very much** يرغب في
  - He desires to live in a villa, not a flat.

- لاحظ أن :

لا نستخدم الفعل (desire) في الأزمنة المستمرة :

- The Egyptians are desiring peace. السلام (✗)
- The Egyptians desire peace. (✔).

- **desire (to + inf.) / (for + n) = strong wish or hope** رغبة / أمنية شديدة
  - Sama has a strong desire to succeed.
  = Sama has a strong desire for success.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- a strong / great / burning desire رغبة قوية
- have a desire لديه رغبة
- show a desire يُظهر رغبة
- express a desire يُعبّر عن رغبة
- satisfy/ fulfill a desire يُلبّي أو يُشبع رغبة

donate

- **donate (d) (v) = give** يتبرع بـ
  - It is kind of you to donate blood.
  - donate + شيء + to + شخص / شيء يتبرع بـ ... لـ ...
  - Salah donates a lot of money to poor people.
- **donation (n)** تبرُّع
  - Most charities الجمعيات الخيرية get money from donations.
- **donation to +** الطرف الذي يحصل على التبرُّع
  - Salah made a donation to a children's hospital.
- **donation from +** الطرف الذي يقدّم التبرُّع
  - A children's hospital got a donation from Salah.
- **donation of +** الشيء الذي يتم التبرُّع به
  - The donation of blood is something very important.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- make / give a donation يتبرع
- receive a donation يتلقى تبرُّع
- a generous donation تبرُّع كريم / هائل
- charitable donation تبرُّع خيري
- anonymous donation تبرُّع من فاعل خير (المتبرع مجهول)

• **donor (n)** مُتبرِّع
- Blood donors must be healthy people.

generous

• **generous (adj)** جَوَاد - كريم - سَخِي
- People who donate money and other things are generous.

• **generous + to + شخص** كريم مع
- He is generous to the poor. الفقراء

• **generous + with + الشيء (adj)** كريم بـ
- Rodayna is generous with her effort. الجهد

• **generosity (n)** الكَرَم - الجود - السخاء
- The people of Aswan are famous for their generosity.
- Giving money to charities is an act of generosity. تصرف ينم عن الكرم

hunt

• **hunt (ed) (v)** يصطاد (حيوانات وطيور)
- It is known that lions hunt in packs. في قطعان

• **hunt (ed) = search (v)** يبحث عن - يفتش عن
- She hunted for an hour but she couldn't find the lost ring. خاتم

• **hunt (ed) ... down (v)** يطارد - يتعقَّب - يُلاحق
- The police hunted the gang العصابة down and arrested them.

• **hunt (n)** البحث - التفتيش عن
- Some people helped in the hunt for the missing boy.

• **hunter (n)** صياد - قناص
- It is not allowed for hunters to kill lions.

intelligence

• **intelligent (n)** ذكى
- To be good at maths and physics الفيزياء, you need to be very intelligent.

• **intelligence (n)** الذكاء - الفطنة
- To be good at maths and physics الفيزياء, you need much intelligence.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- show intelligence يُظهر ذكاء
- high / low intelligence ذكاء عالٍ / محدود
- artificial intelligence الذكاء الاصطناعي (الحاسوبي)

• **intelligence (n)** المخابرات
- Our intelligence has found out a lot of secret plans. الخطط السرية

UNIT 2

long-term

- **long-term (adj)** بعيد المدى / على المدى البعيد (تُستخدم قبل الإسم فقط)
  - This plan is long-term. (✗)
  - This is a long-term plan. (✔)

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- a long-term plan خطة طويلة المدى
- a long-term strategy استراتيجية طويلة المدى
- in the long term على المدى البعيد
- a long-term illness مرض مزمن

monitor

- **monitor (ed) (v)** يُراقب - يَرْصُد - يتجسس على
  - The situation is monitored carefully.
  - It is not legal قانونى to monitor people's phone calls.
- **monitor (n)** جهاز عرض
  - Don't look at the computer monitor for a long time.
- **monitor (n)** مُراقب (شخص يراقب وضع معين ليتأكد أن الأمور تسير بشكل صحيح)
  - There are peace سلام monitors between the two countries.

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
bio-	خاص بعلم الأحياء أو الحياة	biology	علم الأحياء
		biography	السيرة الذاتية
dis-	تُكوّن العكس	disappear	يختفي - يتلاشى
inter-	بين	interview	يجرى مقابلة / مقابلة شخصية
trans-	عَبْر	transplant	نقل أو زراعة الأعضاء

3 suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-ation	تُكوّن اسم	admiration	إعجاب
-ce	تُكوّن اسم	intelligence	الذكاء
-er / -r	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	villager	قروي
-ion	تُكوّن اسم	donation	تبرُّع
-ist	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	biologist	عالم أحياء
		artist	فنان

		scientist	عالم
-or	تكون اسم الفاعل	donor	متبرع
-ure	تكون اسم	pressure	ضغط
-ment	تكون اسم	agreement	عقد - اتفاق

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Egyptian .... in London welcomed and supported the Egyptian handball team.
   a. Frequency b. Stadium c. Maasai d. Community
2. Although he is rich, he works hard to .... his desire for success.
   a. satisfy b. donate c. conserve d. monitor
3. When we do not know who paid the money, we say it is a/an .... donation.
   a. antonym b. synonym c. synonymous d. anonymous
4. In the .... , eating too much food causes overweight.
   a. long term b. field c. hometown d. desire

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He no longer .... as he used to do.
   a. smoke b. smokes c. smoked d. doesn't smoke
2. He used to smoke but now he ....
   a. isn't anymore b. doesn't no longer
   c. doesn't any longer d. any longer doesn't
3. He was used to smoking, but now he ....
   a. is no longer b. no longer is c. does no longer d. no longer does
4. I wish you .... your time last year.
   a. wasted b. didn't waste c. had wasted d. hadn't wasted
5. .... to bed before 1 a.m.
   a. Rarely do I go b. Rarely I go c. I go rarely d. Rarely am I go

Test on Unit 2



التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب — تنويه — لتثبيت الكتروني

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1. Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "The doctor asked me to monitor my grandfather because of his illness." 'Monitor' can be replaced by .... (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. observe b. look for c. watch d. set off e. collect
2. "Students who are supported by their parents do well at school." The antonyms of 'supported' here are .... (بني سويف ٢٠٢٣)
   a. motivated b. ignored c. assisted d. encouraged e. rejected

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. We must encourage .... blood to save many lives. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
   a. donation b. donor c. donating d. transplant
4. Blood .... are checked before their blood is taken. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
   a. honours b. doers c. donors d. careers
5. You can say he is .... or not from the food and drinks he offers to his guests. (أسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٣)
   a. intelligent b. active c. generous d. brave
6. Some young men .... the old lady of her jewellery last night. (دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. gave b. stole c. robbed d. took
7. I won't take the final decision without my parents' advice and ....
   a. prestige b. agreement c. pressure d. speed
8. We've had .... plans for the development of our country.
   a. missing b. endangered c. long-term d. isolate
9. He has been employed to .... the building site.
   a. rob b. steal c. guard d. regard
10. Tamer .... meals outdoors. (إدارة اسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
    a. hasn't b. never has c. has ever d. isn't had
11. Now, Salah .... as a role model for all young Egyptians. (ادفو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
    a. is being known b. is known c. knows d. known
12. How much time .... on social media? (الفيوم - يوسف كحك ٢٠٢٢)
    a. are spending b. you spend c. is spent d. spent
13. I .... doing this exercise. I do not get tired as fast as before.
    a. used to b. were used to c. got used to d. didn't use to

14. My friend used to get high marks but now he .... (العامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. don't   b. doesn't   c. didn't   d. isn't
15. He .... at the club yesterday. (إدارة الزينية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. isn't seen   b. wasn't seen   c. didn't see   d. doesn't see
16. We .... to obey and respect the elderly.
   a. tell   b. are told   c. are telling   d. being told

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

In Egypt, the tourism industry has come to hold a position of great importance lately. It is felt that it could help increase the national income. In some European countries, tourism has brought in billions of dollars yearly, although they lack the natural and historical attractions we have in Egypt. We could, for instance, establish tourist villages for children on the Red Sea. We could teach fishing, swimming, diving and sailing there. Another good idea would be a village in the New Valley for horse riding. And what about villages for people with health problems like rheumatism? The warm dry climate of Aswan and Helwan would certainly help them get better.

Our tourist today wants efficient and friendly service. He would probably prefer to try our samples of our local food rather than eat the international **meals**, which are served in some places. It must also be remembered that most tourists nowadays are seldom rich. Many of them are students or hardworking employees. So, what is needed is not expensive hotels, but clean and comfortable places to sleep and eat in at reasonable prices. This, too, would encourage Egyptians to travel more and more around their lovely country.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The writer feels that Egypt has got .... the other countries which make so much money from tourism.
   a. less attractions than   c. the same attractions as
   b. the least attractions of   d. more attractions than
18. According to the writer, if someone has pains in their muscles and joints, they should go to ....
   a. Europe   b. Aswan   c. The Red Sea   d. The New Valley
19. Most tourists nowadays are ....
   a. rich   b. poor   c. miserable   d. wretched

UNIT 2

20. The main idea of the passage is ....
 a. Tourism industry b. Encouraging tourism
 c. How to encourage tourism in Egypt d. Egypt is a piece-loving country

21. The prices should be .... to encourage tourism locally.
 a. affordable b. unreachable c. unreasonable d. high

22. The underlined word "<u>meals</u>" can be replaced by ....
 a. eats b. dishes c. fruits d. services

23. We can teach .... in the New Valley.
 a. swimming b. fishing c. horse riding d. gambling

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Men and women have the same ability to be successful in life if they work hard and believe in themselves. So, they should be given the same opportunities. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)

a. يتمتع الرجال والنساء بنفس المهارة للنجاح في الحياة إذا عملوا بجد وآمنوا بأنفسهم، لذا يجب منحهم نفس الأجر.

b. كل الرجال والنساء يتمتعون بنفس القدرة على النجاح في الحياة إذا كانوا يعملون بجد وآمنوا بأنفسهم، إذا لا يجب منحهم نفس الفرص.

c. يتمتع الرجال والنساء بنفس الصبر على النجاح في الحياة إذا عملوا بجد وآمنوا بأنفسهم، لذا يجب منحهم نفس الفروض.

d. يتمتع الرجال والنساء بنفس القدرة على النجاح في الحياة إذا عملوا بجد وآمنوا بأنفسهم، لذا يجب منحهم نفس الفرص.

25. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

لقد أصبحت مياه الشرب مشكلة عالمية يمكن أن تؤدي إلى حروب بين كثير من الدول. (نجع حمادي ٢٠١٣)

 a. Drinking water has become a global problem that could load to wars between many countries.
 b. Drinking water has become a global problem that could loud to wars between many countries.
 c. Drinking water has become a global problem that could lead to wars between many countries.
 d. Drunk water has become a global problem that could lead to wars between many countries.

26. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY 150 words :**

Supporting the community

....
....
....



UNIT 3

Improving lives

SB pages 26 : 29 WB pages 100 : 101

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :** An extract from David Copperfield
- **Writing :** A paragraph on a book character; A summary of a story
- **Listening :** A talk about the effect of Charles Dickens' books
- **Speaking :** Discussing a topic
- **Language :** Past simple and present perfect
- **Life skills :** Empathy

PART ONE — LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 26 : 29 WB pages 100 & 101

PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amazing(adj)	مذهل - رائع جدا	owe(d) (v)	يدين - يكون مَدين
debt(n)	دَيْن (مديونية)	plump(adj)	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلا
earn(ed) (v)	يكسب - يجنى مال	prison(n)	السجن
merchant(n)	تاجر	rat(n)	فأر
miserable(adj)	تعيس - بائس	terrible(adj)	فظيع - سيء جدا
miserably(adv)	بتعاسة - بشقاء		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

action(n)	حدث - فعل	goods(n)	بضائع (دائماً جمع)
arrange(d) (v)	يُرتب - يوفر	high school(n)	مدرسة ثانوية
beliefs (n)	مُعتقدات	honest(adj)	أمين
borrow(ed) (v)	يستعير - يستلف	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - يُصيب
break - broke - broken (v)	يتعطل - يكسر - ينكسر	opportunity (n)	فرصة
		penny(n)	بنس ($\frac{1}{100}$ من الجنيه الإسترليني)
character(n)	شخصية	realise(d) (v)	يُدرك - يستوعب
childhood(n)	مرحلة الطفولة	review(ed) (v)	يُراجع
criminal(n - adj)	مجرم - إجرامي	reward (ed) (v/n)	يكافئ - مكافأة
deserve (d) (v)	يستحق - يساوي	section(n)	قِسم - جزء
die(d) (v)	يموت	similar(adj)	مشابه - متشابه
dirty(adj)	قذر	skill(n)	مهارة
discover(ed) (v)	يكتشف	society (n)	المجتمع
entertain (ed) (v)	يُسلي - يُرَفِه عن	spend - spent (v)	يقضي وقت - ينفق مال
entertainment(n)	التسلية - الترفيه	storyteller(n)	رِوَائي - قَصّاص
exactly(adv)	تمامًا - بالتحديد	theatre(n)	المسرح
extract(ed) (n - v)	مُقتطف/اقتباس - يقتبس/يقتطف	tired-looking(adj)	يبدو عليه التعب
		twins(n)	توأم

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise		Understand
debt(n)	دَين	money you must give to someone
earn(v)	يكسب/يتقاضى أجر	to receive money for doing work
merchant(n)	تاجر كبير	a person who buys and sells a lot of goods
miserable(adj)	تعيس	very sad
owe(v)	يَدين - يكون مَدين	money or things you have to pay back يُسدِّد/يرُد
plump(adj)	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً	slightly قليلاً fat in a nice way
prison(n)	السِجن	a place to keep criminals for a period فترة of time as punishment عقاب
rat(n)	فأر - جرذ	an animal like a big mouse

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. He tries to find a second job to pay back his .... (الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. steps b. debts c. gifts d. wastes
2. We .... much to our great teachers. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. take b. lend c. owe d. borrow
3. The farmer got a cat after he had a problem with .... (بورسعيد٢٠٢٣)
   a. lions b. tigers c. rats d. elephants
4. The market was full of .... who were selling goods from all over the country. (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٣)
   a. buyers b. guards c. educators d. merchants
5. Actors and actresses often .... a lot of money. (البنايا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. gain b. do c. beat d. earn
6. A lot of people in Africa live .... due to poverty and lack of education. (الفيوم - إبشواي ٢٠٢٢)
   a. truly b. amazingly c. sincerely d. miserably
7. They broke the law and were sent to .... for a year. (إدارة الزينية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. prisoner b. prison c. imprisonment d. park
8. My daughter never stops eating, so she is .... (بورسعيد - الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. thin b. thick c. plump d. angry
9. The journey home was .... Everyone was sad about losing the game. (كوم إمبو – احمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. miserable b. happy c. cheerful d. enjoyable

10. The cruise was really .... We all enjoyed it.
    a. amazing b. terrible c. miserable d. b & c
11. The cruise was really .... We all regretted joining it.
    a. amazing b. terrible c. fascinating d. b & c

2 Important Vocabulary

12. I read a/an .... from David Copperfield in Unit 3. (الشرقية - الزقازيق ٢٠٢٠)
    a. exact b. extract c. trick d. work
13. To be ...., Sama did not break the vase. I did it.
    a. honest b. brilliant c. dirty d. criminal
14. Shouting at children .... their feelings.
    a. realises b. hurts c. empties d. reviews
15. He was .... for his hard work.
    a. rewarded b. hidden c. entertained d. deserved
16. There is a job .... in this factory. You can apply for it.
    a. mistake b. view c. opportunity d. experience
17. Although I helped her with the housework, I felt sorry for my .... mother.
    a. look-tired b. tired-look c. tired-looking d. looked-tiring
18. Don't let the baby crawl on this .... grass.
    a. honest b. brilliant c. dirty d. criminal
19. From the sad look on her face, I .... that there is something wrong.
    a. realised b. reviewed c. emptied d. hurt
20. Let the kids have fun and enjoy their ....
    a. society b. childhood c. penny d. support
21. This bad car doesn't .... the price you have paid for it.
    a. entertain b. hide c. reward d. deserve
22. In Egypt, students have to finish .... school before joining university.
    a. high b. low c. prep d. primary
23. The .... sold in this shop are all made in Egypt.
    a. work b. facts c. goods d. good
24. The child .... the bottle of water on the floor.
    a. realised b. reviewed c. emptied d. hurt
25. Try to be a good member of your ....
    a. society b. childhood c. entertainment d. support
26. Sama and Abdulrahman are .... but they are completely different.
    a. unlike b. difference c. twin d. twins

27. There are nice shows to .... the children.
a. entertain　b. hide　c. realise　d. deserve

28. He .... the train timetable before buying a ticket.
a. realised　b. reviewed　c. emptied　d. hurt

29. He was arrested because of his .... behaviour.
a. honest　b. brilliant　c. pretty　d. criminal

3 Definitions

30. A .... is money you must give to someone.
a. donation　b. prize　c. reward　d. debt

31. To .... means to receive money for doing work.
a. earn　b. win　c. make　d. get

32. A .... is a person who buys and sells a lot of goods.
a. worker　b. writer　c. merchant　d. volunteer

33. To .... money or things means you have to pay them back.
a. own　b. owe　c. lend　d. donate

34. .... means very sad or unhappy.
a. Misery　b. Miserable　c. Cheer　d. Cheerful

35. A woman or a child who is .... is slightly fat in a nice way.
a. plump　b. fat　c. obese　d. overweight

36. .... is a place to keep criminals for a period فترة of time as punishment.
a. Imprison　b. Prisoner　c. Imprisonment　d. Prison

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

Verb	Collocation	Meaning	Verb	Collocation	Meaning
become	ill	يمرض	have	debts	عليه ديون
break	the law/rules	يخالف القانون		a problem with	لديه مشكلة في
change	your opinion	تغير رأيك		bad news	لديه أخبار سيئة
do	the homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلي		time	لديه الوقت
	exciting things	يقوم بأشياء مثيرة		no opportunity	ليست لديه فرصة
get	a better job	يحصل على وظيفة أفضل		a role	له دور يقوم به
owe	money to	يدين بالمال لـ			
pass	exams	ينجح في الامتحانات	take	to prison	يسجن - يحبس

UNIT 3

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
amazing	رائع - مذهل	astonishing, surprising, awesome, fascinating
earn money	يكسب - يجني مال	make money
honest	أمين	sincere, trustful
miserable	تعيس - بائس	sad, depressed, unhappy, very, poor
terrible	فظيع - سيء جدا	awful, horrifying, horrible

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
amazing	رائع - مذهل	believable, ordinary, unamazing, unremarkable	عادى - غير مذهل
earn money	يكسب - يجني مال	lose / waste money	يخسر/يبدد المال
miserable	تعيس - بائس	happy, contented, cheerful, merry	سعيد - راضي
plump	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً	thin, slender, skinny	نحيف
borrow	يستعير - يستلف	lend	يُقرض - يُسلّف
honest	أمين	dishonest, deceitful	مخادع - خائن
terrible	فظيع - سيء جدا	nice, delightful, lovely, pleasant	لطيف - جميل - سار

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

earn		
earn(v)	يكسب	- You can earn more money by working hard.
earning(n)	الكسب	- There's no problem in earning more money by working hard.
earnings(n)	دخل / مكاسب	- Be wise. Don't waste your earnings.
earner(n)	كاسب / عائل	- This woman is the only earner for her children.
miser		
miser(n)	بخيل / تعيس	- He is a miser.
misery(n)	التعاسة / البؤس	- Poor people live in misery.
miserable(adj)	تعيس - بائس	- Poor people have miserable lives.
miserably(adv)	بتعاسة - بشقاء	- Our team failed miserably in their attempts محاولات to score a goal.

prison	
imprison(v) يحبس	- He is imprisoned because he is a criminal.
prison(n) السجن	- He is sent to prison because he is a criminal.
prisoner(n) سجين	- He is a prisoner because he is a criminal.
imprisonment(n) السجن / الحبس	- He is sentenced حُكم عليه to life imprisonment because he is a criminal.
imprisoned(adj) محبوس	- He is now imprisoned because he is a criminal.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a boy of four	ولد عمره ٤ سنوات	make … worse for	يجعل ... أسوأ لـ
at this age	في هذا السن	none of them	لا أحد منهم
in this age	في هذا العصر	not … any more	لن ... مرة أخرى
difference in	فرق في	similar to	مشابه لـ
for the first time	لأول مرة	stay abroad	يبقى خارج البلاد
it was not unusual	كان من المألوف	What kind of person	أى نوع من الأشخاص
make … better	يجعل ... أفضل		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

continue (up) to	يستمر حتى	learn from	يتعلم من
entertain … with	يُسلي ... عن طريق	look after	يرعى / يعتني بـ
help … with	يساعد ... في	owe … to	يدين بـ ... لـ ...
know … for	يعرف ... بـ	pay back	يرد الدين - يُسدد
		take … away	يأخذ ... بعيداً

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

earn money / get money / make money

- **earn money** يكسب مال مقابل عمل
  - This doctor earns twenty thousand pounds a day.
- **get money** يحصل على مبلغ معين من المال في مدة معينة
  - I get 4000 pounds a month.
- **make money** يكسب (كثير من المال بطريقة غير تقليدية)
  - Footballers make a lot of money.

own / owe / borrow / lend

- **own(ed)** يمتلك
  - He owns a farm in the countryside.
- **owe(d)** يدين بـ
  - I owe Ahmed a thousand pounds.
- **borrow(ed)** يقترض / يستلف / يستعير
  - I borrowed a thousand pounds from Ahmed.
- **lend - lent - lent** يُقرض / يُسلِّف
  - Ahmed lent me a thousand pounds.

plump / fat / overweight / obese

كيف نقول أن شخص ما سمين / زائد الوزن :

- **plump** مكتنز - ممتلئ بشكل جذّاب (بالنسبة للنساء والأطفال)
  - She is a plump cheerful مبتهجة little girl.
- **fat** سمين
  - A fat person finds it difficult to do a sport.
- **overweight** لديه وزن زائد (أكثر من الوزن المثالي)
  - She wants to follow a diet because she is overweight.
- **obese** سمين جداً (بشكل خطير على الصحة)
  - He was an obese teenager.

prison - jail - cell

- **prison** سجن (كبير)
  - Thieves are sent to prison.
- **jail** سجن (مكان للحجز المؤقت)
  - He was taken to jail.
- **cell** زنزانة (حجرة داخل السجن)
  - The dangerous criminal was kept alone in a cell.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. "It's amazing how often you see drivers using mobile phones."
   The antonyms of the word "amazing" are .... and .... (السويس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. surprising b. pretty c. astonishing
   d. believable e. unremarkable

2. "The miserable hungry look on the face of the orphan touched our hearts." The antonyms of the word 'miserable' are .... and .... (كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)
a. cheerful
b. wretched
c. upset
d. merry
e. depressed

3. I have .... to play.
a. a role
b. a part
c. a problem
d. debts
e. no parents

4. A girl .... can't look after herself.
a. in four
b. of four
c. from four
d. four
e. who is four

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People who .... the law must be punished. (دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)
a. do b. make c. follow d. break

2. "Some plump children look nice." The word "plump" is antonymous with .... (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
a. slender b. happy c. deceitful d. overweight

3. He's borrowed too much money and led a life of .... since then. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
a. miserly b. miser c. miserable d. misery

4. "One day, I met a plump man." The word 'plump' gives a near meaning to .... (أسيوط – أبو تيج ٢٠٢٣)
a. old b. thin c. short d. fat

5. If you spend too much money, you will get .... debt. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
a. on b. into c. over d. in

6. Nowadays, we live .... the age of technology. (منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
a. on b. at c. in d. from

7. I was over the moon after the last exam I had ....
a. passed b. solved c. made d. earned

8. My job here is to .... customers.
a. deserve b. help c. owe d. extract

9. If something .... wrong with the machine, call me.
a. has b. does c. makes d. goes

10. Can you take your toys .... please, Sama ? The room is in a mess فوضى.
a. after b. up c. off d. away

11. I owe some money .... a friend of mine.
a. with b. from c. to d. at

12. I will help you .... this difficult maths lesson.
a. by b. to c. for d. with

13. My father's .... are what we live on.
a. earns b. earner c. earning d. earnings
14. .... are people who are not generous.
a. Misers b. Miserly c. Miserable d. Misery
15. Those who break the law must be ....
a. prison b. prisoner c. imprisoned d. imprisonment
16. .... much money will leave you heavily in debt.
a. Owing b. Ovvning c. Saving d. Lending
17. In prison, that criminal was kept in a small .... on his own.
a. jail b. cell c. prison d. a & c

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

David Copperfield

(SB page 27)

"This is Mr Quinion, David," Mr Murdstone said. "You're going to **work for**(1) him at Murdstone and Grinby, the bottle **merchants**(2), in London. You'll **earn**(3) enough money to **pay**(4) for your food, and I've **arranged**(5) a place for you to live."

I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was **hard work**(6). I went to a **dirty**(7) old house **near**(8) the river where **rats**(9) lived under the **floors**.(10) There my job was to wash **empty**(11) bottles with three other boys, and I **hated**(12) it.

One morning, a **plump**(13) man came to see me with Mr Quinion. "Ah, **Master**(14) Copperfield!" the man said. "This is Mr Micawber," Mr Quinion told me. "You will be living at his house."

And that evening, Mr Micawber took me home. His wife – a **thin**(15), **tired-looking**(16) **lady**(17) – was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of **twins**(18), and they had a boy of four and a girl of three.

I soon **discovered**(19) that the Micawbers were **poor**(20) and that Mr Micawber **owed**(21) money to **several**(22) people.

(1) يعمل لدى
(2) تُجار
(3) تتقاضى
(4) تدفع
(5) يرتب / يوفر
(6) عمل شاق
(7) قذر
(8) بالقرب من
(9) فئران
(10) أرضيات
(11) فارغ
(12) يكره
(13) ممتلئ / مُكتنز
(14) سيِّد
(15) نحيف
(16) يبدو عليها التعب
(17) سيدة
(18) توأم
(19) يكتشف
(20) فقير
(21) يدين بـ
(22) العديد من

One morning, the police came and took Mr Micawber away to **prison**[23] because of his **debts**[24]. I went to see him there the next Sunday.

"If a man earns twenty **pounds**[25] a year and **spends**[26] nineteen pounds, he'll be happy," he said. "But if he spends twenty pounds and a **penny**[27], he'll be miserable."

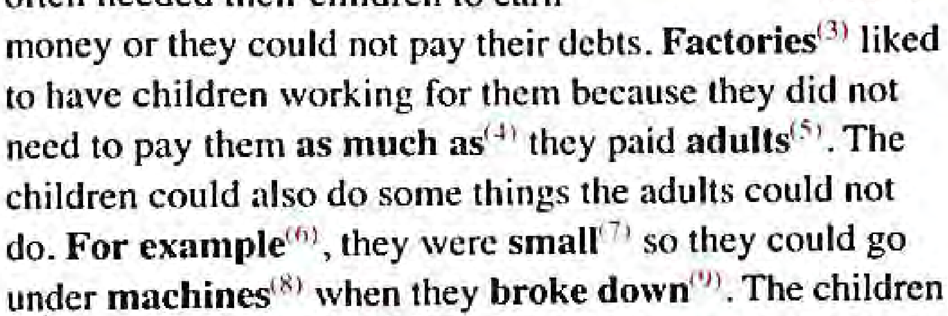
(23) السجن
(24) ديون
(25) جنيهات
(26) يُنفق
(27) بنس ١/١٠٠ من الجنيه

Learning new skills

(WB page 100)



The book **character**[1] David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was not **unusual**[2] for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay their debts. **Factories**[3] liked to have children working for them because they did not need to pay them **as much as**[4] they paid **adults**[5]. The children could also do some things the adults could not do. **For example**[6], they were **small**[7] so they could go under **machines**[8] when they **broke down**[9]. The children were often **miserable**[10]. They worked very long hours and most of them had no **opportunity**[11] to **improve**[12] their lives. However, some children **learned**[13] **a skill**[14] when they worked. They were the **lucky**[15] ones, as these new skills helped them to **get better jobs**[16] when they were older.



(1) شخصية
(2) غير مألوف
(3) مصانع
(4) بنفس القدر - كثيراً مثل
(5) الكبار
(6) على سبيل المثال
(7) صغير الحجم
(8) الآلات
(9) يتعطل
(10) تعيس / بائس
(11) فرصة
(12) يُحسِّن
(13) يتعلم
(14) مهارة
(15) محظوظ
(16) يحصلون على وظائف أفضل

2 Listening Texts




(SB page 29)

Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the **brilliant**[1] books that he wrote. He was a great **storyteller**[2]. But, Dickens didn't only want to **entertain**[3] people with his books, he also wanted to **change their opinions**[4] about the world they lived in.



(1) رائع / متألق
(2) سارد القصة
(3) يسلي
(4) يغير آرائهم

He hoped his readers would then do something to **make the world a better place**(5).

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult **childhood**(6). When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to **support**(7) his family instead. The Poor **Law**(8) of 1834 removed support for most poor people so their lives were hard.

(5) يجعل من العالم مكان أفضل
(6) طفولة
(7) يساند
(8) القانون
(9) يكافئ
(10) يستحق

When he wrote David Copperfield between 1849 and 1850, Dickens wanted to show us that not all poor people were bad. Like his father, Mr Micawber went to prison because he had no money but after he left prison, he wanted to help David because he was a good man. In Dickens' books, people who worked hard were also often **rewarded**(9). For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer.

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In David Copperfield, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest and good and **deserved**(10) to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and had an unhappy end.

PART IV LANGUAGE

1 The Present Perfect Simple Tense : : زمن المضارع التام البسيط

١ في الجملة الخبرية المثبتة :

Subject فاعل + **have / has + p.p.** ......

تستخدم **(has)** مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب **(He / She / It)** وتستخدم **(have)** مع الفاعل الجمع **(We / They / You)** والضمير **(I)** :

ex. - I have tidied my bedroom. - Ahmed has played tennis for an hour.

٢ في الجملة الخبرية المنفية :

Subject فاعل + **hasn't / haven't + p.p.+** ......

ex. - They haven't watched the match yet.
- Rodayna hasn't done her homework yet.

٣ السؤال بـ «هل» :

Have /Has + subject فاعل + p.p ...... ?

ex. - Have you tidied your room?
Yes, I have (tidied my room).
- Has Rodayna done her homework?
No, she hasn't (done her homework yet).

السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + have / has + subject + p.p ...... ?

- Where have you played the match?
- How long have you stayed here?

٤ فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object المفعول + have / has + been + p.p ......

ex. - I have tidied my bedroom. (active)
My bedroom has been tidied (by me). (passive)
- Ahmed has played tennis for an hour. (active)
Tennis has been played for an hour (by Ahmed). (passive)

Mini Test 1



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama .... my pen.
a. take b. taking c. has taken d. have taken

2. I can't walk easily because I .... my leg.
a. broke b. were breaking c. has broken d. have broken

3. .... your teeth, Omar ?
a. You have brushed b. Have you brushed
c. Are you brushed d. Were you brushed

4. He .... carefully.
a. examines b. was examining
c. has examined d. has been examined

Uses استخدامات

يُستخدم زمن المضارع التام البسيط فى الحالات التالية :

١ التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف غير منتهية (بدأت فى الماضى و لم تنتهى بعد) :

ex. - I have studied English since 2015. I'm in secondary one.

٢ التعبير عن مواقف مرت في الماضي دون ذكر وقت حدوثها ولكن يكون المقصود ضمنيًا حتى هذه اللحظة/الآن :

ex. - I have visited the Pyramids three times.
- Scientists have discovered medicines for a lot of diseases.

٣ التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف منتهية في الماضي و لها أثر على الحاضر (جملة الأثر تكون مضارع) :

ex. - I've lost my mobile, so I can't phone my parents.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ لاحظ الفرق بين:

1. have / has been to + مكان ذهب إلى مكان و عاد

- She has been to the market. Now, she is in the kitchen putting the vegetables in the fridge.

2. have / has gone (to) + مكان ذهب إلى مكان ولم يرجع بعد

- Bassem has gone to the club. He will come back after the match.

3. have been in + مكان + for / since .... متواجد في (لا يزال هناك)

- I have been in London for three years. (This means I am in London now.)

٢ لا يتم ذكر توقيت وقوع الحدث في المضارع التام ، وعند ذكر التوقيت نستخدم الماضي البسيط:

- Ahmed has drunk two coffees.
- Ahmed drank two coffees yesterday.

٣ عند التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف قابلة للتكرار يمكن استخدام تعبيرات زمنية ممتدة حتى الآن مثل:

this morning / this week / this month / today / in the last year ... etc.

- I have sent three emails today.

٤ يُستخدم المضارع التام مع (ever / never / since) للتعبير عن الخبرات والتجارب السابقة:

- I have never gone camping. (لم يسبق أن عشت هذه التجربة.)
- Sama is the most intelligent girl I have ever seen. (لأول مرة أرى طالبة بهذا الذكاء.)
- I have worked here since 2002. (لقد عملت هنا منذ ٢٠٠٢.)

Mini Test 2 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... English since I was in Primary one. I still study it.
 a. studied b. had studied c. have studied d. was studying
2. She .... the High Dam three times. She'll visit it again next week.
 a. has visited b. had visited c. was visiting d. has been visited

3. Hussein .... his leg. He can't walk without a stick.
   a. was breaking   b. had broken   c. has been broken   d. has broken
4. Rodayna .... to the club. I'll join her there.
   a. was gone   b. has gone   c. has been   d. had been
5. Your mother .... to the market. Take the shopping bag to the kitchen.
   a. was gone   b. has gone   c. has been   d. had been
6. Mrs Noha .... that school two years ago.
   a. has left   b. has been left   c. had left   d. left
7. Today, I .... three emails so far. I'm waiting for two more.
   a. have received   b. was received   c. had received   d. was receiving

2 Time adverbs with the present perfect simple :
ظروف الزمان مع المضارع التام البسيط :

تُستخدم ظروف الزمان مع المضارع التام البسيط كالتالي:

١ ظروف الزمان تأتى بعد الفعل المساعد وقبل التصريف الثالث

just توا - **already** بالفعل - **never** أبداً - **ever** من قبل

ex. - My uncle has **just** arrived at the airport.
- I have **never** seen a real fox. - This is the tallest tree I have **ever** seen.
- Have you **ever** travelled abroad?
- I have **already** passed the driving test.
= I have passed the driving test **already**.

٢ لاحظ ما يلى :

has /have + **never** + **p.p.** ...... = **hasn't / haven't** + **ever** + **p.p.** ......

ex. - Nada has never been to Paris. = Nada hasn't ever been to Paris.

٣ ظروف زمنية تأتى فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة وأحياناً قبل التصريف الثالث :

so far حتى الآن - **up till now** حتى الآن - **lately = recently** حديثاً / مؤخراً - **since** منذ
- **for** لمدة - **over the years** على مر السنين - **in the last months** فى الشهور الأخيرة
- **throughout the years** على مر السنين - **this week** هذا الأسبوع

ex. - I have written two essays so far. = So far, I have written two essays.

٤ تُستخدم (yet) فى نهاية الجملة المنفية و الاستفهامية وتدل على أنه من المتوقع حدوث الفعل :

ex. - Have you watered the trees yet?
- Marwa hasn't seen the new manager yet.

٥ يأتي بعد (since) تعبير زمني يدل على وقت بداية الحدث مثل:

five o'clock / the morning / Monday / 26th September / March / summer / 2013 / yesterday / last month / then منذ ذلك الحين / arrival وصول / departure رحيل / birth ميلاد / death موت / ......

ex. - He's been here since April.
- She has lived in Aswan since her birth.

٦ تكون الجملة بعد (since) ماضي بسيط غالبًا :

ex. - I have lived in this flat since I got married.
= Since I got married, I have lived in this flat.

٧ يأتي بعد (for) تعبير زمني يدل على المدة الزمنية التي استغرقها الحدث:

a moment / a while فترة / two seconds/ three minutes / half an hour / four hours/ five days / six months / two seasons / ten years / a decade عقد / two centuries قرنين / ages مدة طويلة / a long time / a short time / the last / as long as I can remember على قدر ما اتذكر

ex. - I've had this mobile for more than 10 years.
- He's been here for 6 months.

Mini Test 3 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Marwa .... to Aswan before.
   a. never has been b. has been never c. has never been d. was never going
2. Hossam .... to Hurghada. He plans to make his first visit next January.
   a. hasn't never been b. hasn't ever been
   c. has ever been d. has been never
3. My parents .... home yet.
   a. don't return b. weren't returning c. have returned d. haven't returned
4. Wonderful! Have you completed the report .... ? So, you can give it to the manager.
   a. already b. yet c. ago d. yesterday
5. I haven't travelled outside Egypt .... my birth.
   a. for b. since c. before d. last
6. I have felt great pain in my stomach since I .... a piece of biscuits.
   a. eat b. has eaten c. ate d. had eaten
7. I haven't seen my sister .... ages.
   a. for b. since c. before d. after

3 Notes for more understanding :

١ لاحظ استخدم (ago) بدلا من (just) والعكس :

فاعل + have / has + just + p.p.

= فاعل + ماضي بسيط + just now - a moment ago - a short time ago

ex. - He has just left the office. = He left the office a moment ago.
- Nada has just gone out. = Nada went out just now.

٢ لاحظ استخدم (never) في بداية الجملة :

فاعل + have / has + never + p.p. = Never + have / has + فاعل + p.p.

ex. - I have never played squash. = Never have I played squash.

٣ لاحظ استخدم (ever / never) :

- This is the first time + subj. + have / has + (ever) + p.p. .....

= This is the first time + for + subj. ضمير مفعول / فاعل + to + inf. .....

ex. - This is the first time I have ever seen such a tall girl.
= This is the first time for me to see such a tall girl.

جملة تفضيل ..... + subject + have / has + (ever) + p.p. .....

Subject + have / has + never + p.p. + such (a/an) + adj. صفة + n. اسم

ex. - She is the tallest girl I have ever seen.
- I have never seen such a tall girl.

٤ لاحظ استخدم (yet) بدلا من (still) والعكس :

- Subject + am / is / are + still + (inf. + ing)

= Subject + haven't /hasn't + finished / stopped + (inf. + ing) ..... yet.

ex. - He is still doing homework. = He hasn't finished doing homework yet.
- It is still raining. = It hasn't stopped raining yet.

٥ لاحظ الاختلاف بين (for) و (since) عند الاستخدام مع عدم تغيير المعنى :

أ. عند التحويل من (for) إلى (since) اطرح المدة من الوقت الحاضر:

ex. - He has lived in Aswan for 20 years.
= He has lived in Aswan since 2003.

ب. عندما لا يمكن حساب المدة نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

It is + مدة زمنية + since + past simple جملة ماضي بسيط

ex. - She has stayed with her aunt for a long time.
= It is a long time since she stayed with her aunt.

ج. لاحظ التحويل من (since) إلى (for) في الصيغة التالية :

- It is + مدة زمنية + since + جملة ماضي بسيط مثبت

= Subject + haven't /hasn't + p.p. ..... + for + ... مدة زمنية

ex. - It is five years since I (last) saw Ali.

= I haven't seen Ali for five years.

د. لاحظ استخدام (ago) بدلا من (since / for) و العكس:

Subject + have /has + p.p. ..... + since / for .....

Subject + started / began + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing) + مدة زمنية + ago

ex. - The boys have played football for two hours.

= The boys started playing (to play) football two hours ago.

- He has worked in this hospital since 2010.

= He began working (to work) in this hospital twelve years ago.

4 Present Perfect Simple Vs. Past Simple :
لفرق في الاستخدام بين المضارع التام والماضي البسيط :

Present Perfect المضارع التام	Past Simple الماضي البسيط
١. حدث تم في وقت غير معروف في الماضي: - Someone has broken the window.	١. حدث تم في وقت محدد في الماضي: - Someone broke the window yesterday.
٢. حدث تم في وقت لم ينتهي بعد: - I have received three emails today.	٢. حدث تم في وقت انتهى: - I received three emails last Monday.
٣. حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر على الحاضر: - I have learnt to drive. Now, I can drive my father's car.	٣. حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي: - I learnt to drive. Mr Khalid was my driving teacher.
٤. حدث قابل للتكرار أو التعديل: - Salah has scored more than 100 goals in the Premier League. (صلاح لا يزال حياً ويمارس كرة القدم وقد يحرز المزيد من الأهداف)	٤. حدث غير قابل للتكرار أو التعديل: - Naguib Mahfouz wrote a lot of successful novels. (نجيب محفوظ توفى ولا يمكنه أن يكتب المزيد)
٥. حدث أو حالة بدأت في الماضي لازالت موجودة: - I have lived in Aswan since 2002. (ولا أزال أعيش هنا)	٥. حدث أو حالة لم تعد موجودة: - I lived in Aswan in 2002. (لم أعد أعيش هناك)

Mini Test 4 | Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My father is angry because I .... the door open.
   a. leaves b. left c. have left d. was left
2. My father is angry. I .... the door open last night.
   a. leaves b. left c. have left d. was left
3. He .... three coffees so far today.
   a. drank b. drinks c. had drunk d. has drunk
4. He .... three coffees yesterday.
   a. drank b. drinks c. had drunk d. has drunk
5. I .... to swim. Now, I swim as well as a swimming champion.
   a. learn b. learnt c. have learnt d. was learnt
6. I .... to swim. That was during the summer holiday.
   a. learn b. learnt c. have learnt d. was learnt
7. I .... a running champion as a child. Now, I can hardly walk.
   a. was b. had been c. am being d. have been
8. I .... a running champion. I will represent Egypt in the Olympics.
   a. was b. had been c. am being d. have been

General Exercise On Language | Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Nadeen really loves this book. She............ it three times. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٣)
   a. is reading b. has read c. had read d. was reading
2. They .... finished their work yet. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. don't b. haven't c. won't d. didn't
3. I .... in Qena for seven years. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. has lived b. lives c. have lived d. was living
4. .... you ever broken your leg? (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
   a. Do b. Has c. Did d. Have
5. Scientists .... ways to isolate genes in the last few years. (بلقاس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. develops b. have developed
   c. will develop d. were developing

UNIT 3

6. Sadly, my aunt has been ill .... she was a child. (المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)
   a. since b. for c. ago d. when
7. Zeyad is the most intelligent student I have .... known. (المنشاة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. ever b. never c. still d. rarely
8. .... I set up my company, I have employed a lot of skillful employees. (إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. On b. Since c. Before d. As
9. It is the first time he .... America. (منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. visited b. had ever visited
   c. has ever visited d. has never visited
10. I have not seen Ali .... the last time we met in Alexandria. (دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. since b.when c. while d. for
11. Nobody has .... said that to me before. (بركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)
   a. ever b. never c. always d. yet
12. It's three weeks since we .... to live in Cairo. (بنها ٢٠٢٣)
   a. move b. have been moved
   c. is moving d. moved
13. My cousin has lived abroad .... his childhood. (أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. since b. for c. yet d. When.
14. Have you finished your task .... ? WOW! You are very quick. (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. yet b. so far c. already d. since
15. Sami .... three coffees so far. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. has drunk b. drank c. was drinking d. drinks
16. Ali's been at home for a week now since he .... his leg. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
   a. breaks b. was broken c. has broken d. had broken
17. He .... abroad since his graduation in 2000 and has no desire to return. (كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)
   a. have been b. has gone c. didn't go d. will go

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 30 & 31 WB pages 102 & 103



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

association (n)	جمعية - اتحاد	plan(ned) (n/v)	خطة - يخطط
community(n)	مُجتمع - جماعة	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
culture(n)	الثقافة	youth (n)	الشباب
food bank	بنك الطعام	youth association	جمعية شبابية

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

admit (ted) (v)	يُقِرّ بـ / يعترف	include (d) (v)	يشمل/يتضمن - يُضمّن
adult (n - adj)	شخص بالغ - راشد	later (adv)	فيما بعد
brainstorm(ed) (v)	يستثير الفكر	nowhere (adv)	لا مكان
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع - يُحضر	pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال - يقوم بزيارة
common (adj)	عام - مُشترَك - شائع	solve (d) (v)	يحل
crescent (n)	هلال	stepfather (n)	زوج الأم
disabled (adj)	مُعاق	steps (n)	خطوات
dreamer (n)	حالم	structure(n)	تركيب - بناء
ending (v)	نهاية - خاتمة	surprise(d) (n - v)	مفاجأة / دهشة - يفاجئ
experience (d) (n - v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة	tip (n)	نصيحة
experiences (n)	خبرات/تجارب حياتية	trick(ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
improve(d) (v)	يُحسّن - يتحسّن	trust (ed) (n - v)	ثقة - يثق بـ

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
culture ثقافة	the beliefs معتقدات and traditions of a group of people
food bank بنك الطعام	a place where people collect food to give to others
voluntary work عمل تطوعي	a job that people do for no money
youth association جمعية شبابية	a group of young people who do things together

UNIT 3

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Different societies have different .... (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. experiments b. cultures c. staff d. prisons
2. Every member of the .... must respect the freedom of others. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٣)
   a. experience b. beliefs c. community d. merchant
3. .... work is what people do for no money. (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٢)
   a. Culture b. Hard c. Voluntary d. Bank
4. .... is the age of activity and livelihood.
   a. Old age b. Youth c. Babyhood d. Womanhood
5. A youth .... is a group of young people who do things together.
   a. hostel b. hotel c. camp d. association
6. The Egyptian .... plays an important role in feeding poor families.
   a. Restaurant b. Kitchen c. Food Bank d. Shop
7. We've .... to spend the weekend in the countryside.
   a. indebted b. planned c. earned d. owed

2 Important Vocabulary

8. Your shoes will be repaired and ready for you to .... in five minutes. (المنيا – ديرمواس ٢٠٢٠)
   a. collect b. walk c. buy d. mend
9. **A:** Can you tell me about the .... of the essay?
   B: Introduction, body an conclusion.
   a. situation b. twins c. structure d. ending
10. The thief .... stealing my car and selling it for only ten thousand pounds.
    a. admitted b. arranged c. included d. stopped
11. He succeeded in .... back all his debts.
    a. repairing b. respecting c. turning d. paying
12. I don't like films that have a sad ....
    a. ending b. ends c. an end d. ended
13. Volunteers help the needy المحتاجين .... their problems.
    a. cause b. do c. make d. solve
14. My teacher gave me some useful .... on how to improve my English.
    a. sorts b. kinds c. tips d. types

15. It was not funny playing a .... on the poor old man. It was impolite.
   a. role b. rule c. goal d. trick
16. Modern technology has .... our lives.
   a. suggested b. improved c. trusted d. worked
17. Follow these .... and you will learn how to do the experiment.
   a. masters b. mistakes c. repairs d. steps
18. Ayman and I have some interests in .... We both like reading and fishing.
   a. common b. difference c. success d. expert
19. .... are fully grown-people. (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٠)
   a. Children b. Old people c. Teenagers d. Adults
20. .... people need more interest and care.
   a. Able b. Disabled c. Criminal d. Plump
21. I asked you to do this difficult job because I .... you.
   a. trust b. change c. hurt d. revise
22. The Egyptian Red .... helps people in difficult situations.
   a. Tape b. Association c. Present d. Crescent

3 Definitions

23. .... is the beliefs and traditions of a group of people.
   a. Religion b. Culture c. Law d. Habits
24. A .... is a place where people collect food to give to others.
   a. restaurant b. kitchen c. food bank d. shop
25. .... work means a job that people do for no money.
   a. Voluntary b. Team c. Group d. Paid

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	a job	يقوم بعمل	**make**	a difference	يُحدث فرقًا / يصنع الفارق
	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي		money	يكسب مال - يجمع ثروة
	something to help	يفعل شيء لمساعدة		brief notes	يُدوّن ملاحظات قصيرة
ollow	the steps	يتّبع الخطوات		a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح

have	a happy ending	ذو نهاية سعيدة	play	a trick on — يخدع
	a suggestion	لديه اقتراح		a role — يلعب دورًا
	common interests	لديهم اهتمامات مشتركة	go	travelling — يذهب في رحلة
				wrong — يتعطل
	nowhere to live	ليس لديه مكان يعيش فيه	get	the main idea — يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
admit	يُقِر بـ / يعترف	confess
adult	شخص بالغ - راشد	mature, grown up
common	عام - مُشترك - شائع	widespread, usual, ordinary, customary
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	unpaid

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
admit	يُقِر بـ / يعترف	deny, conceal, renounce	يُنكر
common	عام - مُشترك - شائع	unusual, rare	غير مألوف / نادر
trust	ثقة - يثق بـ	doubt, disbelieve	يشك / لا يصدق
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	compulsory, obligatory, paid	إجباري / مدفوع

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

association	
associate(d) (v) يُصاحب - يَقرن	- Students and teachers associate El-Moasser with high quality.
association(n) جمعية/اتحاد	- I joined a youth association last summer.
association(n) تلازم - ارتباط	- There is a clear association between El-Moasser and high quality.
associated(adj) مُصاحب - متلازم	- El-Moasser is associated with high quality.

culture	
culture(n) الثقافة	- It is important to respect other peoples' cultures.
culture(n) الزراعة	- Culture is the main producer of food.

cultural(adj)	ثقافي	- It is important to respect cultural differences.
cultured(adj)	مثقف	- Mr Ali is a cultured man.
culturally(adv)	ثقافيا	- The Egyptian history is culturally important.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at the end of	في نهاية	It's a good idea to	إنها لفكرة جيدة أن
for no money	مجانا	It's important to	من المهم أن
free/spare time	وقت فراغ	key information	المعلومات الرئيسية
health problem	مشكلة صحية	Why don't you ?	لم لا ؟
how about	ما رأيك في	young people	الشباب
in my opinion	من وجهة نظري		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

give … back to	يَرُد … لـ	stop … from	يمنع … من
happen to	يَحْدُث لـ	talk about	يتحدث عن
put … into	يضع … بداخل	think of	يفكر في
pay (…) back	يسدد - يرد	work for	يعمل لدى
return to	يعود إلى	work in	يعمل في
run away	يهرب	work with	يعمل مع / في
send … away	يطرد	write down	يُسجِّل - يُدوِّن

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

at the age of / in the age of

- **at the age of** في سِن / في عمر
  - I could swim at the age of nine.
- **in the age of** في عصر
  - In the age of Mohammed Ali, Egypt was a very large empire. إمبراطورية

work - job

- **work** عمل / مكان العمل (كلمة لا تُعد)
  - He did much work in the office yesterday.
  - I go to work in my car.
- **a work – works** عمل أدبي أو فني أو هندسي (كلمة تُعد)
  - El-Karnak is a work by Naguib Mahfouz.
- **a job – jobs** وظيفة - مهمة (كلمة تُعد)
  - My first job was as a teacher. (Not: My first work)
  - I have finished all today's jobs.

General Exercise Vocabulary study

• ✪ MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "Attendance on the course is purely voluntary." The antonyms of the word 'voluntary' are .... (إمتحان ٢٠٢٣)
   a. contemporary b. customary c. obligatory
   d. optional e. compulsory

2. She made .... during the lecture المحاضرة.
   a. a job b. a suggestion c. a role
   d. the law e. brief notes

3. If you work harder, you will .... more money.
   a. earn b. do c. make
   d. go e. owe

4. You can say that somebody played a ....
   a. suggestion b. trick c. law
   d. rule e. role

5. When something is common, this means it is ....
   a. usual b. unusual c. uncommon
   d. rare e. widespread

6. "He admitted making a mistake." Which of the following give opposite meanings to the verb 'admit' in this sentence?
   a. Denied b. Confessed c. Concealed
   d. Agreed e. Told

7. You can do your hobbies at your .... time.
   a. busy b. spare c. congested
   d. crowded e. free

8. Homeless children .... to live.
   a. don't have anywhere b. have everywhere c. have somewhere
   d. have nowhere e. have a flat

9. I asked him to .... back the money I had lent to him.
   a. own b. owe c. give
   d. take e. pay

10. In a charity, the poor are helped for ....
   a. free b. much money c. some money
   d. no money e. good

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Every time I .... a suggestion at work, my boss overrides it. (بلقاس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. make b. take c. do d. get
2. Which company do you work ....? (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
   a. up b. off c. for d. out
3. Generous people are always ready to .... voluntary work. (الفيوم - إبشواي ٢٠٢٢)
   a. do b. make c. give d. take
4. Our relation began to .... wrong when we met a bad situation. (الشهيد سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. do b. go c. make d. take
5. It is not always easy to .... new friends nowadays. (بورسعيد - الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. do b. take c. make d. give
6. My sister and I .... common interests.
   a. play b. solve c. make d. have
7. My wife's .... a big difference in my life.
   a. played b. solved c. made d. had
8. "He admitted the mistake he'd made." The word 'admit' in this sentence can be replaced by ....
   a. deny b. conceal c. confess d. a & b
9. He looks .... his old parents who really need help.
   a. as b. after c. alike d. unlike
10. She looks very weak and pale. She must have a .... problem.
    a. wealth b. wealthy c. health d. healthy
11. After the deliberate foul الخطأ المتعمد he had made, the referee sent him ....
    a. away b. in c. on d. back
12. Flu is usually .... with cold weather.
    a. associate b. associates c. associated d. association
13. She was a highly .... woman.
    a. culture b. cultural c. cultured d. culturally
14. I have several .... to do in the office today.
    a. work b. works c. job d. jobs

UNIT 3

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

A summary of David Copperfield (WB page 102)

David Copperfield **grew up**[1] with his mother and his **stepfather,**[2] Mr Murdstone.

Then David's mother **died**[3] and Mr Murdstone took him to live with Mr and Mrs Micawber. David had to **leave**[4] school and work in a factory. Then Mr Micawber went to prison and David had **nowhere**[5] to live.

Without[6] a home to live in, David visited Aunt Betsey and she took him to live with her friend, Mr Wickfield. A man called Uriah Heep also lived with Mr Wickfield and his **daughter,**[7] Agnes, but David didn't **trust**[8] him.

Some time **later**[9], Uriah Heep **played a trick**[10] on Aunt Betsey and took her money and David worked hard to help her.

When David found Uriah Heep, he **admitted**[11] that he took Aunt Betsey's money and David made him **give it back**[12] to her. Then David went travelling around **Europe**[13].

When David **returned**[14] to England, he **married**[15] Agnes and he became a **successful**[16] **writer**[17].

(1) يكبر
(2) زوج الأم
(3) يتوفى
(4) يترك
(5) لا مكان
(6) بدون
(7) ابنة
(8) يثق بـ
(9) فيما بعد
(10) يخدع
(11) يُقر بـ / يعترف
(12) يَرُد
(13) أوروبا
(14) يعود
(15) يتزوج
(16) ناجح
(17) كاتب

Three Egyptian teenagers (WB page 103)

Tarek : In my opinion the Egyptian **Food Bank**[1] (EFB) is making the world a better place because it helps people who haven't got **enough**[2] money for food, and it teaches all of us to think more.

Samira : I have **experienced**[3] the work of Tomorrow's **Dreamer**[4] **Youth**[5] **Association**[6].

In my opinion, it **shows**[7] young people that they can **make a difference**[8], and it teaches them about other **cultures**[9] and **communities**[10]. They are **doing a great job**[11] by helping to **educate**[12] a lot of young people.

(1) بنك الطعام
(2) كافي
(3) يُجرّب
(4) حالم
(5) شباب
(6) جمعية
(7) توضح / تُبيّن
(8) يُحدِث فرقاً
(9) ثقافات
(10) مجتمعات
(11) يقوم بعمل رائع
(12) يُعَلِّم

Maher : The Egyptian **Red Crescent**[13] helps a lot of people every day. When there is a big health problem, we always see the doctors from the Red Crescent on TV. But they also work with communities to stop **health problems**[14] from happening. One day, I want to do some **voluntary work**[15] for them.

(13) الهلال الأحمر
(14) مشاكل صحية
(15) عمل تطوعي

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 30)

B. Let's talk about how to write a great **short story**[1]. It's important to **plan**[2] your story. It should have four parts. At the start, we find out when and where the story is happening and we meet the main **characters**[3].



(1) قصة قصيرة
(2) يخطط
(3) الشخصيات الرئيسية
(4) يفسد / يتعطل
(5) مفاجأة ل

Don't spend too much time describing places and people - your characters need to do something from the start.

In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something **goes wrong**[4]. It's a good idea to have two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a **surprise for**[5] the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what happens to them when things are OK again.

3 Video Script

People have always told stories.

Thousands of years ago they told stories about dangerous places to hunt so the people in their community wouldn't go there. Older people told stories about the people who came before them.

They couldn't write the stories down and they didn't want to lose them, so, they painted pictures to tell stories.

If you put your message into a story, people will remember it because they'll feel an **emotional**[1] **connection**[2] to the people and places in the story. They may even decide to do something to help the people in the story or the people like them.

They say a picture can tell a thousand words, but the words in a story can touch a thousand lives.

(1) عاطفي
(2) ارتباط

UNIT 3

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :
1. Why did people often tell stories in the past ?
2. How did they tell the stories in the past ?
3. Why do stories often have a message ?

PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

General Exercise On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Karim is in the USA. So I haven't seen him .... the age of ten.
   a. for b. since c. already d. ever
2. Salma has never .... to go to hospital.
   a. needed b. needs c. need d. needing
3. Omar has lived in this house since he .... a child.
   a. had been b. was c. will d. is
4. I only bought my new camera last week, but I .... hundreds of photos with it so far.
   a. already take b. already took
   c. have already taken d. already taking
5. Hany can't play football because he .... his leg.
   a. broke b. has broken c. breaking d. had broken
6. Mona is in Cairo now. She .... to Alex.
   a. has gone b. go c. has been d. goes
7. I .... for five hours every day last week.
   a. has worked b. had worked c. worked d. have worked
8. .... you enjoyed your time at the museum ?
   a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Are
9. She has lived in London .... three years.
   a. since b. ago c. for d. during
10. He .... to Cairo. I'll wait for him until he comes back.
    a. goes b. has gone c. has been d. was going
11. Noha has .... cleaned her room. It looks nice now.
    a. already b. yet c. never d. ever

12. I haven't met him .... he moved to a new house.
a. yet b. since c. ago d. when

13. We .... in Cairo since 1993.
a. had living b. have lived c. lived d. are living

14. He .... come back home.
a. never b. has just c. already has d. just has

15. A : How long .... worked in Cairo ? B : Since 2008.
a. has he b. he has c. had he d. he had

16. He .... there for ten years. He intends to retire next year.
a. 'd worked b. worked c. 's working d. 's worked

17. A : .... yourself today? B : Yes, I've had a great time.
a. Have you enjoyed b. Are you enjoying
c. Do you enjoy d. Had you enjoyed

18. I .... my exam. I am celebrating my success with my family.
a. 've passed b. 'd passed c. 'll pass d. am passing

19. I .... Brazil twice up till now.
a. was visited b. visited c. 've visited d. am visiting

20. .... a long time since I last played football.
a. For b. It's c. It has d. It'll be

21. Nothing interesting .... since I last saw him.
a. has happened b. happen c. have happened d. had happened

22. The writer .... his book yet.
a. didn't finish b. has finished c. hasn't finished d. isn't finished

23. Wahid and Mohammed .... friends all their lives. They are often together.
a. will be b. has been c. have been d. were

2 Special cases

24. It is .... since we met.
a. three weeks b.1980 c. yesterday d. school days

25. Mustafa has .... the club. He is on his way there.
a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in

26. Mustafa has .... the club. He looks as if he has had a great time there.
a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in

27. Mustafa has .... the club for three hours. I wonder when he will return home.
a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in

28. I .... Brazil in 2014.
 a. had been to b. have been in c. have been to d. went to
29. I last met him .... he moved to a new house.
 a. yet b. for c. since d. when
30. My grandfather .... ill over the last year. I hope he will get better soon.
 a. has been b. had been c. was d. was being
31. Ali and his family have never travelled since ....
 a. he gets married b. he marries c. his marriage d. married
32. He's been on holiday .... the last two weeks.
 a. while b. for c. when d. since
33. Now, Huda lives in extreme poverty فقر شديد because all the money she earned .... lost.
 a. had been b. had c. has been d. has
34. Have you finished reading that novel ....? That's amazing!
 a. ever b. just c. already d. yet
35. Since you .... your homework, you won't be allowed to go out.
 a. didn't do b. hadn't done c. haven't done d. had done
36. It has .... been the main concern إهتمام of parents to maintain a good future for their children.
 a. never b. ago c. just d. always
37. I didn't feel that a thief entered the flat since I .... the match on TV.
 a. watched b. had watched c. was watching d. have watched

2 Check your understanding

38. This is my house. I .... here for three years.
 a. have lived b. have been lived c. had lived d. had been lived
39. That was my house. I .... there for three years.
 a. have lived b. have been lived c. lived d. had been lived
40. He has just taken an aspirin. This means that he ....
 a. has taken an aspirin a moment ago b. has never taken an aspirin
 c. has taken an aspirin for ages d. took an aspirin a moment ago
41. Yara has never eaten shrimps. This means ....
 a. she doesn't eat shrimps b. she had never eaten shrimps
 c. she hasn't ever eaten shrimps d. she wasn't ever eaten shrimps
42. I have lived here in this city for ten years. What does this mean ?
 a. I no longer live in this city. b. I didn't live in this city.
 c. I have always lived in this city. d. I still live in this city.



Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises



تنويه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

Extreme adjectives الصفات القوية

١ هي صفات ذات معنى قوي مثل :

ex. - amazing رائع / مُذهل - terrible فظيع / رهيب - gigantic ضخم
- furious ساخط - ancient عتيق / قديم جدا - excellent ممتاز
- miserable بائس

٢ لا تستخدم (very / fairly) قبل الصفات القوية :

ex. - very amazing (✗) - fairly miserable (✗)

٣ لاحظ أن :

صفة عادية + very = صفة قوية

ex. - ancient = very old - amazing = very good
- miserable = very unhappy

٤ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية :

absolutely بشكل مُطلق - utterly / entirely كُليًا - completely تماما

ex. - This engine is absolutely excellent. - The temple is utterly ancient.

a / an لكل / كل

١ تُستخدم (a / an) بمعنى (كل) قبل الكلمات الزمنية :

ex. - We go to school five days a week. - This car goes at 130 km an hour.

٢ تُستخدم (a / an) بمعنى (لكل) قبل أسماء المقاييس والأوزان :

ex. - The apples are 25 pounds a kilo.

the + adj. صفة

عند استخدام (the) قبل الصفة التي ليس بعدها موصوف فإنها تتحول لإسم جمع وتأخذ فعل جمع:

صفة adj. + the = اسم جمع + صفة adj.

ex. - Poor people are not able to buy everything they need.
= The poor are not able to buy everything they need. (Not: The poor is)

the + اسم انسان

عند استخدام (the) قبل اسم إنسان مضافًا له (S) فإن ذلك يدل على الأسرة كلها وتأخذ فعل جمع :

- The Hassans were busy last week. (Not: The Hassans is)

the police

كلمة (police) جمع دائماً وتأخذ فعل جمع :

ex. - The police have arrested some criminals.

one - ones

تُستخدم كلمة (one - ones) كضمير فاعل أو مفعول:

ex. - One should work hard to succeed. (One = A person / A student ...)
- I don't need this tablet. I want the black one. (one = tablet)
- Some children learned a skill when they worked. They were the lucky ones. (ones = children who learned a skill)
- These are not my books. Mine are the ones on the table. (ones = books)

make + obj. + inf. / adj

لاحظ استخدام الفعل (make) فى الصيغ التالية بمعنى (يجعل) :

Subj. فاعل + make + obj. مفعول + adj. صفة

= Obj. مفعول + be + made + adj. صفة

ex. - Sama's birth made them happy. = They were made happy by Sama's birth.

Subj. فاعل + make + obj. مفعول + inf. (معلوم)

= Obj. مفعول + be + made + to + inf. (مجهول)

ex. - I make Ahmed water the flowers. = Ahmed is made to water the flowers.

make + adj. صفة + job وظيفة

ex. - A sportsman makes a good police officer.

Nouns ending in (f / fe)

تتحول النهاية (f/ fe) في المفرد إلى (ves) في الجمع لبعض الحالات - لاحظ الأمثلة التالية :

half	نصف	halves
knife	سكين	knives
leaf	ورقة نبات	leaves
life	حياة	lives
thief	لص	thieves
wife	زوجة	wives
wolf	ذئب	wolves
dwarf	قزم	dwarves / dwarfs
scarf	إيشارب (طرحة)	scarves / scarfs
calf	صغير البقر (عجل)	calves

وهناك استثناءات لهذه القاعدة مثل :

ex. - belief اعتقاد - beliefs - chief رئيس – chiefs - brief اختصار – briefs
- safe خزانة - safes - roof سقف - roofs - gulf خليج - gulfs

Making suggestions

لعمل اقتراحات نستخدم :

Let's + inf. .... هيا بنا

ex. - Let's go to the cinema.

We / You could + inf. .... يمكننا / يمكنك أن

ex. - We / You could go to the cinema.

I suggest + (inf. + ing) .... أقترح

ex. - I suggest going to the cinema.

I suggest + (that) + subj. + inf. / (should + inf.) .... أقترح أن

ex. - I suggest (that) we / you go to the cinema.

What / How about + (inf. + ing) ......? ما رأيك في ......؟

ex. - What / How about going to the cinema?

Why don't we / you + inf. ......? لِمَ لا ......؟

ex. - Why don't we / you go to the cinema?

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She was made .... all the house alone. (المراجعة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. clean b. to clean c. cleaning d. to cleaning
2. Leila usually .... twice a year. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. checks her teeth b. get her teeth checked
   c. has her teeth checked d. has checked her teeth
3. .... are a small family.
   a. Ragab b. Ragab's c. Ragabs d. The Ragabs
4. The poor man is .... miserable.
   a. fairly b. absolutely c. absolute d. fair
5. I suggest .... the Plants' Island in Aswan.
   a. visit b. visiting c. to visit d. visited
6. Your success has .... us happy.
   a. made b. caused c. let d. allowed
7. The police .... looking for some escaping criminals.
   a. is b. has c. are d. have

8. Why don't you .... a dentist?
   a. to see　　b. seeing　　c. saw　　d. see
9. Rodayna has two aunts. .... is a teacher and the other is a doctor.
   a. Another　　b. One　　c. Ones　　d. Other
10. I suggest Sama .... to the park with us. She'll enjoy it there.
   a. go　　b. went　　c. has gone　　d. was going
11. The disabled .... more care and interest.
   a. needs　　b. has needed　　c. need　　d. were needed
12. How about .... the match in the stadium?
   a. to watch　　b. watch　　c. watching　　d. to watching
13. I go to the park once .... week.
   a. in　　b. a　　c. at　　d. on
14. The old man made me .... his bag.
   a. carrying　　b. to carry　　c. carry　　d. carried
15. The poor never .... enough money.
   a. have　　b. has　　c. are　　d. is
16. An accountant محاسب .... a good manager.
   a. makes　　b. does　　c. scores　　d. gives
17. My mobile rings at least three times .... hour.
   a. a　　b. an　　c. at　　d. all

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

✪ Read the following passage, then Choose the correct answer. (بني سويف - نادر ٢٠٢٣)

Everyone should watch out for symptoms of stress. Here are a few more obvious swings: You might lose interest in things you usually enjoy. Perhaps you can't concentrate. Maybe you have mood swings. (A mood swing is a sudden, big change in the way you feel). In the morning you feel great, for example. But by evening, your emotions have crashed and you feel that life isn't worth living. There are many causes of stress. A few of them are a divorce or death in the family, a move to a new home, or peer pressure. Other causes might be the doing poorly in school, or doing something you know is wrong.

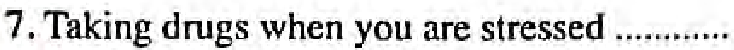
The best way to deal with stress is to get to the heart of the problem. Figure out what's really bothering you and then take steps to solve the problem. For example, suppose you feel pressure from your friends. Maybe they want you to do something you don't want to do.

As hard as it may be, the best solution is to tell them "No!" You may need to find friends who don't push you in the wrong direction. You can't, of course, avoid all stress. But you can take a break from it.

Playing video games, watching a movie, or listening to music can ease your tension. Physical activities such as walking or sports can help, too. Sometimes, taking a break can clear your mind. If you think about your problems later, maybe you can come up with answers. Talking to a trusted friend can help. Even if he or she doesn't have the answers, it helps to express what's bothering you. Avoid drugs and alcohol, though they may seem to offer an easy escape from problems. But sooner or later, they become problems, too.

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of these is not a symptom of stress: ....
   a. You no longer enjoy watching football matches.
   b. For two days, you have been unable to sleep until early morning.
   c. Your team wins an important tournament.
   d. You get a stomachache, every time you are to blame for something.
2. One of these words is the synonym of the word "swings" in the passage: ....
   a. solution b. signals c. changes d. effects
3. Choose an activity that might provide relief from stress: ....
   a. driving in rush-hour traffic b. watching a funny movie
   c. making fun of someone d. not listening to some songs
4. Every little thing seems to make you angry. Maybe you're ....
   a. stressed about something b. not eating well
   c. just like everyone else d. going for a picnic
5. According to the passage, mood swings happen when ....
   a. your friends ask you to do something dangerous.
   b. you get to the heart of the problem.
   c. you lose interest in something you enjoy.
   d. you have contradictory feelings all day long.
6. Your friends urge you to do something dangerous. This is ....
   a. worth a try b. peer pressure
   c. reasonable advice d. relief from pressure



7. Taking drugs when you are stressed ....
   a. eliminates your problem entirely.
   b. is a permanent solution to your problem.
   c. is a temporary solution which will turn to be a problem.
   d. has no passive effect on you.

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

عندما يُطلب منك الكتابة عن قصة ، يمكنك التركيز على النقاط التالية :

1 Which story have you chosen? - ما القصة التي قمت باختيارها ؟

2 Who is the main character in the story? What is he/she like?
- من هي الشخصية الرئيسية في القصة ؟ كيف يبدو / تبدو؟

3 Where does he / she live? What is his /her life like?
- أين تقيم تلك الشخصية ؟ وكيف هي حياته / حياتها ؟

4 Who are the other characters? How did they know the main character?
- من هي الشخصيات الأخرى ؟ كيف عرفوا الشخصية الأساسية ؟

5 How does the story start? What happens first? What happens next? And then? - كيف تبدأ القصة ؟ ماذا يحدث أولاً ؟ ماذا يحدث بعد ذلك؟

6 What is the moral of the story? - ما هو الدرس الأخلاقي في القصة ؟

*** Write an eassy of about 150 words about a story you have read :**

The Old Man and the Sea

Reading is one of my favourite hobbies. In fact, I find reading both interesting and useful. I like reading novels. In this essay I'm going to write about a great novel called "The Old Man and the Sea".

The novel was written by Ernest Hemingway. It is about an old fisherman called Santiago. This fisherman was very poor. He wanted to catch a big fish to sell it for a lot of money.

Santiago had to sail far away into the sea. He was alone in his boat. The rod الصنارة caught a very big marlin. The marlin was bigger than the boat itself. It was impossible for Santiago to pull the fish into the boat.

Santiago waited until the fish was tired and pulled it behind the boat. Unfortunately, some sharks attacked the marlin and ate it. When Santiago reached the beach, the marlin was just a skeleton. Santiago was very tired. He went home and slept.

I like this story because it has a moral. One المرء should be patient. We should have determination إصرار. Despite being old and weak, Santiago tried and didn't give up يستسلم. We also learn that people need cooperation التعاون. To succeed in life, you need to work with others.

3 Translation الترجمة

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a , b , c or d :

1. The state pays great attention to talented people in all fields to create a generation of scholars and artists. (الدمج دماطي ٢٠٢٣)

a. تولي الدولة اهتماماً كبيراً بالموهوبين في بعض المجالات لخلق جيل جديد من العلماء والفنانين.
b. تولي الدولة اهتماماً كبيراً بالموهوبين في جميع المجالات لخلق جيل جديد من العلماء والممثلين.
c. تولي الدولة اهتماماً كبيراً بالموهوبين في جميع المجالات لخلق جيل جديد من العلماء والفنانين.
d. تولي الدولة اهتماماً صغيراً بالموهوبين في جميع المجالات لخلق جيل جديد من العلماء والممثلين.

2. Choosing the right job is important for you because you need to enjoy your work. However, you must know that the employers have the right to choose you.

a. إن اختيار الوظيفة المناسبة أمر مهم بالنسبة لك، لأنك بحاجة إلى الاستمتاع بالعمل. ومع ذلك، يجب أن تعلم أن أصحاب العمل هم أصحاب الحق في اختيارك.
b. إن اختيار الوظيفة المناسبة أمر مهم بالنسبة لك، لأنك بحاجة إلى الاستمتاع بالعمل. ومع ذلك، يجب أن تعلم أن أصحاب العمل هم أصحاب الحق في اختيارك.
c. إن اختيار الوظيفة المناسبة أمر مهم بالنسبة لك، لأنك بحاجة إلى الاستماع بالعمل. ومع ذلك، يجب أن تعلم أن أصحاب العمل هم أصحاب الحق في اختيارك.
d. إن اختيار الوظيفة المناسبة أمر مهم بالنسبة لك، لأنك بحاجة إلى الاستمتاع بالعمل. ومع ذلك، يجب أن تعلم أن العاملين هم أصحاب الحق في اختيارك.

3. Scientific research plays an important role in discovering new medicines and making sure that we use them in the best ways possible. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

a. يلعب البحث العلمي دوراً مهماً في اكتشاف أدوية قديمة والتأكد من أننا نستخدم هذه الأدوية بأفضل الطرق الممكنة.
b. يلعب البحث العلمي دوراً مهماً في اكتشاف أدوية جديدة والتأكد من أننا نستخدم هذه الأدوية بأقصر الطرق الممكنة.
c. يلعب البحث العلمي دوراً مهماً في اكتشاف أدوية جديدة والتأكد من أننا نستخدم هذه الأدوية بأفضل الطرق المميكنة.
d. يلعب البحث العلمي دوراً مهماً في اكتشاف أدوية جديدة والتأكد من أننا نستخدم هذه الأدوية بأفضل الطرق الممكنة.



UNIT 3

2. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

1. تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دوراً فعالاً في حياتنا، مع العلم أنها كما تسهم في تقدم المجتمعات فمن الممكن أن تدمرها. (المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)

a. Modern technology plays an effective role in our life. But we should know that as it contributes to the societies' progress, it can destroy them.

b. Modern technology is playing effective roles in our past life, but we had to know that as it neglects the progress to the continents, it can supports them.

c. Modern technology played an effect role in our previous life, but we should be known that as it contributed the progress to the societies, it could destroy them.

d. Modern technology has an effectively rule in our former life. but we "must have known that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can have ruined them.

---

2. يُعتبر التعليم هو أساس التقدم في جميع الدول، ولذلك تهتم الحكومة المصرية بالتعليم وتزود المدارس بالتكنولوجيا الحديثة.

a. Education is considered the basis of progress in all countries, so the Egyptian government is interested in education and provides schools with modern technology.

b. Education is considered the basis of progress in all countries, so the government Egyptian is interested in education and provides schools with modern technology.

c. Education considered the basis of progress in all countries, so the Egyptian government is interested in education and provides schools with modern technology.

d. Education is considered the basis of progress in all countries, so the Egyptian government is interested at education and provides schools with modern technology.

---

3. تساعد الرياضة الشباب على قضاء أوقات فراغهم، فهي تُقوّي قيم هامة للمجتمع مثل المنافسة الشريفة والعمل الجماعي. (سنورس ٢٠٢٣)

a. Sports helps young people to spend their free time. They reinforce values important to society, like honesty competition and teamwork.

b. Sports help young people to spend their free time. They reinforce values important to society like honest competition and teamwork.

c. Sports help small people spending their free time. It reinforces values important to society, like honest competition and teamwork.

d. Sports help young people to spend their free time. They force values important to society, like honest competition and teamwork.

( ) ( )

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

life

- **life - lives (n)** حياة - حيوات
  - My goal in life is to be a successful doctor.
  - Prices الأسعار have an effect أثر on people's lives.
- **live (d) (v)** يعيش / يحيا - يَسْكُن
  - I think people who lived in the past were happier.
  - Mohammed lives in Aswan.
- **alive (adj)** حَيّ / على قيد الحياة (لا تأتي قبل الموصوف)
  - This fish is alive. (Not: This is an alive fish)
- **live = living (adj)** مَيْت dead ≠ حَيّ / على قيد الحياة (قبل الموصوف فقط)
  - People don't eat live animals. (Not: ... animals that are live)
- **live (adj)** مُسَجَّل prerecorded ≠ مُباشِر / على الهواء مباشرة
  - We all prefer watching live matches on TV.
- **lively (adj)** ملئ بالحيوية والنشاط
  - Sama is a lively child.
- **livelihood (adj)** مصدر دَخْل - مصدر رزق
  - Farming is the source مصدر of livelihood in villages.

association

- **association (n)** إتحاد / مُنَظّمة / جمعية
  - This youth association helps poor people.
- **associate (n) = colleague** زميل عمل / شريك
  - You need to work with your associates to finish the report.التقرير

- لاحظ التعبير التالي :

- **in association with** بمصاحبة / بالتزامن مع
  - The green colour of trees usually comes in association with spring.
- **associate (d) (v)** يُلازِم / يُصاحِب / يأتي مع
  - Bad cough associates smoking.
- **associate(d) ... with (v)** يربط بين ... و ...
  - People usually associate high price السعر with quality. الجودة

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- be + associated with + شخص / شئ يكون مُصاحِب أو مُلازِم لـ
  - Overweight الوزن الزائد is associated with health problems.
- associate with + شخص يُلازِم / يُرافِق / يُصاحِب
  - Don't associate with bad friends.

UNIT 3

culture

• **culture (n)** ثقافة
- The culture of Arab people is different from European culture.

• **culture (n)** حضارة
- We are all proud مفخورين of ancient Egyptian culture.

• **culture = cultivation (n)** الزراعة
- Rice culture needs a lot of water.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:
- western culture الثقافة الغربية
- local culture الثقافة المحلية
- national culture الثقافة القومية
- common / dominant culture الثقافة السائدة
- culture shock صدمة ثقافية

• **cultural (adj)** ثقافي
- There are cultural differences اختلافات between countries.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- cultural heritage الموروث الثقافي
- multicultural society مجتمع متعدد الثقافات

• **cultured = cultivated (adj)** مُثقف
- Mr Nasser is a cultured person.

debt

• **debt (n)** دَيْن
- He found a second job to pay back his debts.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

• **be in debt to** مَدين لـ
- The old man can't retire يتقاعد because he is in debt.
- He was in debt to the bank.

• **be + heavily / deeply + in debt** عليه ديون كثيرة
- The old man can't retire يتقاعد because he is heavily in debt.

• **get / fall / run into debt** يُصبح مدينا
- The old man can't retire يتقاعد because he got / fell / ran into debt.

• **owe debt of gratitude / thanks** مدين بالشكر أو الامتنان
- I owe a debt of gratitude to my parents.

- ولاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية:
- have a debt عليه دين
- pay off debts يسدد الديون
- clear the debts يسدد كل الديون
- service a debt يسدد فوائد الديون
- write off / cancel a debt يتنازل عن الديون
- a heavy debt دين كبير

• **indebted (to) (adj)** مَدين / غارم
- He is indebted to a car company.

earn

- **earn (ed) (v)** يكسب مال مقابل عمل
  - Not many farmers earn a lot of money.
- **earn (ed) (v)** يربح / يحقق أرباح
  - This book earned two million dollars.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية :

- **earn (respect / a reputation ...)** ينال (الاحترام / سمعة طيبة ...)
  - He has earned the respect of all his friends.
- **earn a living** يكسب رزقه من / مصدر رزقه هو
  - He earns a living by selling fruit and vegetables.

- ولاحظ أيضاً :

- earn good money يكسب الكثير من المال
- earn a fortune يكسب ثروة

- **earner (n)** كاسب / ذو أجر / مصدر دخل
  - My father is the only earner in our family.
  - This shop is our chief رئيسي earner.
- **earnings (n)** دخل / ربح (دائماً جمع)
  - His earnings are not enough for his family.

experience

- **experience (of / with) (n)** تجربة حياتية / موقف (كلمة تُعد)
  - I learned a lot from my childhood experiences.
- **experience (of / in / with) (n)** الخبرة (كلمة لا تُعد)
  - Mr Ashraf has a lot of experience in teaching.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- have experience لديه خبرة
- get / gain experience يكتسب خبرة
- lack experience تنقصه الخبرة
- past / previous experience خبرة سابقة

- **experience (d) (v)** يمر بتجربة - يتأثر بموقف / مشكلة - يُجرِّب
  - People should experience things to learn from them.
- **experienced (in) (adj)** ذو خبرة / مُحنَّك ≠ inexperienced عديم الخبرة / غير مُجرِّب
  - Ashraf is an experienced teacher.

merchant

- **merchant (n)** تاجر (شخص / شركة)
  - He makes a lot of money as a merchant.
- **merchandise (n)** بضائع - سلع
  - His stores مخازن are full of high-quality merchandise.

miserable

- **miserable = very unhappy (adj)** بائس / تعيس / شقي
  - She has lost her job and family. She looks miserable.

- **miserable = very little / very bad (adj)** ضئيل / سيء جداً (قبل الاسم فقط)
  - His miserable income دَخل isn't enough for his family.
  - I was angry because of my team's miserable performance. اداء سيئ
- **misery (n)** تعاسة / شقاء / بؤس / معاناة
  - You don't know the misery of war الحرب and poverty. الفقر
- **miser (n)** بخيل
  - I'm sure he won't donate any money. He is a miser.

owe

- **owe (d) + شخص + مبلغ مالي** يدين لـ ... بـ ...
  - Omar owes Ali ten pounds. = Omar needs to pay ten pounds to Ali.
- **owe (d) + مبلغ مالي + to + شخص** يدين بـ ... لـ ...
  - Omar owes ten pounds to Ali.
- **owe (d) + شخص + for + شيء** يدين لـ ... مقابل ...
  - You owe me for the drinks.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- **owe + شخص + a debt** يدين بالفضل لـ
  - We owe our parents a debt.
- **owe everything (it all) to + شخص** يدين بكل شئ لـ
  - I owe everything to my family.
- **owe + شخص + a lot / a great deal** يدين لـ ... بالكثير من الفضل
  - She owes her mother a great deal.

prison

- **prison (n)** السجن
  - Prison is the right place for criminals. (Not: The prison …)
  - لاحظ عدم استخدام (the) قبل كلمة (prison) عند الحديث عنه كمكان لعقاب المجرمين كما في المثال السابق، لكن يمكن استخدام (the) في أي سياق آخر:
  - Visitors to the prison wait here.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- go to prison يتم حبسه
- send … to prison يضع ... في السجن
- put … in prison يضع ... في السجن
- escape from prison يهرب من السجن
- be released from prison يُطلق سراحه من السجن
- let ……. out of prison يُخرج .... من السجن
- get out of prison يخرج من السجن
- a prison sentence (term) حُكم بالسجن

- **prisoner (n)** سجين
  - In this prison, there is a library for prisoners who like reading.

• **imprisonment (n)** عقوبة الحبس - مدة الحبس
- No one has seen him since his imprisonment.

• **imprison(ed) (v)** يحبس / يسجن - يقيد حرية
- He was imprisoned for selling drugs. المخدرات

youth

• **youth (n)** مرحلة الشباب (لا تُعد)
- I was very fit in my youth.

• **youth (n)** الشباب بوجه عام (اسم الجمع)
- The youth of Egypt are ready to help their country.

• **youth – youths (n)** شاب - شباب (تُعد)
- A group of youths were arrested for troublemaking إثارة الشغب last week.

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
dis-	تُكوّن العكس	disabled	مُعاق
mis-	تعطى معنى بطريقة خاطئة	mistake misunderstand misspell	خطأ - يخطئ يُسئ فهم يتهجى بطريقة خاطئة
re-	يُعيد	review rewrite	يُراجع يُعيد كتابة
step-	أحد الأقارب (نتيجة الزواج من أحد الوالدين)	stepfather stepmother stepfamily	زوج الأم زوجة الأب أسرة زوج الأم أو زوجة الأب

3 suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-able	تُكوّن صفة	miserable	تعيس - بائس
-er	تُكوّن اسم فاعل	dreamer	حالم
-ful	تُكوّن صفة	successful	ناجح
-ing	تُكوّن صفة / اسم	ending (n) amazing(adj)	نهاية مذهل
-ly	تُكوّن ظرف	exactly	تماماً - بالتحديد
-al	تُكوّن صفة / اسم	criminal factual(adj) arrival(n) refusal(n)	مجرم - إجرامي واقعي - متعلق بالحقائق وصول رفض

UNIT 3

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The police .... his sudden fortune الثروة with the bank robbery السطو.
   a. paid b. mistook c. planned d. associated
2. .... animals are kept on farms.
   a. Alive b. Live c. Life d. Lives
3. Egypt was famous for cotton ....
   a. culture b. association c. capture d. section
4. I .... a feeling of nausea غثيان when I am on a boat.
   a. pay b. brainstorm c. feel d. experience
5. He applied for .... as a tour guide in a tourist company.
   a. work b. a work c. job d. a job

Advanced Exercise on Language

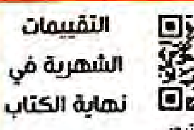
مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I injured my knee and I haven't played football ....
   a. already b. never c. for d. since
2. We have lived here .... fall.
   a. yet b. already c. since d. for
3. Omar is the cleverest student I have ever seen. This means that ....
   a. I have seen many clever students like Omar
   b. I have seen many students as clever as Omar
   c. It is the first time for me to see a student who has this degree of cleverness
   d. Omar is not as clever as the students I have ever seen
4. Nouran hasn't finished doing her homework yet. That means ....
   a. Nouran didn't start doing her homework
   b. Nouran is going to start doing her homework
   c. Nouran is still doing her homework
   d. Nouran finished doing her homework
5. It is still raining. I mean to say that ....
   a. it has rained b. it was raining
   c. it has stopped raining d. it hasn't stopped raining yet

Test on Unit 3

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create



1. Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "I didn't enjoy reading that novel. It was boring."
   The antonyms of "boring" are .... (سلاقلة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. interesting b. tiring c. annoying d. amazing e. exhausting
2. "He felt depressed and miserable." 'Miserable' is a synonym for "............" and "............". (دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. rich b. sad c. worried d. unhappy e. glad

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

3. He was arrested as he .... money to the bank. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. lent b. owed c. owned d. borrowed
4. Debts drove a friend of mine into a life of .... (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٣)
   a. misery b. refinery c. pleasure d. treasure
5. Most football players .... a lot of money. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)
   a. win b. beat c. fill d. earn
6. .... is a word that expresses the beliefs, customs and traditions in a community. (قوص ٢٠٢٣)
   a. Cloture b. Culture c. Creature d. Religion
7. I have borrowed too much money to buy this house and now I am heavily in ....
   a. debt b. trouble c. merchant d. review
8. I have joined a youth .... to help with local community issues.
   a. entertainment b. culture c. association d. skill
9. I know .... sure that you are right.
   a. of b. for c. by d. in
10. This is the most interesting novel I have .... read. (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
    a. never b. over c. already d. ever
11. A: Have you finished this exercise .... ? B: Yes, I have finished it.
    a. for b. ever c. since d. yet
12. It's the first time I .... the temple of Philae. (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٣)
    a. never seen b. ever have seen
    c. have ever seen d. yet seen
13. I haven't seen Ali .... the last time we met in Cairo. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
    a. since b. for c. ago d. which

UNIT 3

14. It is two weeks since we last .... (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. have met   b. had met   c. met   d. has met
15. Have you finished the exam .... ? Wonderful! (المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)
   a. ever   b. yet   c. already   d. just
16. We haven't seen Amr .... the last visit. (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. for   b. yet   c. already   d. since

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Everything has its pros and cons. Humans are always advised to make the best use of the best things about something and avoid the bad ones that come out of it. Everything in our world can be useful or harmful according to the way we use them. A knife is certainly useful because we use it for cutting or chopping things, but it is harmful in the hands of a child or a mad man. Fire is necessary for us because it gives us heat and light and helps us cook our food, however it can be the cause of death and destruction if it is used carelessly. On the other hand, poison, which is certainly harmful, can be helpful when it is used, for example in treating a sick man.

The way in which we deal with everything around us is connected with our personality **traits**. We are either good people or bad people and our character **determines** our behaviour towards things and people. We can make good use of anything, if we ourselves are good. In the hands of a bad person, everything is bad and destructive. On the contrary, in the hands of a good person everything is good and useful. Money which can be spent on making guns, bombs and poisonous gases, can be spent on useful purposes such as reclaiming the desert, building new cities, treating sick people and so on. So, the only way to make life better is to make ourselves better. The world around us is nothing but a mirror in which we see ourselves.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. What do you think the underlined word "**traits**" means?
   a. Demerits   b. Drawbacks   c. Qualities   d. Disadvantages
18. What do things look like with a bad person?
   a. they are constructive   b. they are destructive
   c. they are beneficial   d. they are very useful
19. What makes us deal well or badly with things?
   a. Our own character   b. The demerits of things
   c. The things themselves   d. The merits of things

20. What happens when we use fire in a careless way?

a. It improves our life
b. It ruins things
c. It benefits our life
d. It makes our life better

21. We can make the good use of money if it isn't spent on ....

a. making guns and bombs
b. reclaiming the desert
c. useful purposes
d. treating sick people

22. The best title for the passage is ....

a. How to spend money
b. How to deal with bad things
c. How to use the knife better
d. How to make the world better

23. The synonym of the underlined word "**determines**" is ....

a. recognizes
b. decides
c. prepares
d. arranges

24. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

Thanks to modern inventions, life has become easy. One can go from one place to another in a car, by train or by plane. Modern means of transport have made it possible to enjoy travel.

a. شكراً للاختراعات الحديثة، أصبحت الحياة سهلة. يمكن للمرء أن ينتقل من مكان إلى آخر في السيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة. لقد جعلت وسائل النقل الحديثة من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر.

b. بفضل الاختراعات الحديثة، أصبحت الحياة سهلة. يمكن للمرء أن ينتقل من مكان إلى آخر في السيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة. لقد جعلت وسائل النقل الحديثة من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر.

c. بفضل الاختراعات الحديثة، أصبحت الحياة سهلة. يمكن للمرء أن ينتقل من مكان إلى آخر في السيارة أو بالتدريب أو بالطائرة. لقد جعلت وسائل النقل الحديثة من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر.

d. بفضل الاختراعات الحديثة، أصبحت الحياة سهلة. يمكن للمرء أن ينتقل من مكان إلى آخر في السيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة. لقد جعلت وسائل النقل الحديثة من المستحيل الاستمتاع بالسفر.

25. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

إن ضغوط الحياة رغم شدتها لا يجب أن تكون عائقاً أمام استمتاع جميع الناس بحياتهم. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

a. The pressures of life, however their intensity, should be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.

b. The pressure of life, despite their intensity should be an obstacle to all people enjoying their live.

c. The pressures of life, despite their intensity, shouldn't be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.

d. The pressures of life, despite their intensity, shouldn't be an obstacle to some people enjoying their lives.

26. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words :**

How to lead a better life

....

....

Revision 1

Based On Units 1, 2 & 3

SB pages 36 : 41 WB pages 106 : 109

PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

beat - beat - beaten (v)	يهزم	lying(adj)	ممدد - راقد
beginning(n)	بداية	marine life (n)	الحياة البحرية
boyhood (n)	صبا - صبيانية	marry (ied) (v)	يتزوج
champion (n)	بطل	move (d) (v)	ينتقل
compare (d) (v)	يقارن	national team (n)	المنتخب الوطني
competition (n)	مسابقة	pharaoh (n)	فرعون
completely (adv)	بالكامل	pocket (n)	جيب
dream - dreamed / dreamt	حلم - يحلم	puzzle (n)	لُغز
end (n)	نهاية / خاتمة	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلي
final (n)	نهائي	recording (n)	التسجيل
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع / يَلي	run – ran - run (v)	يُدير - يجري
footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم	squash (n)	رياضة الاسكواش
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	strange (adj)	غريب
join (ed) (v)	ينضم	success (n)	النجاح
junior (n) (adj)	الناشئين	tiring (adj)	مُتعِب
lay - laid - laid(v)	يضع - تبيض	top (n)	أفضل - قمة
lie - lay - lain(v)	يرقد / يتمدد	twice (adv)	مرتين
lie - lied(v)	يَكذِب	vote (d) (v - n)	يُصَوِّت / يقترع - تصويت / اقتراع

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

Arsenal (n)	نادي أرسنال الإنجليزي	readers (n)	القُرّاء
Basel (n)	نادي بازل السويسري	still (adv)	لا يزال
describe (d) (v)	يَصِف	Switzerland (n)	سويسرا
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	team (n)	فريق
interesting (adj)	شَيِّق	times (n)	مرّات
low (adj)	مُنخفض	turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
main (adj)	رئيسي	wife (n)	زوجة

PART II READING & LISTENING

Raneem El Weleily

(SB page 36)

Raneem El Weleily is one of Egypt's most famous **faces.**[1] She was world **champion**[2] of the **squash**[3] World Open in 2017, when she **beat**[4] another Egyptian, Nour El Sherbini. She also **twice**[5] **reached**[6] the **final**[7] in 2014 and 2016 and was the world's top[8] women squash player in 2019. Raneem was born in Alexandria in 1989.

She first played for Egypt's squash **team**[9] when she was only ten. She became World **Junior**[10] Champion in both 2005 and 2007 before winning her first **competition**[11] as an **adult**[12] in 2009. She is now **married**[13] to another top squash player, Tarek Momen. When she is not playing squash, she likes to listen to music and **do puzzles**,[14] but it is her **success**[15] at squash that has **inspired**[16] many young Egyptians to play the game.

(1) شخصيات
(2) بطل
(3) رياضة الاسكواش
(4) يهزم
(5) مرتين
(6) يصل إلى
(7) نهائي
(8) أفضل
(9) فريق
(10) الناشئين
(11) مسابقة
(12) راشد / بالغ
(13) متزوجة
(14) يحل ألغاز
(15) النجاح
(16) يُلهم

Mohamed Elneny

(SB page 36)

Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian **footballer**[1]. He is a **strong**[2] player, and he has played for the Egyptian **national team**[3] more than 60 **times.**[4] He has **scored**[5] more than six times for Egypt, and he is often on television. Elneny was born in 1992 and **moved**[6] from his **boyhood**[7] **club**[8] Al Ahly, in Cairo, to Al-Mokawlon in Nasr City in 2010.

He played for Al-Mokawlon at the **same**[9] time as Mohamed Salah, and the two footballers became good friends. In 2013, Elneny went to **Switzerland**[10] and **joined**[11] **Basel**,[12] one year after Salah went to the same club. Then Elneny went to London, England to join **Arsenal.**[13]

He is **still**[14] good friends with Salah. "I'm happy to have been with him since the **beginning**[15] and he has not **changed**,[16]" he says.

(1) لاعب كرة قدم
(2) قوي
(3) المنتخب الوطني
(4) مرّات
(5) يُحرز
(6) ينتقل
(7) صبا
(8) نادي
(9) نفس
(10) سويسرا
(11) ينضم إلى
(12) نادي بازل
(13) نادي أرسنال
(14) لا يزال
(15) بداية
(16) يتغير

How to write a short story ?

(SB page 38)

Why you write a long book when you can write a **short story?**[1] A short story can have 200 words or **less.**[2] The writer can't **describe**[3] many people or places and so there aren't so many **adjectives**[4] in a short story. However, we still need a beginning, a **middle**[5] and an **end**[6] to the story. And the story needs to be **interesting,**[7] so we **include**[8] important information and an interesting **main**[9] character, but **perhaps**[10] only one. **In fact,**[11] it can be interesting to write in **the first person**[12] (I did this ...) and then the person telling the story is the main **character.**[13]

Readers[14] can't learn much about this character, perhaps not even their name, but something has to happen to them. This might be a **surprise,**[15] a problem or something that **goes wrong.**[16] Readers don't always **find out**[17] what the character does in the end, but they need to be able to **imagine**[18] the end of the story.

(1) قصة قصيرة
(2) أقل
(3) يَصِف
(4) صفات
(5) وسط
(6) نهاية / خاتمة
(7) شيّق
(8) يُضمِّن
(9) رئيسي
(10) ربما
(11) في الحقيقة
(12) ضمير المتكلم
(13) شخصية
(14) القُرّاء
(15) مفاجأة
(16) يتعطل-يختل
(17) يكتشف
(18) يتخيل

(SB page 37)

Presenter : Many people want to work with animals or to help the environment. A good way to get experience of this kind of work is as a volunteer. This means working without money, sometimes in another country, and it can be very hard work, but most young people love the experience. We spoke to three young student volunteers to find out what they did during their summer holidays last year.

Adam : Hi, my name's Adam. I spent the summer working with an organisation based on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's a beautiful place and many people go there for a holiday. Most tourists like to go diving to see the colourful fish. However, there are so many tourists now that some of the fish are finding life difficult. My job was to help monitor the impact tourists are causing. So, while the tourists were at the beach, or swimming in the sea, I was on a boat counting and monitoring marine life in different areas.

It's important to know where the fish are and how many there are of them. Then, at the end of the day, while the tourists were eating in restaurants, I was with a team helping to clean the beaches. It was hard work, but I really enjoyed it. I'm sure my work has helped people to understand the impact tourists have on the Red Sea.

Lara : My name's Lara and I've recently returned from Greece. I spent most of my time on a quiet beach watching big turtles! These beautiful animals visit the same beach every year to lay their eggs. They lay a lot of eggs, but many of the eggs are taken by birds, or flooded by the rain and the sea. These turtles are endangered, so each one of their eggs is important. It was my job to help protect the eggs and to stop tourists visiting the areas where the eggs lie in the sand. It can be a bit of a disaster when tourists visit and put sun umbrellas in the same place as the turtle eggs ! The work was very tiring because we often worked at night. So, when my friends were sleeping, I was there on the beach ! But it was a great place and I loved observing the big, slow turtles when they left the beach and slowly swam off into the sea. In my opinion, it's a great project and I've learned a lot more about conservation, too.

Munir : I'm Munir and I've just spent an amazing few weeks in the north of Thailand. It's a very isolated area and I had to take an internal flight to get there. Thailand is known for its elephants, and many farmers use them on their farms. The elephants are also used to carry tourists. Not all the elephants have an easy life, so I worked with conservationists who were trying to help elephants return to a more natural life in the wild. The elephants are very intelligent and it was amazing helping to feed them. It was not easy work, though. The rainforest was very hot, and there were a lot of dangerous snakes and insects. On one day, a spider bit me on the hand when I was putting something in my pocket. My hand swelled up and I thought, Oh, no! I have a big problem ! But local people told me that the spider wasn't a dangerous one, and after a day or two my hand was fine. I don't think everyone would find life in Thailand easy, but I loved it. I've even learnt some Thai. Now, I can communicate with Thai people as well as the elephants !



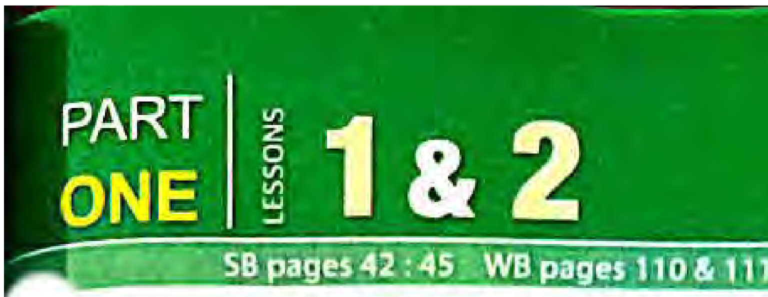
UNIT

4 Making new friends

SB pages 42 : 51 WB pages 110 : 115

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :** A magazine article about moving to a new town
- **Writing :** An email to a magazine's problem page
- **Listening :** A radio phone-in about bullying at school
- **Speaking :** Having a debate
- **Language :** Articles, Countable/uncountable nouns
- **Life skills :** Respect for diversity; Communication





PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advice(n)	نصيحة	noticeboard(n)	لوحة الإعلانات
advise(d) (v)	ينصح	populate(d) (v)	يُعمِّر مكان/يَقطُن
communicate(d) (v)	يتواصل · يتصل	population(n)	(عدد) السكان
communication(n)	تواصل · اتصال	produce(d) (v)	يُنتِج
connect(ed) (v)	يوصل · يربط	production(n)	إنتاج
connected(adj)	مرتبط · متصل	pronounce(d) (v)	ينطق
connection(n)	ارتباط · اتصال	pronunciation(n)	النُطق
inform(ed) (v)	يُعلِم · يُخبر	salutation(n)	تَحِيَّة
information (n)	معلومة/معلومات	take … for granted	يُسَلِّم … بـ / يتقبل … كأمر مُسَلَّم به

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

allow(ed) (v)	يسمح بـ	feel - felt (v)	تبدو/تُعطي إحساس
allowed(adj)	مسموح به	friendship(n)	صداقة
article(n)	مقال	grade(n)	تقدير · مرتبة · درجة
avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب · يتحاشى	greeting(n)	تَحِيَّة
body (n)	مَتن (صُلب الموضوع)	header(n)	رأس الصفحة
closing (n)	إنهاء · خِتام	optional(adj)	اختياري
conversation(n)	محادثة	personal (adj)	شخصي
cool(adj)	على الموضة · جميل / جذاب	practice(n)	ممارسة · تدريب
diversity(n)	التنوّع	recipient(n)	متلقٍ · مُتسلِّم
enjoy(ed) (v)	يستمتع	serious(adj)	خطير · جاد
extra(adj / adv)	إضافي · آخر	teammates(n)	زملاء الفريق
face(d) (n - v)	وجه · يواجه	wear - wore - worn (v)	يرتدي

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise		Understand
advice	نصيحة	an opinion someone gives to help you
connection	رابط · علاقة	something that brings people together
noticeboard	لوحة الإعلانات	a board on a wall that people put information on
take … for granted	يُسَلِّم … بـ / يتقبل … كأمر مُسَلَّم به	to think something is true or will stay the same



Exercise On Vocabulary

Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. My friend gave me some .... about how to finish the project . (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
   a. advice b. advices c. advises d. advise
2. They all have smartphones, so they are all .... to the internet. (المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)
   a. disjoined b. decorated c. connected d. corrected
3. There is a close .... between family background and academic achievement. (السنطة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. connection b. communication
   c. conjunction d. commemoration
4. The coach put the list of players up on the .... before the match. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
   a. lecture b. noticeboard c. blackboard d. dashboard
5. Most people take clean water for ...., but not all places have it. (المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)
   a. granted b. given c. done d. having
6. I was .... that I got the best marks in the exam. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
   a. asked b. advised c. performed d. informed
7. Snow has prevented .... with the outside world for three days. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
   a. security b. safety c. collection d. communication
8. The .... of electricity from solar energy depends on light from the sun. (دمنهور ٢٠٢٣)
   a. pronunciation b. salutation c. population d. production
9. The old family house is .... by grandparents. (إسنا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. polluted b. populated c. pollution d. population
10. Whales are killed for the oil and the food they ....
    a. eat b. get c. drink d. produce
11. Our teacher always .... us to study hard to get high marks. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)
    a. advises b. devises c. device d. advice
12. Use electronic dictionaries to know how to .... new words.
    a. communicate b. populate c. pronounce d. produce
13. Use electronic dictionaries to know the .... of new words.
    a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation

14. Most of the world's .... live in cities.
a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation

15. Learn foreign languages to .... with tourists from different countries.
a. communicate b. populate c. pronounce d. produce

16. You start an email with the opening ....
a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation

2 Important Vocabulary

17. He is wearing .... new clothes. I like them. (ابو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
a. coal b. call c. cool d. clay

18. Don't interfere with other people's affairs and don't ask them .... questions. (ابشواي ٢٠٢٣)
a. personal b. personality c. personnel d. person

19. If you want to ....good health, avoid smoking. (إدارة اسوان – أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
a. follow b. be c. enjoy d. having

20. If you can leave a question in an exam, this question is .... (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)
a. social b. advisory c. optional d. compulsory

21. It is important to respect the .... of opinions and ideas, even if they are different from yours. (كفر الشيخ – دسوق ٢٠٢٠)
a. leader b. friendship c. diversity d. punctuation

22. Did you form any close .... while you were at school? (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
a. friendly b. a friend c. friendships d. friends'

23. Some parents have bad memories of their own .... years. (قنا – قوص ٢٠٢٠)
a. teenage b. teenager c. marvellous d. splendid

24. You won't succeed if you don't have support from other ....
a. contractions b. diversity c. salutations d. teammates

25. He becomes nervous when he .... a difficult situation.
a. stresses b. faces c. welcomes d. drops

26. His .... clothes make a lot of people admire him.
a. fashioned b. fashionable c. cold d. old-fashioned

27. People who are sociable اجتماعي find it easy to start .... with others.
a. contractions b. problems c. conversations d. diversity



28. My school bag is full. There's no room مكان for .... books.
a. this b. no c. less d. extra

3 Definitions

29. A/An .... is something that brings people together.
a. cheating b. phone-in c. address d. connection

30. A .... is a board on a wall that people put information on.
a. list b. noticeboard c. circle d. contraction

31. When you think something is true or will stay the same, then you ....
a. find it difficult b. find it easy
c. take it easy d. take it for granted

32. .... is an opinion someone gives to help you.
a. Advice b. A belief c. Practice d. A debate

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do/take	extra practice	يقوم بتدريبات إضافية	**get**	easier	يَسهُل / يجعل ... أسهل
do	team sports	يمارس رياضات جماعية	**give**	advice on	ينصح بخصوص
face	a problem	يواجه مشكلة	**go**	online	يدخل على الإنترنت
feel	better	يشعر بتحسُّن	**join**	clubs	ينضم لأندية
	at home	يشعر بالراحة	**make**	friends	يُكوِّن صداقات
	connected to	لديه ارتباط بـ		a connection	يربط/يُدرك العلاقة
	like	يرغب في / يريد - يشعر كأنه	**pass**	an exam	يجتاز امتحان
	so hard	تبدو صعبة/صلبة جدًا	**start**	a conversation	يبدأ حوار
	stressed	يشعر بضغوط		a new school	ينتقل لمدرسة جديدة

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
avoid	يتجنب	ignore, neglect
communicate	يوضح	convey
closing (n)	إنهاء - ختام	conclusion, end, ending
connection(n)	ارتباط - اتصال	link, relationship, relation
cool(adj)	على الموضة / جميل / جذاب	fashionable

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
agree(d) (v)	يوافق	disagree, refuse, turn down	يرفض
angry(adj)	غاضب	contented, satisfied, pleased	راضٍ - سعيد
avoid	يتجنب	confront, face	يواجه
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر
kind(adj)	طيّب - عطوف	unkind	سيء / قاسٍ
optional(adj)	اختياري	compulsory, obligatory	إجباري
personal(adj)	شخصي / خاص	public	عام

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a serious problem	مشكلة خطيرة	part of a team	عضو في فريق
ask ... to your house	تدعو ... لمنزلك	pieces of advice	نصائح
at breaktime	في الفسحة	read aloud	يقرأ بصوت عالٍ
Here's some advice	ها هي بعض النصائح	respect for diversity	احترام التنوع
instead of	بدلًا من	revise for exams	يراجع للامتحانات
make it easier	يجعل من الأسهل	show the reason for	يوضح السبب
nursing people	تمريض/رعاية الناس	spend time with	يقضي وقت مع
on my own	بمفردي	stressed about	مضغوط بشأن

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

address ... by	يخاطب ... بـ	go out (with)	يخرج (مع)
ask for	يطلب	move to	ينتقل إلى
check ... for	يفحص ... من أجل	revise for	يراجع من أجل
come out	يخرج - تَصْدُر	talk about	يتحدث عن
connect with	يرتبط بـ - يربط بـ	talk to	يتحدث إلى
focus on	يُرَكِّز على		

6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

practice / practise

- practice (n) — ممارسة - تدريب
  - You need more practice to achieve more progress. تحقق المزيد من التقدم
- practise(v) — يمارس - يتدرب

- لاحظ أنه في الإنجليزية الأمريكية تُستخدم (practice) كاسم وفعل:

- I practised / practiced speaking English by talking to my online English friends.

• **do / take practice** يؤدي تمرين
- He did the guitar practice.

advise / advice / a tip

• **advise (on / about / to) (v)** ينصح ... بخصوص / أن
- I advised her to work hard.

• **advice (on / about) (n)** نصيحة بخصوص
- I gave him advice about his future.

- لاحظ أن كلمة (advice) لا تعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد.

- I gave him an / one advice. (✗)
- I gave him some many / a few / several advices. (✗)
- I gave him two / three advices. (✗)
- I gave him some advice. (✓)
- I gave him a piece of advice. (✓) - I gave him pieces of advice. (✓)

• **tip - tips (n)** نصيحة - نصائح
- I gave him a tip about his future.

noticeboard (n)

• **noticeboard (n)** لوحة الإعلانات (في الإنجليزية البريطانية)
- You can find the company's email on the noticeboard.

• **bulletin board (n)** لوحة الإعلانات (في الإنجليزية الأمريكية)
- You can find the company's email on the bulletin board.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. I thanked my sister when she .... me to use her mobile.
(الشهيد سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
a. allowed b. let c. borrowed d. permitted e. warned

2. "You should avoid what hurts you." The antonyms of "avoid" in this context are ....
(الدمو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. improve b. confront c. ignore d. face e. follow

3. One can say that one .... practice.
a. sells b. makes c. admits d. does e. takes

4. You can say that someone has started a ....
a. police b. new school c. point of view
d. conversation e. good marks

5. After some time, I started to feel .... and I calmed down.

a. at home　b. better　c. stressed　d. so hard　e. like

6. "My father is angry with my brother." The adjective 'angry' here is antonymous with ....

a. contented　b. discontented　c. satisfied　d. dissatisfied　e. hungry

7. You can address someone by their ....

a. dress　b. money　c. title　d. skill　e. name

8. I asked my father to give me ....

a. an advice　b. advice　c. advise
d. a piece of advice　e. a few advice

✪ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't .... it for granted that all people will help you for free. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)

a. do　b. make　c. have　d. take

2. All the problems I .... are solved with my father's help. (ابنها ٢٠٢٣)

a. join　b. fix　c. face　d. go

3. It isn't always easy to .... new friends. (القنترة ٢٠٢٣)

a. do　b. give　c. take　d. make

4. Check the text .... mistakes. (الحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

a. for　b. on　c. with　d. by

5. He can't .... a connection between them.

a. do　b. make　c. have　d. take

6. I don't .... online until I have finished all my jobs.

a. do　b. go　c. have　d. make

7. I can't sleep. I .... so stressed

a. fight　b. feel　c. give　d. take

8. .... team sports helps you mix تختلط with others and be sociable اجتماعي.

a. Doing　b. Going　c. Calling　d. Making

9. Civilized متحضر people show respect .... diversity.

a. for　b. from　c. at　d. without

10. We went to a .... to buy flowers. (اسوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٠)

a. nursery　b. nursing　c. planets　d. plants

11. You need some more .... to be better at goalkeeping.

a. practice　b. practise　c. practises　d. practised



12. .... patients in hospitals is an important job.
a. Nursery b. Nurses c. Nursing d. Nursed

PART III READING & LISTENING

Reading Texts

New in town

(SB page 43)



It's day one at a new school in a new town. You've got all the **paper**[1] and pens you need. You're **wearing**[2] **cool**[3] new clothes. But, you don't know anyone and you're not sure where to go. Starting at a new school **feels**[4] so hard because you don't have any friends there to help you. It's very easy to feel **stressed**[5], but life will get easier. Here's some advice to help you.

Don't **take it for granted**[6] that other students will start a **conversation**[7]. Ask other people questions about themselves. Everyone likes talking about themselves. **Try**[8] asking them about their **favourite**[9] **subjects**[10] or which sports they like and don't ask too many **personal**[11] questions.

You can only **make friends**[12] if you **spend**[13] time with them! The best way to do this is to **join**[14] clubs or do **team sports**[15] you like. **Go online**[16] or look at **the noticeboard**[17] at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your **teammates**[18] will feel **connected**[19] to you and that **connection**[20] could become a **friendship**[21].

While you're **busy**[22] talking to other students, don't **forget**[23] to study. **Remember**[24] to do your homework, so you don't have any problems with your teachers. Those teachers can also give you some advice on how to make friends and enjoy life in your new town. Talk to them too.

(1) ورق
(2) يرتدي
(3) جميل / جذاب
(4) تبدو / تُعطي إحساس
(5) مضغوط (نفسيًا)
(6) يكون على يقين / يظن أنه من المُسلَّم به
(7) محادثة
(8) تجرب - يحاول
(9) مُفضّل
(10) موضوعات
(11) شخصي
(12) تكوّن صداقات
(13) يقضي
(14) ينضم إلى
(15) رياضات جماعية
(16) يدخل على الإنترنت
(17) لوحة الإعلانات
(18) زملاء الفريق
(19) مرتبط
(20) الارتباط
(21) صداقة
(22) مشغول
(23) ينسى
(24) يتذكر

To : problems@teen-magazine.com *(SB page 44)*

Subject : Help! I don't have any friends at my new school!

Dear **Aunt**(1) Carol,

I think it is difficult to make friends. I don't have any friends at my school. I am always **on my own**(2) at **break-time**(3). Yesterday, I talked to a girl in my class. I asked her if she wanted to do some homework with me, but she said no.

I need some advice about how to make friends. Do you have any advice for me?

(1) عمة / خالة
(2) وحيد
(3) وقت الفسحة

To : problems@teen-magazine.com *(SB page 44)*

Subject : Help! I'm really stressed!

Dear Aunt Carol,

I always work very hard at school, but I'm really **stressed**(1) about some **exams**(2) I have next week. The first two exams are 3 hours long and will be very challenging. The last exam is in a **subject**(3) I'm not very good at. I've spent a lot of time studying in the library this week, but that hasn't helped me feel better. I need some advice about how to **relax**(4), please.

(1) مضغوط
(2) امتحانات
(3) موضوع / مادة
(4) يسترخي

(WB page 111)

If you want to **pass**(1) your exams, my advice is to always do your homework. Remember the information that your teacher gives you about the exam because it will help you. For a week or two before any exams, don't go out with your friends. **Save**(2) your money and do some **extra**(3) practice instead. It'll be really useful!

(1) يجتاز
(2) يوفر - يدخر
(3) زائد - إضافي

(WB page 111)

It is not easy to be a **teenager**(1) and students often need some help when they are at school. So, what problems do they have? Some students **feel like**(2) they don't have time to **revise**(3) for exams. They can also feel stressed about the work they get for homework.

So, who can they ask for some advice? They can always ask a teacher or their family. If they have a good friend, he or she can help too.

(1) مراهق
(2) يشعر كأنه
(3) تراجع



PART IV LANGUAGE

Countable and Uncountable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

1 Countable Nouns : الأسماء المعدودة:

١ الأسماء التى تعد يكون لها مفرد وجمع وهى تجمع بإضافة (s / es / ies) مثل :

- a girl → girls
- an egg → eggs
- a bus → buses
- a library → libraries

٢ هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل :

Singular مفرد		Plural جمع	
child	طفل	children	أطفال
crisis	أزمة	crises	أزمات
datum	معلومة	data	معلومات
foot	قدم	feet	أقدام
goose	وزة	geese	أوز
man	رجل	men	رجال
medium	وسيلة اعلامية	media	وسائل الإعلام
mouse	فأر	mice	فئران
oasis	واحة	oases	واحات
ox	ثور	oxen	ثيران
phenomenon	ظاهرة	phenomena	ظواهر
tooth	سنة	teeth	أسنان
woman	امرأة	women	نساء

٣ قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
one	- One student got the full mark.
every / each	- Every player in the team should train hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
this / that	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

4 قبل الأسماء الجمع يُمكن أن نستخدم الآتى :

these هؤلاء - those أولئك - some بعض - any أي - many كثير - a few قليل - a lot of كثير من - lots of كثير من - several عديد - two - three ....

ex. - I met several friends in the party.
- I have a few books in my bag.
- These boys are my cousins.
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

2 Uncountable Nouns : الأسماء غير المعدودة:

1 الأسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع وتعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد، وتشمل ما يلي :

1. **Liquids السوائل** water - juice - tea - coffee - oil - milk - soup - blood ... etc.
2. **Gases الغازات** oxygen - hydrogen - carbon dioxide ثاني اكسيد الكربون...etc.
3. **Meals الوجبات** breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper
4. **School subjects المواد الدراسية**
history - mathematics - physics الفيزياء - biologyالأحياء ... etc.
5. **Languages اللغات** English - Arabic - French - German ... etc.
6. **Different activities الأنشطة المختلفة**
reading - smoking - writing - studying - shopping - eating ... etc.
7. **Sports الرياضات** football - volleyball -basketball - swimming... etc.
8. **Materials أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام** coffee - glass - gold - iron الحديد - lime stone الحجر الجيري - sand - soil - sugar - tea - wood ... etc.
9. **Natural phenomena الظواهر الطبيعية**
lightning البرق - heat - snow - thunder الرعد - light - rain ... etc.
10. **Abstract nouns الأسماء المجردة** honesty امانة - hope - beauty - help - love - hatred كراهية - confidence ثقة - courage شجاعة - experience خبرة - progress تقدم - evidence دليل - patienceالصبر - peace السلام - poverty الفقر ... etc.
11. **Other nouns** jewellery مجوهرات - money - laughter ضحك - rubbish - equipment المعدات - furniture اثاث - cash نقدية - work - clothing الملبس - electricity الكهرباء - traffic مرور - baggage حقائب - luggage امتعة - machinery ماكينات - news - information - oil - advice - water - music - bread - cloth القماش .... etc.

٢ تُستخدم هذه الكلمات والتعبيرات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد :

a lot of - lots of- much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that.....

ex. - I'd like to have a little juice. (Not : a few juice)
- How much money do you need? (Not : How many)

٣ لا يمكن استخدام (an - a - one - those - these) قبل الاسم غير المعدود :

ex. - This equipment is very necessary. (Not : These equipment)
- I bought bread at the baker's. (Not : a bread)

٤ يمكن استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الاسماء التي لا تُعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

ex. - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.
- He had a good education at Oxford.

٥ الاسماء غير المعدودة يأتي معها فعل يُستخدم مع صيغة المفرد :

ex. - Meat is cooked better at home. - Has milk got a lot of proteins ?
- Does exercise make you healthy ?

3 Quantifiers : التعبيرات الكمية والعددية :

1. **a lot of - lots of** كثير من + **plural** جمع **/ uncountable** لا يُعد

- تستخدم (a lot of / lots of) في الإثبات مع الأسماء التي تعد و الأسماء التي لا تعد :

ex. - I have a lot / lots of books. - She bought a lot / lots of sugar.

2. **many** كثير من - عديد + **plural** جمع

- تأتى قبل اسم يعد فى صيغة الجمع وتفضل فى النفي والاستفهام :

ex. - Have you got many books ?
- Yes, I have got a lot of books. - No, I haven't got many books.

3. **much** كثير من + **uncountable** لا يُعد

- تأتى قبل اسم لايعد وتفضل فى النفي والاستفهام :

ex. - Did you drink much coffee ?
- Yes, I drank a lot of coffee. - No, I didn't drink much coffee.

4. **a few - few** قليل + **plural** جمع

a few = some / a small number
few = not many / almost none

- تأتى قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل :

ex. - There are a few people sitting at the back of the hall.
- He has few interests outside his work.

5. a little - little قليل + uncountable لا يُعد

a little = some / a small amount
little = not much / almost nothing

- تأتى قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة :

ex. - There is a little cheese in the fridge. I'll make you a sandwich.
- I have little money in my pocket. I need to borrow some.

6. some بعض

- تستخدم (some) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد فى الحالات التالية :

1. Affirmative الإثبات
ex. - There are some apples in the kitchen.
- The doctor gave me some medicine.

2. Offering الأسئلة فى حالة تقديم عروض
ex. - Would you like some sandwiches and some juice?

3. Request الأسئلة فى حالة الطلب
ex. - Can you give me some paper and some pens?

7. any أى

- تستخدم (any) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد فى الحالات التالية :

1. Negative النفى
ex. - He didn't have any sandwiches or any juice.

2. Interrogative الاستفهام
ex. - Is there any cheese in the fridge?

3. hardly .... any = almost no
ex. - There is hardly any milk left.

4. any .... at all
ex. - I don't have any money at all.

- لاحظ ما يلى :

فعل منفى + any = فعل مثبت + no

ex. - He hasn't got any friends. = He has got no friends.

verb to be منفى + اسم = verb to be + no + اسم

ex. - I am not a teacher. = I am no teacher.



Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ عندما تربط كلمة (and) اسمين أو ضميرين فإن الفعل بعدهما يكون جمعًا في كل الاحوال :

- Meat and chicken are sources of protein.
- You and I have to leave early.

٢ الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول مفرد أو لا يُعد هي (is/was/has/inf. + s/es/ies):

- This man is kind. - The car was repaired. - Milk makes us healthy.

٣ الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول جمع هي (are / were/ have / infinitive):

- These men are kind. - The cars were repaired.

Notes for Advanced level ملاحظات للفائقين

١ يُمكن أن تُستخدم (many - much) في الجملة المُثبتة في الحالات التالية :

أ. تستخدم (many - much) في الجمل المثبتة إذا جاء قبلهما ما يلي :

so / very / as / too + much

- I have so much work to do. - She has put too much salt in the soup.

so / as / too / a good / a great + many

- I saw too many people in the street. (Not : too a lot of)
- He has so many friends on Facebook. (Not : so lots of)

ب. اذا كانت many / much فاعل الجملة أو تصف فاعل الجملة :

- Many students find maths difficult. = Many find maths difficult.

٢ بعض الأسماء لها نفس الشكل في المفرد والجمع ويصرف معها الفعل حسب المعنى المقصود:

sheep خروف - غنم / **deer** غزال - غزلان / **fish** سمكة - سمك / **aircraft** طائرة - طائرات / **spacecraft** مركبة فضاء - مركبات فضاء

- A deer is running away from a tiger.
- Some deer are standing in the shade ظل of a tree.

٣ عند استخدام the قبل صفة دون وجود موصوف تتحول الصفة إلي اسم جمع و تأخذ دائما فعل جمع :

the poor الفقراء / **the rich** الأغنياء / **the disabled** المعاقين / **the deaf** المصابين بالصمم ...

- The poor are in need of our help. = Poor people are in need of our help.

٤ هناك أسماء دائما في صيغة الجمع وليس لها صيغة مفرد مثل :

cattle	ماشية	jeans	بنطلون جينز	scissors	مقص
clothes	ملابس	people	الناس	shorts	بنطلون قصير
congratulations	مبروك	pliers	زردية	trousers / pants	بنطلون
glasses	نظارة	police	الشرطة		

- Your clothes are dirty. - Many congratulations, Rody.

٥ الأسماء المكونة من جزئين مكملين لبعضهما البعض دائما تأخذ فعل جمع (الأمثلة في الجدول السابق):

- My glasses were broken yesterday.
- Your trousers are very fashionable.

ويمكن استخدام (a pair of) قبل الأسماء المكونة من جزئين وفي هذه الحالة يكون الفعل مفرد أو جمع حسب كلمة (pair):

- A pair of sunglasses was on the table.
- Five pairs of socks were bought for me.

٦ بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل:

Uncountable (لا تُعد)		Countable (تُعد)	
business	عمل	a business - businesses	شركة / مشروع
chicken	لحم الدجاج	a chicken - chickens	دجاجة
coffee	قهوة	a coffee - coffees	فنجان قهوة
cold	البرد عموماً	a cold - colds	نزلة برد
experience	خبرة	an experience - experiences	تجربة حياتية
glass	الزجاج	a glass - glasses	كوب زجاجي
hair	الشعر	a hair - hairs	شعرة
iron	الحديد	an iron - irons	مكواة
light	الضوء	a light - lights	مصباح كهربي
orange	اللون البرتقالي	an orange - oranges	برتقال
paper	ورق الكتابة	a paper - papers	جريدة / وثيقة
time	الوقت	a time - times	مرّة

- I don't like orange. I like green. - I ate an orange.
- Iron conducts heat and electricity. - I need an iron to press my shirt.

٧ يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالآتي:

استخدام (a bit - a piece of) كالقلة تجزئة عامه في المفرد وفي الجمع (bits - pieces):

- She gave me a piece (a bit) of advice.
- She gave me pieces (bits) of advice.

General Exercise On Language — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. I told the customs officer that I didn't have .... luggage. (المنشاة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. many b. plenty c. much d. few
2. Would you like .... soup before the meal? (بني سويف ٢٠٢٣)
   a. some b. a c. any d. few

UNIT 4

3. Money .... into the area by the tourists, so they are a source of the national income. (بلقاس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. brought b. brings c. are brought d. is brought
4. My pair of glasses .... nowhere to be found. (بنها ٢٠٢٣)
   a. are b. is c. aren't d. isn't
5. Physics .... played a very important role in invention. (السنطة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. was b. were c. has d. have
6. My pants............ some holes in them. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. are b. is c. have d.has
7. Fortunately, the news .... as bad as we had expected. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. wasn't b. weren't c. haven't been d. don't
8. This species of animals .... in danger of being extinct nowadays. (أشواي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. is b. are c. has d. have
9. I used my brother's glasses while mine .... (كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)
   a. were repairing b. was being repaired
   c. were being repaired d. was repairing
10. A: How .... chocolate do you need for your friends?
    B: Ten bars, please. (المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
    a. often b. heavy c. many d. much
11. Ahmed bought a lot of .... for his new flat.
    a. new furnitures b. new furniture c. a new furniture d. furnitures
12. How .... kilos of meat do you need, Madam?
    a. long b. many c. much d. often
13. Hossam doesn't like city life as there's always too much ....
    a. voices b. noise c. cars d. shops
14. .... people live in the country today than in the past.
    a. Little b. Less c. Few d. Fewer
15. I've had so many jobs to do and so .... time.
    a. a few b. few c. a little d. little
16. There .... three pairs of scissors in the drawer.
    a. is b. are c. was d. has
17. How .... money do you have?
    a. much b. few c. several d. many
18. He bought .... blue shorts.
    a. a b. an c. some d. any

19. There .... plenty of sugar but we need some more coffee.
a. is b. are c. was d. were

20. I don't have .... time to speak to you. I have to leave right now.
a. few b. much c. no d. many

21. Could I have only .... orange to eat?
a. some b. no word c. many d. an

22. There .... a lot of people who are interested in what you are doing.
a. is b. was c. have d. are

23. .... there many hotels in Aswan?
a. Has b. Was c. Are d. Had

24. I haven't got my camera, so I can't take .... photographs.
a. a b. some c. any d. many

25. Her clothes .... to be ironed.
a. has needed b. needs c. need d. is needing

26. There .... only a little accommodation إقامة available in this hotel.
a. are b. were c. do d. is

27. We met .... interesting people at the party.
a. some b. any c. much d. a little

28. Ashraf has a lot of good ....
a. an idea b. idea c. ideas d. some ideas

29. I haven't got .... money left. I need to borrow some.
a. a few b. many c. little d. much

30. I must buy some bread. I hardly have .... left in the kitchen.
a. much b. any c. many d. some

31. Try to reduce the .... of cups of tea you drink a day.
a. amount b. quantity c. number d. some

32. There aren't .... in this town. Only two.
a. some hotels b. any hotels c. many hotels d. much hotels

33. The money of the books .... on the table.
a. are b. were c. has d. is

34. How .... are coming to the party?
a. many peoples b. many people c. much people d. any people

35. The police .... questioning some people.
a. is b. was c. are d. have



36. He failed to carry out his duties يقوم بواجباته as a manager as he didn't have ....
    a. many experience
    b. few experiences
    c. some experiences
    d. much experience
37. .... congratulations! I'm very happy to hear your good news.
    a. A
    b. Any
    c. Much
    d. Many
38. There wasn't .... traffic on the road. Only a few private cars.
    a. many
    b. much
    c. little
    d. a few
39. My .... are in my bag.
    a. a glass
    b. pair of glasses
    c. glass
    d. glasses
40. Those sheep .... fat.
    a. is
    b. are
    c. was
    d. has been
41. There .... a lot of rubbish in the kitchen.
    a. is
    b. are
    c. has
    d. were
42. My reading glasses .... missing.
    a. had
    b. was
    c. is
    d. are
43. This poor woman has ....
    a. child
    b. a few child
    c. little children
    d. much children
44. We hardly heard .... news of him since he left the company.
    a. any
    b. some
    c. many
    d. much
45. Knowledge of foreign languages .... necessary.
    a. is
    b. are
    c. have
    d. were

2 Check your understanding

46. "Little children travel on the train for free." This means ....
    a. not many children travel on the train for free
    b. a few children travel on the train for free
    c. little number of children travel on the train for free
    d. young children travel on the train for free
47. " I have got no money left." I mean that ....
    a. I have little money left
    b. I have very little money left
    c. I don't have any money left
    d. I have some money left
48. "Ali is not a doctor." Which of the following gives the same meaning?
    a. Ali is no doctor.
    b. Ali has no job.
    c. Ali doesn't like doctors.
    d. Ali is a professor.
49. Some people like watching basketball, but .... prefer football.
    a. any
    b. many
    c. people
    d. everyone

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 46 & 47 WB pages 112 & 113



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bully(ied) (v)	يتنمّر - يَبلطج	nurse(n)	ممرضة
bully(n)	بلطجي - مُتنمّر	nursing(n)	التمريض
bullying(n)	البلطجة - التنمُّر	phone-in(n)	برنامج يُشارك فيه الجمهور هاتفيًا
cheat(ed) (v - n)	يغش - غشاش	police(d) (v)	يفرض الأمن والانضباط
cheating(n)	الغش	police(n)	الشرطة
nurse(d) (v)	تُمرِّض - ترعى المرضى	policing(n)	فرْض الأمن والانضباط

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

behave(d) (v)	يتصرف/يَسلك	laugh(ed) (v/n)	يضحك - ضحكة
concerned(adj)	مهتم - لديه اهتمام	list(ed) (n - v)	قائمة - يضع في قائمة
copy(ied) (n - v)	نُسخة - ينسخ	lonely(adj)	وحيد - منعزل
debate(d) (n - v)	مناظرة - يناقش	nasty(adj)	قبيح - ذميم
effect(n)	أثر	rucksack(n)	حقيبة الظَهر
fight - fought (v)	يقاتل / يتشاجر مع	scared(adj)	مرعوب
hide - hid - hidden (v)	يُخفي - يَخْتبئ	social media(n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
highlight(ed) (n - v)	الجزء الأهم - يُبْرِز	welcome(d) (v)	يُرَحِّب
host(ed) (n - v)	مضيف - يستضيف		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
bully(ied)(v) يتنمَّر - يبتز	to threaten يهدد to hurt someone or frighten يخيف them, especially someone smaller or weaker
bully(n) بلطجي - مُتنمِّر	someone who uses their strength قوة or power to frighten or hurt يؤذي someone who is weaker اضعف
bullying(n) البلطجة - التنمُّر	the use of strength or power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker
cheat(ed)(v) يغش	to act in a dishonest غير امينة way in order to gain يحصل على an advantage, especially خاصة in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
cheat(n) غشاش	someone who acts in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.

UNIT 4

cheating(n) الغش	acting in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
nurse(d)(v) تُمرّض - ترعى المرضى	to look after someone who is ill or injured
nurse(n) ممرضة	someone whose job is to look after people who are ill or injured, usually in a hospital
nursing(n) التمريض	the job or skill of looking after people who are ill, injured, or old
phone-in(n) بَرنامج يُشارك فيه الجمهور هاتفيًا	a radio or television programme in which you hear ordinary عادي people expressing يعبر عن opinions or asking questions over the telephone
police(d)(v) يفرض الأمن والانضباط	to keep control over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property الملكية are protected محمي, using a police force قوة
police(n) الشرطة	the people who work for an official organisation هيئة رسمية whose job is to catch criminals القبض على المجرمين and make sure that people obey يُطيع the law القانون

Exercise On Vocabulary

Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. We never allow .... in this school. (دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. bully b. bullying c. to bully d. is bullied
2. .... is forbidden during the exam. (قها ٢٠٢٣)
   a. Connection b. Nursing c. Cheating d. Concentration
3. We must punish students who .... others at school. (بلقاس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. pour b. bury c. bully d. pull
4. His addiction إدمان has turned him into .... and a liar. (إدارة الأقصر ٢٠٢٢)
   a. cheat b. cheating c. a cheat d. cheated
5. Students who .... in this exam will be excluded يُستبعد and will face severe punishment عقوبات صارمة. (أسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٠)
   a. achieve b. sheet c. cheat d. succeed
6. The use of guns and other weapons must be............ . (الشرقية - الزقازيق ٢٠٢٠)
   a. listed b. closed c. connected d. policed
7. Those .... frighten the poor workers to work for them.
   a. bully b. bullies c. bullying d. bully's

8. A good woman .... my uncle when he was ill in hospital.
   a. nursery b. nursing c. nurse d. nursed
9. A good .... looked after my uncle when he was ill in hospital.
   a. nursery b. nursing c. nurse d. nursed
10. She chose .... as a profession because she wanted to help patients.
   a. nursery b. nursing c. nurse d. nursed
11. The .... managed to arrest the murderer القاتل.
   a. policy b. policing c. policed d. police
12. .... is one of the most important things in societies.
   a. Policy b. Policing c. Policed d. Police

2 Important Vocabulary

13. Staying up late may have an .... on your performance the next day. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. affect b. effect c. impacted d. effective
14. It's not wise to .... bullies because they have nothing to lose. (الجيزة – الدقي ٢٠٢٠)
   a. call b. populate c. fight d. avoid
15. Although I live in a big city where there are lots of people, I often find myself feeling .... (الجيزة – الوراق ٢٠٢٠)
   a. only b. unique c. single d. lonely
16. Sama .... her father's car keys in her bag.
   a. wore b. hid c. saluted d. fought
17. Tell this unkind person that he is not .... in our organisation.
   a. personal b. concerned c. physical d. welcome
18. In this programme, we have two scientists to .... the issue القضية.
   a. debate b. believe c. think d. agree
19. I can't give you my opinion about this player as I am not ....
   a. concerned b. useful c. fortunate d. favourite
20. .... have made communication easier.
   a. Facebook b. Twitter c. WhatsApp d. Social media
21. Our company offered to .... the conference المؤتمر in a five-star hotel.
   a. stress b. highlight c. host d. express

3 Definitions

22. A/An .... is someone who hurts or frightens someone who is smaller or less powerful. (الدقو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. expert b. bully c. archaeologist d. role model



23. To .... is to threaten to hurt someone or frighten them, especially someone smaller or weaker. (الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)
a. bully b. promise c. pull d. dare

24. .... is the use of strength or power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker.
a. Bullying b. To bully c. A bully d. Bully

25. .... is someone who acts in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
a. A cheat b. To cheat c. Cheat d. Cheating

26. .... means to act in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
a. A cheat b. To cheat c. Cheat d. Cheater

27. .... is someone whose job is to look after people who are ill or injured, usually in a hospital.
a. Nursing b. Nurse c. To nurse d. A nurse

28. .... is the job or skill of looking after people who are ill, injured, or old.
a. Nursing b. Nurse c. To nurse d. A nurse

29. A .... is a radio or television programme in which you hear ordinary people expressing opinions or asking questions over the telephone.
a. talk show b. phone-in c. programme d. film

30. To .... is to keep control over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property are protected , using a police force.
a. police b. policed c. the police d. policing

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	different to / from	يكون مختلف عن	**have**	an effect on	له أثر على
	not welcome here	غير مُرَحَّب به هنا		exams	لديه امتحانات
	right to	يكون مُحِق في		a class debate	يُنظِّم مناظرة بين الطُّلاب
feel	safe	يشعر بالأمان		a class vote	يجري اقتراع بين الطُّلاب
fight	the bullies	يقاتل المتنمرين			
get	good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة	**make**	... clear	يوضح
	along with	يُحسِن التعامل مع - يتناغم مع	**take**	a photo	يلتقط صورة
				turns to	يتبادلون الأدوار لكي

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
advantage	ميزة	merit, upside
cheat(ed) (v)	يغش	deceive, trick
concerned(adj)	مهتم - لديه اهتمام	interested, involved, affected, connected
nurse(d) (v)	تمرض - ترعى المرضى	care for, take care of, look after
police(d) (v)	يفرض الأمن والانضباط	control, keep in order, keep under control, regulate

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage, demerit, downside	عيب - سلبية
effect(n)	أثر	cause, reason	سبب
positive(adj)	إيجابي	negative	سلبي
right(adj)	صواب - صحيح	wrong	خطأ
save(d) (v)	ينقذ	endanger	يُعرِّض للخطر
with (prep. - adv)	بـ - ذو	without	بدون

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a radio phone-in	برنامج إذاعي يشارك فيه الجمهور تليفونيًا	good for	مفيد/صالح لـ
angry with	غاضب من	make us all laugh	يجعلنا جميعًا نضحك
any more	مرة أخرى	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
as far as I'm concerned	بقدر اهتمامي	on the line	على الخط (الهاتف)
debate the good things and the bad things about	يناقش إيجابيات وسلبيات	physical abilities	قدرات بدنية
find advice for	يجد نصيحة لـ	sure about	متأكد من
good at	جيد في	the main idea	الفكرة الرئيسية
		where to go	أين يذهب

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

get along (with)	يجيد التعامل (مع)	point at / to / towards	يُشير إلى
get to	يصل إلى	reply to	يرد على
list … in	يُدرج … في	say … about	يقول … عن



6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

nursing - nursery

- **nursing (n)** التمريض / رعاية المرضى
  - It is known that nursing is very important for patients.
- **nursery (n)** حضانة (مكان تعليمى)
  - My wife had to find a nursery for our little daughter.
- **nursery (n)** حضّانة
  - After Ahmed was born, he was put in a nursery because he had difficulty in breathing.كان لديه مشكلة في التنفس
- **nursery (n)** مشتل (مكان لزراعة النباتات والأشجار لبيعها)
  - I went to a nursery to buy some plants for my garden.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. The antonyms of the word 'advantages' are .... (الاستعابية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. merits b. pros c. disadvantages
   d. benefits e. demerits
2. The class .... we had was interesting.
   a. debate b. device c. vote
   d. bully e. effect
3. I was asked to give ....
   a. the bullies b. a problem c. advice
   d. a sport e. an opinion
4. Positive is to negative as .... is to endangered.
   a. safe b. save c. danger
   d. endanger e. secure
5. "Smoking has bad effects on health." The noun 'effects' here is the antonym of ....
   a. causes b. results c. outcomes
   d. reasons e. products
6. "Parents are always concerned with their children's future." The adjective 'concerned' in this context is a synonym for ....
   a. contented b. connected c. fashionable
   d. cool e. interested

7. "It is a crime to cheat others." The verb 'cheat' here is synonymous with ....
   a. trek b. track c. trick
   d. deceive e. chat
8. The little boy pointed .... the picture of the bully who frightened him.
   a. at b. of c. off
   d. to e. from
9. It took me about half an hour to .... my home.
   a. arrive at b. go out c. get to
   d. come out e. talk to

✪ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The good manager is the one who can get .... well with his employees. (إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. up b. away c. along d. off
2. Tourism plays a .... role in our national income. (إدارة أسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. positive b. passive c. negative d. destructive
3. My sister and I usually .... turns to do the washing-up غسيل الأواني.
   a. are b. feel c. give d. take
4. He left his job because the manager told him that he .... not welcome there.
   a. was b. felt c. gave d. took
5. "You must not waste your time." In this sentence, the words 'not waste' can be best replaced by ....
   a. rescue b. spend c. save d. waist
6. "This area is policed by the army الجيش." The verb "policed" here means ....
   a. disagreed b. controlled c. nursed d. freed
7. Optional and compulsory are ....
   a. opposites b. antonyms c. synonyms d. a & b
8. "She nurses her old mother.'Nurses' here is a synonym of ....
   a. looks for b. takes turns c. looks after d. takes off
9. Wait a moment and I will tell you where .... good clothes.
   a. to buy b. buy c. do you buy d. b & c
10. Don't believe everything people post .... social media.
   a. of b. on c. out d. down



11. I sometimes call this radio phone- ....
   a. on   b. in   c. at   d. off
12. As .... as I'm concerned, money is not his only problem.
   a. soon   b. well   c. far   d. a & c

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

(WB page 112)

Maged : Hassan is a good friend. Last week, **however**[1], he **borrowed**[2] my phone **without**[3] asking. Then he **dropped**[4] the phone. **Fortunately**[5], the phone did not **break**[6], but I was very **angry**[7] with him. Now, he's not talking to me.

Omar : Fawzi always gets good **marks**[8] at school, but he is not always a good student. He often tries to make us all **laugh**.[9]
Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. He had to leave the **classroom**[10]. Now, he doesn't want to make us laugh **any more**[11].

Hoda : There is a girl in my class and she always says **unkind**[12] things about me. My friend tells me that she is also saying things about me on **social media**.[13] Last week, she took a photo of me without asking. Today, she was **pointing**[14] at me and laughing with her friends. It makes me feel very unhappy.

(1) مع ذلك
(2) يستعير / يستلف
(3) بدون
(4) يُسقط
(5) لحُسن الحظ
(6) ينكسر
(7) غاضب
(8) درجات
(9) يضحك
(10) حجرة الدراسة
(11) بعد الآن / مرة أخرى
(12) سيء / قاسي
(13) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
(14) يشير

(WB page 113)

Salem : Do you think it is a good or bad thing to move to a new school in **another**[1] town ?

Sayed : As far as I'm **concerned**[2] it can be a good thing. You can meet new people and learn different things.

Salem : I'm not so sure about that. I think I'd find it very difficult at a new school. Everything would be new and **different**[3].

Sayed : I agree, but new things can be exciting, and you'll soon have new friends too.

(1) أخرى
(2) يقدر اهتمامي
(3) مختلف

Salem : **In my opinion**[4] your old friends are your best friends.

Sayed : Yes, but I think, you can never have too many friends. One day, your new friends will be your best old friends !

Salem : **That's true**[5].

(4) من رأى
(5) هذا صحيح

2 Listening Texts



Radio phone - in about bullying *(SB page 46)*

Radio show host : Good evening, everyone. Welcome to the show. Tonight, we're talking about **bullying**[1]. **Unfortunately**[2], a lot of **teenagers**[3] are bullied at school, and this can have some very **negative effects**[4] on them. We're going to talk to a 15-year-old boy called Ali, who is being bullied. Ali... are you **on the line**[5]?

Ali : Hi, Seleem. How are you?

Radio show host : I'm well, thank you. How are you this evening?

Ali : I'm OK, but last week was really hard. Two boys in my class are bullying me because I am not very good at football. I like to play chess more than football. Last week they hid my **rucksack**[6]. It had all my school books in it. I hate going to school now!

Radio show host : Oh no! That's terrible. Did you tell a teacher?

Ali : No, I didn't. I was too scared. I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.

Radio show host : Well, Ali, I really think you should talk to a teacher. Your teacher can talk to the **bullies**[7] and **make it clear**[8] that they shouldn't **behave**[9] like this. If you do nothing, the bullying will just continue.

Ali : Yes... you're right... There's one teacher that I **get along well**[10] with. I'll talk to him.

(1) بلطجة / تنمر
(2) لسوء الحظ
(3) المراهقين
(4) آثار سلبية
(5) متصل / على الخط
(6) حقيبة الظهر
(7) البلطجية/المتنمرين
(8) يوضح
(9) يتصرف / يسلك
(10) ينسجم مع / يتعاطف مع

Ola and Lina giving their opinions *(SB page 47)*

Ola : So, do you think **moving to**[1] a new school in another town is a good thing or a bad thing for teenagers?

Lina : **As far as I'm concerned**[2], it's not a good idea. If you move to a new school, you have to leave your old friends behind and it's really difficult to **make new friends**[3].

Ola : I'm not so **sure about**[4] that. I think you can make new friends if you're nice to other people and **start conversations with**[5] them. For example, I'm sure you would make lots of new friends!

Lina : That's true. It is possible to make new friends, but it **takes time**[6]. You'll be really **lonely**[7] for the first few months.

Ola : In my opinion, it's **a good experience**[8] to have because it **makes you stronger**[9].

Lina : I know that it can make people stronger, but I would prefer to just stay with the people I know.

(1) الانتقال إلى
(2) على حد علمى / فى رأيى
(3) يكون صداقات جديدة
(4) متأكد من
(5) يبدأ حديث مع
(6) يستغرق وقت
(7) منعزل
(8) تجربة جيدة
(9) تجعلك قويًا

PART IV LANGUAGE

Articles a /an and the with singular nouns :

a / an

تُستخدم (a/an) فى الحالات التالية :

١ قبل اسم مفرد معدود يتم ذكره لأول مرة:

ex. - I saw a cat in front of the door. - There is an apple on the table.

٢ قبل اسم وظيفة معدود مفرد عند التحدث عن وظيفة شخص ما :

ex. - Mustafa is a doctor. - My uncle is an astronaut.

٣ قبل الاسم المعدود المفرد الدال على عدد :

a pair زوج - **a couple** زوج - **a dozen** دستة - **a hundred** - **a thousand** - **a million...etc.**

ex. - He paid a million dollars for this car.

٤ مع تعبيرات السرعة والزمن والنسبة والمسافة والثمن :

ex. - 80 kilometres an hour ٨٠ كم فى الساعة
- two days a week يومان فى الاسبوع - 10 pounds a kilo ١٠ جنيهات للكيلو

٥ قبل الصفة إذا سبقت اسم مفرد معدود :

ex. - We have got a new car.

٦ لاحظ أن (a - an) لا تستخدم قبل الاسماء الجمع و الاسماء غير المعدودة :

ex. - Cats eat fish and drink milk. (Not: A cats….)
- The bottle is full of oil. (Not: an oil….)

كيفية الاختيار بين (a/an) :

١ تستخدم (a) قبل اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بصوت ساكن :

a table - a house - a boy - a girl - a doctor - a plant - a window …. etc.

٢ تستخدم (a) قبل اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بالحروف (u – eu - ew) عندما تُنطق كحرف (y) :

a university - a uniform - a union - a useful book - a European team - a ewe انثى الخروف **……etc.**

٣ تستخدم (an) قبل اسم معدود مفرد يبدأ بصوت متحرك :

ex. - an egg / an orange / an apple / an eagle / an elephant………etc.

٤ تستخدم (an) قبل اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بحرف ساكن لا ينطق يليه صوت متحرك :

ex. - an hour / an honest person.

٥ يمكن استخدام (a/an) قبل اسم معدود مفرد لإعطاء تعريف للكلمات :

ex. - A doctor is someone who works in a hospital to help and treat patients.

٦ قبل الإختصارات التى تُنطق كحروف منفصلة نستخدم (a/an) حسب بداية نطق الحرف :

ex. - My friend sent an SMS to me.
- There is an "m" letter in the word "man".

٧ قبل كلمة (one) كصفة نستخدم (a) لأن (one) تبدأ بصوت ساكن ينطق مثل /W/ :

ex. - I found a one-dollar banknote on the floor.
- This is a one-way street.

The

تُستخدم (the) فى الحالات التالية :

١ قبل إسم سبق ذكره فى سياق الحديث:

ex. - His father works in an office. The office is in the city centre.
- She bought a book by Dickens yesterday. The book is called Oliver Twist.

٢ قبل اسم لا يوجد منه سوى واحد فقط بالنسبة لعامة الناس :

the sun - the moon - the sky - the country - the countryside - the ground - the world - the horizon الأفق **….etc.**

ex. - The moon goes around the Earth. (هناك قمر واحد وأرض واحدة)



٣ قبل اسم معروف للقارىء او السامع :

ex. - "Make the bed and open the window," said mum.

(معروف بالنسبة لك أى فراش سترتب وأى نافذة ستفتح)

٤ قبل صفات التفضيل والأعداد الترتيبية :

- the tallest - the oldest - the most beautiful - the least expensive....etc.
- the first - the second - the millionth - the only - the last....etc.

ex. - That's the best film I've ever seen.
- The Nile is the longest river in the world.
- The first letter of the alphabet is A.

- لكن فى حالة وجود صفات الملكية **(my / his / her / its / your / our / their /....'s)** قبل صفات التفضيل والأعداد الترتيبية فلا نستخدم **(the)** :

- Nasser is my best friend. (Not: the best ...)
- Omar is Sama's oldest uncle. (Not: the oldest ...)

٥ قبل أسماء المحيطات والبحار و معظم أسماء الأنهار و القنوات (لكن ليس قبل أسماء البحيرات):

the Pacific المحيط الهادى - **the Mediterranean** البحر المتوسط -
the Amazon نهر الأمزون - **the Nile** نهر النيل - **the Suez Canal** قناة السويس -
- لكننا نقول :
Lake Nasser بحيرة ناصر - **Lake Victoria** بحيرة فيكتوريا ..... **etc.**

٦ لا تستخدم **(the)** قبل أسماء الدول :

Egypt - Britain - France - Spain - Germany - Iraq .... etc.

- أما إذا احتوى اسم الدولة أو الهيئة على إحدى الكلمات التالية فهى تأخذ **(the)** :

(Republic جمهورية - Union / Federation اتحاد - Kingdom مملكة - State ولاية ...etc.)

the Arab Republic of Egypt (the ARE)	جمهورية مصر العربية
the United Arab Emirates (the UAE)	الإمارات العربية المتحدة
the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia (the KSA)	المملكة العربية السعودية
the United States of America (the USA)	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
the United Kingdom (the UK)	المملكة المتحدة
the United Nations (the UN)	الأمم المتحدة

- Egypt is a great country.
- The Arab Republic of Egypt is a great country.

- و أيضا إذا كان اسم الدولة جمع فهو يأخذ **(the)** :

the Netherlands هولندا - **the Philippines** الفلبين

٧ تستخدم **(the)** قبل أسماء السلاسل الجبلية :

the Himalayas جبال الهيمالايا - **the Rocky Mountains** جبال روكى **the Alps** جبال الألب...**etc.**

- أما أسماء القمم الجبلية المنفردة فعادة لا تأخذ **(the)** :

Mount Everest قمة إفرست - **Kilimanjaro** جبل كليمنجارو .... **etc.**

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

تُستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية أيضًا :

١ تستخدم (the) قبل اسم مفرد يعد للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام خاصة مع فصائل الحيوانات والطيور:

- The giraffe is my favourite animal.

- كما يستخدم الاسم الجمع بدون (the) للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام:

- Giraffes are my favourite animals.

٢ تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الاختراعات المفردة للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام:

- The computer is the most important invention.

- لكن عند الحديث عن الأجهزة في أي سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة :

- I have bought a tablet and a laptop. The tablet is white, but the laptop is black.

٣ تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الالات الموسيقية المفردة مع أفعال مثل:

(play / practise / learn / study / appreciate / listen to ...)

- Can you play the guitar ?
- The piano is my favourite instrument.

- أما عند الحديث عنها في أي سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة:

- My brother has a guitar and a piano. The guitar is old and doesn't work well.

٤ تستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات (theatre / cinema / radio / post office / internet / shops) :

- Do you go to the theatre ?
- We listen to the news on the radio.

٥ تستخدم (the) قبل بعض الصفات التي لا يتبعها أسم لتدل على اسم جمع دائما و تأخذ فعل جمع:

the rich الأغنياء / the poor الفقراء / the blind المكفوفين / the disabled المعاقين ..... etc.

- The disabled are in need to our help.
- He is collecting money for the blind.

٦ تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأقاليم والمناطق :

the Middle East / the Far East / the north of Egypt ...etc.

٧ تستخدم (the) قبل بعض الأماكن الجغرافية مثل :

the Sahara الصحراء الكبرى / the Gobi صحراء جوبي

٨ تستخدم (the) غالبا قبل الاسم الذى تتبعه عبارة وصل أو الاسم المُعَرَّف بحرف الجر (of) :

- The man who lost his son was very sad.
- He opened the door of the room.

- لكن لاحظ أنه توجد استثناءات:

- Do you have a dictionary that I can borrow ? (هنا يقصد بها أى قاموس (أحد القواميس))
- Ashraf told me about a man who can eat glass. (هنا يقصد بها أحد الرجال)



٩ تستخدم (the) قبل العدد الذى يدل على فترة عشر سنوات :
the fifties الخمسينيات / the nineties التسعينيات

١٠ تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ وبعض الأسماء الأخرى :
the government الحكومة / the climate المناخ / the weather الطقس /
the environment البيئة / the press الصحافة / the police الشرطة / the army الجيش...etc.

١١ تستخدم (the) مع العبارات الدالة على المقارنة (صيغة كلما ...... كلما):
- The more you practise, the better you get. كلما تدربت كلما تحسنت.

لا تستخدم (the) فى الحالات التالية :

١ لا تستخدم (the) قبل الاسم الجمع إذا كنا نقصد المعنى العام :
- Rabbits are nice animals. (هنا يقصد الأرانب بشكل عام)
- The rabbits have eaten the carrots. (هنا الحديث عن مجموعة محددة من الأرانب)

٢ لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأماكن التالية إذا كانت تستخدم للغرض الاساسى منها :
prison / school / university / college / church / hospital / market /
court /mosque...etc.
- He went to university. He studies medicine there.
- أما إذا استخدم المكان لغرض آخر فيأخذ (the) :
- Marwa went to the hospital to visit her uncle.
(She didn't go there as a patient)

٣ غالبًا لا تستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات (bed / work / home) :
- He went to bed. - She left work. - I arrived home.

لا تستخدم (a – an – the) فى الحالات التالية :

١ قبل أسماء المواد (الخامات):
wood / wool / metal / milk / iron / plastic / meat ..... etc.

٢ قبل أسماء القارات :
Asia / Africa / Europe / North America ...... etc.

٣ قبل أسماء المدن:
Cairo / New York / London / Madrid ..... etc.

٤ قبل أسماء الوجبات :
- We have lunch at three o'clock. (Not: the lunch)
- لكن عند وصف الوجبة نستخدم (a/an/the) :
- The breakfast I ate yesterday was horrible.

٥ قبل أسماء اللغات
Arabic / English / Chinese / Turkish .... etc.
- لاحظ أنه إذا جاءت بعد اسم اللغة كلمة (language) نستخدم (the) :
the English language / the French language

٦ قبل أسماء المواد الدراسية :
mathematics / biology / political science

٧ قبل الألقاب المتبوعة باسم شخص:

- King Ramses built a lot of temples. (Not: the king Ramses ...)
- President Sadat was a great politician. (Not: the President Sadat ...)

٨ قبل كلمة (space) عندما تعني الفضاء:

- NASA sends spaceships into space.

- عندما نستخدم (the) قبل كلمة (space) فهي تعني مكان فارغ أو مساحة:

- The space in the class isn't enough for ten more students.

٩ لا تستخدم (a/an/the) قبل الاسم المتبوع برقم كتمييز له:

- I booked seat 25 in carriage 2. (Not: the seat.../ the carriage...)

General Exercise On Language — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. My sister has a flat on .... 2nd floor. (ساقلتة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
2. They think .... exams they have next week will be very difficult. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. a b. no article c. an d. the
3. England and France are .... European countries. (ابركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)
   a. a b. an c. no article d. the
4. She plays .... piano well. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
5. My brother had an important exam yesterday but he spent .... hour watching TV. (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
   a. the b. an c. a d. no article
6. My father came to .... school as the headmaster wanted to meet him because of my troubles. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. Seif has bought a book and a pen. .... book he bought was expensive. (شربين ٢٠٢٣)
   a. A b. An c. The d. No article
8. .... sun has been shining all day.
   a. A b. An c. The d. No article
9. My grandma cannot walk easily, so she has to use .... stick.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article



10. Salah is one of .... best footballers in the world.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
11. I've bought .... new computer.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
12. We're staying in .... room on the first floor of our large villa.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
13. My uncle was staying in a new hotel which overlooks .... Red Sea.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
14. His cousin is .... journalist. He works for a newspaper in Cairo.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
15. She wants to have .... holiday next to the sea.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
16. I had .... dream last night. In the dream, I was a bride عروسة in a white dress!
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
17. Adel is a space scientist. At the moment, he is studying .... moon.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
18. The best way for a person to get fit is to do exercises two or three times .... day.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
19. He has ....meat and soup for lunch.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
20. Could you close .... front door, please?
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
21. There were no............ chairs, so we had to sit on the floor.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
22. There are two cars parked outside, ...expensive one and a cheap one.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
23. The plane has made .... world a smaller place.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
24. Where is .... pen that I bought yesterday ?
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article

2 Special cases

25. You mustn't lose .... hope to reach your goals. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article

26. .... is developing so fast. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
a. Technology b. A technology c. The technology d. Technological

27. My father bought me ....uniform for the new school year. (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣)
a. a b. an c. no article d. the

28. They placed .... African elephant on their endangered list. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)
a. a b. an c. no article d. the

29. My friend wants to buy a car but .... cars are too expensive nowadays. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٣)
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

30. "The English are clever." The word 'English' here means .... (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. language b. people c. school subject d. translated text

31. If the Earth had a blue moon and a white moon, I'd prefer .... white one.
a. a b. an c. the d. some

32. Egypt has .... unique location in the world.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

33. There is going to be .... 300-seat dining room on the second floor of the hotel.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

34. .... water is essential for all people.
a. A b. No article c. The d. An

35. For lunch, I made an order for half.......... chicken and some salad.
a. some b. a c. the d. no article

36. He gave me a pen and a ruler ; .... pen didn't work.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

37. My uncle will arrive on .... Sunday which is after my birthday.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

38. When dealing with difficult situations, one should be .... patient.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

39. Come on, Rodayna. It's .... due time to go to bed.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

40. They all went to .... lunch organized by their aunt.
a. any b. an c. the d. no article

41. I want you to choose .... day we can meet.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

42. A new spaceship will be sent into .... space next month.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

43. .... space in my room is not enough for another bed.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article

44. The Sun went down .... horizon.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

45. You will find the information you need at the top of .... page 41.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

46. Fear is .... universal weakness.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

47. I dislike .... towns, but I love the countryside.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

48. .... pomegranates الرمان are good for health.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article

49. Look at .... oranges on that tree.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

50. My son has started .... school this year.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

3 Check your understanding

51. "Doctors help people who feel sick." This means ....
a. the doctors help people who are sick b. doctors help the sick
c. a doctor helped the sick d. the sick need help

52. "People should help those who are homeless." This means ....
a. people should help homeless b. people should help a homeless
c. people should help the homeless d. people should have a home

53. "This film is exciting." I mean that this ....
a. is an exciting film b. is an excited film
c. film makes me exciting d. film is excited

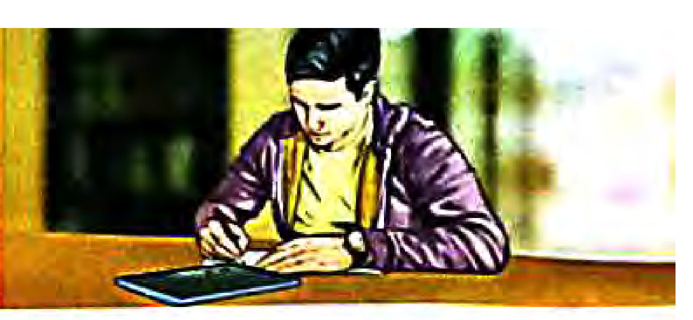
54. "All lions are meat-eating animals." This is the same meaning as ....
a. the lions are meat-eaters b. the lions are meat-eating animals
c. the lions eat meat d. the lion is a meat-eating animal

55. "He is hard working." What does this mean?
a. He does work that is hard. b. He is hard-working person.
c. He is a hard-working person. d. He hardly does any work.



PART THREE

Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises



تنويه | للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

Giving instructions

١ لإعطاء الأمر المُثبَت (افعل) نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

inf. المصدر + ...

ex. - Stop.
- Remember to do your homework.
- Put your lunchbox in the bag.

لإعطاء قوة للمعنى أو لإعطاء نصيحة قوية لشخص مُقرَّب نستخدم (Always) قبل الصيغة السابقة :

ex. - Always follow your parents' advice.

٢ لإعطاء الأمر المنفي (لا تفعل) نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Don't / Never + inf. المصدر + ...

ex. - Don't Stop.
- Don't forget to do your homework.
- Never break the law.

٣ يمكن وضع المُنادى (المُخاطَب) في بداية أو نهاية الجملة كالتالي:

ex. - Don't waste your time, Ahmed.
- Ahmed, don't waste your time.

Indefinite pronouns

١ يتم استخدام فعل مفرد بعد الكلمات الآتية ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع :

(someone / somebody - anyone / anybody - everyone / everybody - no one / nobody)

ex. - Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who they are.
- Everybody has prepared themselves to the meeting.

ينطبق نفس الشيء على الأسماء غير محددة الجنس التي تحتمل التذكير والتأنيث مثل:

a child - a person - a teacher - a traveller ... etc.

ex. - A traveller has parked his car in front of my house. They must have entered the opposite restaurant.

٢ يمكن استخدام (ضمير مفرد مذكر مضافاً إليه ضمير مفرد مؤنث) ليحل محل ضمير الجمع :

ex. - Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who he or she is.

٣ يمكن استخدام (ضمير مفرد مذكر فقط أو ضمير مفرد مؤنث فقط) في حالة معرفة جنس الشخص الذي نتحدث عنه:

ex. - This child will do better if he joins a school for boys only.



another

| another | + | اسم مفرد |

اخر/ أخرى

ex. - We found another shop in a small street.
- I want another bag of macaroni, please.

| another | + | (few - one, two, three,....) |

ex. - Give me another two days to finish the report.
- She has another few jobs to do.

other

| other | + | اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد |

آخر / آخرين

ex. -Ahmed likes helping other people.
- Any other knowledge will be available online.

- وتستخدم (other) أيضا بعد الكلمات الآتية :

| the - some - every - each - many - any - no - two, three,..........etc. |

ex. - Five chairs will be in the office. The other chairs will be moved to the teachers' room.
- Like any other child, Rodayna wants to play.

| others (ضمير (تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول) |

الآخرين

ex. - Some children like fish. Others prefer chicken.

compound adjectives with numbers

١ يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز مفرد ثم صفة وبينهم (-) كصفة:

ex. - Omar is a forty-year-old man.

٢ يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز مفرد وبينهما (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها :

ex. - We're going on a two-day trip.

٣ في حالة وجود كلمة time بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم ('s) في حالة المفرد و (s') في حالة الجمع :

ex. - In two weeks' time, I will travel to Aswan.

own

| on | + | (my - his - her - its - your - our - their) | + | own | = | alone |

= | without help بمفرده - دون مساعدة |

ex. - I did the housework on my own.
= I did the housework alone / without help.

| of | + | (my - his - her - its - your - our - their) | + | own ملكه - خاص به |

ex. - I have a car of my own.

right

be right to = **have the right to** محق فى

ex. - She is right to ask for a break.
- She has the right to ask for a break.

Asking for and Giving Advice

Asking for Advice طلب النصيحة

Can you give me some advice about ...? ؟ ...... أيمكنك أن تنصحني بخصوص
Can I ask your advice about ...? ؟.... أيمكنني أن أسألك النصح بخصوص
What should I do about ...? ؟.... ما الذي يمكنني فعله فيما يتعلق بـ

Giving Advice إعطاء النصيحة

You should / shouldn't + inf. ... . ينبغي أن / ألا
You ought to / ought not to + inf. ... . ينبغي أن / ألا
If I were you, I would / wouldn't + inf. ... . لو كنت مكانك ، (ما) كنت
You'd (had) better + inf. ... . من الأفضل لك أن
I advise you (not) to ... .أنصحك أن / ألا
The best thing to do is (not) to ..... أفضل شيء تفعله هو أن / ألا

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Someone is knocking at the door. I will see who .... (بركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)
   a. you are   b. she is   c. he is   d. they are
2. The two boys stopped talking to one .... (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. other   b. another   c. other's   d. others
3. The police could arrest two of the robbers and shot .... one of them.
   a. the other   b. others   c. another   d. else
4. I'd like to know about Seif's desire to help ....
   a. others   b. other   c. another   d. the other
5. You can take this pen. I have .... one.
   a. other   b. others   c. the other   d. another
6. You can take this pen. I will use .... one.
   a. other   b. others   c. the other   d. an other
7. You can take this pen. I have two .... ones.
   a. other   b. others   c. the other   d. another

UNIT 4

8. You can take this pen. I have .... two ones.
   a. other b. others c. the other d. another
9. Some people like meat. .... like chicken or fish.
   a. Other b. Others c. The other d. Another
10. Amir made this cupboard .... his own. I didn't help him.
   a. from b. off c. of d. on
11. Amir has a cupboard .... his own. No one else uses it.
   a. from b. off c. of d. on
12. You both should do this activity on .... own.
   a. you b. your c. yours d. yourselves
13. You .... right to slow down when you drive on these ups and downs.
   a. are b. is c. has d. have
14. You .... the right to ask for help.
   a. are b. is c. has d. have
15. Never .... your secrets to anybody.
   a. telling b. tell c. told d. to tell
16. Rokaya is a nine- .... - old girl.
   a. year b. years c. years' d. year's
17. Someone rang the doorbell. When I opened the door, ... there.
   a. he was b. she wasn't c. they weren't d. I wasn't
18. Somebody .... taken my glasses.
   a. have b. has c. is d. are

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

*** Read the following passage, then answer the questions:** (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٣)

A professor stood facing his philosophy class and had some items in front of him. When the class began, he picked up a very large, empty mayonnaise jar and proceeded to fill it with golf balls. He then asked the students if the jar was full. They agreed that it was. The professor then picked up a box of pebbles and poured them into the jar. He shook the jar lightly.
The pebbles rolled into the open areas between the golf balls. He then asked the students again if the jar was full. They agreed it was. The professor next

picked up a box of sand and poured it into the jar. Of course, the sand filled up everything else. He asked once more if the jar was full. The students responded with a **unanimous** "Yes!"

The professor then produced two cups of coffee from under the table and poured the entire contents into the jar effectively filling the empty space between the sand. The students laughed. "Now," said the professor as the laughter subsided, "I want you to recognize that this jar represents your life. The golf balls are the important things – your family, your children, your health, your friends and your favourite passions – and if everything else was lost and only they remained, your life would still be full. The pebbles are the other things that matter, like your job, your house and your car and so on. The sand is everything else – the small stuff. If you put the sand into the jar first, there is no room for the pebbles or the golf balls. The same goes for life. If you spend all your time and energy on the small stuff, you will never have room for the things that are important to you.

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. This passage is considered a ....
   a. page from a history book   b. book review
   c. lesson for Time Management   d. science lesson
2. The word "**unanimous**" shows that ....
   a. a few students said "Yes"
   b. all the students disagreed
   c. all the students responded by saying "Yes"
   d. none of the students answered "Yes"
3. Playing online games to life is like the .... to the jar.
   a. mayonnaise   b. sand   c. pebbles   d. golf balls
4. What would happen if the professor started putting the sand in the jar first?
   a. He would be able to put all the other things onto the jar later.
   b. The jar wouldn't contain all the items mentioned in the passage.
   c. The students would be surprised.
   d. The students would be bored.
5. This passage teaches us that golf balls represent ....
   a. the most important things in life   b. leisure time
   c. TV shows   d. sports





6. .... spend all their time and energy on doing small stuff.
   a. Important people b. Successful people c. Losers d. The ambitious
7. Family should be ....
   a. expandable b. ignored c. shallow d. a priority

2 Email Writing كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

* **Write an email of about 150 words to your friend Reda about "Something that makes you stressed."**

New message

To : reda2020@elmoasser.com
From : aliselim@gmail.com
Subject : Something that makes me stressed!

Dear Reda,

How are you? I hope you are well. I'm writing to tell you about something stressful I have to face. I've started my secondary school recently and things aren't so easy or smooth as they used to be. I am supposed to work hard not only at school but at home as well.

It's completely new routine. The school subjects are not that easy. I meet new teachers and new classmates that I must get along with. I find it difficult to keep up with this new community yet not impossible. I made few friends anyway. However, I've got some problems with quite a few students who are difficult somehow and the new subjects I have to study and understand. The lessons are so many that I can't get back home until late in the afternoon. What a nuisance!

In addition, the school has no room for activities which makes matters worse and as a result, most students get bored and even frustrated.

At home, life is not that easy one as it was when I was at prep school.

Parents argue with me to study all the time, there is no space for play or entertainment. They believe that entertainment or practising activities should be during summer holiday only.

Isn't it a problem? Send me your advice. I'm badly in need of your help. I'm waiting for your replay.

Yours,
Ali



Send

3 Translation الترجمة

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Bullying is a bad social phenomenon. It makes people scared and may commit crimes. (أبو الشيوخ ٢٠٢٣)

a. التنمر ظاهرة اجتماعية سيئة تجعل الناس يشعرون بالخوف وقد يرتكبون جرائم.

b. التنمر ظاهرة اجتماعية سيئة جعلت الناس يشعرون بالخوف وقد يرتكبون جرائم.

c. التنمر ظاهرة اجتماعية سيئة تجعل الناس يشعرون بالخوف وهم يرتكبون جرائم.

d. التنمر ظاهرة اجتماعية سيئة تجعل الناس يشعرون بالخوف وقد لا يرتكبون جرائم.

2. Team work saves time and money and doubles achievement. It is also a rich environment to create new ideas. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)

a. العمل الجماعي يوفر المال والوقت ويضعف الإنجاز، وإنها أيضاً طريق سريع لابتكار أفكار جيدة.

b. العمل الجماعي ينفذ الزمن والمال ويضاعف الإنجاز، وإنها أيضاً طرق سريعة لابتكار أفكار جيدة.

c. العمل الجماعي يوفر المال والوقت ويضعف الإنجاز، وإنه أيضاً طريق سريع لابتكار أفكار جيدة.

d. يوفر العمل الجماعي الوقت والمال ويضاعف الإنجاز، وهو أيضاً بيئة خصبة لابتكار أفكار جيدة.

3. First impressions may last forever. It is sensible to pay attention to the impact we leave on others and to show a positive image of us. (كوم الدكو ٢٠٢٣)

a. قد تنتهي الانطباعات الأولى إلى الأبد، فمن الحكمة أن نتجاهل الأثر الذي نتركه على الآخرين، وأن نظهر صورة إيجابية لنا.

b. قد تدوم الانطباعات الأولى إلى الأبد، فمن الحكمة أن ننتبه إلى الأثر الذي نتركه على الآخرين، وأن نظهر صورة سلبية لنا.

c. قد تنتهي الانطباعات الأولى إلى الأبد، فمن الحكمة أن نتجاهل الأثر الذي نتركه على الآخرين، وأن نُظهر صورة سلبية لنا.

d. قد تدوم الانطباعات الأولى إلى الأبد، فمن الحكمة أن ننتبه إلى الأثر الذي نتركه على الآخرين، وأن نُظهر صورة إيجابية لنا.

2. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

1. الصداقة قيمة عظيمة يجب علينا جميعاً أن نحافظ عليها، والصديق الحقيقي هو من يدعمك عند الحاجة إليه. (كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)

a. Friendship is a terrible value we all should keep. A true friend is the one who supports you when you need help.

b. Friendship is a great value we all should keep. A true friend is the one who supports you when you need help.

c. Friendship is a great value we all should keep. A true friend is the one who deceives you when you need help:

d. Friendship is a great value we all should keep. A true friend is the one who bullies you when you need help.



٢. تُعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدر مباشر للدخل القومي في مصر، فمصر تمتلك الكثير من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التي يرغب السياح في زيارتها. (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)

a. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.
b. Ecotourism is considered a direct sources of national income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated natural palaces that tourists desire to visit.
c. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated places that tourists desire to visit.
d. Ecotourism is considered direct source of income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated natural place that tourists desire to visit.

---

٣. يجب علينا أن نعامل ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة بطريقة تشجعهم على الاندماج في المجتمع وأن يصبحوا أعضاء مُنتجين. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)

a. We should treat people with special needs in a way which encourages them to integrate with the community and become productive members.
b. We should treat people with special gifts in a way which discourages them to integrate with the community and become protective members.
c. We should treat people with special needs in a way which encourages them to corporate with the community and become protective members.
d. We should treat people with special needs in a way which discourages them to integrate with the community and become productive organs.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL ◄ للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

cheat

- **cheat (at / in) (v)** يغش
  - He used a mobile to cheat in the test.
- **cheat (v)** يخدع - يحتال على - يخون
  - He was arrested because he cheated an old woman out of her money.
- **cheat (n)** غشاش - نصّاب
  - Don't trust this cheat.
- **cheating (n)** غش - نصب
  - Cheating is a crime.

connect

- **connect (to / with) (v)** يربط - يُوَصِل
  - Connect the charger الشاحن to the mobile, please.
- **connect (with) (v)** يرتبط - يكون على علاقة بـ
  - This parliament member connects with his voters الناخبين.
- **connected (to / with / by) (adj)** متصل بـ / مرتبط - على علاقة بـ
  - The computer is connected to the internet.
- **connection (to / with / between) = link (n)** اتصال - ارتباط - علاقة
  - The connection between the computer and the printer has failed.

- لاحظ المتلازمات التالية :

- have a connection to / with على علاقة بـ - متصل بـ
- see a connection between ... and ... يربط بين ... و ...
- make a connection يُوجد علاقة - يربط بين
- stop a connection ينهي العلاقة - يفصل

debate

- **debate (over / about / between) (n)** مُناظَرة / مُناقشة
  - The new law is still under debate in the parliament.
  - There's a debate over the solutions حلول of the traffic problem.
- **debate (with) (v)** يتباحث / يناقش - يفكر بحرص
  - The new law is still debated in the parliament.
  - He debates with his friends on how to spend the weekend.

nurse

- **nurse (n)** مُمَرِّضة - مُمَرِّض
  - She is still a student nurse in the local health care centre.
- **nurse (d) (v)** يرعى مريض - يُمَرِّض
  - He was nursed by a good woman called Hana.
- **nurse (d) (v)** تعمل بالتمريض
  - She nurses in a big hospital in Cairo.
- **nurse (d) (v)** تُرضِع - تقوم بإرضاع
  - Mothers nurse their babies until they are two.
- **nurse (d) (v)** يَرْضَع
  - Babies nurse until they are two.
- **nursing (n)** التمريض
  - She studies nursing at Assuit University.

UNIT 4

police

• **police (n)** الشُرطة

- The police have arrested some criminals.

- لاحظ أن الاسم (police) دائمًا جمع ويأخذ فعل جمع

- The police are responsible مسئول for law enforcement. فرض القانون

ولاحظ المتلازمات التالية:

- call the police يتصل بالشرطة / يستدعي الشرطة
- tell / inform the police يُبلّغ الشرطة
- report … to the police يُبلّغ الشرطة عن ...

• **police (d) (v)** يفرض الأمن والانضباط - يتحقق من تطبيق الضوابط والمعايير

- The officer asked for more soldiers to police the city centre.

• **policing (n)** فرض الأمن والانضباط - التحقُّق من تطبيق الضوابط والمعايير

- Policing is the responsibility of the government.

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
dis-	لا - غير	disagree(d) يرفض
extra-	إضافي - زائد	extraordinary استثنائي / خارق
pre-	قبل	prefix بادئة
semi-	نصف	semi-final نصف نهائي

3 Suffixes مقاطع نهائية

Suffix النهاية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- hood	تُكوّن اسم	boyhood الصبا
- tion	تُكوّن اسم	pronunciation النُطق information معلومة / معلومات production انتاج
-ess	تُكوّن اسم مؤنث	hostess مضيفة waitress نادلة
-ion	تُكوّن اسم	connection ارتباط / اتصال communication تواصل - اتصال population (عدد) السكان
-ship	تُكوّن اسم	friendship الصداقة

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Getting the Nobel Prize was the .... of Naguib Mahfouz's life.
   a. addressee b. project c. highlight d. punctuation
2. The flowers and plants on my balcony have been bought from a nearby ....
   a. contraction b. concern c. nursing d. nursery
3. It is the right of a baby to ....
   a. contain b. nurse c. fight d. host
4. The use of guns and other weapons must be ....
   a. connected b. closed c. policed d. listed
5. A secretary is supposed to have the ability to .... with all staff members.
   a. police b. pronounce c. connect d. salute

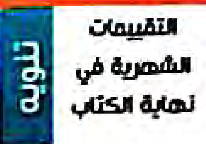
Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The dead man's .... include no will.
   a. paper b. a paper c. papers d. newspaper
2. Everyone should depend on ....
   a. itself b. himself c. herself d. themselves
3. A: How .... television do you watch a week? B: About ten hours.
   a. much b. many items of c. many d. few items of
4. I think you can't sit in this row as there isn't .... room for you.
   a. no article b. the c. an d. a
5. I can't go out with you today. I've got too .... and it all has to be finished by nine o'clock.
   a. many tasks b. much work
   c. many jobs d. many pieces of work

Test on Unit 4





• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1. Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. The good writer is the one that can .... their ideas to us clearly, but interestingly. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
   a. connect b. communicate c. contact d. convey e. touch
2. Those who bully others always have some very .... effects. (القوصية ٢٠٢٣)
   a. useful b. unkind c. positive d. negative e. helpful

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

3. A/An ....is a large board fixed to a wall where people can put notes and message for other people to read. (السويس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. notice b. blog c. email d. noticeboard
4. It is .... that bullying is a negative behaviour that we all need to refuse to participate in. (شربين ٢٠٢٣)
   a. made for sure b. taken for granted
   c. over the moon d. part and parcel
5. "After the chaos, the city needs to be policed by the security men." The verb "policed" here means .... (إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. out of control b. lacked control
   c. lost control d. kept under control
6. My school never allows .... among the students there. (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
   a. bullying b. helping c. connecting d. contacting
7. I will be .... of my exam results as soon as they are announced.
   a. pronounced b. populated c. informed d. produced
8. Security forces are responsible for .... the area.
   a. policing b. bullying c. advising d. saluting
9. Helmi's new film will come .... soon.
   a. back b. of c. to d. out
10. Would you kindly give me .... water, please? (منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
    a. any b. no c. some d. a lot
11. She has many .... towards her country. (بركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)
    a. believes b. beliefs c. belief d. believe
12. He had .... money, so he couldn't buy the shirt he wanted. (شربين ٢٠٢٣)
    a. few b. a few c. little d. a little

13. I need .... advice about how to find safe websites. (شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)
a. the b. some c. a d. an

14. Ahmed is .... university student. (ابشواي ٢٠٢٣)
a. a b. an c. the d. no articled.

15. Our boss is .... honest man with superior principles. (كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)
a. the b. a c. an d. no article

16. I always go to school wearing my .... uniform. (بنها ٢٠٢٣)
a. a b. no article c. an d. the

3. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer : (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)

Sports are full of wonderful moments, but perhaps nothing is as exciting as the finish of the marathon. It is the longest and hardest race of all. The name marathon came from a village in Greece. A famous battle was fought there in the year 490 BC. When the Greeks had beaten the Persians, a soldier ran the way from Marathon to Athens more than 40 kilometers to tell people the good news. When the modern Olympic Games started in 1890, the organizers knew the story. The Marathon has been a race ever since.

In the ancient world, the Olympics were held every four years. They were an important part of life. In modern games, we try to copy their ideas. The finest sportsmen in the world gather in one place or at least, the finest amateurs do. An amateur is someone who does not earn any money from sport. It is often difficult to say who is an **amateur** and who is not.

It is true that Olympic athletes do earn a large amount of money, like professional sportsmen. But Olympic athletes are usually students, teachers, or sport juniors. They have to spend a lot of money on training. Their governments pay for their training, travel and pocket money because they want them to win.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The marathon is the .... race of all.
a. longest b. modern c. fastest d. slowest

18. An amateur is someone who .... from sport.
a. doesn't earn some money b. earns much money
c. earns little money d. earns no money

19. The name marathon came from ....
a. story b. a village in Greece
c. race d. toy



20. .... Olympic Games started in 1890.
   a. Ancient b. Modern c. Old d. Traditional

21. A lot of money is needed for Olympic athletes because ....
   a. the governments need teachers.
   b. Olympic athletes have to spend a lot of money on training.
   c. the Olympics were held every four years.
   d. Olympic Games started in 1890.

22. The modern Olympic Games were started in ....
   a. 1800 b. 1980 c. 490 d. 1890

23. The underlined word "amateur" in the passage means ....
   a. not professional b. modern c. ancient d. very old

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Developing effective communication skills helps you to understand what others are saying. This makes you a better and communicative member in the society. (أدوار ٢٠٢٣)

a. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الحديث يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل متصل في المجموعة.
b. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الماهر يساعدك على تفهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل اتصالي في المجتمع
c. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الفعال يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل ومتواصل في المجتمع
d. تطوير مهارات الاتصال غير الفعال يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل في المجتمع.

25. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

التعليم هو العامل الأكثر أهمية الذي يؤثر على تنمية المجتمع. لقد أصبح عاملاً حاسماً في نجاح الأجيال الجديدة في أي دولة. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

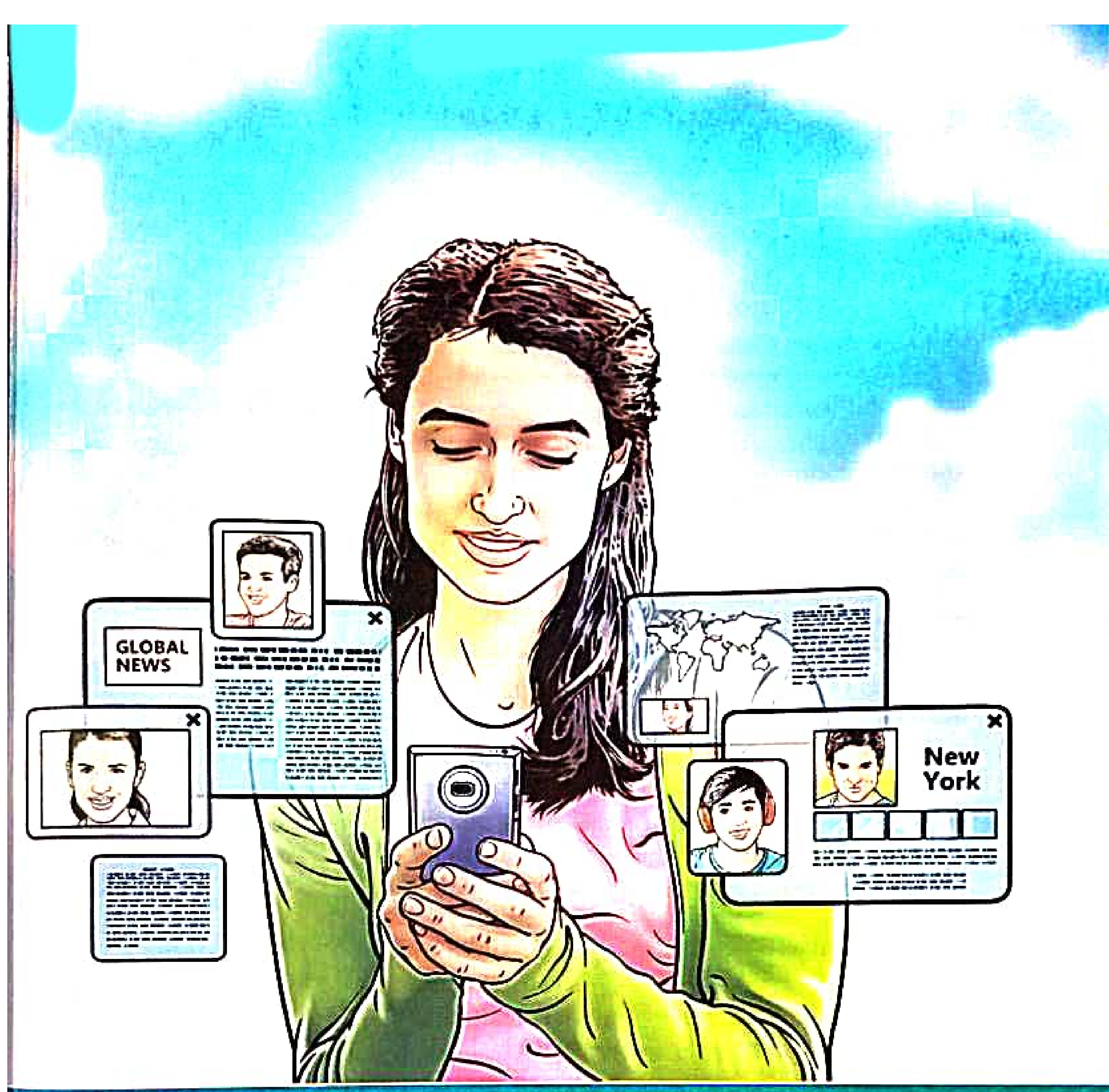
a. Traditional education is the most important factor affecting the production of society. It has become a critical factor in the success of new generations in any country.
b. Education is the most important factor affecting the development of society. It has become a critical factor in the success of new generations in any country.
c. Education is the most important factor affecting the development of any country. It has become a critical factor in the success of new generations in any country.
d. Education is the most important factor affectioning the development of some countries. It has become a critical factor in the success of new generations in any country.

26. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on :**

"Good friends"

....

....



UNIT
5 Communication

SB pages 52 : 61 WB pages 116 : 121

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :** A science article on how we may communicate in the future
- **Writing :** An essay on IOT, a blog on how to stay safe online
- **Listening :** A radio discussion about the dangers of the internet
- **Speaking :** Give a presentation
- **Language :** Future forms will, be going to and present continuous
- **Life Skills :** Self-management; Decision making

PART ONE LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 52 : 55 WB pages 116 & 117



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

app = application(n)	تطبيق (رقمي)	Internet of Things (IOT)	إنترنت الأشياء
break into (phr. v)	يقتحم	link(ed) (n - v)	رابط - يربط
communication(n)	اتصال - تواصل	security(n)	الأمن
connect(ed) (v)	يربط	smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي
hack(ed) (n - v)	يخترق - يَقرصن	technology(n)	التكنولوجيا
hacking(n)	اختراق - القرصنة	the internet (n)	الانترنت

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

book(ed) (v)	يحجز	lighting(n)	الإضاءة
businesses(n)	شركات	major(adj)	كبير - رئيسي - بارز
camping(n)	الإقامة في معسكر	management(n)	إدارة
cause(d) (n - v)	سبب - يُسبب	medicine(n)	الطب - دواء
control(led) (v)	يتحكم في	network(ed) (n - v)	شبكة - يعمل على الشبكة
creative(adj)	مُبدع - خلّاق	online (adj / adv)	مُتّصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت
develop(ed) (v)	يتطور	particular (adj)	مُحدّد - مُعيّن
device(n)	جهاز	petrol(n)	البنزين
driverless(adj)	بدون سائق	possibility(n)	إمكانية
electric(adj)	كهربي	power station(n)	محطات توليد الطاقة
electronic(adj)	إلكتروني	recent(adj)	حديث
empty(ied) (v - adj)	يُفرّغ - فارغ	rubbish(n)	القمامة
evidence(n)	دليل	self-management(n)	إدارة الذات
flexible(adj)	مَرِن	survey(n)	بحث استبياني
heating(n)	التدفئة - التسخين	system(n)	نظام
illegally(adv)	بشكل غير قانوني	use(d) (n - v)	استخدام - يستخدم
imagine(d) (v)	يتخيل	worldwide (adj)	عالمي / دولي
intention(n)	نية		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise		Understand
app(n)	تطبيق	a computer programme designed to perform / do a specific function
communication(n)	اتصال - تواصل	systems to send and receive information

connected(adj)	مُتصل - مُرتبط	when more than one thing is joined or linked
hack(ed) (n - v)	يَقرصن	to break into a computer system illegally
the internet(n)	الإنترنت	a worldwide computer network
link(n)	رابط	a place in an electronic document that takes you to another page or website
security(n)	الأمن	protecting a place or person
smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكى	a device that can connect to the internet
technology(n)	التكنولوجيا	the use of science to create devices for everyday use

Exercise On Vocabulary

Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. I have a new .... on my smart phone which helps me practise foreign languages. (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. connection b. app c. scam d. hack
2. No one can .... into my computer as I have a strong antivirus software. (قنا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. sack b. hack c. lock d. lack
3. " IOT" stands for .... (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. Information Of Technology b. Information Of Things
   c. International Of Things d. Internet Of Things
4. A uniformed .... man met them at the gate and asked for their identity cards. (السويس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. property b. priority c. security d. minority
5. .... is developing so fast that experts believe that everyone will be connected to the internet in a few years. (شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)
   a. Transport b. Security c. Technology d. Safety
6. More and more people are shopping on the .... (كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. leader b. lock c. internet d. password
7. A thief broke .... the old man's house yesterday. (ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. in b. into c. onto d. on
8. The .... of the manager's ideas to the staff is important.
   a. communicate b. communication
   c. hack d. hacking

9. Your computer has very important information. Protect it against ....
   a. hack b. hacking c. hacker d. hacked
10. If you have a/an ...., you can surf the internet on it.
   a. smartphone b. technology c. advert d. online
11. My laptop is .... to the internet through Wi-Fi.
   a. commented b. communicated c. connected d. contacted

2 Important Vocabulary

12. Sugar is a .... cause of tooth decay. (البحيرة - الدقي ٢٠٢٠)
   a. major b. minor c. remote d. distant
13. Self - .... is necessary to the success of any person.
   a. manage b. manager c. managed d. management
14. In the past, people burnt wood for .... and cooking.
   a. expert b. power c. heating d. lighting
15. A team of researchers are doing a/an ....
   a. network b. organisation c. evidence d. survey
16. I think a .... car is not safe to travel in.
   a. modern b. driverless c. strong d. big
17. Watching too many videos .... the battery of the mobile.
   a. imagines b. steals c. empties d. charges
18. New laws have been .... to stop cyberbullying.
   a. taken b. warned c. done d. introduced
19. Electricity is produced in .... stations.
   a. expert b. power c. heating d. lighting
20. I have strong .... that this thief has stolen my motorbike.
   a. network b. organisation c. evidence d. survey
21. I .... two train tickets to Cairo.
   a. tested b. rang c. embarrassed d. booked
22. Small .... help young people to have jobs and start their lives.
   a. businesses b. business c. diaries d. messages
23. In some situations, you should behave in a/an .... way to avoid making matters worse تتجنب زيادة الأمر سوءًا.
   a. flexible b. electric c. electronic d. recent
24. The smart mobile is a wonderful ....
   a. website b. device c. blog d. helmet
25. "The battery is empty." In this sentence, the word 'empty' is a/an ....
   a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb

26. The internet is a/an .... that connects millions of computers and other smart devices all over the world.
a. network b. intention c. evidence d. survey

27. I like this writer because he has a/an .... style اسلوب.
a. recent b. electric c. electronic d. creative

28. Reading in poor .... affects your sight badly.
a. expert b. power c. heating d. lighting

3 Definitions

29. .... are systems to send and receive information.
a. Possibilities b. Organizations c. Accounts d. Communications

30. .... is the use of science to create devices for everyday use.
a. Technology b. Management c. Evidence d. Document

31. When more than one thing is joined or linked, they are ....
a. created b. developed c. connected d. performed

32. The .... is a worldwide computer network.
a. security b. internet c. presentation d. environment

33. A .... is a device that can connect to the internet.
a. web b. smartphone c. network d. blog

34. A / An .... is a computer programme designed to perform/do a specific function.
a. satnav b. advert c. app d. IOT

35. To .... is to break into computer illegally.
a. hack b. download c. upload d. lock

36. .... is things that are done to protect a place or person.
a. Danger b. Hacking c. Technology d. Security

37. A/An .... is a place in an electronic document that takes you to another page or website.
a. blog b. website c. link d. online

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

check	my satnav	اتحقق من التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي	collect	someone	يصطحب/يوصل بسيارة
make	life better	تجعل الحياة أفضل		information	يجمع معلومات
	a decision	يتخذ قرار	lose	money	يخسر مال
be	known as	يكون معروف كـ	send	messages to	يراسل ...

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
app	تطبيق	application
book	يحجز	reserve
recent	حديث	new, modern, late

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
correct	صحيح	incorrect, wrong	غير صحيح
major	كبير - هام - رئيسي	minor, little, unimportant	صغير - غير هام
online	مُتصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت	offline, disconnected	غير مُتصل بالإنترنت - ليس على الإنترنت
send	يُرسل	receive	يستقبل

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

app	
apply(ied) (v) يُطبِّق - يتقدم	- It is difficult to apply this design. - She applied for a job.
application (n) طلب انضمام	- I sent my application by mail.
application = app (n) تطبيق	- The application of this design is difficult
applied (adj) تطبيقي	- We study applied maths in secondary two.
communication	
communicate(d) (v) يتصل - يتواصل	- We communicate with foreign customers in English.
communication (n) اتصال - تواصل	- We use English as the language of communication with customers.
connect	
connect(ed) (v) يربط - يوصّل - يتصل	- You need to connect to the internet to send the file.
connection (n) اتصال - صلة / علاقة	- Connection to the internet is necessary ضروري to send the file.
connected (adj) مُتصل	- You need to be connected to the internet to send the file.

hack	
hack(ed) (v) يخترق - يقرصن	- Protect your computer or it will be hacked into.
hacking (n) اختراق - القرصنة	- Protect your computer from hacking.
hacker (n) قرصان إلكتروني	- Protect your computer from hackers.
hack (n) عملية قرصنة	- Some important files have been stolen in a hack.
hacked (adj) مُخترق - مُقرصَن	- Our computer system is hacked.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as often as I can	كثيراً لأقصى حد ممكن	on the computer / smartphone	على الكمبيوتر / الهاتف الذكي
be able to	يكون قادر على	on the moon	على القمر
be connected to	يكون متصل أو مرتبط بـ	particular tasks	مهام مُعيّنة
be known as	معروف كـ	possible problems	مشاكل محتملة
daily life	الحياة اليومية	posting photos	إرسال الصور
decision making	صناعة القرار - اتخاذ القرار	talking to one another	يتحدثون إلى بعضهم البعض
flying taxi	التاكسي الطائر	the outside world	العالم الخارجي
major security problems	مشكلة أمنية كبيرة	true for you	صحيحة بالنسبة لك
no longer	لم يعد	with no evidence	دون دليل
no more driving	لا مزيد من القيادة	worldwide web	الشبكة الدولية
on all our flights	على جميع رحلاتنا الجوية		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

communicate with	يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع	hack into	يخترق - يقرصن (يهكر)
connect ... to	يربط / يوصّل ... بـ	live on	يعيش على - يتغذى على
connect to	يتصل بـ	steal ... from	يسرق ... من
(dis) advantage to/of	ميزة/عيب لـ		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

app = application

- **app = application** تطبيق (برنامج يقوم بعمل معين على الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف)
  - Google play is full of free apps / applications.
- **application** طلب التحاق (بنادي أو جامعة أو وظيفة ... إلخ)
  - To join this club, fill in this application form.

communicate - contact

- **communicate** يتصل / يتواصل (عن طريق اللقاء / التليفون / الرسائل ...إلخ)
  - I usually communicate with my friends by phone.
- **contact** يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع (عن طريق التليفون / الرسائل ...إلخ لطلب أو إعطاء معلومة)
  - When I saw the smoke, I contacted the fire brigade المطافي.

security - safety

- **security** الأمن / التأمين (يتعلق بحماية الأشخاص والممتلكات)
  - The match was postponed تأجل for security reasons.
- **safety** الأمان (عدم الخوف وعدم وجود خطر)
  - The airline is taking steps to ensure safety on its aircraft.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Something that is recent is ....
   a. late b. ancient c. modern
   d. old e. traditional
2. To have a Facebook account, you have to download and install Facebook .... on your phone.
   a. ad b. app c. population
   d. application e. advert

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What a great decision you have .... ! It was a hit. (بني سويف ٢٠٢٣)
   a. made b. done c. swallowed d. endangered
2. I don't know where I am. I'll .... my satnav.
   a. stay b. check c. go d. take
3. .... help some people work from home.
   a. Communicate b. Communication
   c. Communications d. Communicative
4. I don't know how he .... passwords.
   a. hack b. hacking c. hacker d. hacks
5. The police forces broke .... the cave and arrested the criminals.
   a. in b. out c. into d. onto
6. I have the latest applications .... my smartphone.
   a. at b. from c. to d. on

7. The thief stole a lot of money .... a supermarket.
a. of b. from c. with d. for

8. I connected his absence غياب from school .... his illness.
a. at b. on c. by d. to

9. What is true .... you may be wrong from my point of view.
a. as b. of c. for d. at

10. Someone has hacked .... my Facebook account and posted false news about me.
a. into b. from c. of d. about

11. There're some disadvantages .... modern technology.
a. into b. to c. on d. a & c

12. I handed my .... form to the secretary.
a. app b. application c. apply d. a & b

13. She .... me about the time of the meeting.
a. communicated b. attached c. connected d. contacted

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

The Internet of Things

(SB page 52)

1. Linking[1] the world

Communication[2] is **no longer**[3] about people talking to one another, but about **machines**[4] talking to machines. This is **known as**[5] the **Internet of Things (IOT)**[6]. **Technology**[7] is **developing**[8] so fast that **experts**[9] believe everyone will be **connected to**[10] the IOT in a few years.



2. Connecting our homes

Many things in our own homes are going to be connected to the IOT. **Already**[11], people can **control**[12] their **heating**[13] and **lighting**[14] from their phones, but in the future computers will make the **decisions**[15] for us. They'll even be able to say when the **rubbish**[16] bins need to be **emptied**[17] and control how much water we use!

(1) التواصل / الارتباط بـ
(2) الاتصال
(3) لم يعد
(4) الالات
(5) معروف كـ
(6) إنترنت الأشياء
(7) التكنولوجيا
(8) تتطور
(9) الخبراء
(10) متصل بـ
(11) بالفعل
(12) يتحكم في
(13) التدفئة
(14) الإضاءة
(15) القرارات
(16) القمامة
(17) تفرغ

3. No more driving

Cars can already connect to the internet using **smartphones**[18], but **imagine**[19] if you can get a **driverless**[20] car to come and **collect**[21] you using an **app**[22] on your phone. All driverless cars will be **electric**[23] and much **cleaner**[24] than **petrol**[25] ones. Experts think our roads will be **safer**[26] as there will be fewer **accidents**[27] using driverless cars.

4 . Possible problems

Many people don't think IOT is safe enough **yet**[28]. Computers collect information about people and **businesses**[29] which **criminals**[30] can **steal.**[31] They use this information to **hack**[32] into **organisations**[33] like hospitals, **power stations**[34] and airports, and **cause**[35] **major**[36] **security problems** [37].

(18) الهواتف الذكية
(19) يتخيل
(20) بدون سائق
(21) يحضر - يجمع
(22) تطبيق
(23) كهربي
(24) أنظف
(25) البنزين
(26) أكثر أمانًا
(27) حوادث
(28) حتى الآن
(29) الشركات
(30) مجرمون
(31) يسرق
(32) يخترق
(33) المؤسسات
(34) محطات الطاقة
(35) يسبب
(36) أساسي / رئيسي
(37) مشكلات أمنية

Internet use in Egypt

(WB page 116)

Every year, more and more people are connected to the internet in Egypt. A **recent**[1] **survey**[2] found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication, so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones, so they can listen to music or watch films.

Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried about security and the **possibility**[3] that their devices might be hacked.

(1) حالي / حديث
(2) إحصاء / استبيان
(3) إمكانية / احتمالية

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 54)

Boy : I don't think we'll ever live on the moon.
Girl : Lots of people are going to study online in the future.
Boy : Did you know that in 2039 the worldwide web will be 50 years old ?
Girl : I can't find the restaurant. I'll check my satnav.
Boy : My mum is buying a new flexible smartphone next week.

PART IV LANGUAGE

Future Forms

1 The "will" Future

Formation التكوين

يتكون المستقبل البسيط أو (will + inf.) فى هذه الصيغة فى المبنى للمعلوم من :

١ فى الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject فاعل + will / shall + inf. ......

- لاحظ استخدام (will) مع كل الضمائر ويمكن استخدام (shall) مع (I / we) فقط.

ex. - I will (shall) help you do your homework.

- Nada will be four next March.

٢ عند النفى :

Subject فاعل + will not (won't) / shall not (shan't) + inf. ......

ex. - We won't be ready before he comes back.

- Ahmed won't attend the party.

٣ عند السؤال بـ «هل» :

Will / Shall + subject فاعل + inf. ...... ?

ex. - Will you wait for the bus ?

- Yes, I will (wait for the bus).

- No, I won't (wait for the bus).

٤ عند السؤال بـ «كلمة» استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + will / shall + subject فاعل + inf. ...... ?

ex. - When will you go to bed ?

- What will they do next ?

٥ يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبنى للمجهول من :

Object المفعول + will / shall + be + p.p. ......

ex. - A camera will be bought (by Rodayna) tomorrow.

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She will .... 21 next Monday.

a. am b. is c. be d. being

2. .... show me your new tablet ?
   a. You will   b. What will you   c. You won't   d. Will you

3. .... show me on your tablet ?
   a. You will   b. What will you   c. You won't   d. Will you

4. I think he .... for returning home late.
   a. will punish   b. will be punished   c. won't punish   d. is punishing

Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية (أحداث ليس للفاعل أو رغباته أو إرادته دخل فيها):

ex. - It's my birthday next Tuesday. I'll be 17.
- The school will be ten years old this year.

٢ التعبير عن قرار سريع (رد فعل لحظي وقت الكلام) :

ex. - Oh, that's the doorbell. I'll open it.

٣ التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل، ويمكن في هذه الحالة أن تبدأ الجملة بعبارات تحتوي على أفعال مثل :

think يعتقد / **expect** يتوقع / **hope** يأمل / **be sure** متأكد / **be afraid** يخشى / **wonder** يتساءل / **suppose** يفترض / **guess** يخمن / **fear** يخشى ....

ex. - I expect they will stay for dinner.   - I think it will rain.

- ومن الممكن أن يصاحب ذلك بعض الظروف مثل :

perhaps - probably - possibily, may be ...etc.

ex. - Perhaps I'll go home early today.
- She will probably refuse to take any money.

٤ عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة أو الدعوة :

ex. - You look very thirsty. I'll get you a cold drink.

٥ عند طلب خدمة :

ex. - Will you let me use your mobile, please?

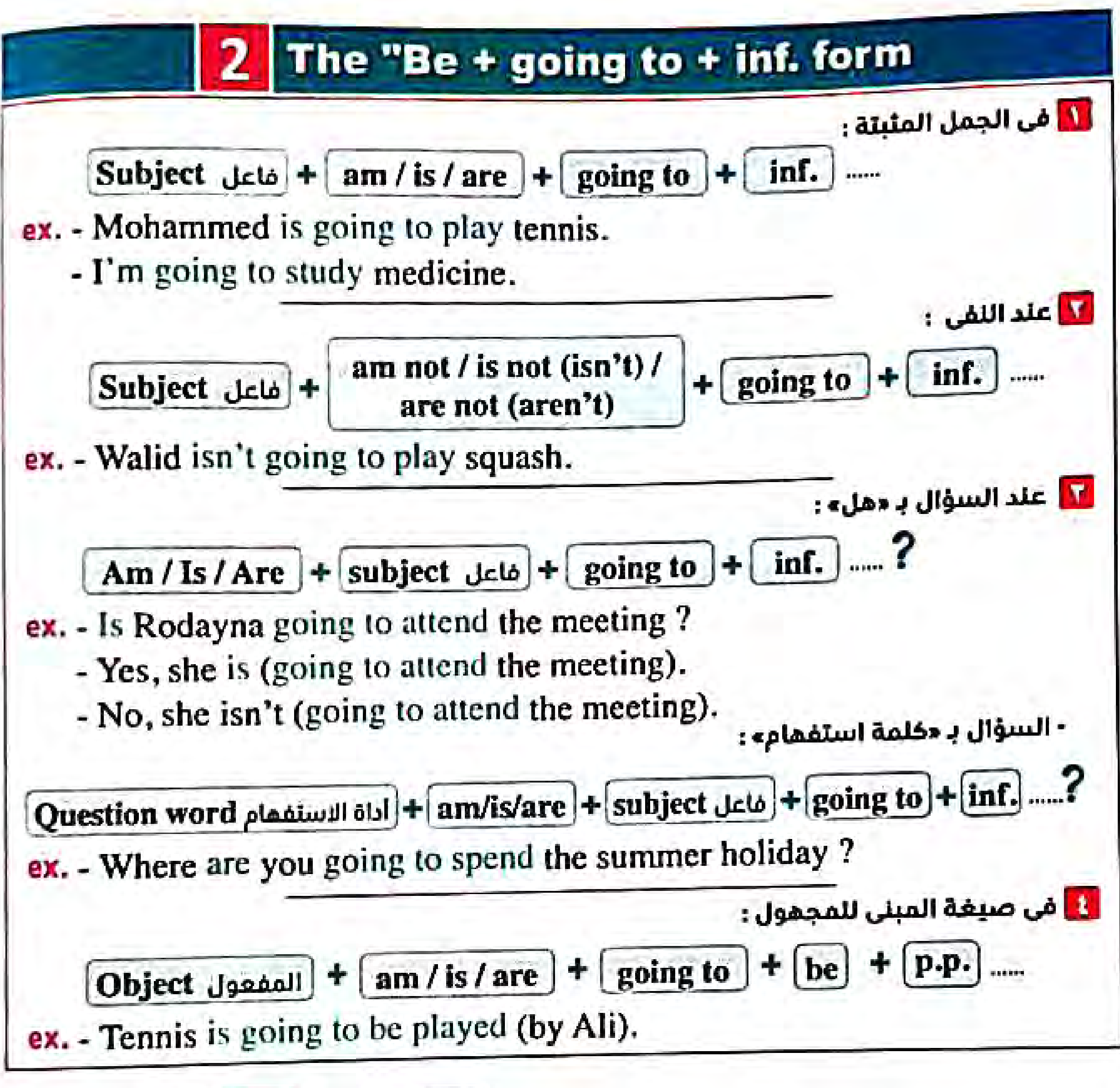
٦ التعبير عن الوعود :

ex. - My father has promised that we will spend a month in Sharm El-Sheikh.

٧ توجيه تهديدات :

ex. - Do your homework or I'll punish you.

2 The "Be + going to + inf. form



١ في الجمل المثبتة :

Subject فاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf. ......

ex. - Mohammed is going to play tennis.
- I'm going to study medicine.

٢ عند النفي :

Subject فاعل + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + going to + inf. ......

ex. - Walid isn't going to play squash.

٣ عند السؤال بـ «هل» :

Am / Is / Are + subject فاعل + going to + inf. ...... ?

ex. - Is Rodayna going to attend the meeting ?
- Yes, she is (going to attend the meeting).
- No, she isn't (going to attend the meeting).

• السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة الاستفهام + am/is/are + subject فاعل + going to + inf. ......?

ex. - Where are you going to spend the summer holiday ?

٤ في صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object المفعول + am / is / are + going to + be + p.p. ......

ex. - Tennis is going to be played (by Ali).

Mini Test 2 ○ Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The Ashrafs .... the next summer holiday in Alexandria.
   a. will be spent
   b. going to spend
   c. are going to be spent
   d. are going to spend
2. .... the office ?
   a. When are you going to leave
   b. You are going to leave
   c. Are you going to be left
   d. You are going to be left
3. This man .... to prison for this crime.
   a. is going to send
   b. is going to be sent
   c. will send
   d. going to send



Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن الخطط الشخصية المسبقة "plans" :

ex. - I am going to decorate my house.

٢ التعبير عن النية (intend / intention) لعمل شيء في المستقبل:

ex. - He is going to study medicine at university. That's his intention.

٣ التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلاً في حالة وجود دليل (أي يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بوقوع الشيء) :

ex. - His leg is broken. He is going to have an operation.

- وبهذا المعنى يمكن استخدام "going to" بعد أفعال مثل :

be sure / be afraid / believe / think ...etc.

ex. - Mum is very ill. I think she is going to see a doctor.

- لاحظ ان الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلا وتستخدم معها (will) :

ex. - He will win the running race. He's very fast.

٤ وتستخدم أيضاً للتعبير عما سيحدث في المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

decided / have decided / made a decision / made up ... mind

ex. - He is going to have lunch outdoors. He has already decided.

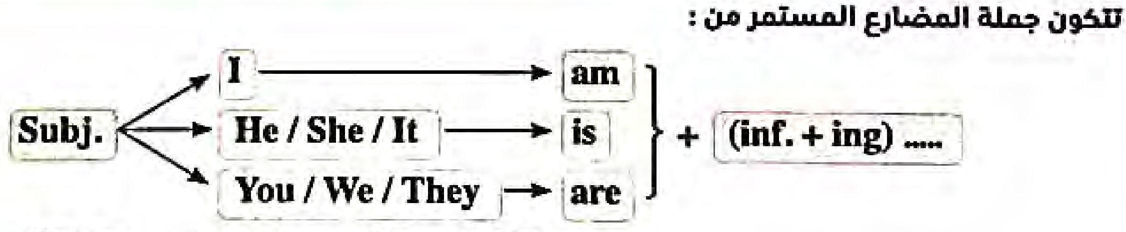
٥ وتستخدم أيضاً للتعبير عن أشياء على وشك الحدوث :

be going to + inf. = be about to على وشك + inf.

ex. - I'm going to leave right now. = I'm about to leave.

3 The Present Continuous for Future Arrangements

تتكون جملة المضارع المستمر من :



ex. - Sama is watching a video. (إثبات)

- Sama isn't watching a cartoon. (نفي)
- Is Sama watching a video ? (سؤال بدهل)
- Yes, she is. - No, she isn't.
- What is Sama doing ? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)
- A video is being watched (by Sama). (مبني للمجهول)

Uses استخدامات

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل فى الحالات التالية :

١ التعبير عن المستقبل القريب في حالة وجود ترتيبات نهائية مسبقة ، و يدل علي ذلك كلمات مثل :

arranged / made arrangements / prepared / made preparations

ex. - I'm taking Salma on a trip tomorrow. Everything is arranged.

٢ لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

ex. - My brother is getting married next Thursday.

٣ لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التي ستقوم بها المؤسسات مستقبلاً تستلزم ترتيبات ، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

ex. - My class are going on a school trip next week.

٤ إذا ملعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل القريب فان ما يمنعك يكون مرتبًا له وبالتالي نستخدم المضارع المستمر :

ex. - I can't go out with you tonight because I'm meeting my uncle at the airport.

٥ لاحظ أن المضارع المستمر لا يدل على المستقبل إلا فى حالة وجود تعبير زمنى أو سياق يدل على المستقبل :

ex. - I am having lunch with my uncle. (حدث مستمر الآن)
- I am having lunch with my uncle tomorrow. (ترتيب مستقبلى)

4 The Present Simple for Timetables

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث أو المواقف المرتبطة بجداول مواعيد ثابتة مثل الطائرات والقطارات والمباريات والحصص والامتحانات ومواعيد العمل:

ex. - My train arrives at 7:15 tomorrow morning.
- The match starts at 9 p.m. next Friday.

Important Notes on Future Forms ملاحظات هامة على صيغ المستقبل

١ التعبيرات الزمنية التالية تدل على المستقبل ، وتأتي في نهاية الجملة ، لكن عندما تأتي في بداية الجملة نستخدم الفاصلة السفلى (,) بعدها:

tomorrow / in the future / soon / one day / next القادم (year , month , week , Friday.....) / this time في مثل هذا الوقت (next week / tomorrow........) / in خلال / بعد (a year, month, week.........) / by بحلول / قبيل (next week , tomorrow morning , 2030.........)

- She will do the shopping tomorrow.
- Next Monday, I am visiting my uncle.

UNIT 5

٢ يستخدم المضارع البسيط والمضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزملية:

After / As soon as / When / The moment + (مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام) → مستقبل / جملة أمر

- After I arrive (have arrived) home, I'll take a rest.
- Tell Ahmed to call me the moment you see (have seen) him.

Before + (مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام) → مستقبل / جملة أمر

- Before we leave (have left) the office, I'll phone some clients.
- Don't leave here before you finish (have finished) all your jobs.

مستقبل بسيط منفي (غالبا) / جملة أمر + **till / until** + (مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام)

- Mum won't set the table for lunch until my father arrives (has arrived) home.
- Don't put the bread in the shopping bag until it completely cools (has cooled).

General Exercise On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't worry. I .... you the money you need. (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
   a. am lending b. am going to lend c. will lend d. lend
2. My brother .... be 14 next month. (بورسعيد٢٠٢٣)
   a. would b. is going to c. could d. will
3. A: I'm thirsty.
   B: Just a minute! I .... some cold water. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. will get b. am going to get c. am going d. got
4. She is stubborn. It .... easy to make her agree to this plan. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. won't be b. isn't going to c. isn't being d. is
5. He hasn't studied hard. I think he .... this exam. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. will fail b. fails c. is going to fail d. failed
6. Arrangements for the wedding have completed, we .... it next Friday. (بني سويف ٢٠٢٣)
   a. will celebrate b. celebrate
   c. are going to celebrate d. are celebrating
7. Batol got top marks. She .... the faculty she likes. (القليوبية ٢٠٢٣)
   a. joins b. will join c. is joining d. is going to join

8. Akram is filling up the bucket with water. He .... the car. (فاقوس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. will be washed b. is washed
   c. washes d. is going to wash

9. Ali .... go out until he finishes his work. (بركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)
   a. didn't b. will c. won't d. wouldn't

10. We intend to meet some friends after .... our study. (بنها ٢٠٢٣)
   a. finishing b. will finish c. had finished d. finishes

11. Study hard or the teacher .... you. (بنها ٢٠٢٣)
   a. is punishing b. will punish
   c. punishes d. is going to punish

12. Salma already packed her bag. She .... tomorrow. (السنطة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. travels b. will travel
   c. is going to travel d. is travelling

13. The train .... at 5 o'clock. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. arrives b. arrive c. will arrive d. is arriving

14. I have just decided to buy a new mobile·. This means I .... a new mobile. (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. am buying b. am going to buy c. buy d. will buy

15. Students will go to the club as soon as they .... their homework. (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. finish b. had finished c. finishing d. finished

16. Once I ...., I will eat lunch. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. had arrived b. arrives c. have arrived d. arrival

17. Look! It is very cloudy. It .... (المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)
   a. will rain b. is raining c. is going to rain d. rains

18. It is roaring with thunder and lightning. I think there .... a terrible storm. (كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)
   a. will be b. has been c. is going to be d. had been

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 56 & 57 WB pages 118 & 119



PART 1 VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advert = advertisement (n)	إعلان	password(n)	كلمة المرور
anti-virus (adj)	مكافح الفيروسات	personal details(n)	التفاصيل الشخصية
click(ed) (n - v)	نقرة - ينقر	phishing(n)	النصب الإلكتروني
cyberbullying(n)	التنمر الإلكتروني	post(ed) (v)	يرسل
download (n)	ملف مُنزل	satnav(n)	التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي
download(ed) (v)	يُنزل	scam(n)	احتيال - غِش
downloading (n)	التنزيل	scam(med) (v)	يغش - يحتال على
Google (n)	مُحرّك البحث جوجل	software(n)	برنامج - برمجيات
google(d) (v)	يبحث على جوجل عن	upload (n)	ملف مرفوع
lock(ed) (n - v)	يقفل - قِفل	upload(ed) (v)	يرفع ملف
malware(n)	البرمجيات الخبيثة	uploading (n)	الرفع

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

account(n)	حساب (مصرفي أو على الإنترنت)	furious(adj)	ساخط / غاضب جدا
		horrible(adj)	فظيع
almost(adv)	تقريبًا	impossible(adj)	مستحيل
careful (adj)	حريص/حَذِر	media(n)	أجهزة الإعلام - وسائل الإعلام
change(d) (v)	يُغيّر - يتغير		
comment(ed) (n - v)	تعليق - يعلق	mention(ed) (v)	يَذكُر - يقول
credit card(n)	بطاقة ائتمان	recognise(d) (v)	يتعرف على
delete(d) (v)	يحذف - يلغي	remove(d) (v)	يُزيل - يُبعد
details(n)	تفاصيل	rude(adj)	وَقِح/غير مهذب
dishonest(adj)	غير أمين - مُخادِع	scary(adj)	مُخيف/مُرعِب
document(n)	وثيقة	share(d) (v)	يتشارك - ينشر
embarrassing(adj)	مُحرِج	socialise(d) (v)	يختلط (بالآخرين)
employment(n)	توظيف/تشغيل - استغلال	trouble(n)	مأزق / مشكلة
fly - flew - flown(v)	يطير - يُطيّر - يُسرع	ugly(adj)	قبيح المنظر
free (free of charge)(adj)	مجاني	unwanted(adj)	غير مرغوب فيه
frighten(ed) (v)	يخيف		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
anti-virus software (n) برنامج مكافحة الفيروسات	software that removes يزيل unwanted programs from a computer
click(v) ينقر	to press a button زر on a computer mouse in order to choose something from the screen شاشة that you want the computer to do
cyberbullying(n) التنمر الإلكتروني	sending messages online to frighten or worry someone
downloading malware تنزيل البرامج الخبيثة	putting software from the internet onto a computer that will damage it
lock(v) يقفل	to do something to stop other people using your phone or social media accounts
phishing(n) النصب الإلكتروني	- trying to trick a person into giving information over the internet to take money from them - a dishonest plan to get money
posting photos إرسال الصور	putting photographs online
scam(n) احتيال ، غش	a dishonest plan to steal money
uploading personal details تحميل البيانات الشخصية	copying information such as your address and phone number to the internet

Exercise On Vocabulary

● Understand

- ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. You need to update your .... software regularly to look for and remove viruses on your computer. (السويس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. malware b. antivirus c. antibiotic d. antibodies
2. Don't .... on a link you don't recognize. (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
   a. sink b. think c. pick d. click
3. You shouldn't .... unsafe internet data onto your computer. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
   a. load b. upload c. overload d. download
4. .... results in harm to your computer by some programs downloaded from the internet. (المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. Malware b. Scam c. Phishing d. Software

5. My diary is .... I don't let anyone else read it. (المنشاة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. personnel   b. personality   c. person   d. personal
6. My friend keeps .... photos all day. (إدارة الشرقية - لغات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. logging in   b. posting   c. lighting   d. connecting
7. He didn't realise he had been .... until after he had used his credit card. (الطود - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. scammed   b. managed   c. advertised   d. announced
8. He asked me about details of my credit card. It's a .... (فتح الله كبرة الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. scan   b. scam   c. scar   d. skim
9. Captains of ships and car drivers use .... to know where they are and how to reach a place.
   a. adverts   b. satnav   c. IOT   d. ID
10. This webpage is full of job .... I found my current job here.
   a. anti-virus   b. malware   c. adverts   d. satnav
11. There must be a law to criminalize يُجَرِّم ....
   a. technology   b. satnav   c. cyberbullying   d. internet of things
12. My tablet is .... protected. No one else can use it.
   a. website   b. internet   c. password   d. virus
13. My tablet has powerful anti-virus ....
   a. hardware   b. hardwares   c. software   d. softwares
14. When I heard the .... of the gun parts, I knew the man was about to shoot. (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٠)
   a. direct   b. object   c. check   d. click
15. A scam is an online trick used to .... (المنيا - ملوى ٢٠٢٠)
   a. legally take someone's money   b. win a match
   c. rob someone of their money   d. destroy a building
16. You can .... someone you have recently met to see what information is available about them on the internet. (سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٠)
   a. google   b. download   c. upload   d. hack
17. Don't worry, sir. The door of the room is ....
   a. lock   b. locked   c. locks   d. a lock
18. I have already .... the file to the website.
   a. downloaded   b. downloads   c. uploaded   d. uploads

2 Important Vocabulary

19. Although he was in disguise متنكر, I was able to .... him. (الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٠)
   a. concept   b. release   c. realise   d. recognise

20. Most people find it .... to ask others for money.
a. embarrassing b. furious c. free d. unwanted

21. Black cats .... some babies.
a. socialise b. frighten c. comment d. mention

22. Pilots have the ability to .... aircraft.
a. flow b. flee c. fly d. flea

23. One must always .... their password to keep their accounts safe. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
a. change b. charge c. recharge d. exchange

24. He was .... because his new tablet had just been broken.
a. embarrassing b. furious c. free d. unwanted

25. It is important for a child to .... with other people.
a. socialise b. frighten c. comment d. mention

26. He is a short-tempered حاد الطبع person, so be .... about what you say to him. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
a. careless b. care c. cares d. careful

27. He wants to .... a malware from his tablet. (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٠)
a. remove b. recognize c. develop d. design

28. Children under six have their meals .... of charge in this restaurant.
a. embarrassing b. furious c. free d. unwanted

29. She .... that she turned off the laptop before leaving the office.
a. socialised b. frightened c. tricked d. mentioned

30. You need to protect your Facebook ....
a. network b. account c. evidence d. intention

31. The officer asked me about the .... of the accident.
a. details b. organisations c. offers d. networks

32. Millions of followers .... on Salah's posts.
a. socialise b. frighten c. comment d. mention

33. This programme deletes .... data to save memory.
a. embarrassing b. furious c. free d. unwanted

3 Definitions

34. Someone has tried to trick me into giving confidential information over the internet . This is called .... (شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)
a. bullying b. virus c. phishing d. scam

35. Sending messages online to frighten or worry someone is called .... (دمنهور ٢٠٢٣)
a. downloading b. blogging c. cyberbullying d. sharing



36. A/An .... software removes unwanted programs from a computer.
   a. hacker   b. database   c. virus   d. anti-virus
37. To .... is to press a button on a computer mouse in order to choose something from the screen that you want the computer to do.
   a. cause   b. link   c. click   d. network
38. To stop other people using your phone or social media accounts, you should .... them.
   a. offer   b. lock   c. post   d. design
39. .... malware means putting software from the internet onto a computer that will damage it.
   a. Recognising   b. Solving   c. Protecting   d. Downloading

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

build	friendships	يُكوِّن صداقات	**look**	like	يبدو كأنه / يشبه
do	wrong	يُخطئ		heavy	تبدو ثقيلة
give	personal details	يعطي تفاصيل شخصية		right	يبدو على ما يُرام
	a presentation	يقوم بعرض تقديمي	**stay**	safe	يبقى بأمان
go	online	يدخل على الإنترنت	**take**	photos	يلتقط الصور
keep	a note of	يحتفظ بملحوظة عن			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
advert	إعلان	advertisement, ad
malware	برمجيات خبيثة	malicious software
satnav	الملاحة بالقمر الصناعي	satellite navigation
scam	احتيال - غش	fraud, trick

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
download	تنزيل - يُحمِّل (من الإنترنت)	upload	الرفع - يرفع (على الإنترنت)
lock	يقفل	unlock - open	يفتح
security, safety	الأمن	danger / insecurity	الخطر / انعدام الأمن

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

advert		
advertise(d) (v)	يُعلن عن	- We pay a lot of money to advertise our products.
advert = ad = advertisement (n)	إعلان	- We pay a lot of money for adverts for our products.
advertiser (n)	مُعلن	- We pay a lot of money for advertisers to promote يروج لـ our products.
advertised (adj)	مُعلن عنه	- This product is advertised on TV.
cyberbullying		
cyberbully(ied) (v)	يتنمر على الإنترنت	- It is a crime to cyberbully people.
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الإلكتروني	- Cyberbullying is a crime.
cyberbully (n)	متنمر إلكتروني	- It is a crime to be a cyberbully.
download		
download(ed) (v)	يُنزّل - يتم تحميله	- The file downloaded slowly.
download (n)	ملف مُنزّل	- I keep all downloads in this file.
downloading (n)	التنزيل	- Downloading large files take some time.
downloadable (adj)	قابل للتنزيل	- This file is not downloadable.
lock		
lock (v)	يقفل	- I use a symbol to lock the screen.
lock (n)	قفل	- I use a symbol as a lock for the screen.
locked (adj)	مقفول	- The screen is locked with a symbol.
scam		
scam(med) (v)	يحتال على / يغش	- She was scammed by an online friend.
scam (n)	احتيال / غش	- She was the victim ضحية of a scam.
scammer (n)	محتال / غشاش	- She was the victim of a scammer.



UNIT 5

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a comment about	تعليق على	on the internet	على الإنترنت
an advert for	إعلان عن	on the other hand,	من الناحية الأخرى
an example of	مثال على	plenty of	كثير من
careful about	حريص على	Social Media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
disadvantages to	مساوئ لـ	stop its working	يجعله يتوقف عن العمل
in trouble	فى مأزق	the space provided	الفراغ المتاح
key points	النقاط الرئيسية	to conclude/ in conclusion	والخلاصة هى
nothing happened	لم يحدث شيء	write in clear simple words	يكتب مستخدمًا كلمات بسيطة وواضحة

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

choose from	يختار من بين	delete … from	يحذف … من
click on	ينقر على	remove … from	يُزيل … من
complete … with	يُكمل … بـ	socialise …with	يختلط اجتماعياً بـ - يتواصل عبر وسائل التواصل مع

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

scam - spam

- **scam** نصب / احتيال على الإنترنت (للاستيلاء على أموال الغير)
  - The police have warned حذر people about internet and phone scam.
- **spam** رسائل البريد الإلكتروني التي تحتوي على إعلانات غير مرغوب فيها
  - I don't know how to delete all this spam.

advertisement

- **advertisement / advert / ad** إعلان عن سلعة / خدمة (كلمة عامة)
  - Don't believe adverts. Ask people who have already bought the products المنتجات.
- **commercial** إعلان تجارى (في التليفزيون / الإذاعة)
  - This actress ممثلة started her career in commercials.
- **trailer** إعلان عن فيلم
  - This web page is full of trailers.
- **promotion** حملة دعائية (للترويج لمنتج معين)
  - The company spent 2 million dollars on promotions for the new product.
- **announcement** إعلان / تنبيه (نشر تنبيهات - تعليمات - تحذيرات - قرارات)
  - We are waiting for the announcement of the decisions.

virus - anti-virus - malware - hacker

- **virus** فيروس (كائن دقيق يسبب المرض)
  - He is infected with مصاب بـ Coronavirus.
- **virus** فيروس إلكترونى (يسبب ضرر للأجهزة الحاسوبية)
  - A virus has destroyed the data on my tablet.
- **anti-virus software** مُكافح فيروسات (برنامج لإزالة البرامج الضارة)
  - Don't trust يثق بـ a free anti-virus software.
- **malware** البرمجيات الخبيثة (برنامج يقوم بتدمير وإتلاف أجهزة الحاسب والهواتف الذكية)
  - Malware is a malicious software برنامج خبيث.
- **hacker** قرصان إنترنت (شخص يخترق خصوصية أجهزة الكمبيوتر والبرامج الخاصة بالآخرين)
  - A hacker has deleted the data from the central computer.

software - hardware

- **software (un countable noun)** برنامج حاسوبي (يؤدي غرض معين على الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف الذكي)
  - I bought this anti-virus software.
- **hardware (uncountable noun)** مكونات / أجزاء / أدوات (الحاسب أو غيره)
  - I need some kitchen hardware.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. The verb 'make' collocates with ....
   a. wrong b. like c. a decision d. right e. life better
2. I was asked to give ....
   a. personal details b. heavy c. online
   d. a presentation e. sat-nav
3. You can .... online.
   a. give b. go c. do d. take e. study
4. "............" is short for advertisement.
   a. P.P. b. Ad c. DOB d. AD e. Advert
5. Scam is a synonym of ....
   a. trek b. trick c. found d. fraud e. afraid
6. "I locked the front door." The verb 'lock' here is an antonym for ....
   a. open b. repair c. fix d. paint e. unlock



- **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Show me the photo you've just ....
   a. stayed b. done c. gone d. taken
2. Apologise when you .... wrong.
   a. do b. look c. make d. write
3. Keep at home. .... safe.
   a. Stay b. Check c. Go d. Take
4. Her face is pale. She does not .... right.
   a. do b. look c. make d. lock
5. I'm very busy, so I rarely .... online.
   a. stay b. check c. go d. take
6. Danger is antonymous with .... (سوهاج - المراجعة ٢٠٢٠)
   a. safe b. safety c. secure d. insecurity
7. Scam is to .... as book is to reserve.
   a. fried b. trick c. trust d. a & b
8. "I have just uploaded a video." In this sentence, the word 'uploaded' is the antonym of ....
   a. unloaded b. overloaded c. downloaded d. a & c
9. "Be careful of malicious software." The speaker is warning us against ....
   a. software b. hardware c. adverts d. malware
10. My children keep the .... on desktop.
    a. downloaded b. downloads c. uploaded d. cyberbullying
11. I had given him 5000 pounds before I realised that he was a ....
    a. scam b. scams c. scammed d. scammer
12. I pressed the red button to stop the machine ....
    a. working b. to working c. work d. to work
13. Sama asked me to remove the peel .... the orange.
    a. with b. for c. from d. at
14. .... conclude, hard work is necessary for success in life and work.
    a. In b. By c. Of d. To
15. The processor of the computer is part of its ....
    a. software b. hardware c. malware d. a & b
16. I got tired of the .... that is sent to my email.
    a. spam b. scam c. download d. upload

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Hassan's blog *(SB page 57)*

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an advert for a free game. I clicked on the link and wrote my name, address and some bank details. When I tried to download the game, nothing happened. It was a scam!

My dad was furious because they stole money from his bank account and my computer stopped working properly! Don't click on links you don't recognise and never give your personal details on a strange website. Oh, and remember to use **anti-virus software** to stop thieves!

Stay safe online *(SB page 57)*

Don't add your personal details to a website.
Do change your **password**(1) often.
Don't **click on a link**(2) you don't **recognise**(3).
Do **lock**(4) your phone.
Do lock your **social media accounts**(5).
Don't upload **embarrassing**(6) photos.
Don't save bank details on a website.
Do use anti-virus software.
Do use different passwords on different websites.
Don't write **unkind comments**(7) about other people.

(1) كلمة سر
(2) ينقر على رابط
(3) يتعرف على
(4) يغلق
(5) حسابات مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
(6) محرج
(7) تعليقات سيئة

2 Listening Texts



(SB page 56)

Hassan : Last week, I was reading about a new **online game**(1) and saw an **advert**(2) that said I could get this game for free. All I had to do was **complete a form**(3) with my name, email **address**(4) and **credit**(5) card **details**(6). I don't have a credit card, but I ... buy things. Of cours... wanted the credit card details so they could steal money, but it looked just like a real advert. I think lots of kids would be so excited to get a free game they wouldn't think carefully about it.

(1) لعبة على الإنترنت
(2) إعلان
(3) يملأ / يكمل استمارة
(4) عنوان
(5) ...ات بنكي
(6)
(7)

UNIT 5

Laila : I'm leaving school this year and I want to get a job in a bank. My teacher told me that **employers**[8] often look online to see what we've **posted**[9], so I decided to **google**[10] my name to see what they might find. It was scary. All the photos and the "funny" **comments**[11] I'd ever posted were there and I couldn't **delete**[12] them. I didn't **realise**[13] it's almost impossible to remove **personal data**[14] from the internet.

Saeed : I love reading my friend's **social media posts**[15], but some people write really **horrible**[16] things about other teenagers. One of my friends posted a photo of himself on his new bike and he got lots of **rude comments**[17] about how he looked and how **ugly**[18] his bike is. I couldn't believe it ! These kids would never, never **bully**[19] my friend at school, so why they do online ? I'm really careful about what I say on the internet now !

(8) اصحاب العمل
(9) يرسل منشور
(10) يبحث على جوجل
(11) تعليقات
(12) يحذف
(13) يدرك
(14) بيانات شخصية
(15) منشورات مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
(16) مفظع / رهيب
(17) تعليقات وقحة
(18) قبيح
(19) يتنمر / يبلطج

3 Video script section

Sometimes teenagers **experience**[1] **bullying**[2] because they look different, have different **abilities**[3] or different **opinions**[4] and experiences.

If you think someone is being **bullied**[5], what should you do ?

Parents and teachers are there to **give advice**[6] when bullying happens. If you know someone is being bullied, you should tell the teacher. You can also **offer**[7] to help the person tell their parents.

You can **keep a note**[8] of any bullying you see so that you have **plenty of information**[9] to tell your teacher. The teacher can then talk to the **bully**[10] about everything they have done.

Be kind to the person who is being bullied. **Make sure**[11] that they know you support them and do not like the bully's **behaviour**[12]. Spend time talking and **socialising**[13] with them to help them build new **friendships**[14]. Invite them to join your friends.

Agree with your friends that you will make it clear to the bully that you do not like their behaviour.

(1) يجرب
(2) التنمر
(3) قدرات
(4) آراء
(5) يتم التنمر عليه
(6) يعطى نصيحة
(7) يعرض
(8) يدون ملاحظات
(9) معلومات كثيرة
(10) المتنمر
(11) تأكد من
(12) سلوك
(13) يتشارك اجتماعيا
(14) صداقات

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. What can you do to help yourself remember what the bully has done ?
2. How can you help a person who is being bullied ?
3. What can you do with your friends to help stop the bully ?

PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

General Exercise On Language

○ Apply

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1 I am not doing anything until I .... something to eat.
a. have b. will have c. had had d. had

2. Oh, the water is boiling. I .... off the gas.
a. will turn b. am going to turn
c. am turning d. turn

3. **A:** We haven't got any sugar. **B:** I .... some this evening.
a. will buy b. am going to buy
c. will be buying d. will have bought

4. A party .... in celebration of the end of the school year tomorrow.
a. is giving b. is being given c. gives d. is going to give

5. It's the first time I've ever seen this hotel. I've decided that I .... in it next month.
a. am going to stay b. will stay c. am staying d. have stayed

6. The ceiling of this room doesn't look very safe. It looks as if it .... down.
a. will fall b. is falling c. is going to fall d. falls

7. **A:** How old are you? **B:** I .... 44 next February.
a. am b. am going to be c. will be d. am being

8. I have made up my mind. I .... a new house.
a. am going to buy b. will buy c. am buying d. buy

9. **A:** I don't know how to use this camera.
B: It's quite easy. I .... you.
a. am showing b. am going to show
c. will show d. show

UNIT 5

10. Our school .... part in the sports competition next week. That has been arranged.
   a. will take   b. takes   c. is taking   d. is going to take
11. I expect that Reem .... married next year.
   a. get   b. will get   c. has got   d. gets
12. Watch out! You .... the flower vase.
   a. would drop   b. are going to drop
   c. drop   d. are being dropped
13. I .... work early today. I have arranged that with the manager.
   a. leave   b. am going to leave
   c. am leaving   d. will leave
14. The train .... Aswan at 8:00 o'clock. It's on the timetable.
   a. is going to leave   b. will leave   c. is leaving   d. leaves
15. I expect that my team .... the match.
   a. is winning   b. is going to win   c. will win   d. wins
16. A: Why are you taking down all the pictures? B: I .... the room.
   a. paint   b. am going to paint
   c. will paint   d. am being painted

2 Special cases

17. The agent says my flight .... at 7 o'clock tomorrow.
   a. is   b. shall be   c. will be   d. is being
18. She looks extremely pale شاحبة. I think she ....
   a. will faint   b. is fainting   c. is going to faint   d. faint
19. I think my cousin .... law. He is keen on defending people.
   a. would study   b. is going to study
   c. studying   d. will study
20. A: I've decided to set up a business.
   B: Oh, have you? When .... start?
   a. shall you   b. do you   c. are you going to   d. will you
21. I .... dinner today, mum. You look tired.
   a. prepare   b. will prepare
   c. am preparing   d. am going to prepare
22. A: What are your personal plans for the next two years?
   B: I .... a new house.
   a. build   b. will build
   c. am building   d. am going to build

23. Twenty years from now, I think my country .... a fantastic place.
a. is b. is going to be c. will be d. shall be

24. He is going to catch the bus when it ....
a. arrives b. will arrive c. arrived d. arrive

25. When you arrive, ... me at once.
a. are going to call b. are calling c. will call d. call

26. Don't wash the dishes if you .... in a hurry.
a. were b. are being c. are d. will be

27. I can't go out with you this afternoon. I .... the doctor at 5 pm.
a. see b. going to see c. will see d. am seeing

28. A: When are you going to leave for Rome?
B: I .... tomorrow on the 6:00 o'clock plane. Here is the ticket.
a. leave b. am leaving
c. am going to leave d. will leave

29. It is raining heavily. Don't go out or you .... wet.
a. get b. will get c. are going to get d. are getting

30. **A:** Make a prediction about your life ten years from now.
B: I .... married.
a. will be b. am
c. am getting d. am going to get

31. He is brave by nature. He .... the problem.
a. face b. facing
c. is going to face d. will face

32. You won't leave the office until the manager .... you.
a. called b. had called c. has called d. call

33. In ten years' time, my father .... even older.
a. will look b. is looking c. going to look d. looks

2 Check your understanding

34. "I won't go to bed until my father returns home." I mean that ....
a. I will go to bed before my father arrives home.
b. once I go to bed, my father will arrive home.
c. once my father arrives home, I will go to bed.
d. I won't go to bed after my father arrives home.

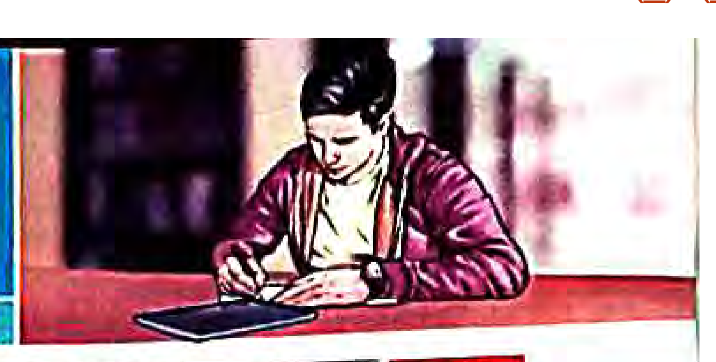


35. "Everything is arranged for my brother's wedding tomorrow." What does this mean?
    a. My brother will get married tomorrow.
    b. My brother gets married tomorrow.
    c. My brother will be got married tomorrow.
    d. My brother is getting married tomorrow.
36. "My father has made up his mind about selling the old car to the mechanic for 70,000 pounds." What does this mean?
    a. My father is going to sell the old car to the mechanic.
    b. My father won't sell the old car to the mechanic.
    c. My father isn't selling the old car to the mechanic.
    d. My father sells the car to the mechanic.
37. "I am about to leave soon." This means ....
    a. I'm being left soon.
    b. I am going to leave soon.
    c. I will leave soon.
    d. I leave soon.
38. "Omar has decided to redecorate his flat." This means ....
    a. Omar will redecorate his flat.
    b. Omar is going to redecorate his flat.
    c. Omar is redecorating his flat.
    d. Omar redecorates his flat.
39. "I'm going to look for a better job." This is a / an ....
    a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
40. "Karim will come first this year." This is a / an ....
    a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
41. "I will buy you a tablet for your birthday." This is a / an ....
    a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
42. "Keep calm or I'll send you out." This is a / an ....
    a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
43. "This school will be 70 years old next year." This is a / an ....
    a. fact b. future fact c. plan d. arrangement
44. Watch out! You're going to step into a hole. This means that the addressee المخاطب .... into a hole.
    a. will step
    b. will be stepped
    c. is about to step
    d. has stepped



PART THREE

Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises



تنويه: للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

on

لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (on) مع وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي وبعض الأسماء الأخرى :

on (TV, the radio, the telephone, the internet, social media, mass media, a social networking site, a website ....)

ex. - People share information about themselves on social networking sites.

spend + money / time

spend money on + **n. / inf.** + **ing** = **spend money to** + **inf.**

ex. - He spent a lot of money on (buying) clothes.
= He spent a lot of money to buy new clothes.

spend time + **n. / (inf. + ing)**

ex. - She spent two days preparing for the party.

It's a waste of time / money + **(inf. + ing)** ... مضيعة للوقت / المال

ex. - It's a waste of money cooking all this food for two people.
- It's a waste of time watching films again and again.

verb + obj. مفعول (inf. + ing)

هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها (obj. + ing)، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

catch - discover - feel - hear - leave - notice - observe - see - watch - find - overhear يتنصت

ex. - The police caught him hiding the money he had stolen.
- I saw him running in the street.

ومع أفعال أخرى يكون (inf. + ing) اختصار لـ (by + inf. + ing) :

ex. - People connect to the internet by using their smartphones.
= People connect to the internet using their smartphones.

yet

1 تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في الجمل المنفية في المضارع التام وتأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة، وهي تدل على توقع حدوث شيء لم يحدث حتى الآن :

ex. - My father hasn't arrived yet. (I expect he will arrive.)

UNIT 5

٢ تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) فى الجمل الاستفهامية فى المضارع التام وتأتى غالباً فى نهاية السؤال، وهى تدل على توقع حدوث شيء لم يحدث حتى الآن :

ex. - Has Amira called yet? (I expect she will call.)

٣ تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) بعد صفات التفضيل :

ex. - As a writer, this is my best book yet.

٤ تُستخدم (yet) كأداة ربط بمعنى (لكن / ومع ذلك) وفى هذه الحالة تساوي (but) فى المعنى :

ex. - He is very intelligent, yet too lazy to do anything.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I haven't done the shopping ....
   a. just b. already c. ago d. yet
2. She spent the weekend .... her mother.
   a. helping b. helped c. help d. helps
3. They spent a lot of money .... their new flat.
   a. on b. to c. with d. of
4. She spent a week .... for her birthday party.
   a. preparing b. prepare c. prepares d. prepared
5. She spent all her savings .... a modern car.
   a. buys b. buy c. to buying d. to buy
6. This is Salah's best goal ....
   a. never b. yet c. but d. however
7. There will be better education .... modern technology.
   a. use b. used c. to use d. using
8. It is a waste of time .... online for three hours.
   a. chatted b. to chatting c. chatting d. a chat
9. She is stupid .... very beautiful.
   a. yet b. although c. since d. as
10. Listen to these people .... about modern technology.
   a. talks b. be talked c. talking d. talked
11. You can find information about everything .... the internet.
   a. of b. on c. for d. about

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer : غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Should we work all the time without having a rest or entertainment? The answer is that we cannot go on working without stopping, from time to time and at regular intervals, to have some rest and recreation. If we do so, we can make mistakes and the quality of our work might get worse.

An overcrowded person may end up by losing the ability to think clearly and by having no energy to go on working. Sleep is one of the ways in which nature renews our energy.

Sports and games are also essential for brain workers who stay in closed offices and do not have a good chance to exercise their muscles. Such activities as swimming and walking may do a lot of good to them. So, we should not waste our weekends. They should be made full use of and spent in the open. Having forgotten all about our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full and return the next day to work with our energy fully renewed. Change has a magic effect on man's health and consequently on his performance.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The best summary to the passage is "............" .
   a. We don't have a time of entertainment
   b. Work hard all the time
   c. Man should have a time of entertainment
   d. Entertainment is a waste of time
2. Overworking results in ....
   a. creative thinking
   b. more experience
   c. loss of energy
   d. more energy
3. The writer suggests that brain workers should ....
   a. waste their weekends
   b. spend their weekends somewhere outside
   c. give up their weekends
   d. spend their weekends in their workplaces
4. "Change has a magic effect on man's health". The word "magic" in this sentence means very ....
   a. bad
   b. passive
   c. negative
   d. positive



5. The word "intervals" can have the meaning of ....
   a. periods b. classes c. start d. lessons
6. Change has a great effect on man's ....
   a. chance b. performance c. apology d. taste
7. Sports and games are .... for brain workers.
   a. harmful b. boring c. essential d. not important

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

Write an eassy about 150 words about your plans for the future :

My plans for the future

Everyone has his / her future plans. It is a good thing to have your own future plans. These plans are the goals that you want to achieve. In this essay, I'm going to write about both my work and family plans.

My work plans are very simple. I want to have a good job which pays me enough money. My dream job is to be an accountant in a bank. Although accountants work hard for many hours, they earn a lot of money. As an accountant, I won't need to look for extra work. As soon as I leave my work, I will give the rest of the day to my family.

My family plans are very ambitious. I intend to have a small family. My wife must have a good education. I prefer that she should be a housewife, but I don't mind if she has her own job. I wish I could live in a villa, not a flat. I want my villa to have a large garden with a swimming pool.

However, plans don't achieve themselves. I must work hard to reach my dreams. Without hard work and good planning, my plans will stay in the world of dreams.

3 Translation الترجمة

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. The widespread use of mobile phones and the internet have changed the way we think, work and live. (البشواي ٢٠٢٣)

a. لقد أدى استخدامنا للحاسبات والإنترنت إلى تغيير طريقة تفكيرنا وعملنا وحياتنا.

b. لقد أدى الاستخدام الواسع للهواتف المحمولة والإنترنت إلى تغيير طريقة تفكيرنا وعملنا وحياتنا.

c. لقد أدى الاستخدام الواسع للهواتف والإنترنت إلى تغيير طريقة دراستنا وعملنا وحياتنا.

d. لقد أدت للهواتف المحمولة والإنترنت الى تغيير طريقة تفكيرنا وحياتنا.

2. Doing a sport is something we can't do without. It relives the stress and helps us keep fit and healthy. (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)

a. إن ممارسة الرياضة شيء لا يمكننا القيام به، فهي تخفف التوتر وتساعدنا في الحفاظ على لياقتنا وصحتنا.

b. إن ممارسة الرياضة شيء لا يمكننا الاستغناء عنه، فهي تخفف التوتر وتساعدنا في الحفاظ على لياقتنا وصحتنا.

c. إن ممارسة الرياضة شيء يمكننا القيام به، فهي تخفف التوتر وتساعدنا في الحفاظ على لياقتنا وصحتنا.

d. إن ممارسة الرياضة شيء لا يمكننا القيام به، فهي تخفف التوتر وتساعدنا في الحفاظ على سمنتنا وصحتنا.

3. The Football World Cup has attracted millions of fans in stadiums and viewers on the internet. It was an event that got the attention of men, women, and children. (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)

a. جذب كاس العالم لكرة القدم مليارات المشاهدين في الملاعب والانترنت. لقد كان حدثاً جاذباً لانتباه الرجال والنساء والأطفال.

b. جذب كاس العالم لكرة القدم ملايين المشجعين في الملاعب والمشاهدين على الانترنت. لقد كان حدثاً جاذباً لانتباه الرجال والنساء والأطفال.

c. جذب كاس العالم لكرة القدم ملايين الدولارات من الملاعب والمشاهدين على الانترنت. لقد كان حدثاً جاذباً لانتباه الرجال والنساء والأطفال.

d. جذب كاس العالم لكرة القدم مليارات المشجعين في الملاعب والمشاهدين على الانترنت. لقد كان حدثاً جاذباً لانتباه الرجال والنساء والأطفال.

✪ Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. يجب على كلاً من الحكومة والأفراد أن يتعاونوا لحماية تراثنا العظيم والحفاظ على حضارتنا العريقة. (الدلتا ٢٠٢٣)

a. Both the government and individuals should cooperate to protect our great heritage and preserve our ancient civilization.

b. All the government and the individuals should cooperate to protect our great heritage and preservation our ancient civilization.

c. Both the government and the individuals should cooperate to prevent our great heritage and preserve our ancient civilization.

d. Both the government and the individuals should cooperate to protect our great heritage and deserve our ancient civilization.

٢. يجب علي الدولة أن تضع خطط عاجلة لمواجهة أي تغيرات مناخية مفاجئة، والتي قد تؤثر على المحاصيل والإنتاج في مناطق مختلفة. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)

a. Must on the country put urgent plans to face any sudden climate changes that may affect on crops and production in different areas.

b. Make the country must urgent plans to face any suddenly climate changes that may affect on crops and production in different areas.

c. The country must put urgent plans to face any sudden climate changes that may affect on crops and production in different areas.

d. The country must make urgent plans to face any sudden climate changes that may affect crops and production in different areas.



PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

click

- **click (n)** نقرة - صوت طقطقة
  - With a single click on the mouse, you can get the information you need.
  - The door shuts with a click.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :
  - at the click of a mouse بسرعة جداً / في غمضة عين
  - shut / close -with a click يُحدث صوت تكة عند القفل

- **click (on) (v)** ينقر - يُحدث صوت طقطقة على
  - I clicked on the link but it did not open.

communicate

- **communicate (with) (v)** يتواصل - يتصل مع
  - People from all over the world communicate with each other using emails.
- **communicate ... to** يُبلّغ ... لـ / ينقل ... إلى
  - The manager communicated the decisions to the secretary by email.
- **communicate (to) (v)** يُعدي / ينقل مرض
  - His flu was communicated to all his friends.
- **communication (n)** اتصال / تواصل - القدرة على التواصل
  - Ayman's good communication makes him successful.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :
  - be in communication with يكون على تواصل مع
  - a means of communication وسيلة اتصال أو تواصل
  - a lack of communication انعدام التواصل
  - poor communication علاقة أو تواصل ضعيف
  - direct communication اتصال مباشر
  - establish communication with يقيم علاقات مع
  - communication skills مهارات التواصل

كلمة (communications) تعني وسائل التواصل مثل الإنترنت والراديو والتليفزيون وكذلك الطرق والسكك الحديدية، و بهذا المعنى فهي جمع دائماً:

- Modern communications help us learn and work from home.

the internet

- **the internet (n)** شبكة الإنترنت

لاحظ ضرورة استخدام (the):

- You can find all the information you need on the internet.

ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- go on the internet يدخل علي الإنترنت
- on the internet علي الإنترنت
- buy ... on the internet يشتري ... من علي الإنترنت
- an internet connection اتصال بالإنترنت
- surf the internet يتصفح الإنترنت
- internet shopping التسوق عبر الإنترنت
- internet banking الأعمال المصرفية علي الإنترنت

password

• **password (n)** كلمة السر - كلمة المرور
- You need to enter your password to check your email.

• **password-protected (n)** محمى باستخدام كلمة المرور
- All the data on the central computer are password-protected.

phishing

• **phishing (n)** الاحتيال أو النصب الإلكتروني (خداع الناس للاستيلاء علي أموالهم)
- He was arrested for phishing.

• **phisher (n)** نصاب / محتال عبر الإنترنت
- He was arrested because he was a phisher.

scam

• **scam (n)** عملية نصب أو احتيال - غش
- There was no flat for sale. It was just a scam.

• **scam(med) (v)** ينصب علي - يغش
- It is easy for evil شرير people to scam simple people.

• **scammer (n)** نصاب - مُحتال - غشّاش
- Don't believe him. He is a scammer.

security

• **secure (d) (v)** يحمي - يُؤمّن
- The police secure citizens and their property املاك.

• **secure (d) (v)** يضمن (يستخدم شيء كضمان)
- He used his farm to secure the loan القرض.

• **secure (adj)** محمي - امن ≠ **insecure** في خطر / غير محمي
- Your money is secure in the bank.

• **security (n)** الأمن - التامين ≠ **insecurity** انعدام الأمن
- The security forces قوات الأمن protected the building.



software

• **software (n)** برنامج حاسوبي (كلمة لا تُعد)
- I downloaded the new software.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:
- install software يُثبت برنامج - anti-virus software برنامج مكافح للفيروسات
- a piece of software برنامج حاسوبي

technology

• **technology (n)** التكنولوجيا (الآلات والمعدات و الأساليب التي تعتمد على التطور العلمي والحاسوبي)
- Modern technology has made life easy.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:
- Information Technology (IT) تكنولوجيا المعلومات
- advanced technology التكنولوجيا المتطورة
- digital technology التكنولوجيا الرقمية
- advances / developments in technology التطور التكنولوجي

• **technologist (n)** أخصائي / خبير تكنولوجيا
- In our school, Mr Mohammed Omar is a real technologist.

• **technological (adj)** تكنولوجي - متعلق بالتكنولوجيا
- Life has become faster thanks to بفضل technological development.

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
anti-	ضد	anti-virus مُكافح الفيروسات antibiotic مضاد حيوي
cyber-	متعلق بالحواسيب وتكنولوجيا المعلومات	cyberbullying التنمر الإلكتروني cyber-crime الجريمة الإلكترونية
dis-	تكوّن العكس	dishonest غير أمين - مُخادع
down-	أسفل	downstairs بالطابق الأسفل
down-	من الانترنت	download تنزيل - يُحمّل (من الإنترنت)
mal-	سيء - خبيث - مُصاب	malware البرمجيات الخبيثة
self-	الذات - ذاتي	self-management إدارة الذات
up-	أعلى	upstairs بالطابق العلوي
up-	إلى الإنترنت	upload الرفع - يرفع (على الإنترنت)

3 suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ing	تكوّن اسم / صفة	cyberbullying (n) التنمر الإلكتروني embarrassing (adj) مُحرج
-ise / ize	تكوّن فعل	summarise / summarize يلخص
-ive	تكوّن صفة	creative مُبدع - خلاق
-ment	تكوّن اسم	management إدارة
-ology / -logy	تكوّن اسم له علاقة بالعلم أو التكنولوجيا	technology التكنولوجيا

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary — مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

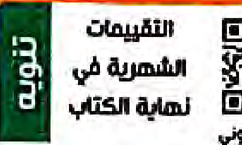
1. To join this club, fill in this ....
   a. app b. application c. malware d. bucket
2. If I don't hear the .... of the lock, I know the door isn't locked.
   a. comment b. possibility c. post d. click
3. His intelligence .... itself to us in everything he does.
   a. contacts b. connects c. communicates d. receives
4. .... is a giant digital library.
   a. An internet b. Internet c. Net d. The internet
5. My father refused to use the family house to .... my brother's loan from the bank.
   a. borrow b. lend c. secure d. endanger

Advanced Exercise on Language — مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I can see you are busy, so I .... long.
   a. am not staying b. will stay
   c. won't stay d. am not going to stay
2. I .... some old friends at the club tomorrow evening.
   a. will see b. am seeing c. am going to be seen d. see
3. I'll try to advise her but I know she ....
   a. doesn't listen b. isn't listening c. won't listen d. isn't going to listen
4. You .... so lazy. Stop it, please. It's annoying.
   a. will be b. are being c. are going to be d. are to be
5. Being intelligent, she .... first next year.
   a. comes b. is coming c. is going to come d. will come

Test on Unit 5



• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1. Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "Security is maintained by the police." The word 'security' in this context is the antonym of ....
   a. dangerous b. endanger c. danger d. insecurity e. secure
2. 'Advantages' is to 'disadvantages' as .... is to ....
   a. correct b. truth c. left d. exactly e. incorrect

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

3. A/An............ is a computer programme designed to do a specific function. (أبو تيج ٢٠٢٣)
   a. link b. blog c. site d. app
4. Internet criminals .... into organizations like hospitals, airports and power stations. (شرق الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
   a. pack b. sack c. hack d. mock
5. The .... of citizens is the responsibility مسئولية of the police.
   a. secure b. insecure c. security d. insecurity
6. Decision .... needs knowledge and experience. (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٣)
   a. doing b. saying c. having d. making
7. The thief was caught while breaking .... a shop late last night.
   a. for b. out c. down d. into
8. Online marketing is a type of ....
   a. app b. IOT c. CPR d. WHO
9. I .... the name of the medicine and got enough information about it.
   a. hacked b. connected c. googled d. booked
10. It's easy. I .... her. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
    a. show b. will show c. is going to show d. am showing
11. The phone is ringing; I .... it. (منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
    a. will answer b. am going to answer
    c. am answering d. answer
12. The twins .... seventeen next week. What presents shall we buy for them? (السويس ٢٠٢٣)
    a. turn b. will turn c. is turning d. going to turn
13. The final match .... place at 9.00 pm next Monday. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
    a. is taken b. will take c. takes d. was going to take
14. My friends .... the Egyptian Museum next Friday. It is arranged. (البحيرة-النجار ٢٠٢٣)
    a. will visit b. are going to visit c. are visiting d. visit

15. I'm sure he .... enough money of his own. He just doesn't want to lend you any. (الهرم ٢٠٢٣)

a. will have b. is going to have c. has d. is having

16. "Never repeat these mistakes again or I will fire you" This is a ....

a. prediction b. threat c. promise d. intention (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)

3. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer : (السويس ٢٠٢٣)

Most stores offer great deals on Black Friday. They open their doors in the early hours of the morning. They try to attract shoppers with big discounts. Some items like TVs are much cheaper than usual. Stores may even lose money on these items. They hope that shoppers will buy gifts for other people while they are in the store. Black Friday is a great time to get good deals. The problem is that there are not enough low-priced items to go around. Each store may only have a few. These items are in high demand. People stand in long lines to get such great deals. They may line up hours before a store opens. They may be hoping to get a low price on a TV or laptop, but not everyone who wants one will get one. Some people leave **disappointed**.

So where does the name "Black Friday" come from? It was first used in Philadelphia in the 1950s. The police called this day Black Friday because of the heavy traffic it drew. In the 1960s, stores tried to rename the day "Big Friday." It did not stick. The name "Black Friday" continued to spread across the country. Now people all over the world take part in the event known as Black Friday. Stores have held Black Friday events in the U.K., Australia, and Brazil since 2012. In Mexico, stores offer an annual weekend of discounts. They call it "El Buen Fin," which means "the good weekend" in Spanish. I guess the language of savings is universal.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. Where does the name Black Friday come from? - The police called this day Black Friday ....

a. because there is a lot of traffic.
b. because it is a serious shopping day.
c. to remember the victims of violence.
d. because they make a lot of money.

18. According to the text, why do stores set prices so low on some items that they lose money?

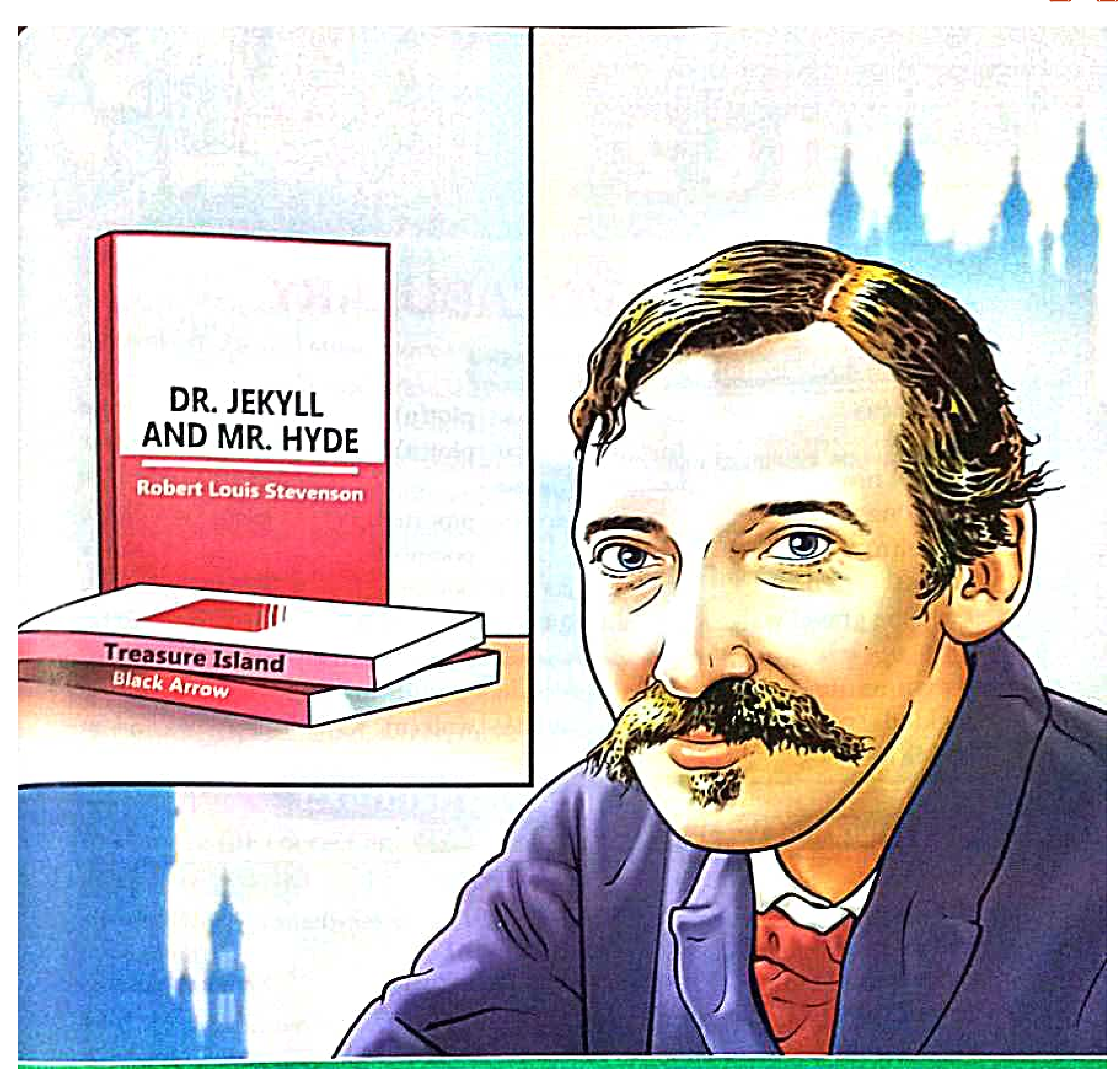
a. They want people to enjoy the holidays.
b. They hope people will buy other gifts while they are in the store.
c. They are in a giving mood because the holiday season is just beginning.
d. They are trying to get rid of old items from last year to make room for new items.



19. Which title best expresses the author's purpose in writing this text?
    a. Black Friday: Stories from the Parking Lot
    b. Black Friday: Why You Should Go This Year
    c. Black Friday: The Stuff That You Should Know
    d. Black Friday: How to Save Money on the Big Day
20. Why do you think people enjoy shopping on Black Friday?
    a. Stores run out of high demand items quickly.
    b. People can really save a lot of money on Black Friday.
    c. There are large crowds and lots of low-priced items.
    d. Sometimes violence occurs at Black Friday events.
21. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
    a. stores   b. people   c. countries   d. equipment
22. The underlined word "disappointed" is a synonym of ....
    a. excited   b. amazed   c. depressed   d. surprised
23. Which country is not mentioned in the passage?
    a. France   b. Australia   c. Brazil   d. United Kingdom
24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**
    Knowledge and science are the bases of better life. This is the way we can make progress in every field of life. (جرجا ٢٠٢٣)
    a. المعرفة والعلم هما أساس الحياة، وهذا هو السبيل الذي نستطيع أن نحرز التقدم في كل مجالات الحياة به.
    b. المعرفة والعلم هما أساس حياة أفضل، وهذا هو السبيل الذي نستطيع أن نهدر به التقدم في كل مجالات الحياة.
    c. المعرفة والعلم هما أساس الحياة، وهذا هو السبيل الذي نستطيع أن نحرز التقدم في كل مجالات الحياة.
    d. المعرفة والعلم هما أساس حياة أفضل، وهذا هو السبيل الذي نستطيع أن نحرز به التقدم في كل مجالات الحياة.
25. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**
    إنني أحب وأحترم من هم اكبر مني سناً حيث أنهم أكثر حكمة وخبرة، كما أقدّر أيضاً دور الشباب في بناء الأوطان. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
    a. I am like and respect older as they are wiser and experienced, and I also appreciate the youth's role in building countries.
    b. I love and respect my elders as they are wiser and more experienced. I also appreciate the youth's role in building up countries.
    c. I am loved and respect the old as they're wise and experience, and I also appreciate the youth's role in building countries.
    d. I love the oldest who are wise arid less experienced, and I also appreciate the youth's role ill building countries.
26. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on :**

"Communication technology"

....



UNIT 6

Learning from literature

SB pages 62 : 71 WB pages 122 : 127

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :** A biography on Stevenson; A poem, The Gardener
- **Writing :** A short review of a poem; A book review
- **Listening :** A conversation about Robert Louis Stevenson
- **Speaking :** Polite requests
- **Language :** Verbs + infinitive or -ing form
- **Life Skills :** Communication; Critical Thinking

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 62 : 65 WB pages 122 : 123



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

currant(n)	الكِشمِش (أحد أصناف العنب الخالي من البذر)	plot(n)	قطعة أرض - جبانة(مقابر)
currant row	صف من نبات الكِشمِش	plot(n)	الحَبكة (ذروة الأحداث في القصة/الرواية)
dig - dug (v)	يحفر - يغرس	plot (ted) (v)	يتواطأ/ يتآمر - يخطِّط
gravel(n)	الحَصَى	poem(n)	قصيدة
hay(n)	تِبن / قش	poet(n)	شاعر
keep the gravel walk	يسير على الطريق الممهد بالحصى	poetic(adj)	شِعرى
literature(n)	الأدب	poetry(n)	الشِعر - النَظم
lock(ed) (n - v)	قفل - يقفل	row(n)	صف
novel(n)	رواية	walk(n)	ممشي - ممر

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

case(n)	حالة - قضية	lawyer(n)	محامي
choice(n)	اختيار	path(n)	طريق مشاة - ممر
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	pirate(n)	قرصان
consider(ed) (v)	يعتبر - يفكر في	popular(adj)	ذو شعبية - محبوب
favour (n)	معروف - إحسان	publish(ed) (v)	ينشر
discussion(n)	مناقشة	regret(ted) (n - v)	الندم - يندم - يأسف
feed - fed(v)	يُطعِم	request(ed) (n - v)	طَلَب - يطلب
follow(ed) (v)	يتبع / يلي - يتتبع	romantic(adj)	رومانسي - حالم
form(n)	شكل - صيغة	rule(d) (n - v)	قاعدة - يَحكُم
full-time(adj)	ذو دوام كامل	sailing(n)	الإبحار
helpful(adj)	مفيد - متعاون	Scottish(adj)	اسكتلندي
joy(n)	بهجة - فرحة	sentence(n)	جملة
kidnap(ped) (v)	يخطف	serious(adj)	جاد
strange(adj)	غريب	unwell(adj)	مريض - ليس على ما يرام
suppose(d) (v)	يفترض	warm(adj)	دافئ
tools(n)	أدوات	well(adj)	بصحة جيدة
treasure(n)	كنز	while(n)	فترة من الوقت

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise		Understand
dig (v)	يحفر	to break up and move earth with your hands or a machine
gravel(n)	الحصى	small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads, etc.
hay(n)	تبن / قش	dried grass that people use to feed animals
lock(v)	يقفل	to close something using a key
novel(n)	رواية	a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary
plot(n)	قطعة أرض	a small piece of land for growing things on
poem(n)	قصيدة	a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme
poet(n)	شاعر	someone who writes poems
poetry(n)	الشِعر - النظم	a form of literature, or artistic writing, that attempts تحاول to stir تثير a reader's imagination خيال or emotions مشاعر
treasure(n)	كنز	gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has hidden

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• ⭘ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. Farmers sometimes give their animals .... to eat especially in winter. (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
   a. milk b. meat c. hay d. currant
2. In a park, we walk along paths which are covered with .... (أنجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. gravel b. graveled c. graves d. gravelling
3. Please, ... the door before you leave. (منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. lock b. look c. leak d. lack
4. My grandfather had a vegetable .... in the countryside which we used to visit. (السنطة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. plane b. plot c. plan d. career
5. Robert Louis Stevenson was a great .... He wrote a lot of poems. (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
   a. storyteller b. poet c. novelist d. playwright
6. My friend entered a .... competition and won a prize last year. (ادفو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. poetry b. poetess c. poems d. poet



7. .... language is emotionally effective.
   a. Poet   b. Poets   c. Poems   d. Poetic
8. In addition to plays, Shakespeare wrote great .... which are still admired.
   a. poetry   b. poet   c. poems   d. poetic
9. There are gravel .... among trees and plants in parks.
   a. walks   b. rhymes   c. raws   d. candles
10. Novels, poems and plays are forms of ....
   a. science   b. fashion   c. dirt   d. literature
11. Compared to a short story, a .... is longer.
   a. poem   b. literature   c. novel   d. plot
12. You can't find seeds inside ....
   a. currants   b. mangoes   c. pears   d. watermelon
13. You can use this spade to .... a hole for the tree.
   a. lock   b. look   c. dig   d. plot
14. A good friend of yours is not expected to .... against you.
   a. lock   b. plot   c. regret   d. consider

2 Important Vocabulary

15. Could you do me a .... and post this letter for me? (منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. favour   b. favourite   c. fever   d. duty
16. Life is full of situations which we must accept as we have no .... (غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. appetite   b. choice   c. desire   d. need
17. .... a hungry family can be very expensive. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٠)
   a. Failing   b. Feeding   c. Falling   d. Feeling
18. In .... you need help, call me at once.
   a. case   b. rule   c. adventure   d. joy
19. Some .... attacked the ship to steal things from it. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٠)
   a. pirates   b. pilots   c. parents   d. pioneers
20. A group of words that start with a capital letter, end with a full stop and give some meaning is known as a ....
   a. word   b. line   c. sentence   d. verse
21. "He kept the gravel walk". In this sentence, 'walk' means a ....
   a. journey   b. path   c. trip   d. movement
22. She is still .... the issue. She hasn't made a decision yet.
   a. kidnapping   b. supposing   c. ruling   d. considering

23. Football is the most .... game all over the world.
a. popular b. romantic c. unwell d. helpful

24. Don't .... yourself to others. Everyone is different.
a. regret b. review c. compare d. request

25. Never .... anything good you have done to anybody.
a. regret b. grow c. feed d. lie

26. This .... problem needs time and collaboration to be solved.
a. handy b. easy c. simple d. serious

27. My father has a/an .... job as the manager of a bank.
a. part-time b. full-time c. polite d. impolite

28. President Sadat started to .... Egypt in 1970.
a. kidnap b. suppose c. rule d. consider

29. She is .... You can depend on her.
a. popular b. romantic c. unwell d. helpful

30. I intend to stay with my aunt in the countryside for ....
a. while b. whilst c. a while d. during

31. He has no health problems. This means he is ....
a. well b. will c. sick d. bad

32. My grandfather's garage is full of .... which he uses to fix cars.
a. barrows b. gravels c. tools d. mice

33. I .... she went shopping, but I am not sure.
a. kidnap b. suppose c. rule d. consider

34. I think he is .... because he looks pale.
a. popular b. romantic c. unwell d. helpful

35. Good citizens .... the rules.
a. kill b. forget c. break d. follow

36. To make a polite ...., always say 'please' and 'excuse me'.
a. request b. tick c. phrase d. organisation

37. Giving someone a red rose usually creates a/an .... feeling.
a. popular b. romantic c. unwell d. helpful

38. The child was .... by a gang of thieves who then asked his parents to pay a large sum of money.
a. kidnapped b. supposed c. ruled d. considered

3 Definitions

39. A person who writes poetry is called a .... (كوم امبو - احمد محمد موسي بنات ٢٠٢٢م)
a. pioneer b. novelist c. poet d. poem

40. A .... row is a line of plants that have small fruits.

(الطود - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

a. fruitless b. bad c. current d. currant

41. A .... is a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary.

a. hay b. verse c. line d. novel

42. A .... is a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme.

a. poet b. poem c. poetry d. poetic

43. .... is a form of literature, or artistic writing, that attempts to stir a reader's imagination or emotions.

a. Poet b. Poem c. Poetry d. Poetic

44. To .... is to move something in or under soil using a tool.

a. lock b. swing c. uncover d. dig

45. .... is dried grass that people use to feed animals.

a. Plot b. Hay c. Treasure d. Swing

46. The word .... means gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has hidden.

a. treasure b. money c. gemstone d. property

47. To .... is to close something using a key.

a. lock b. close c. shut d. book

48. A .... is a small piece of land for growing things on.

a. rock b. plot c. ground d. soil

49. .... is small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads etc.

a. Sand b. Stone c. Rock d. Gravel

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	best known for مشهور اكثر بـ	**keep**	the gravel walk يمشي على الطريق الممهد بالحصى
do	a job يؤدي مهمة - يقوم بعمل	**make**	a film ينتج فيلم
	a favour يصنع معروفا		a request يطلب
	something for يقوم بشيء لأجل		a surface يمهد سطح
follow	rules يتبع القواعد		preparations for يقوم باستعدادات لـ
improve	(his) health يحسن صحته		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
lock-up	سجن صغير (التخشيبة)	small prison
walk	طريق للتنزه سيرًا	route, path
well-known	معروف - مشهور	famous, known, familiar

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
avoid	يتجنب	confront, face	يواجه
formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي - دارج
full-time	دوام كامل	part-time	جزئي - لبعض الوقت
lock	يقفل	unlock, open	يفتح
popular	ذو شعبية	unpopular	غير شعبي
well-known	معروف - مشهور	unknown, nameless	مغمور - غير معروف

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

gravel

gravel (n) حصى - The paths in the park are covered with gravel.

gravelled / gravelly (adj) مغطى بالحصى - The paths in the park are gravelled/gravelly.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a book of facts	كتاب علمي	In particular	بالتحديد - على وجه الخصوص
a full-time writer	كاتب مُتفرغ	lines that rhyme	سطور شعرية ذات قافية
a piece of writing	عمل كتابي	not feeling very well	يشعر أنه ليس بخير
be best known for	مشهور أكثر بـ	on his way home	في طريق عودته للمنزل
different from/to	مختلف عن	this was where	لقد كان ذلك هو المكان الذي
for a while	لفترة من الوقت	travel books	أدب الرحلات
I'm afraid I can't	يؤسفني أنني لا أستطيع	wedding party	حفل زفاف

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

arrange ... in	يُرتِّب ... على شكل	learn from	يتعلم من
break up	يُفتت	make ... into	يُحوِّل ... إلى
come from	يأتي من	mix with	يختلط بـ - يتعامل مع
compare ... to	يقارن ... بـ	put ... away	يضع ... جانبًا - يُرتِّب
get away from	يبتعد عن	sail from ... to ...	يُبحر من ... إلى ...
learn about	يتعلم عن		



7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

row / raw

• **row** صف (جنباً إلى جنب)

- In class, I sit in the third row.

• **raw** نيء / غير مطهي / خام

- People can't eat raw meat.

currant / current

• **currant(n)** نبات الكشمش (له ثمار تشبه العنب أو الزبيب)

- There are some currant trees in the garden.

• **current(adj)** حالي / جاري

- I follow current events on the internet.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• ✪ **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. Thank you for the .... you have done for me.
   a. favour b. home c. rules d. request e. job
2. You will need to make ....
   a. a favour b. preparations c. reason d. a request e. health
3. A person who is popular is not ....
   a. small b. unknown c. adult d. famous e. unpopular
4. 'Clear' is to 'pure' as 'walk' is to ....
   a. route b. go c. step d. path e. come
5. Giza Pyramids are well-known all over the world. The antonyms of the word "well-known" are .... (إدارة الشرقية - لغات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. celebrated b. nameless c. well-built d. unknown e. famous
6. Many people left the film before the end because it was very boring. The antonyms of "boring" are .... (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. annoying b. interesting c. terrifying d. exciting e. frightening
7. Some types of sand are .... into glass.
   a. thrown b. turned c. fallen d. made e. done
8. I asked my friend to wait for .... until I get dressed.
   a. good b. ever c. some time d. while e. a while

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The teacher told the students not to walk on the plants and to .... (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)
   a. keep the gravel walk   b. keep the gravels walk
   c. avoid the gravel walk   c. make the gravel walk
2. It was a good hotel. I enjoyed the delicious food in .... (البركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)
   a. particular   b. public   c. special   d. private
3. Good citizens always .... the rules.
   a. break   b. have   c. follow   d. spend
4. He had offered to help even before I .... a request.
   a. made   b. did   c. improved   d. stayed
5. "She had a full-time job." "Full" here is an antonym of ....
   a. part   b. empty   c. little   d. few
6. In a park, we walk along paths which are ....
   a. gravel   b. gravelled   c. gravelling   d. gravels
7. He used a heavy hammer to break .... the small rock.
   a. in   b. up   c. of   d. into
8. Look at this shop. This is .... I saw you for the first time.
   a. where   b. when   c. what   d. who
9. Being sociable اجتماعي, he likes to mix .... others.
   a. with   b. by   c. from   d. of
10. I am very happy in my .... job.
    a. currant   b. current   c. currency   d. currently
11. Cotton is a .... material.
    a. some   b. same   c. row   d. raw

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Robert Louis Stevenson

(SB page 62)

Robert Louis Stevenson was born in Scotland in 1850 and died 44 years **later**(1) in Samoa, a small **island**(2) in the South **Pacific**(3). He was not always **well**(4) because the **weather**(5) in Edinburgh was too cold for him.



(1) فيما بعد
(2) جزيرة
(3) المحيط الهادي
(4) بصحة جيدة
(5) الطقس



When he was a child, he couldn't always go to school. He studied to become a **lawyer**[6] at Edinburgh University, but he always wanted to write. At the age of 21, he decided to become a **full-time writer**[7].

He often travelled to **warmer**[8] places to try to **improve**[9] his health. For a **while**[10] he lived in France and this was where he met his wife, Fanny. She was from the United States, so Stevenson also travelled to America with her.

Although[11] he is best **known for**[12] his **novels**[13], like **Kidnapped**[14] and Strange **Case**[15] of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde, Stevenson also wrote many **poems**[16] and **travel books**[17]. His first **successful**[18] novel was Treasure Island – an **adventure**[19] story about **pirates**[20]. His books are still very **popular**[21] today and many of them have **been made into**[22] films.

(6) محامي
(7) كاتب متفرغ
(8) اكثر دفئا
(9) يُحسّن
(10) فترة من الوقت
(11) برغم أن
(12) مشهور بـ
(13) روايات
(14) مختطف
(15) قضية
(16) قصائد
(17) كتب الرحلات
(18) ناجح
(19) مغامرة
(20) قراصنة
(21) ذو شعبية
(22) يتحول إلى

The Gardener

(SB page 63)

The **gardener**[1] does not love to talk.
He makes me keep the **gravel**[2] walk;
And when he puts his **tools**[3] away, he **locks**[4] the door and takes the **key**.[5]
Away behind the **currant**[6] **row**[7], Where no one else but **cook**[8] may go, Far in the **plots**[9], I see him **dig**[10], Old and **serious**[11], brown and big.
He digs the flowers, green, red, and blue, Nor **wishes**[12] to be spoken to.
He digs the flowers and cuts the **hay**[13], And never **seems**[14] to want to play.

(1) بستاني
(2) الحَصَى
(3) أدوات
(4) يقفل
(5) مفتاح
(6) نبات الكشمش
(7) صف
(8) طباخ
(9) قطع أرض
(10) يحفر - يغرس
(11) جاد
(12) يتمنى
(13) تِبْن / قش
(14) يبدو

(WB page 123)

Sherif : Taha, could you do something for me ?
Taha : Yes, of course. What is it ?
Sherif : Can you play football with us tonight ? We need another player.
Taha : No, I am afraid I can't. I hurt my leg last week. I can't run on it.
Sherif : Ok, don't worry. I'll ask Omar.

Randa : Good morning. I wonder if you can help me.
Assistant : Certainly. What is it ?
Randa : I don't suppose you could tell me who the manager is ?
Assistant : Yes, of course. It's Mr. Mansour.
Randa : Could you do me a favour ?
Can you give him my CV ?
I'd really like to work here.
Assistant : No problem, I'll give it to him when I next see him.

2 Listening Texts



Audioscript *(SB page 64)*

Teacher : This week we're studying the **Scottish**[1] writer, Robert Louis Stevenson, **in particular**[2] his poetry not his novels. Have any of you heard about him or read any of his work ?

Nesma : Didn't he write Treasure Island ? I tried reading it last year, but it was **a bit boring**[3], so I decided to watch the film instead.

Teacher : Did you like it ?

Nesma : Yes, it was really good. I love **adventure films**[4] and I enjoy reading adventure stories, too. I just found Treasure Island a bit difficult.

Teacher : Well, it was written a long time ago. He was born in 1850 and Treasure Island was **published**[5] in 1881. And Wafaa, have you read any of his books ?

Wafaa : I don't think so. I prefer reading **romantic stories**[6] and poems.

Teacher : Well, Stevenson wrote poems too. In fact, he wrote all kinds of things. He began writing stories when he was a child and unwell. Unfortunately, Stevenson was often very ill and he finished writing Treasure Island while he was ill in bed. He continued to write more books, including a **collection of poems**[7] called A Child's Garden of Verses and he also travelled a lot to **get away from**[8] the cold Scottish weather.

(1) اسكتلندى الجنسية
(2) على وجه الخصوص
(3) مملة قليلاً
(4) أفلام المغامرات
(5) ينشر
(6) قصص رومانسية
(7) مجموعة مختارة من القصائد
(8) يهرب من



Nesma : Where did he go ?

Teacher : As a young man, he went to Europe, France and **Switzerland**[9] **mainly**[10] In fact, his first book was about his travels in France. He and his family loved sailing and they wanted to sail from America, where they were living, to the South Pacific. The family chose to build a house in Samoa and the Stevenson family lived there until he died in 1894.

Now, for this week's lesson, I want you to choose a story or a poem by Stevenson and bring it to class to discuss. Then ...

(9) دولة سويسرا
(10) في الغالب / إلى حد بعيد

Audioscript *(SB page 65)*

Wafaa : I don't have time to go to the library this afternoon. Could you **do me a favour**[1] and go for me ?

Nesma : Yes, of course. Which books do you want me to get ?

Wafaa : Can you find A Child's Garden of Verses ? I prefer reading poetry to long stories.

Nesma : No problem. But, could you do something for me when you're in town, please ?

Wafaa : Yes, what is it ?

Nesma : I don't really enjoy reading, so can you get me a DVD of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde ? Then, I won't have to read it !

Wafaa : Nesma !

(1) يصنع لى معروفا

PART IV LANGUAGE

Verbs + infinitive / – ing form

1 Verbs + to + inf.

afford to	يتحمل تكاليف	help to	يساعد في	promise to	يعد أن
agree to	يوافق أن	hope to	يأمل أن	refuse to	يرفض أن
arrange to	يرتب أن	intend to	ينوى أن	threaten to	يهدد أن
choose to	يختار أن	learn to	يتعلم أن	want to	يريد أن
decide to	يقرر أن	manage to	يتمكن من	wish to	يتمنى أن
expect to	يتوقع أن	offer to	يعرض أن	warn (not) to	يُحذّر أن / ألا
fail to	يفشل فى أن	plan to	يخطط أن	would like to	يود أن

- Hazem is planning to go to university next year. He hopes to study medicine.

١ بعض الأفعال السابقة قد يأتي بعدها المفعول أولا ثم (to + inf.):

- I wanted Omar to work hard.
- They expected me to come first.

٢ في حالة النفي يمكن أن تستخدم (not to) بعد الأفعال السابقة ويكون معناها مختلف عن نفي الفعل نفسه، لاحظ الفرق :

- Ahmed decided not to use my tools.

(اتخذ أحمد قرارا بألا يستخدم أدواتي - لن يستخدمها)

- Ahmed didn't decide to use my tools.

(لم يقرر أحمد أن يستخدم أدواتي - قد يقرر أن يفعل ذلك فيما بعد)

٣ بعض الأفعال السابقة يمكن أن تأتي بعدها حروف جر أخرى غير (to) بمعاني مختلفة، لاحظ :

- I agree with you. (اتفق معك)
- The couple agreed on a time for the wedding. (اتفقوا على)

٤ بعض الأفعال السابقة يُمكن أن يتبعها (that) ثم جملة :

- They decided that they won't sell the family house.

Mini Test 1 ○ Apply

○ **Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I planned .... the weekend with my grandparents.
   a. spend b. to spend c. spending d. to spending
2. I promise .... I will be always helpful to you.
   a. to b. with c. on d. that
3. This player intends .... this year. He can play for two more seasons.
   a. retire b. to retire c. not to retire d. retiring

2 Verb + (inf.+ing)

avoid	يتجنب	include	يشمل / يتضمن
consider	يفكر في	keep	يظل / يستمر في
deny	ينكر	mind	يمانع
dislike	يكره	practise	يمارس
enjoy	يتمتع	recommend	يوصي بـ / يُحبذ
finish	ينهي - ينتهي	suggest	يقترح
imagine	يتخيل		

- You should avoid going out late at night.
- She has just finished cleaning her bedroom.

• في حالة النفي يمكن أن تستخدم (not + inf. + ing) بعد الأفعال السابقة ويكون معناها مختلف عن نفي الفعل نفسه. لاحظ الفرق :

- He suggested not going to the park.
(اقترح عدم الذهاب إلى الحديقة - لا يريد أن يذهب)
- He didn't suggest going to the park.
(لم يقترح الذهاب إلى الحديقة - ليست فكرته)

• لاحظ استخدام صيغة (subjunctive) مع الأفعال التالية :

suggest/recommend/advise/ask... + (that) + subject فاعل... inf. /should + inf. ...

- I suggested that Sama join the school trip. (Not : joins)
= I suggest that Sama should join the school trip.

Mini Test 2 | Apply

Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you enjoy .... a sport ?
   a. do   b. doing   c. to do   d. to doing
2. He denied .... me before. He said it was our first meeting.
   a. seeing   b. to see   c. not seeing   d. not to see
3. I can't imagine .... in the city. I enjoy its excitement and noise.
   a. live   b. to live   c. living   d. not living
4. She suggested that her mother .... another doctor.
   a. seeing   b. to see   c. see   d. will see
5. Would you mind .... me a hand?
   a. to lend   b. lending   c. being lent   d. lend

3 Verb + (inf. + ing) / (to + inf.)

١ الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون فرق في المعنى:

begin / start	يبدأ	like	يحب / يفضل
continue	يستمر	love	يحب
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل

ex. - We continued to run / running until we got home.
- The wind began to blow / blowing just as we arrived home from school.

- ولكن لاحظ أنه إذا استخدمنا (would) قبل الأفعال (love/prefer/like) يأتي بعدها (to + inf.):

ex. - I'd prefer to finish my work early today. (Not: finishing)
- I'd love to attend your birthday party. (Not: attending)

- لاحظ أن (starting / beginning) يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) فقط :

ex. - The weather is starting to get colder. (Not : starting getting)

٢ الأفعال التالية يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) مع وجود فرق واضح فى المعنى:

remember, forget, stop, regret, try, go on + **to + inf.** / **(inf. + ing)**

1. **remember** يتذكر

- **remember + to + inf.** يتذكر أن يفعل

  ex. - Remember to bring your homework tomorrow.

- **remember + gerund** يتذكر أنه فعل

  ex. - I remember waking up in the middle of the night.

2. **forget** ينسى

- **forget + to + inf.** ينسى أن يفعل (هنا الشيء لم يتم القيام به)

  ex. - She forgot to buy her grandfather's newspaper, so he was angry.

- **forget + gerund** ينسى أنه فعل (فعل الشيء لكنه نسى ذلك)

  ex. - I forgot phoning the manager, so I phoned him again.

3. **stop** يتوقف

- **stop + to + inf.** يتوقف عمّا يفعله لكى يفعل شيء آخر

  ex. - On her way home, Dina stopped to talk to her friend Warda.

- **stop + gerund** يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)

  ex. - Dina and Warda have stopped talking to each other.

4. **regret** يندم

- **regret + gerund** يندم على شيء قد فعله

  ex. - I regret wasting my time.

- **regret + to + inf.** يشعر بالأسف لأنه مضطر لعمل شيء...

  ex. - I regret to tell you that your arm is broken.

5. **go on** يستمر فى

- **go on + (inf. + ing)** يستمر فى القيام بنفس العمل أو النشاط

  ex. - Rodayna went on studying physics for three hours.

- **go on + (to + inf.)** ينتقل من عمل إلى عمل آخر

  ex. - Rodayna studied physics for three hours, then she went on to study Arabic.

6. try يحاول - يجرب

- try + to + inf. يحاول أن يفعل (يبذل مجهود)

ex. - You tried to answer the difficult question, didn't you?

- try + gerund يجرب القيام بشيء لنرى النتيجة (لا يبذل مجهود)

ex. - Try taking an aspirin. It might work.

Mini Test 3 — Apply

Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It continued .... for three hours non-stop.
   a. raining b. to raining c. to rain d. a & c
2. I'd love .... your birthday party. Surely, I'll be there on time.
   a. attending b. to attend c. to attending d. a & b
3. Remember .... off the gas before you go out.
   a. attending b. turning c. to turn d. to be turned
4. I remember .... that man before.
   a. seeing b. to see c. to seeing d. a & b
5. He stopped .... because it affected his health badly.
   a. to smoking b. smoking c. to smoke d. b & c
6. He stopped .... outside because other people on the bus refused to let him smoke while driving.
   a. to smoking b. smoking c. to smoke d. b & c

4 Notes for more understanding

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ يُستخدم المصدر بدون (to) بعد الأفعال الناقصة:

can / could / may / might / must / mustn't / needn't / shall / should / will / would ....

- She can speak 3 languages.

٢ باستثناء (to) جميع حروف الجر يأتي بعدها اسم (noun) أو فعل مضاف له (ing):

- I will go on working for this company.
- I 'm worried about the health of my mother.

٣ يُستخدم اسم مكان بعد حرف الجر (to) عندما يكون معناه (إلى):

- They went to Aswan.

٤ يُستخدم الفعل فى المصدر (.inf) بعد حرف الجر (to) عندما يكون معناه (أن - لكي):

- I hope to win the next match.
- We work hard to achieve our goals in life.

٥ يُستخدم الفعل مضاف له (ing) أو اسم (noun) بعد حرف الجر (to) فى الحالات التالية:

adapt to	يتأقلم مع	be opposed to	يعترض علي
apply .... to	يُطبق / ينطبق ... علي	contribute to	يساهم في
be used to	يكون معتاد علي	lead to	يؤدي إلي
become used to	يتعود علي	look forward to	يتطلع إلي
get used to	يتعود علي	object to	يعترض علي
be accustomed to	معتاد علي	take to	يعتاد علي

- Pollution leads to having health problems.
= Pollution leads to health problems.

٦ نستخدم (to + inf.) فى حالة وجود فعل بعد بعض الصفات مثل:

happy / sad / glad / ready مستعد **/ willing** مستعد **/ unwilling / eager** متحمس **/ pleased / lucky / amazed ......**

- She was ready to live in Aswan after getting married there.

٧ فى حالة وجود فعل بعد (learn / teach / tell) نستخدم (how to + inf.) أو (to + inf.):
فقط ولكن الفعلين (know/show) فغالبًا يليهما (how to + inf.):

- I don't know to use this mobile. (✗)
- I don't know how to use this mobile. (✓)
- I'll show you to use this mobile. (✗)
- I will show you how to use this mobile. (✓)

٨ فى حالة وجود فعل بعد (what / how / where .....) نستخدم (to + inf.):

- He got lost; he didn't know where to go.

٩ الأفعال و الظروف الاتية يأتي بعدها .Inf فقط بدون to:

had better يلبغي **/ would rather** يفضل **/ make** يجعل - يصنع **/ let** يدع - يسمح

- She would rather stay at home.

ولكن لاحظ الفعل (make) اذا ما استخدم فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول يتم استخدام (to + inf.) بعده

- She was made to write the essay again.



١٠ لاحظ استخدام (to + inf.) بعد الكلمات (the first / the second / the last / the next) :

- Mona was the last to watch the film.

١١ الفعل (help) يأتى بعده المصدر مع (to) أو بدونها:

- He helped me do (to do) the job.

١٢ لاحظ ما يلى :

It + be + adj. صفة + (for + subj. / obj. pron.) to + inf. ...

- It was easy for me to do the job.

١٣ الأفعال الاتية يأتى بعدها (inf. + ing) فى حالة عدم وجود مفعول ، و يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) فى حالة وجود مفعول:

advise ينصح / allow يسمح / forbid يمنع / recommend يوصى بـ / permit يسمح / encourage يشجع

- We don't allow smoking here.
= We don't allow anyone to smoke here.

١٤ الأفعال الاتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على أننا تابعنا الحدث بالكامل ويأتى بعدها (inf. + ing) ليدل على أننا تابعنا جزء من الحدث:

hear يسمع / see يرى / notice يلاحظ / watch يشاهد

- I heard Mariam sing a song. = I heard the whole song.
- I heard Mariam singing a song. = I heard part of the song.

General Exercise On Language ○ Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I wanted to persuade him .... to the cinema with us, but he apologized. (الشربيني ٢٠٢٣)
   a. to go b. going c. go d. to have gone
2. Would you like .... out for a meal tonight? (بركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)
   a. going b. to go c. to going d. go
3. He refused .... me his book, so I was angry. (بورسعيد٢٠٢٣)
   a. give b. to give c. giving d. to be given
4. I prefer .... in the New Capital as it is modem. (اسلاقلة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. to living b. live c. lives d. living

5. His results were disappointing. He regrets .... last year. (إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. studying hard b. not study hard
   c. not studying hard d. not studying hardly
6. Being questioned, the criminal denied .... the crime. (بني سويف ٢٠٢٣)
   a. committed b. committing c. to commit d. commits
7. My elder brother .... maths easier because he was good at it. (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. helped me learn b. helped me to learning
   c. helped me learnt d. helped me for learning
8. The thief has admitted .... my wallet. (السنطة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. stealing b. steal c. to steal d. stole
9. Do you enjoy .... to folk music. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. listen b. listening c. to listen d. by listening
10. On her way home, Laila stopped .... to her friend Dalia who met her. (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
    a. to talk b. talking c. to talking d. talks
11. I stopped............ bicycles when my father told me not to do. (أسيوط – أبو تيج ٢٠٢٣)
    a. to ride b. riding c. ride d. rides
12. While you are .... talking to other students, don't forget to study. (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
    a. clever b. busy c. polite d. angry
13. The rules of the library don't allow .... (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٣)
    a. to smoking b. smoking c. smoke d. to smoke
14. Good students usually avoid .... (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
    a. to be punished b. punishing c. being punished d. punishes
15. English teachers usually recommend .... English in our daily life. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
    a. to use b. used c. having used d. using
16. I never .... my students to waste their time. I always encourage them. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
    a. let b. make c. prevent d. allow
17. Would you mind .... me your camera? (أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)
    a. lend b. lending c. to lend d. in lending



18. I forgot .... all the documents. I will not be able to get a passport today. (كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)
    a. sign b. signing c. to sign d. to signing
19. I .... meeting this boy last year. (الصبا ٢٠٢٣)
    a. am remembering b. will remember
    c. remember d. remembers
20. My mother promised .... me to finish my school project. (كوم امبو - أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)
    a. helps b. help c. helping d. to help
21. Our national team is expected .... in the next world cup finals. (إدارة أسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
    a. play b. playing c. to play d. to playing
22. My parents suggested .... to the theatre yesterday. (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٢)
    a. going b. go c. went d. gone
23. He is looking forward to .... his friends. (إدارة الشرقية - بنات ٢٠٢٢)
    a. meet b. meets c. met d. meeting
24. Civil engineers get used to .... outdoors in extreme conditions. (إدارة المنصور ٢٠٢٢)
    a. have worked b. working c.works d. worked
25. **Ali:** I have got flu. **Bassem:** Try .... an aspirin. It's good. (إدفو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
    a. to take b. taking c. to be taken d. to taking
26. I tried .... my eyes open, but I couldn't. (غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)
    a. keep b. to keep c. kept d. keeping
27. I was made .... a fine for not wearing the seat belt. (إدفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
    a. pay b. paying c. to pay d. paid
28. When I visit a foreign country, I'd rather .... in a good hotel. (الفيوم - إبشواي ٢٠٢٢)
    a. stayed b. stay c. staying d. can stay
29. I recommend that he .... to English programmes. (الفيوم - إبشواي ٢٠٢٢)
    a. is listening b. was listened c. listen d. listening





PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

candlelight(n)	نور الشمعة	line(n)	سطر شعرى (بيت)
contrast(ed) (n - v)	تباين / اختلاف - يقارن	pinch(ed) (v)	يقرص - يوخز - يؤلم
garden(n)	بستان	rhyme(d) (n - v)	القافية - يُقفي / يَسجع
gardener(n)	بستاني (جنايني)	rhythm(n)	إيقاع
hop(ped) (n - v)	قفزة - يقفز - يحجل	variety(n)	تنوع - تعددية
issue(n)	قضية	verse(n)	بيت شعر

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

activity(n)	نشاط	dress(ed) (n - v)	فستان - يرتدي ملابس
author(n)	مؤلف	especially(adv)	بصفة خاصة
brief(adj)	مختصر	fair(adj)	عادل
broken(adj)	مكسور	grown-ups(n)	الكبار
clear(adj)	صافي - واضح	narrate(d) (v)	يسرد - يروي
clearly(adv)	بوضوح	repeated(adj)	متكرر
dedicate(d) (v)	يخصص - يُكرِّس	review(n)	عرض نقدي
describe(d) (v)	يصف	situation(n)	موقف
determine(d) (v)	يحدد - يصمم على	summary(n)	تلخيص
differently(adv)	بشكل مختلف		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise		Understand
hop (ped) (v)	يحجل	to move by jumping on one foot
rhyme (d) (v)	يتطابق في القافية	if two words or lines of poetry rhyme, they end with the same sound, including a vowel
rhythm (n)	إيقاع	a repeated sound in music, poems, etc
verse (n)	فقرة شعرية	lines that form one part of a poem



Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The gardener's toes were .... that they hurt him because of the extreme cold in winter. (المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. burning b. hopping c. pinching d. shouting
2. Kangaroos use their back legs to .... from one place to another. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
   a. hop b. see c. eat d. hear
3. Most of today's songs have a very fast .... (أشنواي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. words b. verse c. rhyme d. rhythm
4. When two words or lines endings match, they .... (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
   a. rhyme b. contrast c. disappear d. join
5. If you .... some of his early writing with his later work, you can see how much he improved. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
   a. contrast b. hack c. comment d. lock
6. It was a very long poem. It had about 60 ....
   a. verses b. rows c. rhythms d. pleasures
7. He is interested in social ....
   a. issues b. hopping c. mutiny d. verse
8. When the lights go out at night, we usually depend on ....
   a. daylight b. candlelight c. the sun d. darkness
9. We have a small .... in front of our house in which we plant flowers.
   a. park b. field c. garden d. villa
10. The .... of taste, shape and colour is what makes one fruit different from another.
    a. variety b. stress c. sentence d. line
11. This poem has twelve verses, four .... each.
    a. poems b. poets c. rhymes d. lines

2 Important Vocabulary

12. She always .... in front of the mirror. (الشرقية - الزقازيق ٢٠٢٠)
    a. dresses b. wears c. puts on d. takes
13. It was not .... to play the final match on the other team's hometown.
    a. broken b. brief c. fair d. Scottish
14. He expresses his ideas in a .... way.
    a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly

15. He expresses his ideas ....
a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly

16. Mr Mohammed has a good style in .... short stories.
a. determining b. narrating c. hating d. sailing

17. As a young man, I used to ask .... for advice because they are wise حكماء .
a. teenagers b. infants c. kids d. grown-ups

18. He won't play tomorrow's match because he has a .... arm.
a. broken b. brief c. fair d. long-term

19. As a mother, she .... all her time to her children.
a. borrows b. takes c. dedicates d. receives

20. His .... mistakes make me angry. He never seems to learn from them.
a. pleasant b. popular c. repeated d. enjoyable

21. The police haven't .... the cause of the accident yet.
a. determined b. narrated c. hated d. described

22. Most managers do not like long reports. They prefer .... notes.
a. broken b. brief c. fair d. Scottish

3 Definitions

23. .... is a repeated sound in music, poems, etc.
a. Rhythm b. Rhyme c. Verse d. Stanza

24. If two words or lines of poetry ...., they end with the same sound, including a vowel.
a. dig b. rhythm c. rhyme d. swing

25. Lines that form one part of a poem are called a ....
a. poet b. verse c. rhyme d. rhythm

26. To .... is to move by jumping on one foot.
a. hope b. hop c. jump d. leap

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

come	home	يعود للبيت	have	a rhythm	به إيقاع
			have	fun	يمرح / يلهو
give	a reason for	يبرر	stay	in bed	يلزم الفراش
give	a rhythm	تعطي إيقاع			
spend	time reading	يقضي الوقت في القراءة			



UNIT 6

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
clear	واضح	obvious, understandable, direct, uncomplicated, explicit
clear	صافي	bright, cloudless
grown-ups	الكبار	adults
hate	يكره	loathe, detest

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
agree	يتفق	disagree	يختلف
clear	واضح	vague, unclear, ambiguous	غامض
clear	صافي	cloudy	غائم
dress	يرتدي ملابس - يَلْبس	undress	يخلع ملابس - يُعرّي
fair	عادل	unfair	ظالم - جائر
hate	يكره	love, like	يُحب
light	النور	dark, darkness	ظلام

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

clear	
clear(ed) (v) يوضح - يُنقّي	- My teacher cleared the difficult point for me.
clearance (n) إزالة	- Clearance of forests is dangerous to the environment.
clarity (n) وضوح	- The clarity of the meaning makes it easy to understand it.
clear (adj) واضح	- It is clear that he is angry.
clearly (adv) بوضوح	- He is clearly angry.
hop	
hop(ped) (v) يقفز - يحجل	- This bird hops.
hop (n) قفزة	- This bird takes short hops.
hopping (adj) القفز - الحَجل	- This is a hopping bird.
rhyme	
rhyme(d) (v) يسجع - يُقفي	- 'Tin' rhymes with 'thin'
rhyme (n) القافية - قصيدة	- This poem has a nice rhyme.

variety	
vary(ied) (v) يتنوع - يختلف	- People vary in size and personality.
variety (n) تشكيلة متنوعة - تنوع	- There is a variety of cotton clothes in this shop.
various (adj) متعدد - مختلف	- There're various cotton clothes in this shop.
variable (adj) متغيّر - متبدّل	- The speed of this car is variable.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a brief summary	مُلخص موجز	easy to remember	من السهل تذكُرها
a form of writing	احد أنواع الكتابة	everyday life	الحياة اليومية
a mind map	خريطة ذهنية	feel differently	لديه شعور مختلف
at night	في الليل	in addition to	بالإضافة إلي
be outside playing	يلهو بالخارج	make it easy to say	يجعل من السهل قراءتها
be special about	الشئ المُميز في	quite the other way	علي العكس تماما
by candlelight	علي ضوء الشمعة	stressed words	كلمات مشددة في النطق
by day	نهارا	summarize the main points	يُلخص النقاط الرئيسية
compare and contrast	يوضح أوجه الشبه والاختلاف	the part I find boring is ...	الجزء الذي أراه مملا هو
describe how I feel	يصف كيف أشعر		
each other	بعضهم البعض		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree about	يتفق في	look for	يبحث عن
disagree about	يختلف في	rhyme with	يُقفي مع
get up	ينهض	stay in	يقيم/يبقي في
go past	يمر ب	write about	يكتب عن

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

strong / strange

• **strong (adj)** قوي
- He has strong muscles.عضلات

• **strange(adj)** غريب
- People don't like strange things.



feel different / feel differently

- **feel different** يشعر أنه مختلف أو مميز
  - His excellent skills make him feel different.
- **feel differently** لديه شعور مختلف
  - Everyone enjoys their time. I don't know why you feel differently.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. A good leader should have some qualities as being .... and .... (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. fair b. violent c. wise d. stubborn e. extremist
2. Global warming is one of the main .... that must be faced and solved. (إدفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. issues b. rules c. roles d. problems e. reviews
3. In a line of poetry, stressed words .... the rhythm.
   a. lose b. have c. give d. do e. spend
4. "I hate that kind of person." In this sentence, we can replace the verb 'hate' with ....
   a. love b. detest c. loathe d. admire e. disagree
5. "I have expected him to recognise his tablet as the difference is clear." The adjective 'clear' in this sentence is an antonym for ....
   a. vague b. obvious c. pure d. unclear e. explicit
6. 'Hate' is to 'love' as 'light' is to ....
   a. bright b. sunny c. dark d. clear e. darkness
7. Birds are usually active .... day.
   a. in b. by c. at d. of e. during the
8. The jobs we have to do in .... life sometimes make us forget our social duties.
   a. daily b. every day c. everyday d. all today e. no day

- **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. "Lap" rhymes .... "tap". (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٣)
   a. on b. with c. in d. for
2. The doctor advised me to .... in bed until I am completely better.
   a. make b. do c. improve d. stay
3. When your father .... home, I'll tell him you don't want to study your lessons.
   a. comes b. has c. follows d. spends

4. My children .... much fun in the park yesterday.
   a. came   b. had   c. followed   d. spent
5. Aya .... a lot of time watching TV.
   a. gave   b. made   c. broke   d. spent
6. Children like listening to and reading ....
   a. locks   b. rhymes   c. rhythms   d. gravels
7. It is none of your business to agree or disagree .... what I say.
   a. in   b. for   c. at   d. about
8. Short lines of poetry are easy ....
   a. remember   b. remembering   c. to remember   d. remembers
9. Before electric lamps, people used to read at night .... candlelight.
   a. for   b. from   c. to   d. by
10. I am not used to this place. It is .... to me.
   a. light   b. popular   c. strange   d. strong
11. I know why you feel .... You are not used to the hot weather of Aswan.
   a. differently   b. difference   c. clear   d. row

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Bed in Summer

(SB page 66)

In **winter**[1] I **get up**[2] at night
and **dress**[3] by yellow **candlelight**[4].
In summer **quite the other way**,[5] I have to go to bed **by day**[6].
I have to go to bed and see The birds still **hopping**[7] on the tree,
Or hear the **grown-up**[8] people's **feet**[9] Still **going past**[10] me in the street.
And does it not seem **hard**[11] to you, When all the sky is **clear**[12] and blue, And I should like so much to play, To have to go to bed by day.



(1) فصل الشتاء
(2) ينهض من الفراش
(3) يرتدي ملابسه
(4) ضوء الشمعة
(5) على العكس تماما
(6) نهارا
(7) يقفز على قدم واحدة - يحجل
(8) الكبار
(9) أقدام
(10) يمر بـ
(11) صعب
(12) صافي



Khaled's opinion about the poem

(SB page 66)

Khaled, 4 : 04 PM



The words Stevenson has used **very clearly**[1] **describe**[2] the **situations**[3] he's writing about and I really like that. I also think the poem's **subject**[4] is very interesting because everyone feels **differently**[5] in different **seasons**.[6] In my opinion, **poets**[7] should write about **everyday life**.[8]

However,[9] I think the second **verse**[10] is too long and its **rhythm**[11] is too **slow**.[12]

Hamid, 5 : 36 PM

Hamid's opinion about the poem

I love the language in the poem, **especially**[13] the way Stevenson describes the **light**[14] at different times of **day**[15]. I also think the second verse is great because the **rhymes**[16] in it are so clever. However, in my opinion, the poem's subject is quite **boring**[17] because going to bed and getting up aren't very interesting **activities**[18]. I think poets should write about more **exciting**[19] things.

Sara's opinion about the poem

(SB page 67)

My favourite poem is Bed in Summer because it describes how I felt when I was young. In the summer I had to go to bed when it was light and I **hated**[20] it. **Like**[21] the **author**[22] I wanted to be **outside**[23] playing and I didn't think it was **fair**[24] that everyone else was outside **having fun**[25].

It's a good **length**[26] for a poem, only three verses and I like the **fact**[27] that the words **rhyme**.[28] I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two **lines**[29] rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember!

Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.

(1) بوضوح
(2) يصف
(3) المواقف
(4) موضوع
(5) بشكل مختلف
(6) فصول
(7) شعراء
(8) الحياة اليومية
(9) مع ذلك
(10) فقرة شعرية
(11) إيقاع
(12) بطئ
(13) خاصة
(14) الضوء
(15) النهار
(16) القوافي
(17) ممل
(18) الأنشطة
(19) مثير
(20) يكره
(21) مثل
(22) مؤلف
(23) بالخارج
(24) عادل
(25) يمرح
(26) طول
(27) حقيقة
(28) يُقفى
(29) سطر شعري

Poem 1 My friend's cat
Every day when I come home
I look for my friend's cat
I usually find this cat
Lying in an old hat.
What do you think of that?

Poem 2 The boy's toy *(WB page 124)*
There was a small boy
Who had a **wooden**[1] toy
He loved that toy.
One day he took it to bed
And slept with it **by**[2] his head. He loved that toy.
When the boy was **woken**[3]
He found the toy was **broken!**[4]
He loved that toy.

(1) خشبي
(2) بجوار
(3) استيقظ
(4) مكسور

2 Listening Texts

(WB page 125)

A sailor went to sea, sea, sea.
To see what he could see, see, see.
But all that he could see, see, see.
Was the bottom of the deep blue sea, sea, sea.

3 Video script section

Literature[1] comes in a **variety**[2] of **forms**[3] : **poetry**[4], **novels**[5], travel books and **biographies**[6] are just a few.

Reading literature from different times helps us learn about the world we live in, about important **modern issues**[7] and about how much **society**[8] has changed.

When you read any piece of literature, it's **helpful**[9] to **consider**[10] your own opinion - why you like or dislike a **particular**[11] character or whether you have experienced something similar to what you've read in a poem. Discussing this with your friends can also help you learn more about each other and the world around you.

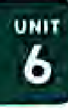
(1) الأدب
(2) تنوع
(3) أنماط / أشكال
(4) شعر
(5) روايات
(6) سير ذاتية
(7) قضايا معاصرة
(8) المجتمع
(9) مفيد / مساعد
(10) تعبر عن
(11) خاصة

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. What different forms of literature does the video name ?
2. What can reading literature from different times teach us ?
3. What should you discuss with your friends ?

PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.



UNIT 6

General Exercise On Language

○ Apply

○ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. You should .... something good in your free time.
   a. does b. do c. did d. done
2. Dr Mustafa has agreed .... an article about COVID-19.
   a. to write b. writing c. to writing d. writes
3. Have you finished .... the book that I gave you ?
   a. to read b. from reading c. reading d. read
4. Yara hopes .... a job next month.
   a. finding b. to find c. finds d. find
5. You should avoid .... friends with such bad people.
   a. to make b. make c. to making d. making
6. I like .... football matches on TV.
   a. watching b. to watch c. to watching d. a & b
7. I'd like .... football matches on TV.
   a. watching b. to watch c. to watching d. a & b
8. My uncle has offered .... me how to drive a car.
   a. teaching b. teach c. to teach d. taught
9. Reem promised .... and she usually keeps her promises.
   a. she comes b. to come c. coming d. will come
10. Would you .... helping me? - No, not at all.
    a. think b. mind c. remember d. remind
11. The child started .... because he was hungry.
    a. crying b. cried c. is crying d. cries
12. The thief denied .... the money.
    a. stolen b. was stealing c. to steal d. stealing
13. We have arranged .... at 9 o'clock.
    a. meeting b. will meet c. to meet d. met
14. I wish .... a car.
    a. to have b. had c. having d. will have
15. I prefer .... in a swimming pool.
    a. swim b. to swim c. to swimming d. swam

16. I feel like .... a cold drink.
a. have b. to have c. having d. to having

17. The little girl .... playing with her toys until midnight.
a. wanted b. kept c. decided d. promised

18. Omar has decided .... with his father when he finishes university.
a. to work b. to be worked c. working d. to working

19. Our house was robbed last night since we forgot .... the front door.
a. locking b. to lock c. locked d. locks

2 Special cases

20. Enjy is sorry that she was unable to help her mother last night. This means she .... her mother last night.
a. regrets helping b. doesn't regret to help
c. regrets not to help d. regrets not helping

21. Salma was busy .... the washing up.
a. does b. doing c. to do d. done

22. Why didn't you remember .... me the key? How can I open the door now?
a. to bring b. bring c. bringing d. have brought

23. I suggest that Samy .... the club.
a. join b. joined c. has joined d. will join

24. Many people in our town objected .... the new bridge.
a. to build b. to building c. building d. built

25. My father often .... me to drive his car.
a. lets b. makes c. allows d. denies

26. I prefer being jobless to .... like a slave عبد in such a company.
a. be treated b. treating c. being treated d. treat me

27. We all recommend .... that book.
a. that read b. that he read c. to read d. to reading

28. After she stopped ...., everyone clapped.
a. to sing b. singing c. sang d. sung

29. I regretted .... her in public. It was bad for me.
a. criticise b. criticising c. to criticise d. to criticising

30. I regret .... but it is the law. Tomorrow is my last day at work.
a. to retire b. retiring c. to retiring d. retire

31. Stop .... You are giving me a headache.
a. to shout b. shouted c. shouting d. to shouting

UNIT 6

32. I stopped .... a shower to refresh myself. It was very hot.
    a. to take   b. to taking   c. taking   d. being taken
33. If you want to stay healthy, you should try .... more exercise.
    a. did   b. to doing   c. to do   d. do
34. Try .... the mobile over there, it might get a better signal.
    a. to put   b. will put   c. putting   d. put
35. I tried .... some medicine but I found that the only chemist's in our area was closed.
    a. bought   b. buying   c. to buy   d. to buying
36. I have a stomachache, so I tried .... some medicine.
    a. taking   b. to take   c. to be taken   d. to taking
37. Please, remember .... your books with you next time.
    a. to bring   b. bring   c. bringing   d. brings
38. I remember .... the zoo every year when I was young.
    a. visiting   b. to visit   c. visited   d. visit
39. Don't forget .... bread on your way home, Ashraf.
    a. buying   b. bought   c. to buy   d. to buying
40. I don't forget .... my wife for the first time.
    a. seen   b. I see   c. to see   d. seeing
41. The gardener let us .... in the bark.
    a. cycle   b. to cycle   c. cycling   d. to cycling
42. The gardener allowed us .... in the park.
    a. cycle   b. to cycle   c. cycling   d. to cycling

3 Check your understanding

43. I heard Omar talking on his mobile. This means ....
    a. I heard everything he said.   b. I heard part of what he said.
    c. I heard nothing he said.   d. I heard everything he didn't say.
44. Try using this cream. This means ....
    a. I know this cream will work.   b. I know this cream won't work.
    c. I want you to use it and see what will happen.
    d. I hope this cream won't work.
45. "He has stopped drinking coffee as it is unhealthy." What does this mean?
    a. He wants to drink coffee.   b. He didn't drink coffee.
    c. He no longer drinks coffee.   d. He stopped to drink.
46. "I remember taking an aspirin." This means ....
    a. I took an aspirin.   b. I didn't take an aspirin.
    c. I remember to take an aspirin.   d. I will take an aspirin.



Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises



تنويه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

home

١ عند استخدام كلمة (home) كظرف مكان، لا تأخذ حرف الجر (to) مع أفعال الحركة التالية:

go - arrive - leave - reach - return - come

ex. - I go home at three o'clock. (Not: go to home)
- Mum returned home and prepared lunch. (Not: returned to home)

٢ عند استخدام كلمة (home) كإسم بعد الصفات والضمائر، فهي تأخذ حرف الجر (to) :

ex. - I go to my home at three o'clock.
- Mum returned to the family home and prepared lunch.

in addition to / as well as

In addition بالإضافة إلى ذلك + جملة

- He went to the market. In addition, he went to the zoo.

In addition to + n. / (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

ex. - In addition to going to the market, we went to the zoo.
- We went to the zoo in addition to going to the market.

As well as + n. / (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

ex. - As well as going to the market, we went to the zoo.

إذا استخدمت as well as بين فاعلين، فان الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول من ناحية المفرد والجمع:

ex. - I as well as Ali have a car.
- Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.

يمكن أن تربط as well as مفعولين أو صفتين:

ex. - Hala plays the guitar as well as the piano.
- Rania is talented as well as beautiful.

at the age of في عمر

At the age of + العمر = **when** + **subject** + **was / were** + العمر = **aged** + العمر

ex. - My grandmother died in 2018 at the age of 92.
= My grandmother died in 2018 when she was 92.
= My grandmother died in 2018, aged 92.

UNIT 6

Like / Unlike

يمكن استخدام (like / unlike) كروابط:

Like مثل - Unlike على عكس + اسم + , + جملة

ex. - Like his father, Abdulrahman works hard.
- Unlike his friends, Ahmed doesn't play football.

• **that's why** لهذا السبب •

...... + so / that is why / as a result / for this reason + جملة للنتيجة

ex. - He didn't earn enough money. That's why he travelled abroad.
- I've been feeling tired all week, so I'm going to bed early tonight.
- It's my mother's birthday soon. For this reason, I want to buy her a present.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I feel tired. I will .... home.
   a. go to b. go c. arrive to d. return to
2. .... football, I also play tennis.
   a. As b. Like c. In addition d. In addition to
3. I play football. ...., I play tennis.
   a. As b. Like c. In addition d. In addition to
4. Nasser .... his cousins likes chicken.
   a. as well as b. and c. in addition d. or
5. As well as .... my mother, I did my homework.
   a. helping b. help c. helps d. a help
6. I was so tired yesterday. .... I went to bed early.
   a. Because b. Although c. That's why d. In addition to
7. .... her two sisters, Sama is always nervous.
   a. As b. Unlike c. Because d. In addition
8. My grandfather died in 2000, ... 62.
   a. since b. ago c. age d. aged
9. When I finish the report, I will .... my home.
   a. return b. go c. arrive d. go to
10. She was very busy preparing for the party, ... she called me to go and help her.
    a. in addition b. as well as c. so d. because

11. ………… his mother, Ahmed doesn't like noise. They both can't live in a busy city.

a. Like b. Unlike c. As d. As well

12. I left university in 1998, ………… the age of 22.

a. in b. at c. on d. for

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

✪ Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (أسيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢١)

Ziad has a job which few people would want or like. Every week he falls off horses; he crashes cars and jumps from tall buildings. He has broken nearly every bone in his body and has been in hospital ten times. Ziad works on films and television programmes, doing the dangerous things that make them exciting. His main work is to replace famous actors who don't want to do dangerous things not to endanger themselves. To do this kind of work successfully, you need to be very fit. You have to be the same height and weight as the actors he is replacing. His hair and clothes also have to look exactly the same. Ziad enjoys his work and does not worry about the danger. "Most things I do are quite safe," he says.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does themselves refer to?

a. The actors Ziad replaces b. Films and television programmes

c. The cars d. The horses

2. Which of these words describes the work Ziad does?

a. Popular b. Kind c. Dangerous d. Healthy

3. ……………… people like Ziad's job.

a. Few b. All c. Much d. A lot of

4. Ziad finds his work ……………… .

a. boring b. enjoyable c. tiring d. unsafe

5. Ziad replaces ……………… .

a. teachers b. engineers c. actors d. horses

6. To do his work successfully, Ziad needs to be very ……………… .

a. excited b. safe c. worried d. fit

7. We should……………… and love our work to be successful.

a. fear b. enjoy c. break d. fall



2 Polite request الطلب المهذب

Making a Request	Reply
Formal Requests الطلب بطريقة رسمية 1. Could you possibly + inf. ...? هل من الممكن أن ...؟ 2. I wonder if you could + inf. ... . أتساءل إذا ما كان بإمكانك ... 3. I don't suppose you could+ inf. أظن أنه لا يمكنك أن ... 4. Do you think you could +inf. ...? أتعتقد أنه يمكنك ...؟ **Informal Requests** الطلب بطريقة ودية (غير رسمية) 1. Can you + inf. ....? هل يمكنك أن .....؟ 2. Could you do me a favour, please? هل يمكن أن تقدم لي معروفا من فضلك؟ 3. Could you do something for me? هل يمكن أن تفعل شيئا لأجلي؟	- Certainly. بالتأكيد - That's not a problem. هذا لا يمثل مشكلة. - Yes, of course. نعم بالطبع. - No. I'm afraid I can't. لا. للأسف لا أستطيع. - Yes. What is it? نعم ، ماذا تريد؟ - No problem. لا توجد مشكلة في ذلك. - Sure بالتأكيد

- ولاحظ الرد على هذا السؤال:

Would you mind + inf. + ing / noun .... ? هل تمانع أن ......؟

- No, I don't. / No problem. /No, not at all. (Agreeing) موافقة
- Yes, I do. (Disagreeing) عدم موافقة

3 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

Writing Reviews

ا- عند كتابة مقال يتضمن عرض نقدي لعمل فني أو أدبي (قصة / رواية / مسرحية / مسلسل / فيلم).
ينبغي تكتب ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية:

• Begin with a brief summary (40-60 words). ابدأ بملخص قصير (حوالي ٤٠/٦٠ كلمة)

• Determine the most important topics. / characters / plot.
حدد أهم الموضوعات / الشخصيات / الحبكة

• Dedicate a paragraph for each idea / topic / character.
خصص فقرة لكل فكرة / موضوع / شخصية

- Write a short clear conclusion. The conclusion summarizes the main points of the review in addition to your opinion.

اكتب خاتمة قصيرة وواضحة، وتتضمن الخاتمة النقاط الرئيسية للعرض النقدي بالإضافة لوجهة نظرك.

٢- عند كتابة مقال يتضمن عرض نقدي لقصيدة، ينبغي أن تكتب ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية:

- The title العنوان
- The author المؤلف
- Date published تاريخ النشر
- The main idea / topic الفكرة الرئيسية / الموضوع
- What you like about it الشيء الذي يعجبك
- What you don't like about it الشيء الذي لا يعجبك
- Conclusion الخاتمة

Model review

* **Write a review of about 150 words about a film or a book you like :**

Welad El-Am (The Cousins)

Welad El-Am (The Cousins) is an Egyptian action film. It is a story of love and betrayal الخيانة directed by Sherif Arafa.

Salwa (Mona Zaki) realizes that her husband, Ezzat (Sherif Mounir), is really Daniel; an Israeli spy جاسوس who kidnaps يختطف her and their two children to Israel to start a new life there.

Mostafa (Karim Abdel Aziz), the Egyptian officer, has been after Daniel for a while. When Salwa asks for help from a man in the street in Israel, her story reaches the Egyptian authorities السلطات and Mostafa is sent to collect information on Daniel and rescue Salwa.

There are conflicts صراعات of interest. Mostafa's hatred كراهية of Daniel is mixed with his need to do things correctly. Salwa's desire to leave is mixed with her belief that Daniel loves her.

The plot also involves Dareen, the Palestinian suicide bomber انتحارية. There is also the Israeli woman who befriends تصادق Salwa in order to watch تراقب her.

Mona Zaki's performance أداء as Salwa was strong. Sherif Mounir and Karim Abdel Aziz have done a great job as well.

To conclude, the film is really great. The story, the actors and the direction الإخراج worked together to make this film which I see deserves watching.



4 Translation الترجمة

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Peace leads to prosperity whereas wars lead to destruction, wars destroy the civilization man has made. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

a. يؤدي السلام إلى التخلف بينما تؤدي الحروب إلى الدمار، فالحروب تدمر الحضارة التي صنعها الإنسان.
b. يؤدي السلام إلي الازدهار ولكن الحروب تؤدي إلى الاستعمار، فالحروب تدمر الحضارة التي صنعها الرجل.
c. السلام يؤدي إلى الازدهار بينما الحروب لا تؤدي إلى الدمار، فالحروب تساعد الحضارة التي صنعها الإنسان.
d. يؤدي السلام إلى الازدهار بينما تؤدي الحروب إلى الدمار، فالحروب تدمر الحضارة التي صنعها الإنسان.

2. To prevent the spread of infectious diseases or being infected, take care of your personal hygiene regularly. (المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)

a. اهتمامك بنظافتك الشخصية بشكل أساسي هو الطريق لمنع انتشار الأمراض المزمنة وإصاباتها.
b. لمنع انتشار الأمراض المعدية أو العدوى بها، اعتن بنظافتك الشخصية بانتظام.
c. لوقف انتشار أي مرض معدي أو الإصابة به، عليك بالنظافة بشكل شخصي وباهتمام.
d. منع انتشار الأمراض الفتاكة يبدأ بالاهتمام بالنظافة بشكل شخصي ويومي ومنظم.

3. Money is a mixed blessing. Unless we spend it wisely, it will be a source of misery. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)

a. المال شيء مختلط علينا. إذا لم تنفقه بحكمة فسيكون مصدراً للتعاسة.
b. المال نعمة ونقمة. إذا لم تنفقه بحكمة فسيكون مصدراً للبخل.
c. المال نعمة ونقمة. إذا لم تنفقه بحكمة فسيكون مصدراً للتعاسة.
d. المال نعمة ونقمة. إذا لم تنفقه بعدالة فسيكون مصدراً للتعاسة.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

1. تُطوّر مصر السياحة البيئية لكي تحمي البيئات المختلفة بساحل البحر الأحمر، وسوف تبني فنادق جديدة تستخدم موارد وطاقة آمنة على البيئة. (دراو ٢٠٢٣)

a. Egypt develops Eco-tourism to prevent the different environments in the Red Sea. It is going to build new hotels using dangerous energy and materials for the environment.

b. Egypt develops Eco-tourism to protect the different environments in the Red Sea. It is going to build new hotels using safe energy and materials for the environment.

c. Egypt develops Eco-tourism to protect the same environments in the Red Sea. It is going to build new hotels using safe power and materials for the environment.

d. Egypt develops tourism to protect the different governments in the Red Sea. It is going to build new hotels using safe energy and materials for the environment.

٢. إن التلوث مشكلة خطيرة تواجه جميع دول العالم، ولابد أن تعمل كل هذه الدول معاً لمواجهة هذه المشكلة. (أسنا ٢٠٢٣)

a. Pollution is a problem dangerous facing all countries of the world. All countries work together to confront this problem.

b. Pollution is a serious problem faced all countries of the world. All countries work together to confront this problem.

c. Pollution is a serious problem facing all counties of the world. All countries must work together to confront this problem.

d. Pollution is a serious problem facing all countries of the world. All countries must work together to confront this problem

٣. علي مر التاريخ كانت مصر دولة ذات ريادة في كل المجالات، وانطلاقاً من هذا الدور استضافت مصر مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للتغير المناخي. (درنا ٢٠٢٣)

a. Throughout date, Egypt has been a leading country in all fields. Based on this role, Egypt hosted the United States conference on climate change.

b. Throughout history, Egypt has been a leading country in some fields. Based on this role, Egypt hosted the United Nations conference on climate change.

c. Throughout history, Egypt had been a leading country in all fields. Based on this rule, Egypt hosted the United Nations conference on climate change.

d. Throughout history, Egypt has been a leading country in all fields. Based on this role, Egypt hosted the United Nations conference on climate change.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

verse

• **verse (n)** مقطع من الشعر (جزء من قصيدة يحتوي علي عدد من السطور الشعرية)
- This poem has five verses. Each verse includes six lines.

• **verse (n)** آية (في القرآن أو الكتاب المقدس)
- Helmi recites يتلو some verses before he starts his work in the office.

• **verse (n)** الشِعر - النظم
- This play is written in verse.

rhyme

- **rhyme (n)** القافية
  - Traditional تقليدي poetry always has rhymes.
- **rhyme (n)** شعر مُقفى (له قافية)
  - This poem is written in rhyme.
- **rhyme (n)** نشيد / قصيدة
  - I liked rhymes when I was in primary school.
- **rhyme (with) (v)** يسجع / يَكُوْن قافية مع
  - The word "night" rhymes with "white".

plot

- **plot (n)** قطعة أرض (مساحة صغيرة)
  - I have a small vegetable plot.
- **plot (n)** مدفن العائلة
  - My grandfather bought this plot a short time before his death.
- **plot (against) (n)** مؤامرة / مكيدة (ضد)
  - There was a plot against the company to make it lose a lot of money.
- **plot (n)** حبكة الرواية أو الفيلم (ذروة الأحداث)
  - The plot of the film was exciting.
- **plot (against / to) (v)** يتآمر / يكيد (ضد - لكى)
  - He plotted to steal the safe of the supermarket.
  - They plotted against their manager.

walk

- **walk (v)** يمشي / يسير - يتنزه سيراً في - يُفسّح (حيوان) سيراً
  - She always walks to school.
  - I like walking in the fields near my country house.
  - She walks her dog in the afternoon.
- **walk (v)** يوصل (يمشي مع شخص ليطمئن انه وصل لمكان ما بأمان)
  - Don't worry. I'll walk you home.
- **walk (n)** طريق مشاه (خاصة للتنزه)
  - The walks around the park are covered with gravel.
- **walk (n)** التنزه سيراً (تمشية للفسحة)
  - I usually go for a walk (go walking) at weekends.

poetry

- **poetry (n)** الشعر
  - I studied English poetry at university.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- write poetry يكتب الشعر
- recite poetry يلقي الشعر
- a line of poetry بيت شعر
- a piece of poetry مقطوعة شعرية
- a volume / collection of poetry ديوان شعر

- **poet (n)** شاعر
  - In Arabic, Hafez Ibrahim is my favourite poet.
- **poem (n)** قصيدة
  - Ahmed Shawky wrote great poems.
- **poetic / poetical (adj)** شعري - شاعري
  - My daughter has the talent موهبة of poetic expression.

literature

- **literature (n)** الأدب (الروايات والقصص والشعر والمسرحيات ... إلخ)
  - Poetry is the oldest form نوع of Arabic literature.
- **literary (adj)** أدبي (متعلق بالكتابات الأدبية)
  - I used to read literary criticism. النقد

2 Important idioms مصطلحات هامة

keep the gravel walk	to stay on the path through the garden يلزم الطريق المفروش بالحصى في البستان كي لا تطأ قدماه النباتات
currant row	a line of plants that have small fruits صف من نبات الكشمش (نبات شبيه بالعلب أو الزبيب)

3 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
a-	تكوّن صفة أو ظرف	aloud بصوت عال awake مستيقظ
co-	مساعد / مصاحب	co-pilot مساعد طيار
mis-	خطأ	misunderstand يسئ فهم
re-	يعيد / يكرر	resend يعيد إرسال

4 suffixes مقاطع لاهية

Suffix اللاهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ache	تعطي معنى ألم	headache صداع
-ant	تكوّن أسماء وصفات	applicant متقدم لوظيفة pleasant سار
-ible	تكوّن صفات	sensible عاقل / حكيم
-ic	تكوّن صفات	rhythmic ذو إيقاع قوي
-ical	تكوّن صفات	rhythmical ذو إيقاع قوي
-ure	تكوّن أسماء	pleasure سعادة

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary — مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A: The street is dark and empty.
   B: No problem. I'll .... you home.
   a. pinch b. walk c. plot d. lock
2. The .... each measure 20 metres by 30 metres.
   a. land b. plots c. area d. ground
3. .... what way will you pay back your debts?
   a. On b. In c. With d. At
4. Our parents are to thank for the .... they do to us.
   a. harms b. favours c. damages d. vowels
5. Terrorists الإرهابيون .... against their countries.
   a. bare b. hop c. profit d. plot

Advanced Exercise on Language — مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

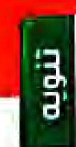
Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I suggested stopping him .... that old film as it was a waste of time.
   a. watching b. watches c. watched d. to watch
2. I recommend my children .... meals at home.
   a. have b. to have c. having d. to having
3. I don't allow .... in my office.
   a. smoke b. smoking c. to smoking d. to smoke
4. I .... go out late at night.
   a. wouldn't rather b. would rather to not
   c. would rather didn't d. would rather not
5. It is starting .... again.
   a. raining b. to rain c. rains d. to raining

Test on Unit 6



• Understand ○ Apply • Create



التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب



1. Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "When the sky is clear we enjoy playing tennis." The adjective 'clear' in this sentence is a synonym of .... (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. vague b. bright c. unclear d. cloudy e. cloudless
2. You can't depend on him. He isn't a/ an .... He is only a child. (بلقاس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. grown-up b. baby c. adult d. toddler e. infant

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

3. Farmers use .... to feed animals. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
   a. hay b. milk c. gravel d. manure
4. They plotted .... the new manager. They wanted him to fail. (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. from b. for c. with d. against
5. A .... is a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme. (أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. poet b. poem c. poetry d. poetic
6. Thank you for the .... you have done to me. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. favourite b. flavor c. favour d. private
7. Don't forget to .... the front door when you leave to keep the house safe.
   a. lock b. unlock c. open d. widen
8. Poetry is a form of ....
   a. science b. storytelling c. novels d. literature
9. You .... me a favour when you drove me to the airport.
   a. made b. did c. took d. gave
10. I hope............ a new car instead of the old one. (شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)
    a. to buy b. buying c. to buying d. will buy
11. The thief denied .... the money. He is a liar. (بنها ٢٠٢٣)
    a. stealing b. to steal c. to stealing d. steal
12. I don't mind .... at home during holiday. (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)
    a. stay b. to stay c. to staying d. staying
13. The driver regretted .... that bad accident. It was the other driver's fault. (المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
    a. to have b. having c. have d. to having
14. I recommend .... the ice cream. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
    a. to try b. that he tried c. try d. that he try



15. Which of the following sentences has a grammatical error? (اسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٣)
    a. My mother has just finish preparing lunch.
    b. I used to drink milk when I was young, but nowadays I don't.
    c. Remember to put the lights off before you leave the house.
    d. While I was watching TV, my brother was reading a book.

16. We all recommended students .... in time for school. (المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
    a. was b. is c. being d. be

3. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer : (ادع دمادي ٢٠٢٣)

Dangerous substances discharged by factories cause toxic or poisonous air pollution. The emissions have serious effects on public health. Needless to say, exposure to high levels of these toxic emissions will cause a lot of human suffering through chest ailments and diseases. Toxic chemicals, which do not break down easily in the atmosphere, have been known to travel great distances and come down to earth. Moreover, pollutants emitted from automobiles, cars and other means of transport and dry cleaners are considered very dangerous. In this way, a huge quantity of cancer-causing chemicals is released into the air.

Benzene is known to cause leukemia in humans. This is a serious problem which is serious to human health. The World Health Organisation 'WHO.' reaffirms that the gap of the ozone layer has been widening. Two thirds of the layer that protects the globe have been completely destroyed. Ozone absorbs the harmful ultraviolet rays that cause skin cancer and damage eyesight. Many countries are now taking action to reduce pollution. But this pollution problem may solve itself when the world oil wells have run out. Then we hope that alternative sources of energy will have been found.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The ozone layer, being widened by pollutants, ...
    a. prevents ultraviolet rays from coming down to earth
    b. protects the globe
    c. allows ultraviolet rays to come down to earth and cause human suffering
    d. absorbs the harmful pollutants

18. Toxic chemicals ....
    a. break down easily in the atmosphere
    b. do not break down easily in the atmosphere and don't come down to earth
    c. come down to earth because they do not break down easily in the atmosphere
    d. are emitted from the atmosphere and come down to earth.

19. Toxic emissions sometimes cause ....
    a. ultraviolet rays to break down easily
    b. chest ailments and other diseases
    c. ultraviolet rays
    d. the reduction of pollution

20. The best title of this text is "...........".
    a. Ultraviolet rays
    b. Toxic air-pollution
    c. leukemia in humans
    d. The World Health Organisation

21. .... of the layer that protects the globe is remaining.
a. Two thirds b. One third c. Three fifths d. Half

22. The ozone layer is important because ....
a. it wraps the earth
b. it prevents the harmful rays from reaching the earth
c. it protects the space from the sun
d. it protects the other planets from the earth

23. The industry is responsible for polluting the environment because ....
a. factories don't pay taxes
b. factories discharge dangerous substances
c. many people work in industry
d. building new factories takes a lot of water

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a , b , c or d:**
With determination and patience, many people with special needs could achieve great success in their life. They have also become role models for ordinary people. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

a. بالإصرار والتصميمات استطاع الكثير من الناس ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة تحقيق نجاح كبير في حياتهم، ولقد أصبحوا أيضاً قدوة للناس العاديين.
b. بالإصرار والصبر استطاع الكثير من الناس ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة تحقيق نجاح كبير في حياتهم، ولقد أصبحوا أيضاً قدوة للناس العاديين.
c. بالإصرار والصبر استطاع الكثير من الناس ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة تحقيق نجاح ما في الحياة، ولقد أصبحوا أيضاً قدوة للناس العاديين.
d. بالإصرار والصبر استطاع الكثير من الناس ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة تحقيق نجاح كبير في حياتهم، ولقد أتوا أيضاً قدوة للناس العاديين.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a , b , c or d:**
تستطيع بعض الحيوانات تغيير لونها بلون البيئة المحيطة لتحمي نفسها من حيوانات أقوى، فكل حيوان له خصائص معينة تعينه على الحياة في بيئته الخاصة. (الخميم ٢٠٢٣)

a. Some animals can exchange their colours to match their surroundings to protect themselves from stronger animals. Each animal has characteristics that help it live in its our environment.
b. Some animals can change their colours to match their surroundings to protect themselves from stronger animals. Each animal has characteristics that help it survive in its own environment.
c. Some animals can change their colours to match their surroundings to prevent themselves from weaker animals. Each animal has characteristics that help it live In Its own environment.
d. Some birds can change their colours to match their surroundings to protect themselves from stronger animals. Each animal has personalities that help it live in Its own environment.

26. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on :**
"Learning from literature"

....



Revision 2 Based On Units 4, 5 & 6

SB pages 72 : 77 WB pages 128 : 131

PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

adventure(n)	مغامرة	mysterious(adj)	غامض
anti-virus (adj)	مكافح الفيروسات	name(d) (n - v)	اسم - يذكر اسم
app(n)	تطبيق	old-fashioned(adj)	قديم - عفا عليه الزمن
care(n)	عناية / رعاية	online (adj - adv)	عبر الإنترنت - متصل
case(n)	حالة / قضية	paintings(n)	لوحات
communicate(d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل	password(n)	كلمة المرور
communication(n)	التواصل - الاتصال	penfriend (n)	صديق بالمراسلة
concerned(adj)	مهتم	perhaps(adv)	ربما
continue(d) (v)	يستمر - يدوم	popular(adj)	شائع - ذو شعبية
copy(ied) (v)	ينسخ	prefer(red) (v)	يفضل
cover(ed) (n - v)	غلاف - يغطي	print(ed) (v)	يطبع
cruel(adj)	قاسي	professor(n)	أستاذ جامعي
Dark Ages(n)	عصور الظلام	real(adj)	حقيقي
definitely(adv)	بالتأكيد	recommend(ed) (v)	يوصي بـ / يزكّي
details(n)	تفاصيل	relaxing(adj)	مريح
difference(n)	اختلاف / فرق	reply(ied) (v)	يَرُد - رد
encourage(d) (v)	يُشجّع	rest (ed) (n - v)	باقي - راحة - يستريح
escape(d) (v)	يهرب	save(d) (v)	يحفظ - يدخر
ever(adv)	على الإطلاق - من قبل	setting(n)	مكان وزمان الأحداث
face(d) (v)	يواجه	smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي
impossible(adj)	مستحيل	software(n)	برامج - برمجيات
interesting(adj)	شيّق	strange(adj)	غريب
kidnapped(adj)	محطوف	surprisingly(adv)	من المدهش
like(conj.)	مثل	technology(n)	تكنولوجيا
lose - lost (v)	يخسر - يفقد	text(n)	رسالة نصية - نص
material(n)	محتويات	trick(ed) (v - n)	يخدع - خدعة

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

action(n)	حركة - حدث	maps(n)	خرائط
almost(adv)	تقريبا	message(n)	رسالة
around(adv)	حول	museum(n)	متحف
arrange(d) (v)	يرتب	situation(n)	موقف
character(n)	شخصية	still(adv)	لا يزال
dangerous(adj)	خطر	successful(adj)	ناجح
decide(d) (v)	يقرر	together(adv)	معاً
example(n)	مثال	true(adj)	صحيح
fantastic(adj)	رائع	warmer(adj)	أكثر حميمية
farm(n)	مزرعة	wonderful(adj)	رائع
full(adj)	مملوء		

PART II READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

A. Why penfriends are history ! *(SB page 72)*

Communication[1] is easy today. Many people use **apps**[2] on their **smartphones**[3] to talk to their friends. When we send a **message**[4] to a friend, we take it for granted that he or she will **reply**[5] very soon.

Before the internet, people wrote letters and many people had **penfriends**[6]. These were people they did not always meet, but people they chose to write to about their lives. The letters sometimes took a long time to arrive, but penfriends were very **popular**[7].

An **example**[8] is Nellie Roberts and Daphne Meech. These two Australian women are now 90 years old. They first **decided**[9] to write to **each other**[10] in the 1930s, and are now **perhaps**[11] the longest two people **ever**[12] to be penfriends.

Nellie Roberts first had penfriends when she was 10, but only one penfriend **continued**[13] to write to her. **Like**[14] Nellie, Daphe lived on a **farm**[15] and the two women enjoyed writing about their lives. **As well as**[16] letters, they sent each other black and white photos. They did not meet until 1962, 30 years after their first letter.

(1) التواصل - الاتصال
(2) تطبيقات
(3) الهواتف الذكية
(4) رسالة
(5) يَرُد
(6) أصدقاء مُراسلة
(7) شائع - ذو شعبية
(8) مثال
(9) يقرر
(10) بعضهم البعض
(11) ربما
(12) على الإطلاق
(13) يستمر
(14) مِثل
(15) مزرعة
(16) بالإضافة إلى

REVISION 2

Nellie **still** [17] prefers writing letters, and says that she is never going to use **technology** [18] to **communicate** [19].

Surprisingly [20], there are now many **online** [21] clubs for penfriends. They **encourage** [22] people to write letters to penfriends **around** [23] the world, and they are very **successful** [24]. Many say that writing letters is **relaxing** [25] and a **warmer** [26] way to communicate than with an email or **text** [27]. You do not need apps, passwords or anti-virus software. As Nellie says, 'Just a pen and paper will do.'

(17) لا يزال
(18) تكنولوجيا
(19) يتصل - يتواصل
(20) من المدهش
(21) على الإنترنت
(22) يشجع
(23) حول
(24) ناجح
(25) مريح
(26) أكثر حميمية
(27) رسالة نصية

B. A fantastic adventure story !

(SB page 74)

In my opinion, Robert Louis Stevenson's **Kidnapped** [1] is not as great as Treasure Island or as exciting as The **Strange** [2] **Case** [3] of Dr Jękyll and Mr Hyde, but it is **full** [4] **of action** [5] and really fun.

I enjoyed it very much. The story happens in 1751 and it begins when seventeen-year-old David Balfour goes to stay with his **mysterious** [6] uncle in Scotland. His uncle is a **cruel** [7] man and he **tricks** [8] David. He **arranges** [9] for a ship to take David away to America. However, David **manages to** [10] **escape** [11] with a friend and that is just the start of their **adventures** [12]. **I recommend** [13] this book to everyone who likes adventure stories.

James (UK)

(1) المخطوف
(2) غريب
(3) حالة / قضية
(4) مملوء
(5) حركة - حدث
(6) غامض
(7) قاسٍ
(8) يخدع
(9) يرتب
(10) يتمكن من
(11) الهروب
(12) مغامرة
(13) يوصي بـ / يزكي

C. Not the best book for me

(SB page 74)

As far as I'm **concerned** [1], this book is too **old-fashioned** [2]. The story is **interesting** [3] and there is a lot of action, but I don't think the **characters** [4] are very **real** [5]. David Balfour is a seventeen-year-old boy, but his life is very different from mine. The language is also old-fashioned. **I prefer** [6] to read more modern books. Kidnapped is just not my kind of book.

Peter (Canada)

(1) مهتم
(2) أسلوبه قديم
(3) شيق
(4) شخصيات
(5) حقيقي
(6) يفضل

D. My favourite book ! *(SB page 74)*

Kidnapped has so much action and adventure! This really is my favourite book. David Balfour's uncle tries to send him away to America on a ship, but David escapes and **makes friends with**[1] a man called Alan Breck. **Together**[2] they travel through Scotland and **face**[3] many **dangerous**[4] and exciting **situations**[5]. I love all the **details**[6] about the places they visit. You can really feel like you are in Scotland. I will **definitely**[7] read this book again.

Tara (Ireland)

(1) يصادق - يصاحب مع
(2) معا
(3) يواجه
(4) خطير
(5) مواقف
(6) تفاصيل
(7) بالتأكيد

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 73)

Interviewer : Hello, today I'm talking to **Professor**[1] Marwan Shabana, a history teacher at the University of Cairo. He's just written a very interesting book about the future of technology. And it's not all good news, is it Professor?

Professor : That's **true**[2], although no one knows what will happen in the future, of course!

Interviewer : What are you worried about?

Professor : Well, there was a time in history when very few people wrote about what happened in their lives. We call these the **Dark Ages**[3], because we don't know much about this time. I'm worried that we are going to have an information Dark Age in the future.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Professor : Today we use computer technology for **almost**[4] all our information. We use computers for our writing, photographs, music and films. This is **fantastic**[5], of course, but what will happen to it in the future? The technology of today quickly becomes old. I think that we'll **lose**[6] a lot of **material**[7] because new technology won't be able to read it.

(1) أستاذ جامعي
(2) صحيح
(3) عصور الظلام
(4) تقريبا
(5) رائع
(6) يفقد - يخسر
(7) محتويات



Interviewer : But, we'll **copy**[8] all the important information onto our new technology, won't we?

Professor : I agree, we will. But history teaches us that there are some things we don't think are important today that will be very important in the future. These are the things I worry that we will lose. People won't think something is important to **save**[9], or we will forget the **passwords**[10] to give us this information.

(8) ينسخ
(9) يحفظ
(10) كلمات مرور
(11) يطبع
(12) متحف
(13) رائع
(14) لوحات
(15) خرائط
(16) وهكذا
(17) عناية / رعاية

Interviewer : What can we do about this?

Professor : In my opinion, we need to **print**[11] more, like we did in the past. Look in a **museum**[12] and you will see **wonderful**[13] old **paintings**[14], photographs, **maps**[15] **and so on**[16]. With **care**[17], these will be with us for a long time.

Interviewer : So, do you think old technology is better than new technology?

Professor : I'm not so sure about that! Of course, we need new technology, but will the software that we use today be on the computers of tomorrow. We need old technology as well. For example, my father kept all of his letters to my mother before they married. I don't have any of the emails I sent to my wife, because we don't usually keep emails! I think we need to print more information as well as keeping it on
a computer. Then we won't have another Dark Age.

Interviewer : It's an interesting idea. Thank you for talking to us.



Monthly assessments

تقييمات شهرية

1. October test اختبار اكتوبر

1. Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. When I was on holiday in the countryside, I sometimes ....
   a. went trekking b. went on a trek c. went on
   d. trekking e. trekked into

2. The antonyms of "generous" are .... and ....
   a. helpful b. selfish c. mean
   d. intelligent e. stupid

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. Your blood .... should be measured every day.
   a. pleasure b. treasure c. pressure d. donation

4. Good doctors have a .... of duty.
   a. skill b. sense c. responsibility d. charity

5. The local .... have started a charity to help poor children in the neighbourhood.
   a. security b. communication c. technology d. community

6. We are in bad need for a/an .... because the patient needs blood.
   a. borer b. mower c. owner d. donor

7. Winning the gold medal .... a good impact on him.
   a. had b. took c. did d. read

8. We are all responsible for .... our environment.
   a. conserving b. confusing c. conversing d. commuting

9. Don't leave until I .... you.
   a. told b. had told c. tell d. was told

10. I am sure he .... a lot of money. He just doesn't want to lend you any.
    a. is having b. is going to have c. will have d. has

11. .... lunch ready before the guests arrived ?
    a. Are b. Had c. Was d. Does

12. I got used to .... in a small office.
    a. work b. working c. works d. worked

13. He .... allowed to leave until he finished the report.
a. didn't b. isn't c. wasn't d. hadn't

14. I was watching a film and my father arrived. This means that my father arrived .... the film.
a. during b. before c. while d. after

15. .... sleeping, I had a nightmare.
a. While b. As c. When d. During

16. Ahmed .... a glass of milk every morning.
a. always has b. always had had c. has always d. had always

3. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

I was very interested while listening to my friend telling me the following story which he had read in a newspaper. It was a hot noon, and the few people walking along the street stood struck **dumb** gazing up a man in the air little by little falling down to the earth. His wide new garment acted as a parachute when his foot slipped off the wooden board he was standing on while painting the front of a high house.

It was funny that he fell down on his feet inside the box of a lorry that happened to be passing by at the time. When the people shouted, the lorry driver stopped and the man jumped off delighted at being saved. If the lorry had been a second later, it would have knocked him down dead, so he insisted on giving the driver a **treat**. He crossed the street to buy him a coca cola. On his way back, he was so excited that he couldn't avoid being struck down by a motorcycle running fast along the street. He fell down on the ground. The people hurried to help him rise to his feet, but they found him dead.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. The man's garment caused him to ....
a. fall down dead b. fall off the board
c. fall down gradually d. fall down rapidly

18. The idea of the passage is ....
a. a story b. an experiment c. fancy d. facts

19. The lorry had arrived at the place ....
a. when the man's foot slipped off b. while the man was painting
c. before the man reached the ground d. after the man reached the ground

20. The word "**treat**" in the passage most likely means ....

a. behaving towards someone

b. an unexpected gift

c. a cure given for patients

d. a thing that you buy to remind yourself of a place

21. The man was lucky when ....

a. he fell into the lorry box

b. people hurried to help him

c. the motorcycle ran fast

d. he fell down on the ground

22. The word "**dumb**" means people who can't ....

a. listen b. see c. speak d. eat

23. A garment is a kind of ....

a. metal b. clothes c. plastic d. wood

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

There's no doubt that education is the backbone of scientific progress. Without teachers, people will suffer from the darkness of ignorance.

a. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العملي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من آثار الجهل.

b. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المتعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.

c. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.

d. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من نور الجهل.

25. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

إن ضغوط الحياة رغم شدتها لا يجب أن تكون عائقاً أمام استمتاع جميع الناس بحياتهم.

a. The pressures of life, however their intensity, should be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.

b. The pressure of life, despite their intensity should be an obstacle to all people enjoying their live.

c. The pressures of life, despite their intensity, shouldn't be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.

d. The pressures of life, despite their intensity, shouldn't be an obstacle to some people enjoying their lives.

26. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on :**

"Egypt is proud of its distinguished scientists in all fields"

....

....

....



Monthly assessments



2. November test اختبار نوفمبر

1. Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. The driver was fined because he had .... the traffic law.
   a. supported b. kept c. broken d. issued e. disobeyed

2. Voluntary can be antonymous with .... and ....
   a. plump b. compulsory c. obligatory d. full e. unusual

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. If something .... wrong with the car, call the garage.
   a. has b. does c. makes d. goes

4. You don't have to answer this question as it is ....
   a. social b. advisory c. optional d. compulsory

5. Instructions are always put on the .... for everyone to read.
   a. communication b. connection c. noticeboard d. forecast

6. The .... of opinions should be respected, even if you don't like it.
   a. leader b. friendship c. diversity d. punctuation

7. The old family house is .... by my grandparents.
   a. populated b. population c. polluted d. pollution

8. .... isn't allowed and it is considered a crime.
   a. Polling b. Bullying c. Pulling d. Bull

9. Finally, she .... how to use the smartphone. Now she can surf the net.
   a. learns b. has learnt c. had learnt d. was learning

10. Omar .... wastes his time.
    a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. never

11. I have had lunch ....
    a. already b. yet c. just d. so far

12. France and Italy are .... European countries.
    a. a b. an c. no article d. the

13. .... there any information about the exam results?
    a. Are b. Is c. Were d. Has

14. I'm very busy. I have .... work to do.

a. a little b. lots of c. a lot d. a few

15. It's the first time I .... alone.

a. travel b. to travel

c. to travelling d. have ever travelled

16. I need .... information.

a. an b. few c. some d. many

3. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

After having an accident on the high way, a traveller wanted to describe the experience he had. "A first responder is someone who immediately tries to help with some incident that occurs. This could be a response to someone who is hurt or injured, a natural disaster or maybe your pet needs help.

The response might be at your house or in your neighbourhood. When called, the first responder is trained to come right away. A quick response is the surest way that the incident can be resolved in the shortest time and with the least amount of damage to individuals and to property.

A first responder is responsible for the protection and preservation of life, property, evidence and the environment. They are trained in many areas like emergency management, public health, clinical care, public works and in operating equipment.

Together, they work to provide support services at the "onset" of an incident. "Onset" means at the early stages. They work to help in all response areas of prevention, response and **recovery**.

Calling for emergency is one way you can ask for help from first responders. You should know when it is appropriate to call this emergency help number. But it should be prevented in cases that are not emergencies. It wastes people's time and takes away resources needed for other emergency situations.

We salute those people who are first responders and thank them for their quick responses to help out in situations when needed.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. If the first responders didn't answer the call, ...

a. nothing would happen b. people will go to their place

c. someone may be hurt d. neither a, b nor c

18. The first responders ....
   a. save people in accidents   b. call for emergency
   c. can't help when a house is burnt down   d. neither a, b nor c

19. When there is no emergency, we ....
   a. should go and help first responders
   b. should phone to know the work of first responders
   c. must not phone first responders
   d. should go to thank first responders

20. The first three paragraphs speak about the ....
   a. management   b. damage   c. responders   d. recovery

21. The best word to replace the underlined word "**recovery**" is ....
   a. return   b. healing   c. reply   d. resize

22. The best title for the passage can be ....
   a. Emergency   b. Neighbourhood   c. Protection   d. Car races

23. The word "**salute**" can have the same meaning as ....
   a. greet   b. despise   c. care   d. need

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Developing effective communication skills helps you to understand what others are saying. This makes you a better and communicative member in the society.

a. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الحديث يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل مُتصل في المجموعة.
b. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الماهر يساعدك على تفهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل اتصالي في المجتمع.
c. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الفعال يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل ومتواصل في المجتمع.
d. تطوير مهارات الاتصال غير الفعال يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل في المجتمع.

25. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

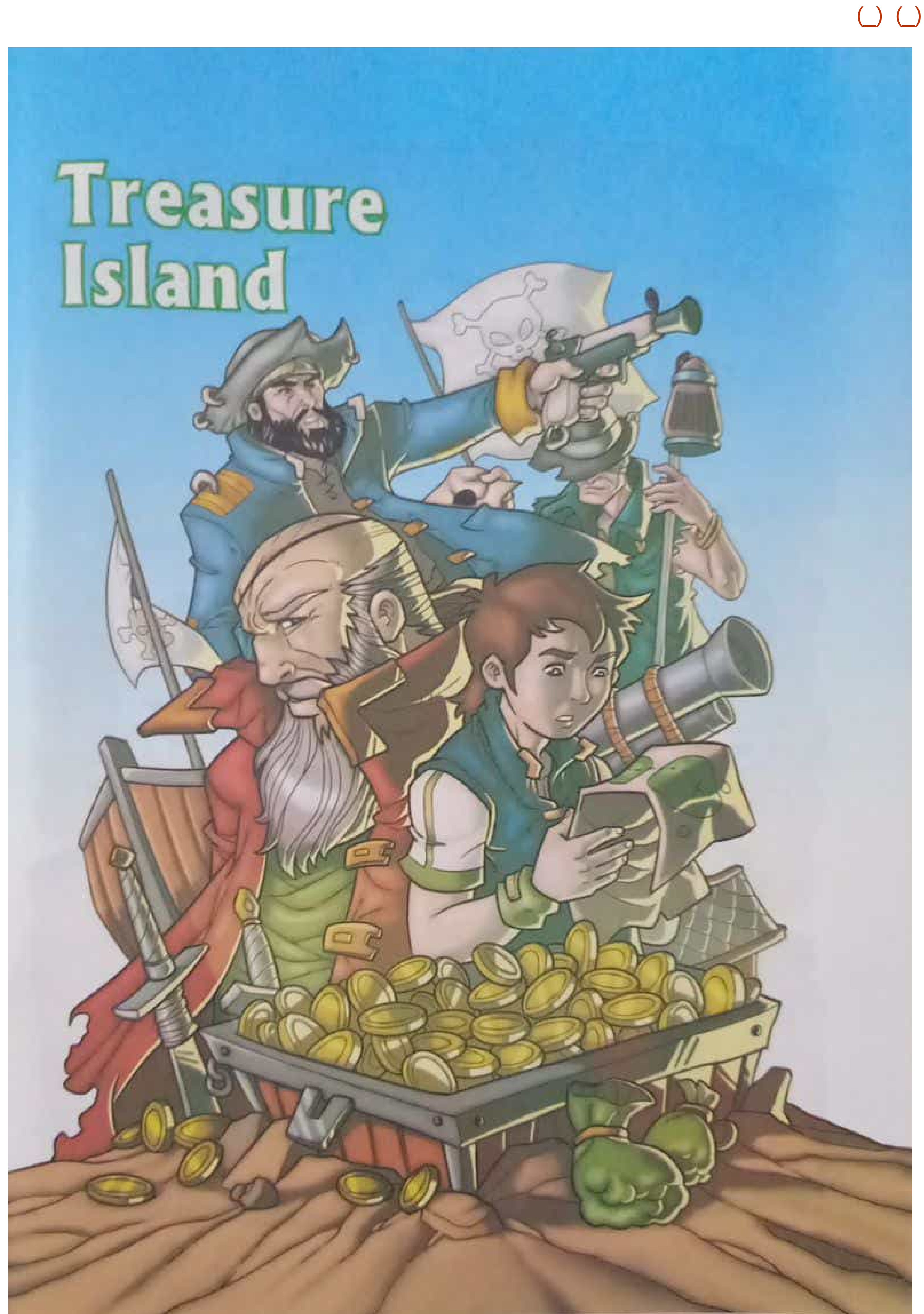
لقد أصبحت مياه الشرب مشكلة عالمية يمكن أن تؤدي إلي حروب بين كثير من الدول.

a. Drinking water has become a global problem that could load to wars between many countries.
b. Drinking water has become a global problem that could loud to wars between many countries.
c. Drinking water has become a global problem that could lead to wars between many countries.
d. Drunk water has become a global problem that could lead to wars between many countries.

26. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"Spending free time in a positive way"

....


Treasure Island











Dr. Livesey | Jim Hawkins, A young teenage boy | Captain Smollett, the ship's captain | Mr. Trelawney

The Pirates







Billy Bones | Long John Silver | Captain Flint, His parrot







Pew

Setting

The story takes place at The Admiral Benbow Inn in Bristol on the Hispaniola, a sailing ship on Treasure Island, an island in the Caribbean.



Treasure Island

By Robert Louis Stevenson





VOCABULARY

adventure (n)	مغامرة	hide – hid - hidden (v)	يختبئ - يُخفِي
blind (adj)	كفيف البصر	inn (n)	نُزُل (فندق صغير)
captain (n)	قبطان - قائد	owe (ed) (v)	يدين بـ ... (عليه دين)
cliff (n)	مُنحَدر	own (ed) (v)	يمتلك
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	pale (adj)	شاحب اللون
danger (n)	الخطر	papers (n)	مستندات - جرائد
dare (d) (v)	يجرؤ	scar (n)	نَدبة - أثر جُرح
frightened (adj)	خائف	sword (n)	سيف
grab (bed) (v)	يجذب بشدة - يخطف	terrible (adj)	فظيع
guard (ed) (n - v)	يحرس - حارس	travel (led) (n - v)	السفر - يسافر
gun (n)	بندقية	weak (adj)	ضعيف - واهن
hand (ed) (n - v)	يُعطي (باليد) - يد		

Words and their definitions

scar	: a mark on the skin from a cut or a wound	اثر جرح فى الجسم
cliff	: a steep piece of land or rock	منحدر
dare	: to be brave enough to do something	جرئ
pale	: having a skin colour that is very white or whiter than it usually is	شاحب
sword	: a weapon with a long, sharp blade	سيف



Before You read

- Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about?

Jim Hawkins

I'll start by writing about the time when my father **owned**[1] an **inn**[2] called the Admiral Benbow, many years ago. I remember the day when a man walked into the inn. He was tall and strong, with an old blue coat and a **scar**[3] on his face.

He **looked around**[4] him.

"This is a nice, quiet place. I'll stay here. Please, **take this up**[5] to my room," he said, pointing to a large wooden box.

"You can call me Captain. And this is for you," he continued, handing my father three or four **gold coins**[6].

The Captain was usually a quiet man. He spent his days walking on the beach or on the **cliffs**[7]. When he came back, he always asked, "Did any **sailors**[8] visit the inn today?" At first, we thought he wanted to find some other sailors, but later we **realised**[9] that he didn't want any sailors to find him.

In the evenings, the Captain sometimes told stories about his time at sea. My father was worried that nobody would want to visit the inn because they would be frightened by the Captain's stories, but I think people liked them.

(1) امتلك
(2) نزل / فندق
(3) ندبة / أثر الجرح في الجسم
(4) نظر حوله
(5) يرفع ... إلى
(6) عملات ذهبية
(7) منحدرات
(8) بحارة
(9) أدرك / فهم
(10) يجرؤ
(11) ذهب في تمشية
(12) شاحب

The Captain stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not **dare**[10] to ask him for more.

One morning, the Captain **went for a walk**[11] along the beach. I was helping my mother to make breakfast when another man walked into the inn. He was thin and **pale**[12], with three fingers on his left hand. He sat down and asked, "Is this table here for my friend Bill?"

I told him that I did not know Bill and said that the table was for the Captain.

"Well, my friend Bill might say that he's the Captain," he said. "He has a scar on his face and likes to tell a story. Is that him?"

"Yes," I said. "He's gone for a walk." "Which way did he walk?" he asked.

I pointed towards the beach. The man stood up and waited by the door for the Captain to return.

When the Captain saw the man, he looked pale and ill. "Black Dog!" the Captain said.

"That's right," he **replied**[13]. "I've found my friend Bill! We've had a lot of **adventures**[14] since I lost these fingers!"

I left them to talk. Then suddenly there were **loud shouts**[15] and both men stood up and ran outside. The Captain had a **sword**[16] and then I saw Black Dog running away with **blood**[17] on his arm. The man continued running until we could not see him.

(13) اجاب / رد
(14) مغامرات
(15) صرخات عالية
(16) سيف
(17) دم
(18) عراك / مشاجرة
(19) الدور العلوي
(20) دواء
(21) شعرت بالسوء
(22) اشياء غريبة
(23) رجل كفيف
(24) تجاه / ناحية
(25) طيب / عطوف
(26) امسك بيدي



The Captain walked back into the inn. He looked ill and suddenly he fell over. I thought perhaps he was hurt from the **fight**[18]. At that moment, the doctor arrived to see my father who was sick. "Help us, Dr Livesey! The Captain is hurt!" said my mother.

The doctor looked at him and said, "He is not hurt, but he is very ill. Help me to take him **upstairs**[19]."

We took the Captain up to his bedroom and the doctor gave him some **medicine**[20]. The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted. "Black Dog is not as bad as some of the other men," he said, "They all want to find me. Tell me if you see them!"

That evening, my father died. I **felt terrible**[21] and forgot all about the **strange things**[22] that the Captain told me.

Then, a week later, I saw a **blind man**[23] coming down the road **towards**[24] the inn. He stopped outside the door when he was near and asked, "Where am I? Will a **kind**[25] person help me?" "You are at the Admiral Benbow Inn in Black Hill Cove," I told him.

At that moment, he **grabbed my hand**[26].

"Take me to the Captain!" he said. "Take me to him now!"



I walked with the blind man into the inn and took him to the Captain. The Captain looked very **surprised**[27] to see him.

"Now, Bill, stay where you are. I can hear you. Take this." He then put something in the Captain's hand, **turned around**[28] and left. The Captain looked at what the man gave him. "Ten o'clock!" he said. "I **have time**![29]"

Then the Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead. I found my mother and we talked about what we should do. We knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this. I thought about taking the box to Dr Livesey, but I did not want to leave my mother. We knew that we were **in danger**[30]. We decided to go to the **nearest village**[31] and ask our **neighbours**[32] for help **guarding**[33] the inn.

(27) مندهش
(28) استدار حول
(29) لديه وقت
(30) في خطر
(31) أقرب قرية
(32) جيران
(33) حماية
(34) بندقية
(35) رسالة
(36) يدين لـ
(37) ضعيف
(38) كوبري
(39) يختبىء

However, none of the people in the village wanted to help us. They did not come back with us, but one man went to tell Dr Livesey. Another man said that we could have his **gun**[34].



It was dark when we returned to the inn. We found the key to the box in the Captain's jacket. I also saw the **message**[35] that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight." We went upstairs and my mother soon opened the box with the key. Inside, we found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. We also found a bag with some coins inside.



"We only have time until ten o'clock," I said. "Let's leave before the blind man and Black Dog return."

"I'll only take the money which the Captain **owes**[36] us," my mother said, opening the bag.

We stood up to leave, and I decided to take the papers from the box, too. We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us.

"Take the money and run," said my mother. "I'm too **weak**[37] to continue."

I did not want to leave her, so we stopped under a **bridge**[38], where we could **hide**[39] in the dark.

Check
your Understanding Chapter 1

Answer the following questions :

1. The Captain gave the narrator's father 3 or 4 gold coins. What can we infer from that ?
2. Why do you think the Captain didn't want any sailors to come to the beach ?
3. In your point of view, what happened between the Captain and Black Dog ?
4. Do you think the Captain's box has something important ? Why / Why not ?
5. Why do you think the people of the village refused to help the boy and his mother ?
6. What was inside the captain's box ?
7. What did the blind man give the captain ?

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When the Captain arrived at the inn, he had a/an ....
   a. big case b. interesting jacket c. exciting boat d. wooden box
2. The Captain used to walk on the ....
   a. path b. beach c. park d. count
3. The Captain's hobby was ....
   a. telling stories b. reading novels
   c. staying at home d. fighting fiercely
4. The Captain has a scar on his ....
   a. arm b. shoulder c. face d. wrest
5. When the Captain saw Black Dog, he was ....
   a. delighted and cheerful b. pale and ill
   c. happy and quiet d. angry and sad





VOCABULARY

catch - caught (d) (v)	يقبض على	island (n)	جزيرة
clue (n)	دليل / مفتاح كل اللغز	magistrate (n)	قاضي / محقق
cook (n)	طاه - طبّاخ	map (n)	خريطة
crew (n)	طاقم سفينة / طائرة	rich (adj)	ثري / غني
cross (n)	علامة (+ / ×)	rob (bed) (v)	يسرق
dead (adj)	ميّت	sail (ed) (v)	يُبحر
direction (n)	اتجاه	secret (n - adj)	سر - سِرّي
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	servant (n)	خادم
head (n)	رئيس - قائد	the rest (n)	الباقي
include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن - يُضمّن	treasure (n)	كنز

Words and their definitions

- **clue** : an object or a piece of information that helps to solve a crime مفتاح لحل اللغز
- **crew** : all the people who work on a ship or a plane طاقم سفينة / طائرة
- **escape** : succeed in leaving a place when someone or something is trying to stop you يهرب
- **head** : the most important person in an organisation رئيس / قائد
- **magistrate** : someone who decides if a person is guilty of less serious crimes in a court قاضي / محقق
- **rob** : steal something from a person, shop ... etc. يسرق / يسلب
- **servant** : someone whose job is to live in another person's house and do jobs for them, such as cleaning خادم

Before You read

- What do you think will happen next in the story ?

I could see the road from where we were hiding, and soon I saw eight men. One of them was the blind man. I saw them walk down the road to the Admiral Benbow Inn. They were surprised to see that the door was open, then they all ran inside. I heard someone shout, "Bill's dead!"

"Go and find his box," said the blind man.

A little later, a window opened from the Captain's bedroom and a man **called out**[1], "Someone has opened the box!"

"Is it there?" said the blind man.

"Only the money is there," replied the man.

"It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. "Let's find them!" The men started to look around the house.

"If you find it you'll all be rich!" said the blind man.

At this time, we heard horses coming down the road. When the men heard the horses, they started to run in all **directions**[2].

(1) نادى
(2) اتجاهات
(3) البقية
(4) شعر بتحسن
(5) هرب
(6) رئيس الشرطة
(7) رجل قضاء / محقق



The horses arrived, so I ran out to see who was riding them. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesey, and **the rest**[3] were policemen. Two men took my mother to the village, where she soon **felt better**[4], and the others tried to catch the men. But it was too late: we heard that they **escaped**[5] on a boat.

I returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police.

"What did they want?" said Mr Dance, **the head of the police**[6].

"I think that they wanted this," I said, showing him the papers that I still had in my jacket. "I'd like to take them to Dr Livesey."

"That's a good idea," said Mr Dance. "He's a **magistrate**[7] as well as a doctor. He'll know what to do. I'll come with you."

We found that Dr Livesey was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked us into his house. I showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesey the papers that the Captain had in his box.



"I think this might be a **clue**[8] as to where Flint **buried**[9] his **treasure**!"[10] said Dr Livesey.

"That is why those men were not **interested in**[11] money," **agreed**[12] Mr Trelawney. "If you are right, we should take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure ourselves!"

"If Jim here agrees," said the doctor, looking at me, "we should look at these papers now."

The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to **describe**[13] the ships that the Captain and his men had **robbed**[14] of money. Then we looked at the other papers and saw a **map**[15] of an island, with a big **cross**[16] on it next to the words, "most of treasure here."

"Dr Livesey, we should go to Bristol tomorrow," said Mr Trelawney. "In a few days, we'll find the best ship in England. Jim Hawkins here can come as our ship's boy. You can be the ship's doctor."

"I agree," said the doctor, "but those men who tried to find the map will now be looking for us. We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know."

It took us longer than we thought to be **ready to leave**[17] England. While Mr Trelawney **prepared for**[18] the **journey**[19] in Bristol, I stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that we might find.

(8) دليل / مفتاح اللغز
(9) دفن
(10) كنز
(11) مهتم بـ
(12) وافق
(13) يصف
(14) يسلب / يسرق
(15) خريطة
(16) علامة (X)
(17) مستعد للمغادرة
(18) جهز لـ
(19) رحلة (طويلة)
(20) طاقم السفينة
(21) يشمل / يتضمن
(22) طباخ جيد
(23) مثار بسبب
(24) فكرة
(25) يحافظ على سرية الأخبار
(26) يودع
(27) يبحر

One day, a letter was sent to me from Mr Trelawney. It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the Hispaniola for us. Trelawney said that he had found a **crew**[20] ready to work on it. The crew **included**[21] a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a **good cook**[22]. Silver also knew other men who would join us. Trelawney said that everyone was **excited by**[23] the **thought**[24] of the treasure. I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to **keep the news**[25] of the treasure a **secret**[25].

I was very excited by the thought of the journey and I went to **say goodbye**[26] to my mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. I was very sad to leave her the next day, when I travelled to Bristol with Redruth. We had just one night in the city before we were going to **sail**[27].

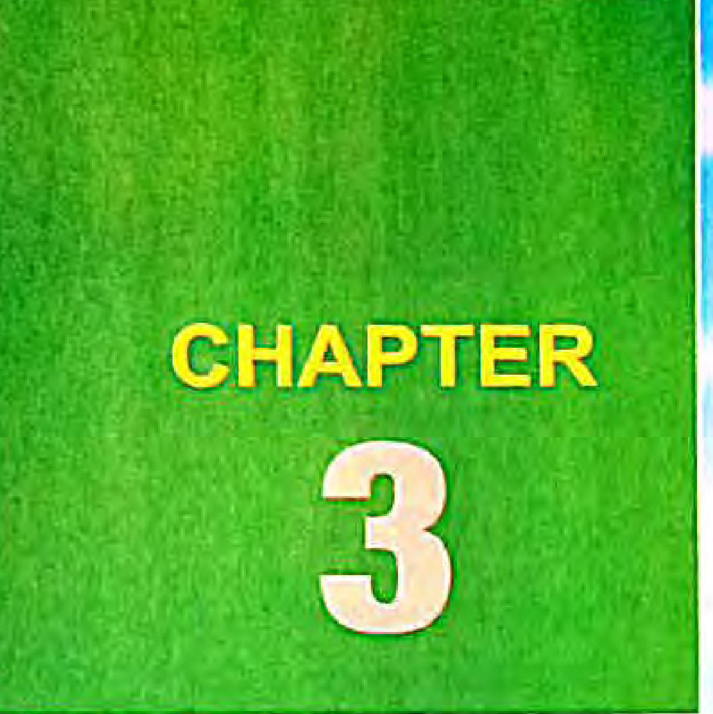
Check
your Understanding Chapter 2

Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think the blind man and the other men were thieves ? Why / Why not ?
2. Why do you think the men were surprised to see the door open ?
3. Jim examined the papers with Dr. Livesy. What do they conclude ?
4. After the papers being examined, what do you think the attackers were looking for ? Why ?
5. "It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. What do you think the blind man mean by these words ?
6. Why did the men with the blind man start to run in all directions ?
7. What were the papers the Captain had in his box about ?

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There were .... men in addition to the blind man.
   a. four b. five c. six d. seven
2. The attackers escaped when they saw ....
   a. Jim and his mother
   b. the villagers
   c. the policemen
   d. Dr. Livesy and Bill
3. .... prepared for the journey in Bristol.
   a. Dr Livesy b. Mr Trelawney c. Bill d. Black Dog
4. Jim and the other men needed a ship to ....
   a. run away from the attackers
   b. chase the attackers as they killed Bill
   c. to look for the treasure
   d. to help Dr livesy escape abroad
5. After reading the papers, Jim and Dr Livesy knew that the Captain was just a/an ....
   a. pirate b. expert c. traveller d. activist





VOCABULARY

attack (ed) (n - v)	يهاجم - هجوم	mutiny (n)	تمرُّد / عِصيان
barrel (n)	برميل (خشبي)	note (n)	ملاحظة - رسالة
crutch (n)	عُكّاز - زكيزة	of different sizes	قصيرة
destination (n)	مقصد - وجهة	parrot (n)	ذو احجام مُختلفة
empty (ied) (n - v)	السفر	patient (adj - n)	ببغاء
finger (n)	فارغ - يُفرّغ	pay – paid (for) (v)	صبور - مريض
frightened (adj)	إصبع اليد	pirate (n)	يدفع ثمن
gang (n)	خائف	reach (ed) (v)	قُرصان
harbour (n)	عصابة	return (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
helper (n)	مَرْسَى - ميناء	safe (adj)	يعود - يُعيد
journey (n)	مُساعد	sailor (n)	آمِن - في أمان
lose a leg	رحلة	save (d) (v)	بَحّار
make me laugh	يفقد إحدى ساقيه	secret (n - adj)	يُنقذ - يدّخر
	يجعلني أضحك		سر - سِرّي

Words and their definitions

- **harbour** : an area of water next to the land where ships can stay safty ميناء
- **mutiny** : when a group of people refuse to obey the person in charge of them and take control for themselves تمرد
- **crutch** : a special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk when you have hurt your leg عكاز

parrot	: a brightly coloured bird which can learn to speak	ببغاء
barrel	: a large container made of wood	برميل
pirate	: a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them	قرصان
gang	: a group of people that causes trouble	عصابة
secret	: known about by only a few people and kept from others	سر
patient	: able to wait calmly for a long time	صبور
attack	: an act of violence that is intended to hurt a person or damage a place	هجوم

Before You read

- What do you think life is like on the Hispaniola ?

The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked me to take **a note**[1] to Long John Silver. I went to the inn which Silver owned. It was **full of**[2] people, but I soon saw a tall, strong man with one leg. He looked very happy and seemed to know all of the people there. I walked up to him and gave him the note. When he saw that it was from Mr Trelawney, he looked surprised and said, "Ah, you must be the new ship's boy!"

At that moment, one of the men in the inn quickly left the room. I saw that he had three fingers on one hand.

"It's Black Dog!" I called. "Stop him!"

"Yes, stop him! He did not **pay for**[3] his food!" called Silver to one of his **helpers**[4]. The helper ran out of the door.

"Do you know that man? Black Dog, is it?" Silver asked me.

"Yes, he was one of the men who **attacked**[5] my home. Did Mr Trelawney tell you about that?" I replied. "Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

"The blind man is called Pew," I said. "He was with Black Dog when they attacked."

"Then we must catch them both," said Silver. However, the helper returned and said he could not catch Black Dog.

"Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver.

We walked back along the **harbour**[6] past boats of **different sizes**[7], all preparing to go to sea. Silver told me all about the boats and I knew that he was a great sailor.

(1) ملاحظة
(2) ملئ بـ
(3) يدفع لـ
(4) مساعدين
(5) هاجم
(6) ميناء (الرسو السفن)
(7) احجام مختلفة



We found Dr Livesey with Mr Trelawney when we returned to his hotel, and told them about Black Dog.

"There is nothing we can do now," said Mr Trelawney. "We leave at four o'clock this afternoon. Get your hat, Jim, we'll go on the ship now," he said to me.

It took some time to reach the Hispaniola. When we walked onto the big ship, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see us.

"What's the problem?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said. "Why not?" asked Dr Livesey.

"I was told that the **destination**(8) of the journey was a secret," he explained. "But the crew tell me we're looking for treasure. I know that looking for treasure always means danger. And when I go on a journey, I like to be able to choose my own crew."

(8) وجهة (السفر)
(9) تمرد / عصيان
(10) يحافظ على سلامتك
(11) دعامة / عكاز
(12) ببغاء
(13) جعلني اضحك

"Don't you like the crew we chose?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"If I sail with them, I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns with you. And don't show anyone the map," said Smollett.

"Are you worried there will be a **mutiny**(9)?" asked Dr Livesey.

"I don't like the men on the ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said.

"Why not ?" asked Dr Livesey.

"It's my job to **keep you safe**(10), that's all,' said Smollett, and walked to another part of the ship.

"I think you've two good men on the ship," said Dr Livesey. "That's Long John Silver and Captain Smollett."

"I know Long John Silver is a good man," said Mr Trelawney, "but I don't think Captain Smollett is." I agreed with Mr Trelawney. I did not like Captain Smollett.

The Hispaniola finally left Bristol and our long journey began. Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only **a crutch**(11). All the men liked him and he was a good cook, his kitchen always clean. When he wasn't working, he looked after his **parrot**(12). He called it Captain Flint and said it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk, too, which always **made me laugh**(13).

One night, before I went to bed, I decided to eat an apple. The apples were kept in a big **barrel**[14] which I climbed inside, because it was nearly **empty**[15]. Before I left the barrel, I heard a man talking **nearby**[16]. It was Silver and what he said was terrible.

(14) برميل
(15) فارغ
(16) قريب / مجاور
(17) صبور
(18) ميت
(19) قرصان
(20) عصابة
(21) أرض / يابسة

"On that journey, Flint was the captain," he said. "It was then that I lost my leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, I put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew are on this ship today."

"You won't be able to return to Bristol after this journey," said another sailor called Dick. "What will happen to your inn?"



"I've sold it," said Silver. "My wife has the money and is waiting for me to return in a secret place. And after this journey, you'll have lots of money, too."

Another man joined them and said, "I'm tired of waiting. When can we attack Captain Smollett?"

"You must be **patient**[17]," said Silver. "Trelawney has the map, so we wait until they have found the treasure. We might also want Smollett to take us home before we attack."

"We shouldn't wait that long," replied another sailor.

"You're like the others," said Silver. "You want to do things quickly. That's what Pew and Flint wanted to do. What happened to them? Pew is blind and Flint is **dead**[18]."

I began to realise that Silver was not only a cook, but he was also a **pirate**[19], and the other crew were part of his **gang**[20].

"No, we wait," continued Silver. "When the time is right, I'll kill Trelawney and his friends! Now, Dick, can you get me an apple?"

When I heard these words, I was very frightened. However, before Dick came to the barrel, I heard another sailor call out: "I can see **land**![21]"

It was this news that saved me, because the sailors now all forgot about apples. We were near the Treasure Island.

Check
your Understanding Chapter 3

Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think Mr Trelawney sent a note to Silver ?
2. Do you think Long John Silver was truthful when he said that Black Dog didn't pay for his food ? Why / Why not ?
3. Silver's speech with Jim proved that he was a good sailor. How do you think so ?
4. Smollett was a wise man. Do you agree ? Why / Why not ?
5. Silver managed to deceive Mr Trelawney, Dr Livesy and Jim. To what extent is this sentence correct ?
6. How did Jim know the man was "Black Dog" ?
7. What did Jim discover when he went to get an apple ?

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Trelawney asked Jim to .... to Long John Silver.
   a. take a note b. bring an apple c. find a ship d. get a crutch
2. At Silver's inn, Jim saw ....
   a. the blind man b. Black Dog c. Smollett d. Pew
3. To reach the treasure island, Mr Trelawney hired a big ship called ....
   a. Captain Smollett b. Pew
   c. Captain Flint d. the Hispaniola
4. During the journey, Silver was very ....
   a. active b. lazy c. stubborn d. persuasive
5. Captain Flint was a name given to ....
   a. the blind man b. a strong blind man
   c. Silver's parrot d. a big ship





VOCABULARY

as usual	كالمعتاد	hurt - hurt (v)	يُؤذي - مُصاب
blow a whistle	يُطلق صافرة	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
branch (n)	فرع - غُصن	low (adj)	مُنخفض
climb (ed) (v)	يتسلق	mark (ed) (v)	يُحدّد - يُميّز
climb out of	يتسلق خارجاً من	marked (adj)	مُحدّد
close (to)	قريب - لصيق	mistake (n)	خطأ
coast (n)	ساحل	organise (d) (v)	يُنظّم
count (ed) (v)	يَعد - يُحصي	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخي
disease (n)	مرض	rocky (adj)	صخري
excited (adj)	مُثار - سعيد	shore (n)	شاطئ
expression (n)	تعبيرات الوجه	shout (ed) (n - v)	صرخة - يصرخ
fight -fought (v)	يقاتل - يتشاجر	surprised (adj)	مُندهش
forever (adv)	للأبد	thought (n)	فكرة
hill (n)	تَل	trust(ed) (n - v)	يثق - الثقة
hold onto - held (v)	يتشبث بـ	whistle(d) (n - v)	صفّارة - يُصفّر

Words and their definitions

- **branch** : a part of a tree that grows out from the trunk فرع شجرة
- **disease** : an illness which affects a person, animal or plant مرض
- **shore** : the land along the edge of a large area of water such as a sea, an ocean or a lake شاطئ

CHAPTER 4

- **trust** : to believe that someone is honest or will not do anything bad or wrong يثق بـ
- **whistle** : a small object that produces a high whistling sound when you blow into it صفارة

I heard people running to look at the island, and I quietly climbed out of the barrel. I then walked up to join the sailors at the **side of**[1] the ship. We could see two **low hills**[2] and one big one. The island was now very **close**[3].

"I've been here before," said Silver. "I know where the ship should stop."

"I have a map here," said Captain Smollett. "Can you take us to that place?"

I saw that Silver was excited to take the map, but it was not the one with the treasure **marked**[4] on it. "Yes, I can see it. You must go here," he said, pointing to a place on the map.

Then he turned to me and said, "You'll love this island. You can swim and climb trees and walk up the hills!"

I **smiled**[5] at Silver, but inside I was very frightened of him now. I could not **trust**[6] anything that he said. I soon found Dr Livesey and quietly said to him, "I must speak to you, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. I have some **terrible news**[7]."

(1) على جانب
(2) تلال منخفضة
(3) قريب
(4) ملحوظ / لديه علامة
(5) يبتسم
(6) يثق بـ
(7) أخبار سيئة
(8) تعبير (الوجه)
(9) توقع
(10) في الحال



Dr Livesey's **expression**[8] did not change. He asked me to find his glasses downstairs and walked off to talk to Mr Trelawney and Smollett.

I waited downstairs and soon the three men joined me. "What do you want to tell us?" asked Mr Trelawney.

I told them everything that I had heard in the barrel. When I finished talking, they thanked me. "Captain," said Mr Trelawney. "You were right and I was wrong. What shall we do?"

"I'm surprised too," said Captain Smollett. "They have worked hard and been a better crew than I **expected**[9]. Now we must continue. We can't go back, or they might attack us **immediately**[10]. I don't think that they will attack us until we find the treasure. Long John Silver did not find all of this crew, so some of the men are good men. We must wait, watch and attack them when they don't expect it."

"Jim can help us," said Dr Livesey. "The men all trust him. He can listen and find out who we can trust."

I did not like this thought. I counted the men that Silver did not find for the crew. There were seven from a crew of nineteen, and I was one of them.

The next morning, the Hispaniola stopped close to the island. There were many trees, and above the trees I saw the **rocky tops**[11] of the hills. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the **shore**[12]. It was very hot and very quiet. It **smelled like**[13] bad eggs.

"This place is only good for **diseases**[14]," said Silver.

The crew worked hard on our journey to the island, but now they did not seem to want to work. I remembered Dr Livesey talking about a mutiny. Perhaps it was near. Only Silver worked as hard **as usual**[15].

Later, Captain Smollett told us that he had a plan.

"Let's ask the men if they'd like to spend the afternoon on the island. If they go, we can take the ship. If they don't go, we know we need to fight them for the ship."

Mr Trelawney agreed. We decided to tell all the men we could trust about our plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett then told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to **relax**[16], if they wanted to.

"When you hear a gun at the end of the day, it'll be time to come back," he said.

All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go. Perhaps they thought that they could find the treasure immediately.

Captain Smollett asked Silver to **organise**[17] the men. Six men would stay on the Hispaniola and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. I realised that there were six of Silver's men on the ship. The men in our group would not be able to take the ship, so I decided I would go with Silver onto the island. I got on one of the boats quietly, but Silver saw me. Had I made a big **mistake**[18]?

The boat I was in was fast, and we were nearly on the beach first when I held onto the **branch**[19] of a tree and jumped out of the boat. I heard someone calling me, but I did not listen and began to run as fast as I could.

(11) قمم صخرية
(12) شاطئ / البحر
(13) رائحتها مثل
(14) الأمراض
(15) كالمعتاد
(16) يسترخي / يستريح
(17) ينظم
(18) خطأ
(19) فرع (شجرة)



When I stopped, I felt happy. Silver did not know where I was. This part of the island was open, with just a few trees. I could see the hills in front of me. As I walked, I saw pretty flowers, snakes and small birds.

Suddenly a cloud of birds flew into the sky and knew that something was coming towards me. I was correct, because I then heard people talking. I decided to hide behind some trees.

I realised that one of the people was Silver, but I could not hear what he was saying. Soon the birds returned, and I knew that the men had gone. I told myself that it was my job to find out what these men were planning to do. So I decided to follow them, without them seeing me. After a few minutes, I saw Silver and another sailor talking near a beach.

"I want you to join us, Tom, because I know you're a good sailor. I'm telling you this to save you!" said Silver.

"Silver," Tom replied, "you're a good man and you shouldn't work with these pirates. I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them!"

I knew then that here was a man that we could trust. Then came news of another. I suddenly heard a terrible shout, then all was quiet.

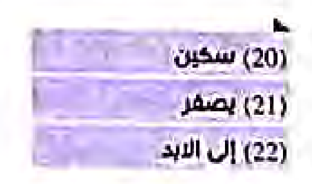
"What was that?" asked Tom.

Silver smiled and said "That? Oh, I think that was Alan."

"Alan!" cried Tom. "He's a good man. If your men have hurt him, then you are no friend of mine. I won't help you!"

Tom began to walk away from Silver along the beach. Silver suddenly threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit him hard on the back.
He fell to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a **knife**[20].

Silver now **blew a whistle**[21] and I knew that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. I was very frightened. I walked quietly back into the trees, then ran as quickly as I could.


(20) سكين
(21) يصفر
(22) إلى الأبد

As I ran, I began to think. What could I do now?
When we heard Captain Smollett's gun, could I go back to the beach to be with these men? If I did, I knew that they would kill me. I would have to stay on the island **forever**[22].

Check
your Understanding Chapter 4

Answer the following questions :

1. Smollett's point of view became true and Mr Trelawney admitted that. Explain.
2. Although Smollett gave Silver the map of the island, Silver couldn't reach the treasure. Explain why ?
3. Smollett didn't like the crew of the ship, but he was surprised to know the truth. Why do you think so ?
4. Despite knowing that Silver and his friends were pirates, Jim and his friends couldn't tell them or go back. To what extent is this sentence correct ? Why ?
5. Silver dealt with Jim as a little boy, but Dr Livesy had another point of view. Illustrate.
6. According to Silver, what can Jim do on the island ?
7. What was Captain Smollett's plan to test the crew ?

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When Jim got out of the barrel, he saw that the desert was very ....
   a. away b. close c. fascinating d. frightening
2. Silver was .... when he took the map.
   a. excited b. annoyed c. stressed d. confused
3. When Jim told his friends the information he knew about Silver, they were .... to him.
   a. unkind b. cruel c. unhelpful d. grateful
4. Dr Livesy asked Jim to help them in their plan because all men .... him.
   a. disliked b. were afraid of c. trusted d. ignored
5. When they reached the island, all the crew had worked hard and it seemed that a/an .... was near.
   a. crutch b. mutiny c. incident d. entrance



VOCABULARY

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
allow(ed) (v)	يسمح بـ	interested (adj)	مهتم
believe (d) (v)	يُصدِّق - يُؤمن	kneel down - knelt (v)	يركع
bottom (n)	أسفل / سفح - قاع	leader (n)	قائد
burn – burned / burnt (v)	يحرق - يحترق	on your own	بمفردك
crazy (adj)	مجنون	prefer (red) (v)	يُفضّل
dark (n - adj)	الظلام - مُظلم	realise (d) (v)	يُدرك - يفهم
different (adj)	مُختلف	reply (ied) (v)	يرد - يجيب
directions (n)	اتجاهات	sail (ed) (n - v)	شِراع المركب - يبحر
dry (adj)	جاف / خشن	skin (n)	الجلد
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح - يُفسِّر	spade (n)	جاروف
fight - fought (v)	يقاتل	start (ed) (n - v)	بداية - يبدأ
flag (n)	عَلَم - راية	voice (n)	صوت انسان
fresh (adj)	مُنعش	worry (ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق

Words and their definitions

- **crazy** : unwell in your mind — مجنون
- **sail** : a piece of material used to control wind power on a ship or a boat — شراع
- **leader** : the person who controls other people — قائد
- **fight** : to hit, kick or fire guns at other people — يقاتل

I finally stopped running and saw that I was **close to**[1] the bottom of one of the small hills. The air was **fresher**[2] here and the trees were taller. Suddenly, from up the hill, something jumped behind a tree. I did not know if it was a man or an animal but it looked big and dangerous.

I decided to walk back towards the beach, but then I saw him again. I realised it was a man, but he was running very fast from tree to tree. I remembered that I had a gun and this made me **feel safer**[3]. I decided to walk towards the man.

(1) قريب من
(2) أكثر نقاءً
(3) يشعر أكثر أمانا
(4) دهشة
(5) يركع
(6) صوت جاف
(7) محترق من الشمس
(8) أشرعة السفن
(9) يحلم بـ
(10) يصدق / يعتقد
(11) قائد

When he saw me walking towards him, to my **surprise**[4], he came out from behind the tree and **knelt down**[5] in front of me. "Who are you?" I asked.

"Ben Gun," he said in a **dry voice**[6]. "I've not spoken to anyone for three years."

The man had very long hair and skin that was **burned by the sun**[7]. His clothes were dirty and made of old **sails**[8].

"What happened to you?" I asked.

"I was left here by a ship," he said. "I've lived on fish and fruit ever since. I **dream of**[9] eating good food again."

"If I can get back to my ship, I'll give you bread and cheese," I said.

He began to look worried. "If you can get back to your ship?! Why? What's to stop you?" he said. "It isn't a problem with you," I replied.

"I'm a good man," he told me. "I'm very rich, too!" he said in a quiet voice.

I began to think that perhaps Ben Gun was crazy. Ben Gun saw that I did not **believe him**[10].

"I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. Then he looked worried and said, "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?"

I realised now that this man could help me.

"No, Flint's dead, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. That is not good for any of us." I told him. "Is there a man with one leg?" he asked.

"Yes, Silver. He's the cook and their **leader**[11]," I explained.

"If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said.



I decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested.

"You're a good boy," he said at the end. "Don't worry, you can trust me. Do you think that Trelawney would give me money and **allow**[12] me to come home on the ship if I helped him?" he asked.

"Of course," I replied. "And he'll need your help on the ship home, I'm sure."

"You're right," he said. "You know, I was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure here. He was with six men and they were on the island for about a week. We waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship **on his own**[13]. The other six men were dead. We don't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Long John Silver were with me on the ship. They asked Flint where the treasure was. 'You can go on the island and look for it,' he said. 'But you'll be there on your own. I'm taking this ship home.'



"Three years ago, I was on a different ship. When we saw the island, I told our crew that Flint's treasure was on it. We spent twelve days looking for it. They were not happy when we found nothing. One day, they went back to the ship and told me I could stay. 'Here's a gun and a **spade**[14]. You can look for the treasure on your own!' they said. So, you tell Trelawney, I would prefer to work for a man I can trust like him, than with a group of pirates."

"I'll tell him, but how can I return to my ship from here?" I asked him.

"I have a boat. I made it myself. We could go to the ship when it's dark!"

Suddenly, we heard the sound of a gun.

"They have started to fight," I said. "We must be quick!"

I began to run back with Ben. He gave me directions, and ran easily next to me.

We heard more guns, then I saw a flag flying above some trees.

(12) يسمح
(13) بمفرده
(14) جاروف

Check
your Understanding Chapter 5

Answer the following questions :

1. The man Jim saw on the island was different in his movement. How do you think so ?
2. Despite being afraid of the man on the island, Jim came closer to him. Why do you think so ?
3. Ben Gun's appearance was frightening, but he was a friendly man. Do you agree or not ? Why ?
4. Do you think Ben Gun loves Silver and would help him ? Why / Why not ?
5. "I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. What can you infer from these words ?
6. Describe "Ben Gun".
7. What agreement did Jim have with Gun ? (SB)

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When Jim stopped running, he was in different place as ....
   a. the air was more polluted
   b. the trees were smaller
   c. the air was fresher
   d. the rocks were bigger
2. Ben Gun lived on the island alone for ....
   a. two years
   b. two months
   c. four months
   d. three years
3. Jim was afraid of Ben Gun. However, Ben Gun ....
   a. knelt in front of Jim
   b. had long hair
   c. ate fruits only
   d. was violent to him
4. .... was the name of the ship on which Ben Gun waited for Flint and his men.
   a. Captain Flint
   b. the Hispaniola
   c. the Walrus
   d. the Admiral Benbow
5. Ben Gun told Jim that he would like to work for ....
   a. Silver
   b. Mr Trelawney
   c. Bill
   d. Black Dog





VOCABULARY

advantage (n)	ميزة	fire (ed) at (ed) (v)	يطلق النار علي
adventure (n)	مغامرة	fort (n)	حصن
alive (adj)	علي قيد الحياة	get to - got (v)	يصل إلي
arrival (n)	وصول	give ... an advantage	يمنح ميزة
attack(ed) (n - v)	هجوم - يهاجم	hit - hit (v)	يصيب - يضرب
blow – blew - blown (v)	تهب - ينفخ	pick(ed) up (v)	يتناول - يلتقط
		prevent(ed) (v)	يمنع
cannon (n)	مدفع	put up a flag	يرفع علم
contact (ed) (n - v)	اتصال - يتصل بـ	race (n)	سباق
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	sink – sank - sunk (v)	يغوص - يغطس
diary (n)	مفكرة يومية	supplies (n)	مؤن
entry (n)	مُدخَل مقدمة	well-defended (adj)	حصين - منيع
fire (ed) a gun	يطلق النار من بندقية	wind (n)	الرياح

Words and their definitions

- **cannon** : a large gun with wheels — مدفع
- **contact** : communicate with someone or something — يتواصل مع
- **defend** : protect someone or something from being attacked — يدافع عن
- **supplies**: food, clothes etc. that you need to take with you for a period of time — مؤن / تجهيزات

Dr Livesey :

When the boats went to the shore, I talked to Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. There was no wind at all, so we knew we could not take the ship, even if we wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with us. Then we heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. We were very worried about him.

I decided to take a boat to the shore with another man we could trust, called Hunter. When we reached the island, we walked a little way and then we found a small **fort**[1]. It was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very **well defended**[2]. It also had water. Then I heard a shout. I thought that Jim was dead.

(1) حصن / قلعة
(2) محصنة جيدا
(3) خطة
(4) يتصل بـ
(5) ميزة
(6) أسلحة
(7) إمدادات / مؤن / ذخائر
(8) يمنع
(9) غرق
(10) تهب الرياح

We ran back to the boat and soon returned to the Hispaniola. I told Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney my **plan**[3]. We quickly put food, medicines and guns in the boat.

At the same time, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney said to Silver's men who were still on the ship, "We have guns. If you try to **contact**[4] Silver, you will be dead."

They looked very surprised.

I then took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. We quickly took everything up to the fort, then I left Hunter and Joyce in the fort and returned to the Hispaniola.

We knew that Silver had more men than us, but we also knew that none of them had guns. We thought that this gave us an **advantage**[5]. On the Hispaniola, Trelawney helped me to put food and more **weapons**[6] into the boat. Then we called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with us.

Our journey back to the island was more difficult than the others. There were more people and **supplies**[7] now, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. We had to be very careful to **prevent**[8] the boat from **sinking**[9]. The **wind blew**[10] from a different direction, too, and we were not moving towards the beach near the fort.



"We'll never get to the beach!" I said.

"We must **keep in this direction**[11]," said Captain Smollett. "Work hard, be patient, and we will arrive." Then his voice changed. "The **cannon**[12]!" he called.

I looked round and realised that the men we left on the Hispaniola were preparing a cannon. We were moving so slowly that we were not far from the ship. It would be easy for them to hit us.

Trelawney stood up with a gun and **fired at**[13] the pirates, and one of them fell.

We heard a cry from the ship, and another from the beach. We saw that the other pirates were getting into their boats.

(11) يستمر في هذا الاتجاه
(12) مدفع
(13) اطلق النار على
(14) سباق / عدو
(15) اقدام (مسافة)
(16) متضمنا / مشتملا
(17) يصل إلى

"Go as fast as you can," said Captain Smollet. "If we don't get to the beach, we're finished."

"They are only using one boat" I said. "The other men are walking to the beach to wait for us." "It's a long way for them to run," said Captain Smollett. "It's a **race**[14] to get there first."

We moved fast, and the wind was not so strong near the beach. However, Trelawney fired his gun again which made us all move to one side of the boat. It started to sink, but we were in just three **feet**[15] of water. It was not difficult to walk to the beach, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, **including**[16] some of our guns.



There were now voices in the trees and we knew that the pirates were near. We had to **get to**[17] the fort before the pirates got to the beach. We all ran as fast as possible and at last we saw the fort in front of us. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it. The pirates looked surprised to see the fort and stopped. This gave us time to fire our guns, and they quickly turned and ran into the trees behind them.

Before we could enter the fort, we heard another **gun fire**[18], and poor Redruth fell down. We quickly **picked** him **up**[19] and took him into the fort, but it was too late: he was dead. Trelawney was very sad. Redruth had been a good **servant**[20] to him.

Captain Smollett **put up a flag**[21] inside the fort and counted the supplies, then he asked me, "How long will we have to spend on this island?"

(18) إطلاق النار
(19) يلتقط
(20) خادم
(21) يرفع (العلم)
(22) ينزله / يخفض (العلم)

"In England, I told Blandly that if we were not back by August, to come and find us," I explained.

"We need the supplies that were lost in the sea," said Captain Smollett. "Without them, we have enough supplies until July only."

At that moment, we heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit.



"They can see the flag," said Trelawney. "We should **take it down**[22]."

"No!" said Captain Smollett. "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!"

The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort.

Just then, we heard someone calling.

"Doctor! Mr Trelawney! Captain! Are you there?"

I ran to the door of the fort and I found Jim Hawkins, safe and alive!

Check
your Understanding Chapter 6

Answer the following questions

1. Why do you think Dr Livsey took a boat to the shore ?
2. Why do you think Silver's men who were on the ship looked surprised when they knew that Captain Smollett and his friends had guns ?
3. Why do you think Dr Livesy and his friends told Silver's men on the ship that they had guns ?
4. Dr Livsey's journey to the beach was easier in the first time than in the second one. Explain.
5. To reach the beach quickly, Dr Livsey and his friends lost some of their supplies. How do you think that would affect them ?
6. What did Jim, the Captain and Mr Trelawney take from the ship ?
7. What happend when their boat sank ?

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Captain Smollett's friends couldn't take the ship because ....
   a. they weren't clever sailors　　b. there was no wind
   c. They don't have any oars　　d. they were very ill
2. Accidentally, Dr Livsey found .... on the shore.
   a. a lot of supplies　　b. two guns
   c. a big boat　　d. a small fort
3. Dr Livsey and his friends wanted to stay at the fort because it was ....
   a. well-defended　　b. very big
   c. admired by Silver　　d. well-known for them
4. Although Captain Smollett and his friends had guns, they wanted to hide in the fort because ....
   a. Silver had more men than them　　b. Silver took the ship from them
   c. it was cold and windy on the island　　d. they didn't have a place to stay in
5. Dr Livsey and his friends had guns, however, Silver's men on the ship had ....
   a. a big fort　　b. more food　　c. a cannon　　d. two boats

Answers of Advanced level

Unit (1)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. in
2. d. The environment
3. c. crowded
4. d. leaning
5. c. spice

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. on
2. c. While
3. c. enjoyed
4. a. tell
5. d. While being taken

Unit (2)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. community
2. a. satisfy
3. d. anonymous
4. a. long term

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. smokes
2. c. doesn't any longer
3. b. no longer is
4. d. hadn't wasted
5. a. Rarely do I go

Unit (3)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. associated
2. b. Live
3. a. culture
4. d. experience
5. d. a job

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. since
2. c. since
3. c.
4. c.
5. d.

Unit (4)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. highlight
2. d. nursery
3. b. nurse
4. c. policed
5. c. connect

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. papers
2. d. themselves
3. a. much
4. a. no article
5. b. much work

Unit (5)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. application
2. d. click
3. c. communicates
4. d. the internet
5. c. secure

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. won't stay
2. b. am seeing
3. c. won't listen
4. b. are being
5. d. will come

Unit (6)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. walk
2. b. plots
3. b. In
4. b. favours
5. d. plot

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. watching
2. a. have
3. b. smoking
4. d. would rather not
5. b. to rain







QUESTION BANK

بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية طبقًا لنواتج التعلم

للصف الأول الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

1st Sec.

2024

FIRST TERM

عام - أزهرى

CONTENTS



PART ONE | Follow your progress in vocabulary

تابع مستواك فى إتقان المفردات اللغوية

Unit 1

Model A

Lessons 1 & 2

....	حماية البيئة - صيانة	isolated (adj)	....
....	من أنصار حماية البيئة	lean - leaned / leant (v)	....
....	النظام البنى	material (n - adj)	....
....	السياحة البيئية	spicy (adj)	....
....	سائح فراعى للبيئة	sustainable (adj)	....
....	مُعرّض للخطر - مُهدَّد بالانقراض	swell - swelled -	....
....	البيئة	swollen (up) (v)	....

Lessons 3 & 4

....	نشيط	noisy (adj)	....
....	قديم - عتيق	over the moon	....
....	جميل	old (adj)	....
....	فمل	peace (n)	....
....	مشغول - مزدحم	peaceful (adj)	....
....	هادئ - ساكن	pros and cons	....
....	مُزدحم	quiet (n - adj)	....

Model B

Lessons 1 & 2

....	من الناحية البيئية	trek(ked) (n - v)	....
....	تأثير - أثر - يؤثر	including (prep)	....
....	يَغزل	unique (adj)	....
....	عام - شعبى	orangutan	....
....	داخل	annoyed	....
....	عوامل الجذب	historic	....
....	متفهم - مراعى لـ	dragon	....

Lessons 3 & 4

....	مثير	relax(ed) (v)	....
....	غريب / نادر - أجلي	relaxing (adj)	....
....	جديد	stuck (adj)	....
....	أحد المعالم	adventure	....
....	جميل - خلاب	resort	....
....	بلوفع	paradise	....

Unit 2

Model A

Lessons 1 & 2

....	التبرّع	role model(n)	....
....	متبرّع	model(n)	....
....	كريم - سخي	speed(n)	....
....	ذكاء	support(ed) (n - v)	....
....	نسبة الحديد في الدم	transplant(ed) (n - v)	....
....	جمعية خيرية	nickname	....

Lessons 3 & 4

....	عالم أحياء	party(n)	....
....	الماشية	livestock(n)	....
....	المجتمع	monitor(ed) (v - n)	....
....	مشهور	organisation(n)	....
....	حارس	track(ed) (v - n)	....
....	فزق الصيد	aim (n)	....

Model B

Lessons 1 & 2

....	موافقة - الفاق	iron(ed) (n - v)	....
....	الدم	level(n)	....
....	التبرّع بالدم	long-term(adj)	....
....	ضغط الدم	pressure(n)	....
....	رغبة - يرعب	prestige (n - adj)	....
....	يتبرع	roar(ed) (n - v)	....

Lessons 3 & 4

....	مفقود	achievement	....
....	تعاطف	aim	....
....	يقدر - يفترض	expert	....
....	مركز القيادة - الفرع الرئيسي	hunting	....

Unit 3

Model A

Lessons 1 & 2

....	مذهل - رائع جدًا	owe(d) (v)	....
....	دَين (مديونية)	plump(adj)	....
....	يكسب - يجني مال	prison(n)	....
....	تاجر	rat(n)	....
....	تعيس - بائس	terrible(adj)	....

Lessons 3 & 4

....	جمعية - اتحاد	plan(ned) (v)	....
....	مُجْتمع - جماعة	voluntary work	....
....	الثقافة	youth (n)	....
....	بنك الطعام	youth association	....

Model B

Lessons 1 & 2

....	يستحق - يساوي	character	....
....	مقتطف / اقتباس	childhood	....
....	يبدو عليه التعب	entertainment	....
....	مدرسة ثانوية	realise	....
....	فرصة	reward	....

Lessons 3 & 4

....	يشمل / يتضمن	disabled	....
....	يمر بتجربة	dreamer	....
....	يتحسن / يحسن	stepfather	....
....	يستثير الفكر	trust	....

PART 1

Unit 6

Model A

Lessons 1 & 2

	الكشمش (أحد أصناف العنب	lock(ed) (n - v)	....
....	الخالي من البذر)	novel(n)	....
....	صف	plot(n)	....
....	صف من نبات الكشمش	plot (ted) (v)	....
....	يحفر - يغرس	poem(n)	....
....	الخضي	poet(n)	....
....	فقشي - ممر	poetry(n)	....
....	يسير على الطريق الممهد بالحصي	literature (n)	....
....	تبن / قش		

Lessons 3 & 4

....	نور الشمعة	line(n)	....
....	تباين / اختلاف	rhyme(d) (n - v)	....
....	يوضح التباين	rhythm(n)	....
....	بستان	variety(n)	....
....	بستاني (جنايني)	issue (n)	....

Model B

Lessons 1 & 2

....	حالة - قضية	pirate	....
....	معروف - إحسان	publish	....
....	ذو دوام كامل	discussion	....
....	يخطف	request (ed) (v/n)	....
....	تبن - قش	treasure	....

Lessons 3 & 4

....	عادل	grown up	....
....	مختصر	narrate (d) (v)	....
....	يخصص - يكرس	author	....
....	قفزة - يقفز	determine	....
	فقرة شعرية	summary	

A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط

DAYS 1 & 2

General Revision on Units

مراجعة عامة على وحدات المنهج



1. General Revision on Vocabulary (each two units) followed by Exercise for Practice.

   مراجعة على المفردات اللغوية لكل وحدتين على حدة متبوعة بتمارين للتدريب

2. General Revision on Structures (each two units) followed by Exercise for practice.

   مراجعة على التراكيب اللغوية لكل وحدتين على حدة متبوعة بتمارين للتدريب

DAY 3



1. Reading Comprehension

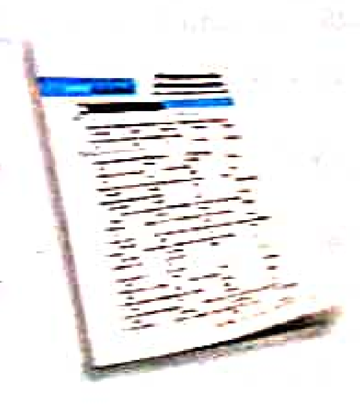
   تدرب على كل قطع الفهم من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة

2. Translation تدرب على كل نماذج الترجمة من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة

3. Writing (Related written essay models)

   نماذج مجابة للمقالات المرتبطة بموضوعات القراءة

DAYS 4, 5, 6 & 7



1. Al Azhar Exams & An exam for Inclusive students.

   اختبارات الأزهر الشريف واختبار لطلاب الدمج

2. 19 Model Exams from different governorates.

   تسعة عشر اختبارًا من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة

DAYS 1&2 General Revision on Units

General Revision on Vocabulary & Structures of each two units

1 General Revision On Vocabulary Units 1&2

Key vocabulary

Unit 1

ancient(n)	قديم - عتيق	over the moon	سعيد جداً
conservation(n)	الصيانة - حماية البيئة	peace(n)	السلام - السكينة
conservationist(n)	المحافظ على البيئة	peaceful(adj)	هادئ / ذو سكينة
coral reefs / corals(n)	الشعاب المرجانية	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
crowded(adj)	مزدحم	relaxing(adj)	مريح
ecosystem(n)	النظام البيئي	spice(d) (v)	يُتبّل (يضع توابل)
ecotourism(n)	السياحة البيئية	spices(n)	توابل
ecotourist(n)	سائح مُراعٍ للبيئة	spicy(adj)	حِرّيف - حار - متبّل بالبهارات
endangered(adj)	مُعرّض للخطر	stuck(adj)	عالق / محشور - ملتصق
environment(n)	البيئة	sustain(ed) (v)	يحافظ على - يُبقي
environmentally(adv)	من الناحية البيئية	sustainable(adj)	دائم - صديق للبيئة
exotic(adj)	غريب - أجنبي	swell - swelled - swollen (up) (v)	يتورّم - يتضخّم - يتزايد
impact(ed) (n-v)	أثر - يؤثر	trek(ked) (v - n)	يسير لمسافة طويلة - رحلة طويلة سيراً
isolated(adj)	بعيد - مُنعزل	unique(adj)	فريد - مميز
isolation (n)	عُزلة - انعزال	voluntary(adj)	تطوعي
lean - leaned / leant(v)	ينحني / يميل - يتكئ	volunteer(n)	مُتطوّع
loads of	الكثير من	voluntourist(n)	سائح مُتطوّع
material (n - adj)	مادة / غرض - مادي		
orangutan(n)	إنسان الغابة		

Unit 2

agreement(n)	عقد - اتفاق - موافقة	iron(ed) (n - v)	حديد - مكواة - يكوي
biologist(n)	عالم أحياء	level(n)	مستوى / نسبة
blood donation(n)	التبرّع بالدم	livestock(n)	حيوانات المزارع
blood pressure(n)	ضغط الدم	long-term(adj)	طويل المدى
blood(n)	الدم	model(n)	نموذج
cattle(n)	الماشية	monitor(ed) (v - n)	يُراقب / يرصد - جهاز عرض
community(n)	المجتمع	organisation(n)	مؤسسة - مُنظمة
compassion(n)	رأفة / رحمة	party(n)	فريق / جماعة / حزب
donate(d) (v)	يتبرع	pressure(n)	ضغط

donation(n)	التبرع	prestige (n - adj)	نفوذ / هيبة / وجاهة · عالي الجودة
donor(n)	متبرع		
famous(adj)	مشهور	roar(ed) (n - v)	يزأر · زئير
generous(adj)	كريم · سخي	role model(n)	قدوة / نموذج يُحتذى
guardian(n)	حارس · وصي	speed(n)	سرعة
hunting parties	فرق الصيد	track(ed) (v - n)	يرصد / يتابع · ممر
intelligent(adj)	ذكي	transplant(ed) (n - v)	نقل / زراعة أعضاء
iron level(n)	نسبة الحديد في الدم		ينقل / يزرع أعضاء

General Exercises On Vocabulary (Units 1&2)

○ Choose the Two correct answers out of the five options given :

1. We can't succeed without ....
   a. translation b. isolation c. collaboration d. exploration e. cooperation
2. I don't like this music because it is very noisy. The opposites of the word "noisy" are ....
   a. quite b. busy c. quiet d. unique e. calm
3. Mothers should .... their babies all the time.
   a. watch b. look c. see d. monitor e. donate
4. People around the world admire Mohamed Salah. The synonyms of "admire" are ....
   a. disapprove b. appreciate c. check d. praise e. donate

○ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5. The adjective .... describes something special or the only one.
   a. exotic b. sustainable c. unique d. material
6. There was a/an .... of people around the magician الساحر.
   a. crowd b. crowdedness c. overcrowding d. overcrowded
7. Fans usually .... to take selfies with football stars.
   a. crowd b. crowding c. crowds d. crowdedness
8. "Usual", "conventional" and "native" are antonyms of ....
   a. gigantic b. local c. national d. exotic
9. She .... out of the window to see what was going on يحدث in the street.
   a. isolated b. leant c. swelled d. developed
10. I refused to park my car next to the .... wall that looked as if it was going to fall.
    a. spicy b. voluntary c. leaning d. material
11. To solve the traffic problem, we have to .... new laws.
    a. protect b. break c. introduce d. do
12. You and I can finish this job quickly if we work ....
    a. isolated b. lonely c. together d. inactively
13. A / An .... is someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something.
    a. biologist b. guardian c. hunter d. admirer

14. Iron .... is the amount of iron stored in the body.
a. track b. organ c. tool d. level

15. "Domestic" is an antonym of the adjective ....
a. home b. tame c. wildlife d. wild

16. To ...., work hard to a plan.
a. successfully b. successful c. success d. succeed

17. To be ...., work hard to a plan.
a. successfully b. successful c. success d. succeed

18. To be a ...., work hard to a plan.
a. successfully b. successful c. success d. succeed

19. To achieve your goal ...., work hard to a plan.
a. successfully b. successful c. success d. succeed

20. Do you admire him .... his appearance المظهر or character?
a. of b. with c. to d. for

2 General Revision On Structures Units 1&2

1 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation : التكوين

- في الجملة المثبتة :

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل ....

e.g. : - Ahmed visited his friends yesterday.
- They watched a film last night.

Usage : الاستخدام

1. يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :

e.g. : - I studied French when I was in secondary school.

2. يعبر عن عادة في الماضي :

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed used to play tennis when he was young.
- I used to write very quickly.

3. وصف احداث في سرد قصة :

e.g. : - Ali found a bag. He took it to the police station.

4. في الحالة الثانية من جملة الشرط (If):

e.g. : - If he helped us, we would win.

5. يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ويعتبر ماضي غير حقيقي يعبر عن (افتراض شئ) و ليس الواقع :

1. I wish + subject فاعل + ماضي بسيط

e.g. : - I wish mum wasn't ill. - I wish the Egyptian team played well.

❷ It's time + subject فاعل + ماضي بسيط

e.g. : - It's time he paid the bill.

- It is time father arrived.

❸ I'd rather + subject فاعل + ماضي بسيط

e.g. : - I would rather she helped him.

- I'd rather Ali didn't come.

❶ يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع التعبيرات الآتية

Key words :

yesterday – ago – last – once – in the past – once upon a time – How long ago – the previous .... in the ancient time / in the old days

e.g. : - Last week, I went to Alexandria.

- Two months ago, we flew to London.

· يلاحظ استخدام (always, usually, often, sometimes) للتعبير عن مدى تكرار الحدث في الماضي :

e.g. : - When I was in Alex, I always swam in the sea.

2 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

Formation : التكوين

- في الجملة المثبتة :

Subject فاعل + was / were + (inf. + ing) ....

e.g. : - Ahmed was reading a story.

- Rodayna and Heba were cooking lunch.

· في صيغة المبني للمجهول :

Object المفعول + was / were + being + p.p. ....

e.g. : - A story was being read by Ahmed.

Usage : الاستخدام

❶ للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي :

e.g. : - At half past six this morning, I was having breakfast.

❷ للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمر في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر :

e.g. : - I was having a shower when the phone rang.

❸ يأتي في سياق قصة أو موقف في الماضي :

e.g. : - I was studying Chemistry when I met Jane.

- He was doing research when they arrested him.

❹ يستخدم الماضي المستمر غالبا مع روابط زمنية مثل (While / When / As / Just as) للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا ثم قطعه حدث آخر :

(While / When / As / Just as) + Past Cont. ماضي مستمر , Past Simple ماضي بسيط

e.g. : - I was having a shower when the phone rang.

- While she was walking in the street, she met one of her old friends.

PART 2

- لاحظ أن when يمكن أن يأتي بعدها الماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - We were doing the homework when it started to rain.

- يمكن استخدام On بدلا من when و يأتي بعدها inf. + ing :

- When he arrived, he found the door locked.

= On arriving, he found the door locked.

5 يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع روابط زمنية مثل (While / when / As / Just as) للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت :

(While / When / As / Just as) + Past Cont. ماضي مستمر , Past Cont. ماضي مستمر

e.g. : - While I was studying, my father was reading.

- While I was finishing one story, I was thinking of the next one.

- اذا لم يأتي بعد While فاعل يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : - While playing, I fell down.

- يمكن استخدام during بدلا من while ويأتي بعدها اسم أو عبارة اسمية فقط و ليس (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : - While he was playing the game, he got hurt.

- During the game, he got hurt. = He got hurt during the game.

3 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Formation : التكوين

• يتكون المضارع البسيط في الجملة المثبتة من :

Subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ...

- يتكون من التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافة مع (I / We / You / They) أو فاعل جمع وإضافة (s / es / ies) للفعل إذا كان الفاعل (He / She / It) أو فاعل مفرد :

e.g. : - We study English at school.

- A rabbit eats grass.

- Walaa cooks lunch at one every day.

- المضارع البسيط فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object المفعول + am / is / are + p.p. ....

e.g. : - Farmers grow plants. (Active)

Plants are grown by farmers. (Passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

1 to express facts : - التعبير عن حقائق علمية ثابتة لا تتغير :

e.g. : - The moon goes round the Earth.

❷ **to express habits :** - التعبير عن عادات :

e.g. : - He always comes late.

Subject فاعل + usually + verb فعل ....

It + is + someone's habit to + inf. المصدر ....

Subject فاعل + (be) + in the habit of + (inf. + ing) ....

Subject فاعل + (be) + used to + (inf. + ing) / n. ....

e.g. : - Ali usually eats fruit for dessert الحلو بعد الأكل.

- It is Ali's (his) habit to eat fruit for dessert.
- Ali is in the habit of eating fruit for dessert.
- Ali is used to eating fruit for dessert.

- لاحظ استخدام **no longer / any longer / any more** بمعنى (لم يعد) لنفي العادة عن الحاضر و إثبات حدوثها فى الماضى :

Subject فاعل + no longer + present simple + ...

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed no longer smokes. = He used to smoke.

Subject فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. + ... + any longer / any more

e.g. : - Ali doesn't smoke any more. = He used to smoke.

General Exercises On Structures (Units 1&2)

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... my sleep, I had a nightmareكابوس.
   a. While b. As c. When d. During
2. The police arrested him as he............ the scene of the crime.
   a. had left b. was leaving c. was left d. has left
3. Everybody was at the office at 08:30 yesterday. The meeting .... at nine o'clock.
   a. starts b. has started c. had started d. started
4. I .... into a good family in the south of Egypt.
   a. bore b. was born c. had been born d. have been born
5. When Mariam was young, she used to .... in London.
   a. lives b. living c. live d. lived
6. While climbing onto the mountain top, I .... a strange animal.
   a. was seen b. saw c. was seeing d. had seen
7. While we were travelling to Luxor, our car .... down.
   a. was breaking b. has broken c. had broken d. broke
8. I couldn't watch the film because my brother .... a football match.
   a. has watched b. was watching c. watched d. had watched
9. Abdu .... the tree when he suddenly fell down.
   a. had been climbed b. was climbing c. climbed d. was climbed

PART 2

10. .... sleeping, I had a nightmare.
a. While b. As c. When d. During

11. The moon .... round the earth.
a. has moved b. will move c. moves d. moved

12. We .... the email and replied to it.
a. received b. receive c. have received d. would receive

13. The sun's energy .... by solar panels الخلايا الشمسية.
a. is collected b. is collecting c. collects d. collected

14. My grandpa once .... me a present.
a. is giving b. gives c. gave d. giving

15. In ancient times, they often .... camels in travelling.
a. were using b. used c. use d. are using

16. How long ago .... you visit your uncle ?
a. do b. does c. did d. is

17. Don't go out till you .... your work.
a. do b. does c. did d. had done

18. This road .... used anymore.
a. didn't b. doesn't c. isn't d. is

19. Ahmed .... a glass of milk every morning.
a. always has b. always had had c. has always d. had always

20. The rich mud .... reaches Egyptian farmland.
a. don't b. doesn't c. no longer d. any longer

3 General Revision On Vocabulary Units 3&4

Key vocabulary

Unit 3

action(n)	حَدَث - فعل	owe(d) (v)	يَدين - يكون مَدين
amazing(adj)	مُدهِش - رائع جداً	plan(ned)(n) (v)	خطة - يخطط
association (n)	جمعية - اتحاد	plump(adj)	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً
beliefs (n)	مُعتقدات	prison(n)	السجن
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع - يُحضِر	rat(n)	فأر
crescent (n)	هلال	society (n)	المجتمع
debt(n)	دَين	stepfather (n)	زوج الأم
earn(ed) (v)	يكسب - يجلب مال	structure(n)	تركيب - بناء
experience (d) (n - v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة	surprise(d) (n - v)	مفاجأة / دهشة - يفاجئ
experiences (n)	خبرات / تجارب حياتية	terrible(adj)	مُطيع - سيء جداً
food bank	بنك الطعام	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
merchant(n)	تاجر	youth(n)	الشباب
miserable(adj)	تعيس - بائس	youth association	جمعية شبابية

Unit 4

address(ed) (n - v)	عنوان - يخاطب	nurse(d) (v)	تُمرّض - ترعى المرضى
advice(n)	نصيحة	nurse(n)	ممرضة
bully(ied) (v)	يتنمر - يتسلط	nursing(n)	التمريض
bully(n)	بلطجي - مُتنمر	phone-in(n)	برنامج يُشارك فيه الجمهور هاتفياً
bullying(n)	البلطجة - التنمر	police(d) (v)	يفرض الأمن والانضباط
cheat(ed) (v - n)	يغش - غشاش	police(n)	الشرطة
cheating(n)	الغش	policing(n)	فرض الأمن والانضباط
communicate(d) (v)	يتواصل - يتصل	populate(d) (v)	يُعمّر مكان
communication(n)	تواصل - اتصال	population(n)	(عدد) السكان
connection(n)	ارتباط - اتصال	produce(d) (v)	يُنتج
connect(ed) (v)	يوصل - يربط	production(n)	إنتاج
connected(adj)	مرتبط	pronounce(d) (v)	ينطق
feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة	pronunciation(n)	النطق
inform(ed) (v)	يُعلم - يُخبر	suffix(n)	مقطع لاحق
noticeboard(n)	لوحة الإعلانات	take ... for granted	يُسلّم ... بـ

General Exercises On Vocabulary (Units 3&4)

Choose the Two correct answers out of the five options given :

1. His performance was .... We all clapped for him.
   a. boring   b. amazing   c. annoying   d. astonishing   e. terrifying
2. It's common to drink tea after meals in Egypt. The word "common" can be replaced by ....
   a. unique   b. ordinary   c. limited   d. rare   e. usual
3. It's forbidden to .... other people.
   a. cheat   b. receive   c. deceive   d. believe   e. trust
4. You should know that there was no connection between these two subjects. The synonyms of "connection" are ....
   a. enjoyment   b. agreement   c. link   d. argument   e. relationship

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5. A .... is money you must give back to someone.
   a. donation   b. prize   c. reward   d. debt
6. To .... means to receive money for doing work.
   a. earn   b. win   c. make   d. lend
7. A .... is a person who buys and sells a lot of goods.
   a. worker   b. writer   c. merchant   d. volunteer
8. Criminals are punished for .... the law.
   a. following   b. respecting   c. breaking   d. giving
9. When a child grows ...., he learns how to depend on himself.
   a. of   b. in   c. out   d. up

10. My sister has a little daughter .... three.
a. of b. in c. on d. at
11. He is angry because he .... a problem with his car engine.
a. has b. does c. makes d. takes
12. I heard .... my British friend yesterday. He sent me an email.
a. of b. from c. about d. with
13. It is polite to address older people .... their titles.
a. of b. at c. by d. on
14. My father talked .... me about my plans for the future.
a. to b. about c. from d. for
15. I had to .... the police to arrest the bullies in our street.
a. go b. do c. call d. feel
16. It is not allowed to park here, but in .... the place is never empty.
a. practise b. practice c. police d. policing
17. Those bad people have bullied him .... taking drugs تعاطي المخدرات.
a. from b. off c. on d. into
18. The police .... the explosion الانفجار with terrorism الارهاب.
a. gave b. confessed c. connected d. concluded
19. Address your question .... the teacher and he will help you.
a. to b. off c. of d. with
20. Living in a new town .... so hard because you are away from friends and everything you know.
a. tastes b. feels c. tricks d. tracks

4 General Revision On Structures Units 3&4

1 The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Formation : التكوين

- في الجملة المثبتة : Subject الفاعل + have / has + P.P. .....

- تستخدم (has) مع المفرد الغائب (he / she / it) وتستخدم (have) مع باقي الضمائر:

e.g. : - I have tidied my bedroom.
- Ahmed has played tennis for an hour.

- في صيغة المبنى للمجهول : - Object المفعول + have / has + been + p.p. .....

e.g. : - I have tidied my bedroom. (active)
- My room has been tidied (by me). (passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

1. يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وأثره مازال موجود :

e.g. : - Rodayna has cleaned the kitchen. The kitchen is clean now.
- He has broken his leg. He can't walk easily.

2. حدث الفعل في وقت غير محدد في الماضي:

e.g. : - She has polished her shoes.
- Ahmed has fed the sheep.

- لكن عند تحديد وقت الحدوث نستخدم الماضي البسيط:

e.g. : - Rodayna cleaned the kitchen yesterday.
- Ahmed fed the sheep in the afternoon.

② يدل المضارع التام على حدث متكرر (أي أن ذلك الحدث قابل للحدوث مرة أخرى) :

e.g. : - Ahmed has scored a hundred goals. (He can score more.)

- لكن اذا استخدمنا الماضي البسيط مع حدث متكرر فمعنى ذلك أن الحدث توقف :

e.g. : - He wrote 46 novels. (He stopped writing.)

④ يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن خبرات سابقة دون تحديد وقت حدوثها :

e.g. : - Have you ever met anyone famous?
- She's never met anyone famous yet, but she hopes to one day.

⑤ نستخدم (has /have been to) بمعنى ذهب لمكان وعاد ، أما (has /have gone to) ذهب لمكان ومازال هناك (لم يعد) :

e.g. : - Rodayna has gone to school. (She is still at school now.)
- Ahmed has been to the cinema. (He isn't there now.)

- ويستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات الآتية :

just - already - yet - so far / - up till now / till now - ever - lately / recently - since - for

2 Countable and Uncountable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

A Countable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة

① الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها مفرد وجمع وهي تجمع بإضافة (s/es/ies) مثل :

- a girl ⟶ girls
- a bus ⟶ buses
- an egg ⟶ eggs
- a library ⟶ libraries

② هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل :

- child ⟶ children

③ قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
One	- One student got the full marks.
Every / Each	- Every player in the team trains hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
This / That	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

PART 2

1 قبل الأسماء الجمع يمكن أن تستخدم الآتي :

these هؤلاء / those أولئك / some بعض / any أي / many كثير / a few قليل / a lot of كثير من / lots of كثير من / several عديد / two / three ....

e.g. : - I met several friends in the party.
- I have a few books in my bag.
- These boys are my cousins.
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

B Uncountable Nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

1 الأسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع، وتشمل ما يلي :

السوائل والغازات والوجبات والمواد الدراسية، اللغات، المواد الخام، الرياضات، الظواهر الطبيعية والأسماء المجردة

ex. : - water, oxygen, breakfast, history, English, football, coffee, gold, thunder, honesty, jewellery.

2 تستخدم هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that..... etc.

e.g. : - I'd like to have a little juice. (Not : a few juice)
- How much money do you need? (Not : How many)

3 لا يمكن استخدام (these - those - one - a - an) قبل الاسم غير المعدود :

e.g. : - This equipment is very necessary. (Not : These equipment)
- I bought bread at the baker's. (Not : a bread)

4 يمكن استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

e.g. : - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.
- He had a good education at Oxford.

C Quantifiers تعبيرات الكمية والعدد

1 **a lot of / lots of كثير من + plural n. اسم جمع / uncountable n. اسم لا يعد**

- يفضل استخدام (a lot of / lots of) في الإثبات مع الأسماء التي تعد و الأسماء التي لا تعد :

e.g. : - I have a lot / lots of books.
She bought a lot / lots of sugar.

2 many كثير من / عدد + plural noun اسم جمع

- تأتى قبل اسم يعد فى صيغة الجمع وتفضل فى النفى والاستفهام :

e.g. : - Have you got many books ?
- No, I haven't got many books.

3 much كثير من + uncountable noun اسم لا يُعد

- تأتى قبل اسم لايعد وتفضل فى النفى والاستفهام :

e.g. : - Did you drink much coffee ?
- No, I didn't drink much coffee.

4 a few / few قليل + plural n. اسم جمع

a few = some / a small number عدد قليل ولكنه يكفى
few = not many / almost none عدد قليل وغير كاف

- تأتى قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل :

e.g. : - I have a few pens. I can lend you one.
- There are few glasses in the kitchen. I need to buy some for the party.

5 a little / little قليل + uncountable لا يُعد

a little = some / a small amount كمية قليلة ولكنها تكفى
little = not much / almost nothing كمية قليلة وغير كافية

- تأتى قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة :

e.g. : - There is a little cheese in the fridge. I'll make you a sandwich.
- I have little money in my pocket. I need to borrow some.

6 some بعض

- تستخدم (some) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد فى الحالات التالية :

1. Affirmative الإثبات
e.g. : - I will have some cheese and some eggs for breakfast.

2. Offering تقديم عروض
e.g. : - Would you like some sandwiches and some juice?

3. Request الطلب
e.g. : - Can you give me some paper and some pens?

7 any أى

- تستخدم (any) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد فى الحالات التالية :

1. Negative النفى
e.g. : - He didn't have any sandwiches or any juice.

2. Interrogative الاستفهام
e.g. : - Are there any tomatoes or any cheese in the fridge?

PART 2

3 Definite and Indefinite articles أدوات المعرفة والنكرة

A Indifinite articles : A & An أدوات النكرة

- تستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد ويبدأ بصوت ساكن عند النطق :

e.g. : a girl — a farmer — a wolf

- تستخدم (a) قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التى تبدأ بحرف متحرك ([illegible]) ولكن يُنطق كصوت ساكن.

e.g. : a university — a uniform — a unit
a union — a European country — a one — a useful book

- تستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد ويبدأ بصوت متحرك ([illegible])

e.g. : an umbrella — an egg — an honest man
an ink pot — an ox — an apple

- تأتى (an) قبل الأسماء التى تبدأ بحرف ساكن لا ينطق :

e.g. : He is an honest man.

Usage : الاستخدام

- قبل اسم مفرد يُعد يُذكر لأول مرة :

e.g. : - I saw a plane flying in the sky.
- I have a villa with a swimming pool.

- قبل الصفة إذا سبقت الاسم المفرد المعدود :

e.g. : - This is a beautiful vase.
- He gave an incredible concert حفلة موسيقية yesterday.

- تستخدم بمعنى «واحد من بين العديد من ...» :

e.g. : We have got a car.

- تستخدم عند تصنيف الناس حسب جنسياتهم أو وظائفهم :

e.g. : - She is a Turkish girl.
- She is an accountant.

- مع عبارات عددية معينة وللتجزئة :

e.g. : - a couple زوج من — - half a dozen نصف دستة
- a dozen دستة — - a score عشرون
- a million مليون — - a lot of / a great deal of كثير من
- a hundred مائة — - a thousand ألف
- a kilo of sugar — - a bag of rice

- مع تعبيرات السرعة والثمن والنسبة :

e.g. : - twice a week — - twenty kilometres an hour
- two pounds a kilo — - four times a day

- لاحظ أن (a / an) لا تستخدم قبل الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التى لا تُعد والأسماء المعنوية :

e.g. : - Sharks are dangerous animals.
- My shoes are made of leather.
- He was pale with fear.

B The definite article : The أداة المعرفة

- تستخدم قبل الاسم الذى أصبح مُعرفًا عند ذكره للمرة الثانية :

e.g. : We have got a villa with a garden. The garden is beautiful.

- تستخدم قبل الاسم الذى يوجد منه واحد فقط (أى ليس له مثيل فى الكون) :

e.g. : the Earth , the North Pole, the sky, the Nile ... etc.

- تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد للدلالة على النوع أو الفصيلة وقبل الاختراعات :

e.g. : - The camel is the ship of the desert.
- The computer is useful.

- لكن عند الحديث عن بيع أو شراء أو إصلاح أو امتلاك جهاز معين فلا تأخذ (the) :

e.g. : - My grandfather had a radio which looked like a wooden box.

- تستخدم قبل أسماء سلاسل الجبال والأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والصحارى ومجموعات الجزر والمناطق الجغرافية والاتجاهات وبعض الدول :

e.g. : the Red Sea, the Indian Ocean, the Thames, the Alps, the Middle East, the Mediterranean Sea, the USA, the Sudan, the United Kingdom, the European Union, the Pacific Ocean, the Bahamas Islands, the South of Egypt, the Siwa Oasis ... etc.

- أما أسماء الجزر المفردة فلا تأخذ (the). Sicily / Bermuda / Crete .... etc

والقمم الجبلية المنفردة عادة لا تأخذ (the) (Mount Everest / Kilimanjaro) :

- قبل صفات التفضيل القصوى، وقبل صفات المقارنة بمعنى «كلما».

e.g. : - The elephant is the biggest animal.
- Diamond is the most expensive metal.
- The harder you work, the more money you get.

- تستخدم قبل الصفات عند استخدامها كاسم بمعنى الجمع :

e.g. : - He is collecting money for the blind.
- The poor are usually generous to each other.
- The disabled are in need of our help.

- "the poor" تعنى طبقة الفقراء عامة.

- مع الآلات الموسيقية فى سياق العزف والاستماع أو التعليم أو الممارسة وتأتى بعد أفعال مثل:

play / practise / learn / study / listen to

e.g. : the piano, the violin, the drum, the guitar

- مع التعبيرات الزمنية و الاتجاهات:

e.g. : in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening, in the north, in the east

- قبل الكتب المقدسة وأسماء الصحف:

e.g. : the Quran , the Bible, the Times

- قبل أسماء الأماكن عند استخدامها لغرض غير غرضها الأساسى:

(school, hospital, university, bed, prison, church, market, mosque)

e.g. : - I go to school to learn.
- I go to the school to meet the principal المدير.

- تستخدم قبل أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات الآتية :

the government, the fire brigade, the police, the army, the cinema, the office, the theatre, the radio, the internet, the Cathedral

- تستخدم (the) قبل بعض الصفات التي تدل على الجنسية لتدل على شعب ما بصفة عامة :

e.g. : - The British / The English / The Irish / The Welsh / The Spanish / The Dutch / The Swiss.

- كما تستخدم (the) بنفس الطريقة قبل الصفات التي تدل على الجنسية المنتهية بـ (ese) :

e.g. : - The Japanese / the Chinese / the Sudanese ..... etc.

- أما صفات الجنسية الأخرى فيجب أن تجمع بعد (the) لتؤدي نفس المعنى :

e.g. : - The Egyptians / The Russians / the Arabs / the Scots / the Turks

- تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأماكن التي بها (of) :

e.g. : - The Great wall of China / the Bank of England

- تستخدم (the) غالبًا قبل الاسم الذي تتبعه عبارة بها ضمير وصل :

e.g. : - The man who lost his son was very sad.

- قبل العدد الذي يدل على فترة عشر سنوات وقبل الأعداد الترتيبية :

e.g. : - The fifties / the nineties / the first / second / third / the last .... etc.)v

- لاحظ أن "the" لا تستخدم مع :

- الاسم الجمع بمعنى عام.

e.g. : - Sharks are wild animals. - Women form half of society.

- الأسماء المجردة المعنوية والأسماء غير المعدودة بوجه عام :

e.g. : **death, birth, wisdom, sorrow, freedom, democracy, happiness**

- أسماء المواد وأسماء الوجبات والألعاب الرياضية والمواد الدراسية :

e.g. : **dinner, breakfast, wood, metal, milk, wool, iron, plastic, meat, basketball, volleyball, tennis, English, Arabic, history, maths**

- لكن لاحظ أن (the) تأتي مع الوجبات إذا كانت وجبه معدة لمناسبة خاصة (احتفال مثلًا) :

- أسماء فصول السنة والأعياد:

e.g. : summer, winter, spring, autumn, Easter, Christmas

- قبل الألقاب المتبوعة باسم علم :

e.g. : President Obama, Professor Magdi, King Abdullah

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء القارات وأسماء الدول :

e.g. : Asia, Africa, Europe , Spain , France ....

- أما إذا احتوى اسم الدولة على كلمات مثل Republic / Union / Kingdom / States / Federation فهي تأخذ (the)

e.g. : - The Arab Republic of Egypt / The United Kingdom.

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأماكن المركبة إذا كان الاسم الأول يدل على شخص أو مكان.

e.g. : - Victoria Station / Buckingham Palace / London Zoo

General Exercises On Structures (Units 3&4)

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This is the second time she has .... been to the zoo.
   a. just b. once c. never d. ever

2. It is the first time for me .... alone.

a. travel
b. to travel
c. to travelling
d. have ever travelled

3. This is the first time I .... alone.

a. travel
b. to travel
c. to travelling
d. have ever travelled

4. Mariam is the tallest student I .... up till now.

a. have ever seen
b. have never seen
c. had ever seen
d. had never seen

5. It's two weeks .... I last met aunt Nadia.

a. ago
b. for
c. since
d. as

6. Never .... an American tourist up till now.

a. he has met
b. has he met
c. he met
d. did he meet

7. He hasn't .... been abroad. His next visit to Saudi Arabia will be the first one.

a. never
b. ever
c. since
d. after

8. He .... there for ten years. He left the company last year.

a. has worked
b. have worked
c. worked
d. was working

9. I .... Chinese. I've passed three modules so far.

a. studied
b. 'm studying
c. was studying
d. have studied

10. I .... in the chat room since five o'clock when the phone rang.

a. am
b. was
c. had been
d. have been

11. My reading glasses .... missing.

a. had
b. was
c. is
d. are

12. This poor woman has ....

a. child
b. a few child
c. little children
d. much children

13. We hardly heard .... news of him since he left the company.

a. any
b. some
c. many
d. much

14. Mathematics .... not very easy to understand.

a. are
b. were
c. is
d. has

15. Most people think that politics .... sometimes a dirty business.

a. may
b. were
c. are
d. is

16. I need .... information.

a. an
b. few
c. some
d. many

17. I didn't buy a pen, I bought .... hat for my brother.

a. some
b. few
c. an
d. a

18. How .... work do you do every day?

a. many
b. much
c. often
d. old

19. I haven't got .... luggage.

a. many
b. some
c. any
d. a

20. She gave me .... binoculars.

a. much
b. some
c. any
d. a



5 General Revision On Vocabulary Units 5&6

Key vocabulary

Unit 5

advert = advertisement (n)	إعلان	Internet of Things (IOT)	إنترنت الأشياء
anti-virus (adj)	مُكافح الفيروسات	internet(n)	الإنترنت
app = application(n)	تطبيق (رقمي)	link(ed) (n - v)	رابط - يربط
click(ed) (n - v)	نقرة - ينقر	lock(ed) (n - v)	يقفل - قفل
communicate(d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل	malware(n)	البرمجيات الخبيثة
communication(n)	اتصال - تواصل	password(n)	كلمة المرور
connect(ed) (v)	يربط	phishing(n)	الإحتيال الالكتروني
connected(adj)	مُتَّصل - مُرتبط	post(ed) (v)	يرسل (منشور)
cyberbullying(n)	التنمر الإلكتروني	scam(n)	احتيال - غِش
cyberbully (n)	متنمر عبر الإنترنت	satnav(n)	التوجيه بالقمر الصناعى
download(ed) (v)	يُنزِّل (عبر الانترنت)	security(n)	الأمن
download (n)	ملف مُنزَّل	smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكى
downloading (n)	التنزيل - التحميل	software(n)	برامج - برمجيات
google (n)	مُحرّك البحث جوجل	technology(n)	التكنولوجيا
google(d) (v)	يبحث على جوجل	upload(ed) (v)	يرفع ملف
hack(ed) (v)	يخترق - يُقرصن	upload (n)	ملف مرفوع
hacking(n)	اختراق - القرصنة	uploading (n)	رفع الملفات

Unit 6

biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	literature(n)	الأدب
candlelight(n)	ضوء الشمعة	lock(ed) (n - v)	قُفل - يقفل
contrast(ed) (n - v)	تباين / اختلاف - يوضح التباين	novel(n)	رواية
currant(n)	نبات الكشمش (زبيب صغير)	plot(n)	قطعة أرض - مدفن
currant row	صف الكشمش	plot(n)	الحَبْكة - ذروة الأحداث
dig - dug (v)	يحفر - يغرس	poem(n)	قصيدة
garden(n)	بستان	poet(n)	شاعر
gardener(n)	بستاني (جنايني)	poetry(n)	الشعر - النَّظم
gravel(n)	الحَصَى	rhyme(d) (n - v)	القافية - يُقفِّي / يُسجِّع
gravelled (adj)	مغطى بالحصى	rhythm(n)	إيقاع
hay(n)	تِبن / قش	row(n)	صف
hop(ped) (n - v)	قفزة - يقفز - يحجل	sentence(n)	جُملة
hopping(n)	القفز - الحَجْل	stressed(adj)	مُشدَّد / مُفخَّم
issue(n)	قضية	treasure(n)	كنز
keep the gravel walk	يلزم الطريق الممهد بالحصى	variety(n)	تنوع - تعددية
line(n)	سطر شعري	verse(n)	فقرة شعرية

General Exercises On Vocabulary (Units 5&6)

Choose the Two correct answers out of the five options given :

1. I asked my friend Nabil to .... a table in a restaurant to celebrate my father's birthday.
   a. preserve   b. reserve   c. organize   d. book   e. use
2. You can depend on him to do this job. He is ....
   a. dishonest   b. truthful   c. unreliable   d. honest   e. lying
3. When we went out in the morning, it was clear. The synonyms of "clear" are ....
   a. cloudless   b. bright   c. cloudy   d. foggy   e. rainy
4. You should accept the .... of opinions about the same subject. Everyone has theirs.
   a. diversity   b. different   c. variety   d. various   e. differently

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5. .... are systems to send and receive information.
   a. Possibilities   b. Organizations   c. Accounts   d. Communications
6. .... is the use of science to create devices for everyday use.
   a. Technology   b. Management   c. Evidence   d. Document
7. When more than one thing is joined or linked, they are ....
   a. created   b. developed   c. connected   d. performed
8. He is a bad person [illegible]'s a lot of money as a ....
   a. fishing   b. [illegible]nan   c. phishing   d. phisher
9. The suffix .... means by yourself or itself.
   a. -mal   b. -up   c. -down   d. -self
10. I had given him 5000 pounds before I realised that it was a ....
    a. scam   b. scams   c. scammed   d. scammer
11. Don't shout at her. She .... nothing wrong.
    a. did   b. looked   c. went   d. stayed
12. I visit my grandparents as .... as I can.
    a. few   b. many   c. often   d. sometimes
13. A .... is a long written story in whic[illegible] haracters and events are usually imaginary.
    a. hay   b. verse   c. [illegible]   d. novel
14. A .... is a piece of writing often arran[illegible] lines that rhyme.
    a. poet   b. poem   c. [illegible]   d. poetic
15. A .... is someone who writes poems.
    a. poet   b. poem   c. p[illegible]   d. poetic
16. The criminal was locked up. This means ....
    a. he was killed   b. he was arrested   c. he was put in prison   d. he managed to escape
17. The play was written in .... It has rhymes and rhythms.
    a. verse   b. poem   c. English   d. poets
18. They plotted .... the new manager fail.
    a. to make   b. against making   c. to making   d. making

PART 2

19. When I lost my keys in the street, I was locked .... until my wife returned home.
a. on b. out c. of d. with

20. The rhythm of the poem makes it easy to ....
a. speak b. talk c. tell d. say

6 General Revision On Structures Units 5&6

1 Will + inf.

Formation : التكوين

- يتكون المستقبل البسيط فى الإثبات من:

Subject الفاعل + will / shall + inf. ...

- لاحظ استخدام (will) مع كل الضمائر ويمكن استخدام (shall) مع (I / we) فقط:

e.g. : - I will / shall help you do your homework.
- Rodayna will be four next March.

- يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبنى للمجهول من:

Object المفعول + will / shall + be + p.p. ...

e.g. : - A camera will be bought by Rodayna tomorrow.

- يستخدم المستقبل مع كلمات مثل:

Next (year / month / week / Friday ...) / in the future / soon / tomorrow / this time (next week / tomorrow ...) in (a year, a month, a week ...) / later on / sooner or later

Uses of will :

استخدامات (will):

1 التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية:

e.g. : - Next year, my son Ahmed will be in primary one.

2 التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلاً فى حالة عدم وجود دليل (رأى شخصى): (لاحظ أن الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلاً)

e.g. : - Do you think Ahmed will pass his exams ?
- Yes, he'll pass. He's a good student.

- وهنا نحن لا نتحدث عن نوايا احد أو خططه، بل رأينا الشخصى وتنبؤاتنا الشخصية:

e.g. : - My daughter and her husband both have blue eyes, so their baby will have blue eyes too.

3 ونستخدم مع بعض التعبيرات الآتية فى حالة عدم وجود دليل:

I expect / I'm sure / I think / I'm afraid / Maybe / Perhaps / I promise / I predict / probably / I hope / I wonder ...

e.g. : - We'll probably be in the space station for a week.

4 اتخاذ قرار سريع بعمل شيء ويدل على ذلك:

Just decided / decided just now / made a quick decision ...

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed has just decided that he will buy a car.

- وقد يكون القرار السريع مفهوماً من السياق (رد فعل) مثل:

e.g. : - The doorbell is ringing. I'll open it.

٥ عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة ما :

e.g. : - I'll wash the dishes.
- I'll help you with your homework.

٦ عندما تطلب من شخص عمل شيء :

e.g. : - Will you give me that book, please ?
- I hope you will look after the baby.

٧ عمل الوعود والتهديدات :

e.g. : - I'll buy you a computer when you pass the final exam.
- I won't repeat that to anyone.
- You won't get your prize if you come late.

2 Be + going to + inf.

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf. ...

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed is going to play tennis.
- I'm going to study medicine.

- في صيغة المبنى للمجهول : **Object المفعول + am / is / are + going to + be + p.p. ....**

e.g. : - Tennis is going to be played (by Mr Ali).

Uses of going to : - استخدامات (going to) :

١ تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن النوايا والقرارات المتخذة والخطط الشخصية ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل

intend / intention / plan / have .... in mind / decided

e.g. : - Mr Ali intends to build a new house.
- He is going to look for a good place.
- Ahmed : What are your plans for the next weekend ?
- Rody : I'm going to play computer games.

٢ التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلًا في حالة وجود دليل أي يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بوقوع الشيء :

e.g. : - My daughter is going to get married. She is engaged.
- It is very cloudy. I think it is going to rain.
- Look out ! We're going to crash! Why are you driving so recklessly ?
- My daughter is going to have a baby. She is pregnant.

٣ وتستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عما سيحدث في المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل

decided / have decided / made a decision / make up .... mind

e.g. : - They are going to go shopping. They have decided.
- I've decided that I'm going to do more exercises in the future.

٤ وتستخدم أيضًا للتحذير (التنبيه) عن أشياء على وشك الحدوث :

e.g. : - Watch out ! You are going to fall.

PART 2

3 The Present Continuous for Future Arrangements

- هناك شرطان أساسيان لاستخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل هما :

١ - أن يكون الفاعل عاقل. ٢ - وجود تعبير زمنى يدل على المستقبل (ولو بشكل ضمنى).

1 يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل فى حالة وجود ترتيبات مسبقة (أى من الأطراف المشتركة بالحدث تعلم هذا الحدث والموعد معروف)، ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

arranged / have arranged / made arrangements / prepared / have prepared / made preparations

e.g. : - He has arranged everything. He's spending the next summer holiday in Paris.

- لاحظ أنه إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر فى المستقبل فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتبًا له :

e.g. : - I can't see you this evening. I'm doing my homework.

- لاحظ أن this evening تعبر عن وقت قادم.

2 يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل فى حالة اتخاذ خطوة تنفيذية :

e.g. : - Rodayna has bought some eggs, butter and flour. She is making a cake tomorrow.

- Mr Ali is flying to London next Monday. He has booked a ticket.

3 لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر:

e.g. : - He's getting married next Friday.

- We're going back to the States in three years.

4 لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التى تقوم بها المؤسسات تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر:

e.g. : - Our school is taking part in the sports competition next year.

- This company is sending a delegation to the conference next week.

4 The Present Simple for the Future

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث مستقبلية طبقًا لجداول المواعيد الخاصة مثل وسائل المواصلات (الطائرات والسفن والأتوبيسات..) والمسرح والسينما والمدرسة (الحصص والامتحانات والدروس) والعمل (الحضور والانصراف..) والأفلام والبرامج والمباريات ... إلخ.

e.g. : - His plane leaves at 7:15.

- The match starts at 9 sharp تماماً tomorrow.

- The launch of the spaceship is at 10 a.m. next Friday.

- كما يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية :

After / As soon as / the moment حدث أول (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) ⟶ مستقبل
= Before / When / By the time + حدث ثان (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) ⟶ مستقبل
حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + till / until + حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفى غالبًا

e.g. : - Before Rokaya leaves the office, she will send some e-mails.

- After Rokaya sends the e-mails, she will leave the office.

- Rokaya won't leave the office until she sends the e-mails.

5 Verbs + to + inf.

agree to	يوافق أن	manage to	يتمكن من
arrange to	يرتب أن	offer to	يعرض أن
choose to	يختار أن	plan to	يخطط أن
decide to	يقرر أن	promise to	يعد أن
expect to	يتوقع أن	refuse to	يرفض أن
fail to	يفشل في أن	threaten to	يهدد أن
help to	يساعد في	want to	يريد أن
hope to	يأمل أن	wish to	يتمنى أن
intend to	ينوي أن	warn (not) to	يُحذِر أن / ألا
learn to	يتعلم أن	would like to	يود أن

- Hazem is planning to go to university next year. He hopes to study medicine.

6 Verbs + (inf. + ing)

avoid	يتجنب	include	يشمل / يتضمن
consider	يفكر في	keep	يظل / يستمر في
deny	ينكر	mind	يمانع
dislike	يكره	practise	يمارس
enjoy	يتمتع	recommend	يوصي بـ / يُحبذ
finish	ينهي - ينتهي	suggest	يقترح
imagine	يتخيل		

- You should avoid going out late at night.

7 Verb + (inf. + ing) / (to + inf.)

① الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون فرق في المعنى:

begin / start	يبدأ	like	يحب / يفضل
continue	يستمر	love	يحب
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل

ex. - We continued to run / running until we got home.

② الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) مع وجود فرق واضح في المعنى:

remember, forget, stop, try, go on + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

1. remember

• remember + to + inf. يتذكر أن يفعل

ex. - Remember to bring your homework tomorrow.

• remember + gerund يتذكر أنه فعل

ex. - I remember waking up in the middle of the night.

PART 2

2. **forget**

- **forget + to + inf.** ينسى أن يفعل (هنا الشيء لم يتم القيام به)
  ex. - She forgot to buy her grandfather's newspaper, so he was angry.
- **forget + gerund** ينسى أنه فعل (فعل الشيء، لكنه نسى ذلك)
  ex. - I forgot phoning the manager, so I phoned him again.

3. **stop**

- **stop + to + inf.** يتوقف عمًا يفعله لكي يفعل شيء آخر
  ex. - On her way home, Dina stopped to talk to her friend Warda.
- **stop + gerund** يتوقف عن فعل شيء.(بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)
  ex. - Dina and Warda have stopped talking to each other.

4. **regret**

- **regret + (inf. + ing)** يندم على شيء قد فعله
  ex. - I regret wasting my time.
- **regret + to + inf. ...** يشعر بالأسف لأنه مضطر لعمل شيء
  ex. - I regret to tell you that your arm is broken.

5. **try**

- **try + to + inf.** يحاول أن يفعل
  ex. - You tried to answer the difficult question, didn't you?
- **try + (inf. + ing)** يجرب القيام بشيء ليرى النتيجة
  ex. - Try taking an aspirin. It might work.

General Exercises On Structures (Units 5&6)

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A: What are you doing at the weekend?
   B: I .... some time with my friends.
   a. spend b. will spend c. am spending d. going to spend
2. I think the weather in England .... windy.
   a. shall be b. is being c. is going to be d. will be
3. A: I am going on holiday tomorrow. B: I'm sure you .... it.
   a. will enjoy b. enjoy c. are enjoying d. are going to enjoy
4. Don't pick up the phone. I .... it.
   a. am going to answer b. will answer c. am answering d. answer
5. A: I'm thirsty.
   B: Oh, dear. Pardon me. I .... you a cold drink at once.
   a. make b. am going to make c. am making d. will make

6. I am studying medicine. I .... a doctor.

a. am　　b. am being　　c. am going to be　　d. has been

7. Mum is busy cooking, I .... who is knocking at the door.

a. am seeing　　b. will see　　c. am going to see　　d. see

8. My brother has arranged everything. He .... to Saudi Arabia next week.

a. is travelling　　b. is going to travel　　c. travels　　d. will travel

9. I expect uncle Omar .... us tonight.

a. will visit　　b. is visiting　　c. is going to visit　　d. visited

10. Before she returns home from work tomorrow, she .... the shopping as she has planned.

a. is being done　　b. is going to do　　c. will do　　d. does

11. Taha has always enjoyed .... poetry.

a. to read　　b. reading　　c. to reading　　d. read

12. Young children like learning ....

a. sang　　b. sung　　c. singing　　d. to sing

13. When Karim finished ...., he was very tired.

a. runs　　b. ran　　c. to run　　d. running

14. Our school wanted .... more computers.

a. get　　b. to get　　c. getting　　d. got

15. He refused .... for what he had done.

a. apologize　　b. apologized　　c. apologizing　　d. to apologize

16. Films, films, films! I 'd love .... a football match now.

a. watch　　b. to watch　　c. watching　　d. watched

17. Let's .... a bus.

a. taking　　b. to take　　c. take　　d. took

18. He was ready .... in Luxor after getting married there.

a. living　　b. live　　c. to live　　d. of living

19. Would you mind .... me to the airport?

a. driving　　b. to driving　　c. of driving　　d. to drive

20. He took ....

a. smoke　　b. to smoke　　c. smoking　　d. to smoking

DAY 3

1. Reading Skill

١. مهارة القراءة : بعد دراسة كيفية التعامل مع قطع Reading فى ملحق المهارات قم بالتدرب على كل وحدة.

Read the following passage and then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

You eat the right food and do plenty of exercise, so why aren't you losing any of that extra weight ? Perhaps you need to think about a daily diet and exercise plan which tells you when you should be eating, drinking and exercising in order to burn fat more quickly.

Try to start the day with a cup of green tea, green tea wakes you up and gets you ready for your hectic day ahead. You will feel active and at the same time your metabolism will be off to a good start, burning up those extra calories. After your hot drink, think about an early morning workout. This will help to elevate your energy levels and keep you alert all day long. The best time to start exercising is half an hour after you open your eyes.

The secret of burning fat is to eat small amounts at regular intervals throughout the day. A banana or a kiwi fruit at around eleven will give you all the energy you need. Many people find that a glass of warm skimmed milk or a cup of chamomile tea, though they sound like old-fashioned remedies, really do help you fall asleep.

1. The passage is about ....
   a. your metabolism b. green tea c. healthy diet d. unhealthy diet
2. Starting your day with a cup of green tea is important as it ....
   a. wakes your mind up b. makes your muscles relax
   c. takes you to another world d. reduce your energy
3. The underlined word "**hectic**" in the second paragraph means ....
   a. free b. idle c. calm d. busy
4. Burning fat requires eating .... amounts at regular period.
   a. excessive b. large c. small d. enormous
5. At around eleven eating .... fruit' will give you all the energy.
   a. a kiwi b. an apple c. an orange d. a strawberry
6. .... can help you fall asleep.
   a. Fruit b. Fried fish c. A big meal d. Skimmed milk
7. What will happen if you follow a good daily diet and exercise plan ?
   a. You'll be weak and have no energy b. You will need to go to the physician
   c. Your body will gain a lot of weight d. Your body will burn fat more quickly

(محافظة الجيزة ٢٣)

2. Translation

٢. الترجمة : تدرب على حل سؤال الترجمة من امتحانات المحافظات المختلفة

1 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

School is a place where we learn and gain a lot of experiences; it plays a vital role in our life.

a. إن المدرسة هى المكان الذى نتعلم فيه ونكتسب الكثير من الخبرات فهى تلعب دورًا حيويًا فى حياتنا.

b. إن المدرسة هى المكان الذى نتعلم له ونكتسب الكثير من الخبرات فهى لا تلعب دورًا حيويًا فى حياتنا.

c. إن المدرسة هى المكان الذى نتعلم فيه ونكتسب الكثير من التجارب فهى تلعب دورًا حيًا فى حياتنا.

d. إن المدرسة هى المكان الذى نعلم فيه ونكسب الكثير من التجارب فهى تلعب دورًا حيويًا فى حياتنا. (الجيزة ٢٣)

B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

السعادة ليست بامتلاك المال والثروة ولكنها بامتلاك الصحة وحب الآخرين. فكن متفائلاً كى تتمتع بسعادة حقيقية.

a. Happiness isn't meant money and wealth, but health and love for others. Be optimistic to enjoy long happiness.

b. Happiness doesn't mean having money and wealth, but having health and love for others. Be optimistic to enjoy true happiness.

c. Happiness doesn't mean having money and wealth, but having health and love all others. Be pessimistic to enjoy only happiness.

d. Happiness isn't meant money and wealth, but health and lovers. Be optimistic to enjoy good happiness.

2 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

The Football World Cup has attracted millions of fans in stadiums and viewers on the internet. It was an event that got the attention of men, women, and children.

a. جذب كأس العالم لكرة القدم مليارات المشاهدين فى الملاعب والإنترنت. لقد كان حدث جاذب لانتباه الرجال والنساء والأطفال.

b. جذب كأس العالم لكرة القدم ملايين المشجعين فى الملاعب والمشاهدين على الإنترنت. لقد كان حدث جاذب لانتباه الرجال والنساء والأطفال.

c. جذب كأس العالم لكرة القدم ملايين الدولارات من الملاعب والمشاهدين على الإنترنت. لقد كان حدث جاذب لانتباه الرجال والنساء والأطفال.

d. جذب كأس العالم لكرة القدم مليارات المشجعين من الملاعب والمشاهدين على الإنترنت. لقد كان حدث جاذب لانتباه الرجال والنساء والأطفال.



B. Cho... e correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدرا مباشرا للدخل القومى فى مصر. تمتلك مصر الكثير من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التى يرغب السياح فى زيارتها.

a. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

b. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated natural palaces that tourists desire to visit.

c. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated places that tourists desire to visit.

d. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated natural place that tourists desire to visit.

(المراغة - سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)

3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Developing effective communication skills helps you to understand what others are saying. This makes you a better and communicative member in the society.

a. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الحديث يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون هذا يجعلك عضو أفضل متصل فى المجموعة.

b. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الماهر يساعدك على تفهم ما يقوله الآخرون هذا يجعلك عضو أفضل اتصال فى المجتمع.

c. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الفعال يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون هذا يجعلك عضو أفضل ومتواصل فى المجتمع.

d. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الغير فعال يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون هذا يجعلك عضو أفضل فى المجتمع.

B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تطور مصر السياحة البيئية لكى تحمى البيئات المختلفة بساحل البحر الأحمر وسوف تبنى فنادق جديدة تستخدم موارد وطاقة امنة على البيئة

a. Egypt develops eco-tourism to prevent the different environments in the Red Sea. It is going to build new hotels using dangerous energy and materials for the environment.

b. Egypt develops eco-tourism to protect the different environments in the Red Sea. It is going to build new hotels using safe energy and materials for the environment.

c. Egypt develops eco-tourism to protect the same environments in the Red Sea. It is going to build new hotels using safe power and materials for the environment.

d. Egypt develops tourism to protect the different governments in the Red Sea. It is going to build new hotels using safe energy and materials for the environment.

(دراو - أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

3. Writing

Related Essay Models

أهم نماذج للمقالات المرتبطة بالمنهج

1. Ecotourism

Ecotourism is a type of tourism that focuses on conserving natural environments and wildlife. It aims to promote sustainable travel and minimize the negative impacts that tourism can have on the environment and local communities. Ecotourism involves, visiting ecologically-sensitive areas such as national parks, wildlife reserves, and protected areas.

One of the main benefits of ecotourism is that it promotes environmental awareness and conservation efforts. By visiting natural areas and learning about their ecological importance, tourists can gain a better understanding of the need to protect these areas. Additionally, ecotourism can provide economic benefits to local communities by encouraging sustainable development and creating jobs in tourism-related industries. However, it is important to note the ecotourism can also have negative impacts if not ecosystems, While cultural exploitation and displacement of local communities can occur if tourism is not implemented in a responsible manner. Therefore, it is essential for ecotourism to prioritize environmental and social sustainability in order to ensure the protection of natural areas and promote benefits to local communities.

2. Voluntary work

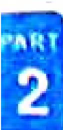
Voluntary work is a type of work that a person does without expecting payment or compensation. It is done voluntarily, out of one's own will, and usually for the benefit of others. Volunteering can be done for a variety of reasons, such as gaining experience, helping others, or giving back to the community.

Volunteering provides many benefits to the individual who volunteers. It allows them to gain new skills, meet new people, and make a positive impact on their community. Additionally, volunteering can help to improve one's mental health and well-being by reducing stress and increasing happiness. Individuals who volunteer also gain a sense of accomplishment and pride in their work, which can boost self-esteem and self-confidence. Overall, voluntary work is a great way to make a difference in the lives of others while also improving one's own personal development.

3. How to help your community

There are many ways that high school students can make a difference in their community. One way is to volunteer their time and skills for local organizations or events. Many non-profit orgainzations and community centres rely on volunteers to carry out their programs and projects. Students can participate in events like food drives, fundraising events, and awareness campaigns for various social issues. Volunteering not only helps the community but also helps students develop important skills like teamwork, leadership, and communication.

Another way to help the community is to engage in initiatives that focus on environmental sustainability. High school students can advocate for environmentally-



friendly practices in their schools and communities by recycling, reducing energy consumption, and conserving water. They can also organize and participate in clean-up activities in the community and beautification projects like planting trees and flowers. By being environmentally-conscious, students can help in creating a sustainable future for their community and the world. In conclusion, there are many ways that high school students can help their community. By volunteering, advocating for social issues, and promoting environmental sustainability, students can make a difference in the well-being of their community while building important skills for their future.

4. Teamwork

Teamwork is when a group of people come together to work towards a common goal. The members of a team must be willing to cooperate with each other, communicate effectively and use their individual strengths to achieve success. It is important for each member of a team to be aware of the importance of teamwork and to be committed to putting in their best efforts to achieve the common goal.

Effective teamwork is crucial in many areas of life, such as in sports, at school and in the workplace. In sports, a team relies on each individual's strengths to win games. At school, group projects help students learn and apply critical thinking skills, while in the workplace, working together can help a team reach their targets and goals. Great teams are able to leverage the unique skills and personalities of each member of the group. They support each other and work together towards their common goals, inspiring each member to achieve greater things. Teamwork is a powerful tool that brings people together to accomplish great things.

5. The person I admire most

The person I admire most is my mother. She is not only my parent but also my confidant and my best friend. From a very young age, I have always been in awe of her intelligence, her hard work, and her genuine kindness towards everyone in her life. My mother is an extremely intelligent woman who has always placed emphasis on education throughout my life. She has a degree in mathematics and works as an engineer, constantly solving complex problems and dealing with technical issues. She has always encouraged me to strive for academic excellence and has been there to help me overcome any challenges I have faced. Additionally, she is one of the most compassionate and understanding people I know, always willing to lend a listening ear or a helping hand to anyone who needs it. She is truly a role model for me in every way and I am grateful to have her as my mother.

6. The role of great scientists in society

Great scientists play a pivotal role in society as they dedicate their lives to expanding our understanding of the natural world. They push the boundaries of human knowledge through their research and experimentation, and create breakthroughs that can have profound impacts on humanity. Many great scientists have been responsible for discoveries that have laid the foundations for various fields, such as Isaac Newton's laws of motion and gravity in physics, Charles Darwin's theory of evolution in biology, or Marie Curie's work on radioactivity in chemistry. Through their contributions, scientists create new technologies, improve the health and well-being of people, and expand human communication and knowledge.

In addition to their scientific achievements, great scientists also inspire others and engage in public outreach efforts that help disseminate scientific knowledge to society. They encourage young people to take up scientific careers and inspire them to unlock their intellectual potential. They also play an essential role in communicating to policymakers the need for science-based public policies that improve society's general welfare. Consequently, great scientists are vital for the progress of society, and their contributions will continue to benefit humanity for generations to come.

7. An interesting story you have read

Great Expectations is a novel by Charies Dickens that tells the story of a young boy named pip who dreams of becoming a gentleman. The story is set in early 19th-century England, and it follows Pip's journey from a lowly blacksmith's apprentice to a wealthy and respected member of society. The novel is filled with memorable characters, including the eccentric Miss Havisham, the haughty Estella, and the kind-hearted Joe Gargery.

One of the most interesting aspects of Great Expectations is the way in which it explores themes of class, ambition, and identity. Pip's desire to become a gentleman is fuelled by his encounters with other members of the upper class, including the enigmatic Miss Havisham and the mysterious criminal, Abel Magwitch. Along the way, Pip learns that wealth and status do not necessarily bring happiness, and he must confront the fact that his dreams may not be as important as he once thought. Overall, "Great Expectations" is an engaging and thought-provoking novel that is sure to leave a lasting impression on readers.

8. A review of your favourite story

King Lear is a story of betrayal, family, and madness. The play follows the titular character, King Lear, as he divides his kingdom among his three daughters based on the flattery they lavish on him. However, his youngest and most honest daughter, Cordelia, refuses to participate in the charade, resulting in her banishment from the kingdom. The betrayal and cruelty of those around him eventually cause Lear to descend into madness, leading to a devastating conclusion.

One of the most striking aspects of King Lear is its exploration of human nature and the power dynamics within families. The play delves into the complexities of familial relationships and how love and loyalty can quickly turn to deceit and betrayal.

Moreover, the character of Lear himself is a compelling study of pride and madness. His tragic downfall is a cautionary tale of how unchecked egotism can lead to devastating consequences. Overall, King Lear is an engrossing and thought-provoking story that has the power to move and challenge its readers.

9. Bullying and its impact on society / How to fight bullying

Bullying is significant issue in our society. It is repeated aggressive behaviour towards someone, which causes physical, emotional, or psychological harm. The impact of bullying can be devastating for both the victim and the bully. For the victim, it can lead to low self-esteem, depression, anxiety, and even suicide. On the other hand, for the bully, it can lead to legal troubles or emotional problems. Additionally, bullying affects the community as a whole. It creates a negative environment that can lower morale and productivity.

PART 2

To fight bullying, we need to start by educating ourselves and others about its harmful effects. We also need to encourage our schools and workplaces to provide a safe environment for everyone. This includes implementing effective bullying prevention policies and providing resources for those who have experienced bullying. We should emphasize the importance of respecting others' differences and being kind to one bullying behaviour. Overall, it is crucial to address this issue and work towards creating a more inclusive and accepting society.

10. Cyberbullying

Cyberbullying is a form of bullying that occurs through digital technologies such as social media, text messaging, and emails. It can take different forms such as spreading rumors, threats, insults, or sharing embarrassing photos or videos about an individual without their consent. Cyberbullying can happen to anyone regardless of age, gender, race, or social class. It can lead to psychological, emotional, and physical harm, including anxiety, depression, low self-esteem, and even suicide. It is essential to take cyberbullying seriously and take measures to prevent and stop it.

To prevent cyberbullying, it is necessary to educate people on the consequences of cyberbullying and encourage them to be responsible digital citizens. People should also be encouraged to report any incidents of cyberbullying to the appropriate authorities.

Parents and teachers should monitor their children online activities and have open communication with them about the dangers of cyberbullying and how to respond to it. Lastly, tech companies and social media networks should have strict policies against cyberbullying and create mechanisms to help victims of cyberbullying. By taking these measures, we can create a safer and more compassionate online community where cyberbullying is not tolerated.

11. The internet pros and cons

The internet has revolutionized the way we live and work. It has democratized access to information, making it easier for people to seek knowledge and communicate with others from different parts of the world. This has proved to be especially helpful for students, who can now access online resources for their studies, allowing them to learn at their own pace and from various sources. Moreover, the internet has enabled businesses to expand globally and reach a wider audience. With e-commerce, people can buy and sell goods and services online, making it more convenient for consumers.

However, the internet also has its cons. With the increased usage of online platforms for communication and entertainment, people are becoming more isolated from their communities and their families. Moreover, with the abundance of information and the ease at which it can be shared online, there's also a lot of misinformation that can be spread easily,. which can have severe consequences. Finally, with the increase in online crime, privacy concerns are at an all-time high. People need to be cautious with their online activity and aware of the risks involved. In conclusion, while the internet has brought about many benefits, we must also be mindful of its drawbacks.

DAYS 4, 5, 6&7

19 Model Exams from different governorates

تسعة عشر اختبارًا من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة

1 Cairo Governorate

West Cairo Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. I didn't enjoy reading that novel. It was "boring". The antonyms of "boring" are ....
   a. interesting   b. exciting   c. handsome   d. confident   d. pleased
2. A good leader should have some qualities as being ....
   a. fair   b. violent   c. wise   d. stubborn   e. extremist

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. It was unusual that no one has made any .... on the meeting.
   a. part   b. connect   c. comment   d. contact
4. The police have found a/an .... that he is a thief.
   a. clue   b. cross   c. island   d. idea
5. I know how to overcome this difficult situation as I have .... before.
   a. extracted   b. married   c. owed   d. experienced it
6. Different societies have different ....
   a. experiments   b. cultures   c. staff   d. prisons
7. .... means to be connected to the internet or available on the internet.
   a. Website   b. Network   c. Online   d. Offline
8. They had .... of things to do. This means they were very busy.
   a. loaf   b. lot   c. loaves   d. loads
9. I have a new .... on my smart-phone which helps me practice foreign languages.
   a. connection   b. app   c. scam   d. hack
10. While .... the experiment, Ahmed fell and injured his hand.
    a. were doing   b. was doing   c. doing   d. do
11. He has a flat on .... second floor.
    a. a   b. the   c. an   d. a & b
12. He got used to .... in an office.
    a. work   b. works   c. worked   d. working
13. The governor is giving a .... in the conference.
    a. talk   b. talks   c. talking   d. talked
14. This is the most interesting novel I have .... read.
    a. never   b. over   c. already   d. ever
15. My elder brother helped me .... maths easier because he was good at it.
    a. learn   b. learning   c. to learning   d. for learning
16. They plotted .... the new manager. They wanted him to fail.
    a. for   b. to   c. with   d. against

PART 2

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Should we work all the time without having any rest or entertainment ? The answer is that we cannot go on working without stopping, from time to time and at regular **intervals**, to have some rest and recreation. If we do so, we can make mistakes and the quality of our work might get worse.

An overcrowded person may end up losing the ability to think clearly and having no energy to go on working. Sleep is one of the ways in which nature renews our energy.

Sports and games are also essential for brain workers who stay in closed offices and do not have a good chance to exercise their muscles. Such activities as swimming and walking may do a lot of good to them. So, we should not waste our weekends. They should be made full use of and spent in the open. Having forgotten all about our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full and return the next day to work with our energy fully renewed. Change has a magic effect on a man's health and consequently on his performance.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. The best summary to the passage is ....
    a. We don't have a time of entertainment b. Work hard all the time
    c. Man should have a time of entertainment d. Entertainment is a waste of time
18. Overworking results in ....
    a. creative thinking b. more experience c. loss of energy d. more energy
19. The writer suggests that brain workers .... in the open.
    a. should waste their weekends b. should spend their weekends
    c. should give up their weekends d. shouldn't spend their weekends
20. "Change has a magic effect on man's health", the word "magic" in the sentence means ....
    a. bad b. passive c. negative d. positive
21. The word "**intervals**" can have the meaning of ....
    a. periods b. classes c. start d. lessons
22. Change has a great effect on man's ....
    a. chance b. performance c. apology d. taste
23. Sports and games are .... for brain workers.
    a. Harmful b. boring c. essential d. not important

24. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

يجب أن تكون المنتجات المصرية عالية الجودة لكي تتمكن من منافسة المنتجات الاخرى فى الأسواق العالمية.

a. Egyptian productions must be of high quality in order to being able to compete with other products in the global markets.

b. Egyptian productions must be of high quality in order to be able to competition with other products in the global markets.

c. Egyptian products must be of high quality in order to be able to compete with other products in the global markets.

d. Egyptian products must be of high quality in order to be able to compete with other productions in the global markets.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Climate change is a serious problem that threatens life on the earth. so, Egypt hosted the international climate change conference in Sharm El Sheikh city.

a. أن تغير المناخ مشكلة خطيرة تهدد الحياة على الأرض لذلك استضافت مصر المؤتمر القومى للتغير المناخى بمدينة شرم الشيخ

b. أن تغير المناخ مشكلة خطيرة تؤذى الحياة على الأرض لذلك استضافت مصر المؤتمر القومى للتغير المناخى بمدينة شرم الشيخ.

c. أن تغير المناخ مشكلة كبيرة تهدد الحياة على الأرض لذلك استضافت مصر المؤتمر القومى للتغير المناخى بمدينة شرم الشيخ.

d. أن تغير المناخ مشكلة خطيرة تهدد الحياة على كوكب الأرض لذلك استضافت مصر المؤتمر القومى العالمى الكبير لتغيير المناخ فى مدينة شرم الشيخ

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"How can you keep the environment clean"

....

2 Giza Governorate — El-Dokki Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Nurses look after the patients after operations. The synonyms of the phrasal verb "look after " are ....
   a.follow b.nurse c.care for d.find out e.obey
2. He is admired because he is generous. "Generous" is an antonym for .... and ....
   a.selfish b.unique c.isolated d.mean e.stressed

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. Don't go near the cliff edge, it isn't .... You may fall off the cliff.
   a.safe b.difficult c.easy d.harmful
4. Fingerprints are .... to every person. No people are similar to each other.
   a.terrible b.rare c.scarce d.unique
5. He was .... out of the bridge rail, watching the boats go by.
   a.developing b.swelling c.leaning d.diving
6. Try not to eat too much .... food. It is very tasty, but can cause you to feel uncomfortable.
   a.spicy b.healthy c.flavourless d.cool
7. The police found a vital .... to the girl's disappearance in an area near her home.
   a.secret b.crew c.glue d.clue
8. She last played a tennis match .... she was ten.
   a.since b.for c.when d.ago
9. This picture .... in the nineteenth century.
   a.painted b.had been painted c.was painted d.painted
10. .... the accident, I phoned the police at once.
    a.After I see b.Before I saw c.Before seeing d.When I saw
11. We should protect the .... so that we can live in a clean world.
    a.environment b.location c.tourism d.destination

12. The number of views .... increasing daily.
a. is
b. are
c. have
d. were

13. My son's birthday .... next Sunday.
a. is going
b. is being
c. will have been
d. will be

14. Noha suggested that Asmaa .... the film in the cinema.
a. watch
b. watching
c. watches
d. to watching

15. Salah is a brilliant footballer who is considered a/an .... to every youth in Egypt.
a. role model
b. playmaker
c. example
d. amazing

16. There are many .... animals in the world, which we need to save.
a. endangered
b. isolated
c. insulated
d. popular

25. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Octopuses are extremely **intelligent**. They have even learnt a few tricks to get them out of sticky situations. For example, they are afraid of a predator. As octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves, they hide in the sand on the bottom of the ocean floor. The octopus is like a chameleon because it can change the colour of its skin to match the sand. Some octopuses like to stay in more shallow water where there are rocks and coral. However, octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to get out of reach of predators. Another way an octopus can use to hide is by shooting ink. An octopus uses a part of its body called a syphon to shoot ink into the water. The ink forms a cloud that hides the octopus. It's like a magician doing a vanishing act. If an octopus is attacked, it can actually make itself look like a venomous sea snake. It will bury itself in the sand, keeping two arms visible. If an octopus is in trouble, it can break off one of its arms. The arm will then change colours and squirm around the water to distract the predator while the octopus swims away to safety. Amazingly, the octopus's arm will grow back.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. A .... is an animal that attacks and kills octopuses.
a. prey
b. predator
c. chameleon
d. magician

18. When an octopus is in a sticky situation, that means it's ....
a. easy
b. in danger
c. covered in stick
d. unable to move

19. The synonym of the word "**intelligent**" is ....
a. smart
b. dangerous
c. venomous
d. visible

20. The octopus and the chameleon are similar as both ....
a. swim in the same way
b. eat the same food
c. catch small fish
d. can change their skin colour

21. The best title for this passage is ....
a. The Magician Octopuses
b. The Sea World and the Predator
c. The Seabed
d. The Sea Ink

22. The octopus can shoot ink into the water which ....
a. kills the attackers
b. helps it hide from the attackers
c. pollutes the water
d. attracts preys

23. Octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves ....
a. so, they are eaten easily
b. however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
c. moreover, they are not brave
d. that's why they are about to extinct

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Modern devices have no longer been a luxury, but it has become a must for every house.

a. لم تعد الأجهزة الحديثة متعة، بل هي إضافة لكل بيت.
b. لم تعد المعدات الحديثة ترفا، بل هي ضرورة لكل بيت.
c. لم تعد الأجهزة التقليدية ترفا، بل هي ضرورة لكل بيت.
d. لم تعد الأجهزة الحديثة ترفا، بل هي ضرورة لكل بيت.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

ان التعاون والتسامح بين الأفراد والشعوب من الأمور الضرورية فكل منا يحتاج للآخر وكل منا أيضا مختلف عن الآخر

a. Corporation and tolerance between individuals and peoples are absolutely necessary. Each of us needs the other and each of us is also different from the other.
b. Cooperation and tolerance between individuals and peoples are absolutely necessary. Each of us needs the other and each of us is also different from the other.
c. Cooperation and tolerance between individuals and people is absolutely necessary. Each of us needs the other and each of us is also different from the other.
d. Cooperation and tolerance between singles and peoples are absolutely necessary. Each of us need the other and each of us is also different from the other.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"The last World cup held in 2022"

....

3 Alexandria Governorate — Gomrok Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. If a place is .... , it has a lot of people.
a. ancient b. busy c. crowded d. isolated e. terrifying

2. When something is common, this means it's ....
a. rare b. strange c. unusual d. usual e. widespread

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. A .... is an animal like a big mouse.
a. cat b. goat c. rabbit d. rat

4. Basketball and tennis .... in this club.
a. are played b. is played c. play d. plays

5. Could you close .... front door, please ?
a. a b. an c. the d. those

PART 2

6. Did Aly .... his father on the farm ?

a.help b.helped c.helping d.helps

7. Electricity is produced in .... stations.

a.expert b.heating c.lighting d.power

8. Foxes have the ability to .... high walls.

a.build b.climb c.destroy d.guard

9. He .... 3 cups of coffee yesterday.

a.drank b.drink c.drinking d.drinks

10. It is not a bad thing to .... your opinion if it is wrong.

a.break b.change c.do d.make

11. Kareem was .... tired that he slept in his chair.

a.so b.such c.too d.very

12. My parents always .... me when I do well at school.

a.apologize b.blame c.defend d.praise

13. Pollution .... the environment.

a.volunteers b.leans c.harms d.avoids

14. Smoking .... the smoker's health.

a.benefits b.damages c.describes d.develops

15. They will .... 21 next Monday.

a.be b.been c.being d.is

16. We haven't seen her .... she went to Paris.

a.already b.for c.since d.yet

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Trees are beautiful. They are the useful gifts of nature. They are great friends of man. They give us flowers, fruits, timber, bamboo, fuels ... etc. We can rest in the cool shade of a tree. We get wood from the trees to make furniture, doors and windows. Trees are also a great source of materials for rubber, paper, gums, herbs and medicine plants. Forests bring clouds and cause rainfall. Trees prevent soil erosion . They protect us from severe weather. Trees are part and parcel of earthly life. All life, directly or indirectly, owes its existence to them . Trees release oxygen, which we need for our life. They also absorb carbon dioxide gas. Many living species live in trees. Trees form natural habitats for many animals, birds and insects. Trees help make the land fertile. We get good crops from fertile land. They are the source of the fruits and the flowers. They offer us cool shades during summer. During the rainy season , we take shelter under trees . Trees and plants are the source of many life-saving drugs . They prevent land erosion and guard us against pollution. Thus, trees keep up the ecological balance . Trees protect us from inclement wind , too. Seeds , nuts and fruits are food sources for humans and animals . Trees protect the biodiversity of the ecosystem. Trees resins are used in producing varnishes . Essential oils derived from trees are used in medical and aroma industries. Thus , trees play an important role in our life. Cutting down the trees disturbs the ecosystem. We should preserve trees and plants with great care.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. All life .... its existence to trees.
a. awes b. lays c. owes d. owns

18. Doors, windows and .... are made of wood.
a. silver b. gold c. furniture d. cars

19. Cutting the trees .... the ecosystem.
a. causes b. disturbs c. encourages d. freshens

20. Many birds, animals and .... take trees as natural habitats.
a. seeds b. plants c. insects d. humans

21. One needs .... for his life.
a. oxygen b. nitrogen c. hydrogen d. carbon dioxide

22. Trees have .... benefits.
a. a little b. a lot c. little d. many

23. We can rest in the cool .... of a tree.
a. shade b. shake c. shame d. share

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Egyptian scientists have achieved great successes all over the world.

a. حقق العلماء المصريون نجاحًا عظيمًا فى بعض أنحاء العالم.
b. حقق العلماء المصريون نجاحات عظيمة فى كل أجزاء العالم.
c. لقد حقق العلماء المصريون نجاحًا عظيمًا فى بعض أنحاء العالم.
d. لقد حقق العلماء المصريون نجاحات عظيمة فى كل أنحاء العالم.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

يساعدنا السفر فى التعرف على لغات وعادات المجتمعات.

a. Travelling helps us recognized the languages and customs of societies.
b. Travelling helps us to recognize the languages and customs of societies.
c. Travelling helps us in recognition of the languages and customs of societies.
d. Travelling helps us in the recognition of the language and customs of societies.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Friendship"

....

4 Qalyoubia Governorate — Benha Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. The antonyms of the adjective "cheap" are .... and ....
a. valuable b. harmful c. inexpensive d. common e. priceless

2. He was over the moon. This means he was .... and ....
a. very disappointed b. very shocked c. very sad d. very happy e. very pleased

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. Blood .... is very essential to save many victims' lives.
a. rank b. sample c. transition d. donation

PART 2

4. Our school objects .... noises during exams totally.
a. to make b. to be made c. to making d. making

5. The soldiers were fired since they made an armed .... against the state.
a. party b. part c. play d. mutiny

6. Amr .... his car fixed at the workshop in the last few years.
a. got b. gets c. had got d. has had

7. All the future upcoming smart cars will be ....
a. electricity b. electric c. electrical d. electrify

8. Ahmed intends that he .... a used car next month, so he is saving up money.
a. will buy b. might buy c. is going to buy d. is buying

9. The criminals were seen .... the bank last year via the hidden camera.
a. robbed b. being robbed c. to rob d. rob

10. It is taken for .... that tourism is the main source of the national income.
a. printed b. granted c. wanted d. painted

11. We should protect the .... rare animals esp. in wild open reserves.
a. endangered b. danger c. dangerous d. dangerously

12. A : Which food have you .... eaten before and you like to try it ? B : Really, shrimp.
a. ever b. never c. lately d. since

13. Biologists discovered .... unique orangutan in the tropical rain forests.
a. the b. any c. an d. a

14. We need .... friendly sources of fuels to avoid pollution.
a. environmentally b. environmentalist c. environment d. environmental

15. Ali asked his father for .... 50 pounds to buy a new leather jacket.
a. other b. others c. the others d. another

16. Farmers' cows and goats often feed on the .... from the fields.
a. flavour b. books c. irons d. hay

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medical purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow trees. Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used. The powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one herb that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair diseases. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for the hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer. If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check <u>his</u> reference books before writing out a prescription.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. Natural remedies are attracting attention because they ....
   a. are used in Egypt
   b. have no side effects
   c. are exported from Egypt
   d. can treat few diseases
18. Garlic is an example of ....
   a. natural remedies
   b. have no side effects
   c. chemical medicines
   d. modern drugs
19. .... is a physical condition that shows you may have a particular disease.
   a. Prescription b. Symptom c. Remedy d. Ointment
20. A herbalist writes out a prescription .... checking his reference books.
   a. while b. during c. after d. before
21. The word "**his**" refers to the ....
   a. herbalist b. shop c. customer d. prescription
22. What is common between garlic and henna? They both ....
   a. take care of cancer
   b. they are used to treat lungs
   c. have toxic chemicals
   d. take care of hair
23. We knew that pharaohs had much interest about plants through ....
   a. garlic b. paintings c. herbs d. food

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Water is the artery of life for all creatures, so we must keep the Nile clean and avoid all kinds of contamination as much as possible for the coming generations.

a. المياه هى شريان الحياة لكل البشر لذلك يجب أن نحافظ على نهر النيل نظيف ونتجنب كل أنواع التلوث قدر الامكان من أجل أجيال المستقبل.

b. المياه هى شريان الحياة لكل المخلوقات لذلك يجب أن نحافظ على نهر النيل نظيف ونتجنب كل أنواع التلوث بقدر الأمكان من أجل أجيال المستقبل.

c. المياه هى شريان الحياة لكل المخلوقات لذلك يجب أن نحافظ على نهر النيل ملوث ونتجنب كل أنواع التلوث بقدر الأمكان من أجل أجيال المستقبل.

d. المياه هى شريان الحياة لكل المخلوقات لذلك يجب أن نحافظ على نهر النيل نظيف ونتجنب كل أنواع التلوث بقدر الأمكان من أجل أجيال الماضى.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

الصحة كنز غالى لابد من المحافظة عليها ولذلك لابد من اتباع نظام غذائى صحى وتجنب الطعام السريع الذى يسبب أمراض الشيخوخة والفيروسات القاتلة.

a. Health is a precious treasure that must be conserved, so a healthy diet should be followed avoiding the junk food that causes ageing diseases and deadly viruses.

b. Health is a precious treasure that can be conserved, so a healthy diet should be followed avoiding the junk food that causes ageing diseases and viruses.

c. Health is a precious treasure that must be served, so a healthy diet should be followed avoiding the junk food that causes ageing and diseases and viruses.

d. Health is a precious treasure that must be conserved, so a healthy diet should be followed avoiding the junk food causing ageing and deer and viruses.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"The value of agriculture and desert invasion"

....

5 Sharkia Governorate — Dyarb Negm Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. If something is .... , you have no right to try to know it.
   a. popular b. personal c. common d. comfortable e. secret
2. Before writing a/an .... on the internet, you have to check your source of information.
   a. post b. block c. blog d. scam e. upload

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. People should use bicycles as a .... form of transport.
   a. sustainable b. social c. sensitive d. stable
4. They .... him the money he needed for his school fees.
   a. lend b. lends c. lent d. has lent
5. My grandfather returned to live in his .... after retiring.
   a. homesick b. hometown c. homeless d. homework
6. Deers .... for skin and meat.
   a. hunt b. hunted c. are hunting d. are hunted
7. I read the .... of the crime in Al Ahram newspaper.
   a. details b. applications c. films d. titles
8. Archaeologists .... the site for so long but they haven't found anything yet.
   a. explored b. have explored
   c. had explored d. have been exploring
9. There is a heated .... about whether women should work or stay at home.
   a. debate b. delegate c. delete d. calculate
10. The referee blew his .... to give the player a red card and send him out.
    a. whistle b. waste c. waist d. washer
11. We can't have rest, we have .... time before the exam begins.
    a. few b. little c. enough d. a little
12. Two adults were involved in the .... of 5 million dollars from the company.
    a. scan b. scam c. screen d. scream
13. The boss's decided to resign, he .... next month.
    a. will resign b. is resigning c. is going to resign d. resigns
14. .... English generally drive on the left of the road.
    a. A b. An c. The d. No article
15. You .... eat any food that smells bad.
    a. must b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't
16. The actress .... nicely to the camera before she left.
    a. smiled b. sounded c. slowed d. attached

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

While the world was getting into the new year's celebration, David was driving his cab through the crowded streets. After losing his wife to the COVID-19 pandemic 4 years ago, David spent most of his time working. Driving his cab day and night as if nothing had happened. Inside, however, he was suffering. He was lost in his thoughts when a man hailed him for a ride. He was well dressed and had a bunch of gifts in his hands. The destination was quite far. A few minutes, the passenger started chatting with David. After a while, David asked Jack if he was new to the city or visiting someone here. "I have been in Canada for two years. It feels great coming home afters such a long time. The best thing is, they have no idea I'm coming," replied Jack, animatedly. "Sounds like you have a big loving family." said David. A very big family, yes. I have missed them a lot." Jack replied. A lucky man, David wondered. When they reached their destination, Jack got out of the car and invited David for a cup of coffee. Just as David got out of the cab, 8 children rushed outside laughing and screaming. It was an orphanage and Jack considered these children his. David was standing in disbelief. All of the children's faces were glowing with happiness. That moment, David learned that happiness grows when shared. And after a long time, he was smiling again.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. David works as a/an ....
   a. commuter b. traveller c. driver d. porter
18. Jack had .... children.
   a. four b. five c. eight d. no
19. David's wife died in ....
   a. 2017 b. 2018 c. 2019 d. 2020
20. David .... Jack as he has a big loving family.
   a. considered b. envied c. wondered d. enlarged
21. According to the passage, **glowing** gives the same meaning of ....
   a. glooming b. shading c. darkening d. shinning
22. Jack was a .... man.
   a. miserable b. hospitable c. hateful d. nasty
23. David finally realised that .... comes from sharing others cares.
   a. sadness b. happiness c. grief d. regret

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Religious and moral values must be instilled into the hearts of our youth which protect them from deviation.

a. يجب غرس القيم الثقافية والاخلاقية في عقول شبابنا التي تحميهم من الانحراف.
b. يجب غرس القيم الدينية والاجتماعية في عقول شبابنا التي تحميهم من الانحراف.
c. يجب غرس القيم الدينية والاخلاقية في عقول شبابنا التي تحميهم من الانحراف.
d. يجب غرس القيم الدينية والإخلاقية في عقول شبابنا التي تمنعهم من الانحراف.

PART 2

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تهدف مبادرة حياة كريمة لتحسين حياة المصريين وخاصة الفقراء والمحتاجين لذلك لابد نشارك فيها جميعا

a. The decent life initiative aims at enhance the life of citizens especially the poor and the needy, therefore, we should all share in it.
b. The decent life initiative aims to enhancing the life of citizens especially the poor and the needy, therefore, we should all share in it.
c. The decent life initiative aims to enhance the life of Egyptians especially the poor and the needy, therefore, we shouldn't all share in it.
d. The decent life initiative aims to enhance the life of Egyptians especially the poor and the needy, therefore, we should all share in it.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"How can we avoid bad habits to lead a healthier life ?"

....

6 Menofia Governorate — Shibeen El-Koum Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. The teacher asked us a clear question. The word clear can be replaced by ....
   a. pure b. light c. complicated d. obvious e. understandable
2. Don't be angry, and I will solve the problem. The antonyms of 'angry' are ....
   a. upset b. pleased c. stressed d. glad e. kind

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. My sister doesn't need a lift as her flat is .... the third floor.
   a. in b. at c. on d. next to
4. I told my little brother not to .... over the balcony because he might fall.
   a. lean b. kneel c. trek d. limit
5. People who inhabit oases prefer to use local .... for building their houses.
   a. headquarters b. materials c. ecotourism d. cliffs
6. Stevenson was not always .... as the weather in Edinburgh was too cold for him.
   a. good b. well c. best d. the better
7. If a poisonous .... bites you on the leg, it will be swelled up at once.
   a. lemur b. pigeon c. mosquito d. scar
8. Kamal wants to be a/an .... to protect animals and plants from extinction.
   a. garden b. environmental c. archaeologist d. conservationist
9. All the members of my family were .... during my sister's wedding party. It was a happy occasion.
   a. loads of things b. cried in pain c. over the moon d. blew a whistle
10. I have not gone to the zoo with my family .... I was a child.
    a. for b. yet c. just d. since
11. Last Friday, two expert chasers tracked a little lion by its .... until it was found.
    a. beak prints b. paw prints c. tail prints d. footsteps

12. The supreme director is admired for his .... for those miserable children. He is always there to cheer them up.

a. crutch b. magistrate c. compassion d. volunteer

13. The civil engineer would like to have .... information about all the projects.

a. a few urgent b. lot of urgent c. a little urgent d. a plenty of urgent

14. An imposter sent an email saying that I won an award, but I think it was a ....

a. skim b. scan c. scale d. scam

15. These new devices are cheap on the internet so I .... them when I get home.

a. will have bought b. am going to buy, c. am buying d. will be buying

16. Our teachers warned us .... those who tell lies or hypocritical people.

a. to trust not b. don't trust c. not to trust d. never trust

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Man's life has been a subject to a lot of changes during the last hundred years, particularly in what is connected with his consuming habits. Sixty years ago, before the start of the consumer societies of today's world, people did not throw away so many of the things they used. They re-used bottles, jars, cardboard boxes and paper bags much more carefully than we do today. Nowadays, we are returning to the same good idea which we now call "recycling".

We can re-think about what we throw out. Why do we throw away so much food packaging, so many plastic supermarket bags, old newspapers, old books bottles and cans ? What are all these heaps of waste doing to our environment ? Can't we use some of this refuse again ? The answer is : yes, we can.

New recycling industries are starting to reuse some of our rubbish. For example, the island of Taiwan now buys waste paper from the USA and recycles it to make newspapers, and for use in offices and homes. Japan takes scrap metal from the USA and makes some new parts with it. Most European and American cities now have "recycling centres" for people's old bottles and newspapers. As a matter of fact, recycling is not only good for the environment, but it is good business, too.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. The best title for this passage is ....

a. The pros and cons of recycling
b. An old habit people need nowadays
c. Recycling harms the environment
d. A bad habit we miss

18. Recycling our rubbish means ....

a. throwing it away b. keeping it c. using it again d. burning it

19. The underlined pronoun "it" in the third paragraph refers to ....

a. paper b. Taiwan c. the USA d. metal

20. What "change" does the writer refer to in the first paragraph ?

a. People throw many things all the time.
b. People became wasteful than before.
c. People began to recycle old things again.
d. People refuse any consuming habits.

21. Without recycling, people will ....

a. suffer from more environmental problems
b. solve all the the environmental issues
c. buy more newspapers
d. increase their good habits

PART 2

22. The USA .... scrap metal to Japan.

a. borrows b. exports c. imports d. crushes

23. Our grandparents were .... than we are today.

a. less careful b. more careless c. more economical d. less wise

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

All living creatures need to cooperate to fulfil their ambitions. Teamwork and tolerance are essential for the success of any project.

a. تحتاج معظم الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقق أهدافها. فالعمل الجماعي والتسامح ضروريان للنجاح في كل المشاريع.

b. تحتاج كل الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لإنجاز أهدافها. فالعمل المجتمعي والتسامح ضروريان للنجاح في أي المشاريع.

c. تحتاج كل الكائنات الحية أن تتعارك لتحقيق أهدافها. فالعمل الجماعي قبل التسامح ضروري للنجاح في أي مشروع.

d. تحتاج كل الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لإنجاز طموحاتها. فالعمل الجماعي والتسامح ضروريان للنجاح في أي مشروع.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

كانت مصر من أوائل الدول التي وفرت لقاح كوفيد ١٩ لمواطنيها. وعددت من مصادر الحصول على الأنواع المختلفة منه كما وفرته بالمجان.

a. Egypt was one of the first states that proves the vaccine COVID-19 for its people. It has also showed more sources of obtaining its different types for free.

b. Egypt was one of the first countries to provide the COVID-19 vaccine to its cities. It also made much more sources of buying different types of it, and provided it free of charge.

c. Egypt was one of the first states which provides the vaccine COVID-19 for its citizens. It had also made many sources of getting different types of it for free.

d. Egypt was one of the first countries to provide the COVID-19 vaccine to its citizens. It also made many sources of obtaining different types of it, and provided it free of charge.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Social media as a double edged weapon"

....

7 Gharbia Governorate — Qutur Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Never write .... comments about other people.

a. kind b. positive c. unkind d. rude e. favourable

2. She travels to all kinds of exotic locations all over the world. The synonyms of the word "exotic" are ....

a. real b. strange c. normal d. unusual e. usual

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. You can only use this computer if you know the ....

a. password b. cell c. clarification d. moral

4. While I .... for the train on the station, I met one of my old friends.

a. waited b. being waited c. waiting d. was waiting

5. There is always a lot of .... before you can go on a plane.
a. bullying b. security c. malware d. calm

6. I .... the faculty of engineering when I grow up; it's my intention.
a. will join b. join c. am going to join d. am joining

7. The Egyptian coach had no doubts about his team's .... to reach the World Cup finals.
a. ability b. stability c. charity d. community

8. Ahmed went to prison as he couldn't pay off his .... to the bank.
a. debates b. debits c. debts d. dots

9. In Egypt, students in primary school have to wear .... uniform.
a. a b. an c. some d. no article

10. A spider bit me while I was sleeping and my arm swelled ....
a. up b. off c. on d. out

11. The teacher suggested .... to the library to borrow some poetry books.
a. go b. to go c. to going d. going

12. Wildlife .... is necessary to stop species from dying out.
a. pressure b. livestock c. intelligence d. conservation

13. I .... my friend since September.
a. didn't see b. hadn't seen c. haven't seen d. wasn't seen

14. Basel offered .... me with my homework.
a. helped b. helping c. to help d. help

15. My father has been searching .... for cheap flights.
a. in line b. on the line c. online d. offline

16. This train .... exactly at 10:30 in the morning.
a. leave b. leaving c. leaves d. is leaving

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

From far out in space, the Earth looks like a blue ball. Since water covers three-fourths of the Earth's surface, blue is the colour we see most. The continents look brown, like small islands floating in the huge, blue sea. The Earth is shaped like a sphere or a ball. It is 25,000 miles around! It would take more than a year to walk around the whole planet. A spaceship can fly around the widest part of the sphere in only 90 minutes.

Even though spaceships have travelled to the Moon, people cannot visit the Moon without special suits. The Moon has no air or water. Astronauts first landed on the Moon in 1969. After that, there were six more trips to the Moon. They brought back Moon rocks, which scientists are still studying.

The sun is the <u>closest</u> star to Earth. A star is a hot ball of burning gas. The Sun looks very big because <u>it</u> is so close. But the Sun is just a medium-sized star. Billions of far-away stars are much bigger than our Sun. The burning gases from the Sun are so hot that they warm the Earth from 93 million miles away! Even though the Sun is always shining, the night here on Earth is dark. That's because the Earth rotates, or turns around, every 24 hours. During the day, the Earth faces the Sun. Then we see light. During the night, the Earth turns away from the Sun. Then it faces the darkness of space.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. According to the passage, man landed on the moon .... times.
a. six b. seven c. eight d. nine

18. Our Earth is a ....
a. star b. sun c. planet d. plant

19. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to ?
a. The Moon b. The space c. The Sun d. The Earth

20. The antonym of the word closest is ....
a. largest b. biggest c. farthest d. nearest

21. .... are still studying Moon rocks.
a. Scientists b. Doctors c. Astrologers d. Botanists

22. From space, the Earth looks like ....
a. a star b. a blue ball c. the space d. the moon

23. The sun is so close to the earth so it looks ....
a. huge b. small c. light d. distant

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Good personal hygiene is important for both health and social reasons. It entails keeping your hands, head and body clean.

a. النظافة الشخصية الجيدة مهمة لأسباب إجتماعية وشخصية. إنه يستلزم الحفاظ على نظافة يديك ورأسك وجسمك.

b. النظافة العامة الجيدة ضرورية لأسباب صحية وإجتماعية. إنه يحتاج منك الحفاظ على يديك ورأسك ورجلك نظيفة.

c. النظافة الشخصية الجيدة مهمة لأسباب صحية واجتماعية. إنه يستلزم الحفاظ على نظافة يديك ورأسك وجسمك.

d. النظافة الشخصية الجيدة هامة لأسباب صحية وتعليمية. إنه يقتضي أن تحافظ على يديك وعقلك وجسمك.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

يسبب التدخين أمراض كثيرة من بينها سرطان الرئة. والغريب هو استمرار المدخنين رغم علمهم بتلك المخاطر.

a. Smoking caused many diseases including lung cancer, but the strong thing is smokers' continuity despite their knowledge of these risks.

b. Smoking causes many diseases included lung cancer, but the strange thing is smoker's continuity despite their knowledge of these desks.

c. Smoking causes lot of disease including lung cancer, but the strange thing is smokers' continue despite their knowledge of this risks.

d. Smoking causes many diseases including lung cancer, but the strange thing is smokers' continuity despite their knowledge of these risks.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"How can sports protect youth from dangerous problems ?"

8 Dakahlia Governorate — Timay Al Imdid Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. My friend's house is in an isolated area. The synonyms of "isolated" are .... and ....
a. remote b. near c. funny d. distant e. close

2. Unfortunately two of my colleagues were fired last week. The antonyms of "fire" are .... and ....

a. sack b. take on c. employ d. leave e. quit

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. The words "dine" and "fine" ....

a. rhythm b. compose c. rhyme d. define

4. Did you go out last night or you .... busy ?

a. did b. are c. were d. was

5. The email looked like it came from my bank, but it was an example of ....

a. phishing b. antivirus c. locking d. loading

6. Next week, we .... research on agriculture as decided.

a. will do b. are going to do c. are doing d. do

7. Eco-hotels are .... friendly. They had little ill effects on nature.

a. environmentally b. environment c. environmental d. environmentalists

8. Since she .... hard, she will be promoted.

a. worked b. have worked c. work d. works

9. Twelve soldiers were sentenced to life imprisonment for ....

a. mutiny b. loyalty c. bravery d. safety

10. Only .... fans attended the show because of coronavirus.

a. few b. a few c. little d. many

11. Dried grapes and berries are called ....

a. current b. currant c. currency d. circket

12. While .... , I was crying out of pain in hospital.

a. examining b. examined c. being examined d. was examining

13. In what ways are the Egyptian and the American .... different ?

a. admittance b. cultures c. language d. person

14. Amazing ! Have you finished your work .... ?

a. yet b. ever c. since d. already

15. You will read about the problem in tomorrow's ....

a. papyrus b. a paper c. papers d. pepper

16. The police don't allow .... in front of police stations.

a. to park b. parking c. to parking d. parked

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming. Desertification also leads to warmer temperatures. The hazard of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment.



Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of **its** withering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the **ecological** balance; therefore some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources : solar, wind, hydro, geothermal and biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth, 30 % of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. Desertification means .... a wide area of trees.
    a. clearing b. planting c. irrigating d. spraying
18. The underlined word "**its**" refers to ....
    a. desertification b. global warming c. carbon dioxide d. environment
19. Scientists recommend .... fossil fuels in an attempt to solve the problem.
    a. using b. misusing c. reducing d. reusing
20. Burning fossil fuels .... global warming.
    a. causes of b. results of c. leads to d. results from
21. The synonym of the word "**ecological**" is ....
    a. environmental b. biological c. chemical d. material
22. According to the passage, we .... the destructive effects of global warming.
    a. will face b. faced c. have never faced d. are already facing
23. The best title for this passage is "...........".
    a. National Disasters b. Global Disasters
    c. Trees and Nature d. Anthropogenic Activities

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

A civilized society should treat its elderly members well even if it is multicultural.

a. المجتمع المتحضر ينبغى عليه أن يعامل كبار السن معاملة جيدة حتى لو كان مجتمع متعدد الثقافات.

b. المجتمع المتحضر يجب أن يراعى فى تعامله الأعضاء القدماء حتى لو كان متعدد اللغات.

c. يجب على المجتمع المتحضر أن يعالج كبار السن جيدا رغم تعدد الثقافات.

d. المجتمع الملتحضر هو الذى يجب عليه أن يتعامل مع صغار السن جيدا حتى او كان متعدد الثقافات.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

انها مسئولية الوالدين أن يقوموا بتنوير الشباب بالآثار المدمرة لتناول المخدرات القاتلة.

a. It's the parents' responsibility to make the youth aware of the destructive effects of taking killing drugs.

b. Parents are responsible for making the youth unaware of the destructive effects of eating killing drugs.

c. It's the parents' irresponsibility to lighten the youth of the destructive effects of taking killing drugs.

d. Parents are responsible for making their children unaware of the destructive effects of taking killing drugs.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"My plans for the future"

....

....

9 Beheira Governorate — Damanhour Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. She refused to a admit breaking the camera. The antonyms of "admit" are ....
   a. conceal b. agree c. deny d. accept e. consist
2. Elephants are one of the giant animals on land now. The synonyms of "giant" are ....
   a. tiny b. enormous c. delighted d. ancient e. gigantic

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. We .... the email and replied to it.
   a. receive b. received c. has received d. was received
4. A .... is a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them.
   a. captain b. pirate c. crew d. lifeguard
5. .... helps protect natural environment.
   a. Pollution b. Destination c. Ecotourism d. Isolation
6. When Amira was young, she used to live in Alexandria. This sentence means that ....
   a. Amira still lives in Alexandria b. Amira didn't live in Alexandria
   c. Amira doesn't live in Alexndria any more d. Amira never lived in Alexandria
7. Her .... changed once she heard of her success.
   a. experiment b. expression c. disease d. coast
8. This is the most exciting match I have .... seen.
   a. never b. ever c. for d. since
9. This car is very bad and old-fashioned. It doesn't .... the price you have paid for it.
   a. conserve b. preserve c. deserve d. reward
10. When I leave school, I'd like to be .... tourist guide.
    a. the b. a c. an d. no article
11. The .... of solar energy depends on light from the sun.
    a. pronunciation b. salutation c. population d. production
12. Sending messages online to frighten or worry someone is called ....
    a. downloading b. blogging c. cyberbullying d. sharing
13. I promise to buy you a tablet if you come first. This means that I .... you a tablet if you come first.
    a. will buy b. am buying c. am going to buy d. buy
14. When the lights go out at night, we usually depend on ....
    a. the sun b. daylight c. darkness d. candlelight
15. I can't imagine .... in this city. It is beautiful and modern.
    a. to live b. living c. to living d. live



PART 2

16. .... their stay in Alexandria, they met some old friends.

a. During b. While c. When d. As

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

People may be divided into two groups, winners and losers. Because our families and friends have a great effect on us as we grow, we are born hopeless and dependent on our environment. Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes, they do their own thinking. They listen to, think of what they say and then they make their own decisions.

Although they may fall at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners <u>overcome</u> their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves, but they can give it up if duty calls.

Losers, on the other hand never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many reasons why people can become losers : disease, poor food, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences, these can slow down the normal progress towards becoming winners. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers don't do anything and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and repeat their own mistakes again. Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problem with their lives but never try to change.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. The best title to the passage is ....

a. losers b. winners c. winners and losers d. anxious people

18. Winners can change their own ideas by ....

a. blaming others for their mistakes
b. using their mistakes as excuses
c. being in charge of their own lives
d. waiting for something wonderful

19. When the winners fall at times, they ....

a. are afraid to try new things
b. keep their self-confidence
c. spend their time waiting
d. repeat their own mistakes

20. The underlined verb "<u>overcome</u>" can have the same meaning of ....

a. get on b. get up c. get by d. get over

21. Losers need ....

a. to repeat their mistakes
b. not to change their ideas
c. to use their mistakes as excuses
d. to learn from their mistakes

22. Winners are .... people.

a. evil b. careless c. responsible d. bad

23. Which of the following is correct ?

a. People may fail at times but not all times.
b. People can't change their mind.
c. Winners can't get over their bad experiences.
d. Winners can't fight dangerous situations.

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Egypt is one of the countries that have several attractions for tourists. Beside the admirable monuments, Egypt has a splendid weather in winter.

a. تعد مصر من الدول التى لديها العديد من عوامل الجذب للسياح، فإلى جانب الآثار الرائعة، تتمتع مصر بطقس رائع فى الشتاء.

b. تعد مصر من الدول التى لديها العديد من القيود للسياح، فإلى جانب الآثار الرائعة، تتمتع مصر بطقس رائع فى الشتاء.

c. تعد مصر من الدول التى لديها العديد من المعالم للسياح، فإلى جانب الآثار الرائعة، تتمتع مصر بطقس عجيب فى الشتاء.

d. تعد مصر من الدول التى لديها العديد من عوامل الجذب للسياح، فإلى جانب اللحظات الرائعة، تتمتع مصر بطقس رائع فى الشتاء

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لقد أصبحت الهواتف الذكية خطرا كبيرا على الأطفال والشباب لما تسببه من أضرار صحية وفقدانهم القدرة على التواصل بشكل جيد مع الآخرين.

a. Smartphones have become a great danger to children and youth because they cause health damages and make them win their ability to communicate well with another people.

b. Smartphones have become a great dangerous to children and youth because they cause health damages and make them lose their ability to communicate well with others people.

c. Smartphones have become a great danger to children and youth because they cause health damages and make them lose their ability to communicate well with other people.

d. Smartphones have become a great danger to children and youth because they cause healthy damages and make them lose their disability to communicate well with the other people.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Keeping the environment clean is the responsibility of every citizen"

....

....

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate — Biala Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. When something is rare, this means it's ....
 a. real b. usually c. usual d. seldom e. scarce

2. The tourist industry has had a big .... on the local town.
 a. effect b. impact c. effective d. contact e. connect

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. The lion .... so people were frightened.
 a. smiled b. spoke c. roared d. laughed

4. He is going to travel ....
 a. broad b. bread c. abroad d. breed

5. He wrote his .... on his own.
 a. biography b. career c. autobiography d. future

6. You have to update your anti-virus ....
a. hardware b. software c. malware d. nowhere

7. A line of plants that have small fruits is a ....
a. current b. currant c. gravel d. plot

8. I'd rather she .... me with my work.
a. help b. helps c. helped d. helping

9. I couldn't answer the phone, because I ....
a. play b. playing c. was playing d. played

10. It's two days since we .... met.
a. last b. the last c. ago d. always

11. You should find out .... your new work.
a. on b. for c. about d. with

12. Ali is very clever, he .... answer all the exam.
a. will b. is going to c. never d. ever

13. France is .... European country.
a. an b. the c. a d. no article

14. It's no use .... fast foods.
a. eat b. eats c. ate d. eating

15. He can .... his living in Egypt.
a. gain b. beat c. win d. earn

16. He is usually .... with his friends.
a. play b. plays c. playing d. played

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Walking in the street at night. I found a purse full of money and an identity card. I found a photo of a pretty young lady, I put it back in the purse and went directly to the police station. The sergeant made a note of my name and address. Last Friday, I was invited to a party in my friend's house in Shoubra. A neighbour of my friend came to visit his wife. When I looked at her face, I found it familiar to me although we hadn't met before. After a short time, I remembered that she was the lady I had seen in the photo.

I was able to describe the purse and the sum of money accurately. She was surprised and we went together to the police station to get the purse back. After getting out of the police station, she thanked me a lot. She told me that she had looked for her purse for a long time until she lost hope to find it. I went home feeling happy as I was able to make this lady happy. It is good to feel satisfied with yourself.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. The writer met the purse owner in ....
a. the police station b. street c. their first school d. his friend' house

18. The word "............" in the passage is the antonym of the word "exotic".
a. abnormal b. familiar c. purse d. accurate

19. This passage is extracted from a ....
a. comic b. science book c. religion book d. story

20. The moral lesson is ....
a. feeling happy b. walking in the street c. finding a purse d. making others happy

21. If the lady didn't visit her friend's wife, she would ....
a. not know about her purse
b. not forget about her purse
c. forget about the money
d. find her purse

22. If you find a sum of money, it's honest to ....
a. give it to the police
b. give it to the friends
c. share it with others
d. share it with the police

23. The word "**satisfied**" means ....
a. angry b. happy c. cross d. nervous

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

We should be interested in the new technology in all fields to be able to cope with the advanced countries.

a. يجب أن نهتم بالتكنولوجيا القديمة في كل المجالات لكي نساير الدول المتقدمة.
b. يجب أن نهتم بالإنترنت والتكنولوجيا في كل الحياة لكي نساير الدول المتقدمة.
c. يجب أن نهتم بالتكنولوجيا الحديثة في كل المجالات لكي نساير الدول المتقدمة.
d. يجب أن نهتم بالتكنولوجيا الحديثة لكي نساير الدول المتقدمة.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

يجب علينا أن نعمل كرجل واحد للمساعدة في زيادة الإنتاج في مصر من الآن فصاعدًا.

a. We should work as one man to help increases production in Egypt from now on.
b. We should work as one man to help increase production in Egypt from now on.
c. We should work as one man to help increasing production in Egypt from now on.
d. We should work to help increase production in Egypt from now on.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"The pros and cons of the Mass media"

....

11 Suez Governorate — North Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. You should be quiet when you .... an important decision.
a. do b. damage c. take d. protect e. make

2. When our team won the cup, we were over the moon. That means we were .... and ....
a. late b. happy c. delighted d. miserable e. sad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. A .... is a sailor who attacks ships and steals them.
a. captain b. pirate c. crew d. miserable

4. Watch out! You .... the flower vase.
a. would drop b. drop c. are dropping d. are going to drop



5. A group of criminals who work together is called a ....

a. tank b. band c. gang d. bank

6. England is .... European country.

a. an b. a c. the d. no article

7. .... is trying to trick someone into giving information over the internet.

a. Fishing b. Antivirus c. App d. Phishing

8. While I was writing a letter, my father .... me to have dinner.

a. was calling b. has called c. called d. calls

9. Good education and money give people ....

a. prestige b. shame c. greed d. honesty

10. Money .... to Egypt by the tourists, so we should keep our country clean.

a. brings b. is brought c. is bringing d. are brought

11. Before the operation the doctor should check the blood .... of the patient.

a. pleasure b. treasure c. measure d. pressure

12. I haven't seen him since he .... a child.

a. was b. is c. has been d. had been

13. Children like to .... new games and movies from the internet.

a. upload b. downside c. download d. destroy

14. Luxor is considered a main .... for many tourists.

a. destination b. cooperation c. location d. foundation

15. Someone broke .... my car and stole my laptop.

a. onto b. into c. from d. at

16. Next week, she .... 16 years old.

a. is going to be b. will be c. is d. is being

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are being continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming. Desertification is also leading to warmer temperatures. The hazard of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment. Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening, and we are already experiencing some of <u>its</u> withering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the <u>ecological</u> balance; therefore, some solutions must be devised. Alternative energy sources : solar, wind, hydro, geothermal and biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth 30 % of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. Desertification means .... a wide area of trees.
  a. clearing b. planting c. irrigating d. spraying
18. The underlined word "its" refers to ....
  a. desertification b. global warming c. environment d. CO2
19. Burning fossil fuels .... global warming.
  a. causes of b. results of c. leads to d. results from
20. The synonym of the underlined word "ecological" is ....
  a. environmental b. biological c. chemical d. material
21. Using nonrenewable sources of energy is not safe because it ....
  a. produces gases like carbon dioxide b. can be stolen easily
  c. can't be moved from a place to another d. can be flamed
22. According to the passage, we .... the destructive effects of the global warming.
  a. will face b. faced c. are already facing d. have never faced
23. The best title for this passage is "...........".
  a. National Disasters b. Global Disasters
  c. Trees and Nature d. Anthropogenic Activities

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

The Suez canal is the safest waterway in the world and an important source of Egypt's national income. The economic projects on its banks will add more to its benefits.

a. تعد قناة السويس أكثر الممرات المائية أمانا فى العالم ومصدرا هاما من مصادر الدخل القومى لمصر. كما ستضيف المشاريع الاقتصادية على ضفافها المزيد إلى فوائدها.

b. تعد قناة السويس أكثر الممرات المائية أمانا فى العالم ومصدرا هاما من مصادر الدخل القومى لمصر. كما ستضيف المشاريع الاقتصادية على ضفافها القليل إلى فوائدها.

c. تعد قناة السويس أكثر الممرات المائية أمانا فى العالم ومصدرا هاما من مصادر الدخل القومى لمصر. كما ستضيف المشاريع الاقتصادية فى نوكها المزيد إلى فوائدها.

d. قناة السويس هى مجرى مائى أمن ومصدر هام من مصادر الدخل القومى لمصر. كما ستضيف المشاريع الاقتصادية فى بلوكها المزيد إلى فوائدها.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدرا مباشرا من مصادر الدخل القومى فى مصر، فمصر تمتلك الكثير والكثير من الاماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التى يرغب السياح فى زيارتها .

a. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of international income in Egypt as Egypt has more and more isolated natural palaces that tourists desire to visit.

b. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has more and less isolated artificial places that tourists desire to visit.

c. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt, as Egypt has more and more isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

d. Ecotourism is considered an indirect source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has more and more isolated natural places that tourists desire to go.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Tourism in Egypt"

....

PART 2

12 Damietta Governorate — El Zarqa Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. I'm against the idea of wasting much time on social media every day. The antonyms of the preposition "against" are ....
   a. in b. of c. with d. at e. for

2. People around the world admire Mohamed Salah. The synonyms of "admire" are ....
   a. disapprove b. appreciate c. check d. praise e. donate

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. He is going to travel .... on business.
   a. a board b. board c. broad d. abroad

4. People gave Mohamed Salah the .... , "The Happiness Maker".
   a. penname b. surname c. family name d. nickname

5. Clever athletes .... their powers till the last moments.
   a. send b. save c. provide d. do

6. Dr Magdy Yaqoup, the miracle of medicine, is admired .... all what he does for the sake of others.
   a. by b. to c. for d. with

7. Launching a campaign to ban .... at schools is a great idea.
   a. violence b. politeness c. generosity d. friendship

8. I do regret .... part in the previous competition. I could have come first.
   a. didn't take b. not to take c. not take d. not taking

9. There is going to be an international conference to study the environmental .... of global warming.
   a. impacts b. affections c. infections d. reasons

10. Look out! A wild dog .... us.
    a. is attacked b. going to attack c. will attack d. is about to attack

11. The work done willingly without being paid is known to be .... work.
    a. volunteer b. voluntary c. obligatory d. hard

12. He has greatly changed .... the last time I saw him.
    a. for b. when c. since d. after

13. .... refers to the programs that may cause harm and damage to your computer normal functioning.
    a. Cyberbullying b. Malware c. Phishing d. Software

14. .... on duty, I received a lot of calls.
    a. As b. When c. While d. Just as

15. Poets and writers are always .... by the experiences they get through in life.
    a. aspired b. inspired c. respired d. expired

16. My uncle used to have a huge wealth, but he .... any longer.
    a. has b. isn't c. didn't d. doesn't

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Should we work all the time without having rest or entertainment ? The answer is that we can't go on working without stopping. From time to time, we should stop to have some rest and some recreation to have fun. If we didn't, we could make mistakes and our work might get worse.

An overworked person may end up by losing their ability to think clearly and by having no energy to go on working. Sleep is one way by which we can renew our energy. Sports and games are also important for brainworkers, who stay in closed offices and don't have a good chance to exercise their muscles. Swimming, walking and other outdoor activities are excellent and may be very good for all people, so we shouldn't waste our weekends. People make full use of them by being in open spaces. Having forgotten all about our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full and return the next day to work with our energy fully renewed. Change has a magic effect on man's health and his work.

Only clever people are those who can make a balance between their work and their personal lives. They are hardworking when they do their jobs and they live the happiest moments when they aren't working.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. The best title for the passage is ....
    a.Happy Moments b.Magical Energy c.Importance of Rest d.Importance of Games
18. The underlined word "recreation" in the first paragraph means ....
    a.effort b.health c.stress d.relaxation
19. The writer's purpose in the last paragraph is to ....
    a.suggest doing our jobs in the open air b.tell us the story of hardworking people
    c.warn us of living happily without work d.advise us to make a life-work balance
20. According to the second paragraph, we understand that man's health improves by ....
    a.changing our sleeping habits b.thinking of the worries of life
    c.having a break every now and then d.working all the time without rest
21. All the following are examples of brainworkers except ....
    a.mathematicians b.cleaners c.surgeons d.engineers
22. According to the passage, change has ....
    a.a vital effect on health and work b.no effect on health or work
    c.an essential effect on health only d.an important effect on work only
23. An overworked person has a .... attitude towards work in the long run.
    a.positive b.violent c.aggressive d.negative

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Doubtlessly, pollution has serious effects on all the living beings in the environment whether it is man, animal or plant.

a. مما لاشك فيه أن للتلوث آثار خطيرة على الأشياء العائشة في البيئة سواء كان ذلك للإنسان أو الحيوان أو النبات.
b. مما لاشك فيه أن للتلوث آثار مفيدة على الكائنات الحية في البيئة سواء كان ذلك للإنسان أو الحيوان أو الكوكب.
c. مما لاشك فيه أن للتلوث آثار خطيرة على كافة الكائنات الحية في البيئة سواء كان ذلك للإنسان أو الحيوان أو النبات
d. مما لاشك فيه أن للسكان آثار خطيرة على كل الكائنات الحية في البيئة سواء كان ذلك للإنسان أو الحيوان أو النبات



25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تعتبر السياحة مصدرا من أهم مصادر الدخل القومي ولذا علينا أن ندرس كيف نجذب المزيد من السياح إلى مصر.

a. Tourism is considered one of the main sources for national income, so we should study how to attract more tourists to Egypt.

b. Tourism is considered one of the most important sources for national come, so we should be attractive to tourists to Egypt.

c. Tourism is considered one of the important sources for local income, so we should study how to attract tourism to Egypt.

d. Tourism is considered one of the most important sources for international income, so we should study how to attract terrorists to Egypt.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"A bad experience"

....

13 Port Said Governorate — Port Said Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Some students study the ancient history of Egypt. The antonyms of "ancient" are ....
   a. recent b. odd c. modern d. old e. aged
2. The synonyms of the word "admire" are ....
   a. hate b. respect c. dislike d. like e. detest

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. .... is the business of organising holidays to natural areas that are far away.
   a. Ecosystem b. Economy c. Education d. Ecotourism
4. Blood .... are checked before their blood is taken.
   a. honours b. doers c. donors d. careers
5. The farmer got a cat after he had a problem with ....
   a. lions b. tigers c. rats d. elephants
6. Farmers use .... to feed animals.
   a. hay b. milk c. gravel d. manure
7. The coach put the list of players up on the .... before the match.
   a. lecture b. noticeboard c. blackboard d. dashboard
8. A .... car is driven electronically without a human driver.
   a. driving b. driven c. driverless d. drive
9. My brother used a .... to make a hole on the ground.
   a. spade b. saw c. knife d. hammer
10. Every year, a prize .... to the best student in the class.
    a. is giving b. gives c. has given d. is given
11. .... you ever broken your leg ?
    a. Do b. Has c. Did d. Have

12. Which company are you working .... ?

a. up b. off c. for d. out

13. Can I ask you for .... money to pay off my debts ?

a. no b. some c. any d. many

14. My brother .... be 14 next month.

a. would b. is going to c. could d. will

15. Why .... millions of people go to America in the 19th century ?

a. did b. do c. does d. have

16. He refused .... me his book, so I was angry.

a. give b. to give c. giving d. to be given

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Sports are full of wonderful moments, but perhaps nothing is as exciting as the finish of the marathon. It is the longest and hardest race of all. The name marathon came from a village in Greece. A famous battle was fought there in the year 490 B.C. When the Greeks had beaten the persians, a soldier ran the way from Marathon to Athens more than 40 kilometers to tell people the good news. When the modern Olympic Games started in 1890, the organizers knew the story. The Marathon has been a race ever since.

In the ancient world, the Olympics were held every four years. They were an important part of life. In modern games we try to copy their ideas. The finest sportsmen in the world gather in one place or at least, the finest amateurs do. An amateur is someone who does not earn any money from sports. It is often difficult to say who is an amateur and who is not.

It is true that Olympic athletes do earn a large amount of money, like professional sportsmen. But Olympic athletes are of students, teachers, or a sport. They have to spend a lot of money on training. Their governments pay for their training, travel and pocket money because they want them to win.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. The marathon is the .... race of all.

a. longest b. modern c. fastest d. slowest

18. An amateur is someone who .... from sport.

a. doesn't earn any money b. earns much money

c. earns little money d. earns no money

19. The name marathon came from ....

a. story b. a village in Greece c. race d. toy

20. .... Olympic Games were started in 1890.

a. Ancient b. Modern c. Old d. Traditional

21. A lot of money is needed for Olympic athletes because ....

a. the governments need teachers.

b. Olympic athletes have to spend a lot of money on training.

c. the Olympics were held every four years.

d. Olympic Games were started in 1890.



22. The modern Olympic Games were started in ....
   a. 1800   b. 1980   c. 490   d. 1890

23. The underlined word "amateur" in the passage means ....
   a. not professional   b. modern   c. ancient   d. very old

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

The Suez Canal is the most important waterway in the world. It shortens the distance between the east and the west.

a. أهم قناة هي قناة السويس ويعمل بها العديد من الأشخاص في المشرق والمغرب.
b. تعتبر قناة السويس أهم ممر مائي في العالم، فهي تقصر المسافة بين الشرق والغرب.
c. تعتبر قناة السويس من أهم الممرات في دول الشرق الأوسط ودول الغرب، فهي بين الشرق والغرب.
d. تمر قناة السويس بين الشرق والغرب وتحمل آلاف السفن والعالم.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تؤثر وسائل الإعلام سلبا وإيجابا على جميع متابعيها خاصة المراهقين، ولذا ينبغي الحرص على اختيار الأشياء التي يتم بثها بدقة.

a. Means of communication, negatively and positively, affects all citizens, and therefore care should be taken to choose the appropriate content.
b. Mass media provides transportation positively and negatively for all citizens, and therefore care should be taken to choose the appropriate means.
c. Mass media provides media positively and negatively for teens, and therefore care should be taken to choose the things that are broadcast accurately.
d. Mass media, negatively and positively, affects all its followers, especially adolescents, and therefore care should be taken to choose the things that are broadcast accurately.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"The advantages and disadvantages of the internet"

....

....

14 Fayoum Governorate — Youssef El-Sadeek Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. We saw two more wild cats creeping towards us in the darknees. The antonyms of the word "wild" are ....
   a. fierce   b. harmful   c. tame   d. domesitc   e. legal

2. He is on a trek through the South Gobi desert. The word "trek" here is a synonym of ....
   a. fishing   b. hike   c. losing   d. fabricating   e. journey

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. Over the years the village has been established as one of the best .... destinations.
   a. eco-tourism   b. ecotourist   c. ecosystem   d. eco-friendly

4. Trojan viruses are another form of .... you need to protect against.
   a. fishing   b. phishing   c. cyber   d. the internet

5. He was a great .... who wrote many poems.
a. novelist b. author c. poet d. illustrator

6. I .... my watch 9 : 30. I figured I had ten minutes to pull this off, at the most.
a. checked b. shocked c. choked d. shook

7. He was watching a game of tennis on a television ....
a. meet b. click c. monitor d. scam

8. My friend keeps .... photos all day.
a. logging in b. posting c. lighting d. connecting

9. While Laila was cooking lunch, her brother ....
a. slept b. sleeping c. was sleeping d. has slept

10. .... anybody need help ?
a. Do b. Does c. Is d. Are

11. I haven't seen him since he .... a child.
a. is b. has been c. been d. was

12. People are happy because there's not .... crime here.
a. many b. few c. a lot d. much

13. Next week, she .... 16 years old.
a. is going to be b. going to be c. will be d. is being

14. He is looking forward to .... his friends.
a. meet b. meets c. met d. meeting

15. Physics .... much less messy than chemistry.
a. is b. are c. have been d. is being

16. I .... my aunt eagerly last Friday. I can't stand waiting for the next month.
a. have visited b. has visited c. visited d. visit

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

"Necessity is the mother of invention" is a famous common proverb which means that our needs always motivate our minds to create new things in order to manage well in a world full of speed changes.

Man's needs have often directed him to discover the natural resources around him, and to make with his own hands the things he wants. Thus, he made tools to cultivate the land and get its crops. Those tools played an important part in establishing civilization. Food, clothing and shelter are still considered to be man's basic needs. The progress of technology has enabled man to satisfy all these needs. It has helped him to take wide steps in developing agriculture, industry and public services. Thus, we are now enjoying the blessings of modern civilisation. When civilisation developed and man lived in organised societies, he found himself in need of more than his necessities. Education is next to food in importance because it is the only way to <u>acquire</u> experience and the qualifications necessary to earn a living. Education changed our style of living and led to higher thinking levels. He invaded space. He invented the computer. No wonder that man has great abilities which will enable him to create more inventions in the future.

PART 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. The underlined word "acquire" has a similar meaning to ....
    a. require b. demand c. obtain d. contain

18. According to the passage education is of great importance because ....
    a. it gives us experience and making a living
    b. it is pre to food in importance
    c. it is natural resource before us
    d. the tools played a role in our civilisation

19. Man needed more than his necessities when he ....
    a. needed tools
    b. lived in organised societies
    c. discovered natural resources
    d. made the things he wanted

20. "He made tools to cultivate the land" another word for "cultivate" is ....
    a. ignore b. destroy c. plant d. abandon

21. According to the passage, the need for collecting the crops led man to ....
    a. plant huge areas of land
    b. invent agricultural tools
    c. buy machines
    d. rent peasants to help him

22. In the last paragraph, invading the space and inventing the computer is an evidence that ....
    a. man spends a lot of money
    b. man has extraordinary abilities
    c. science is obtainable
    d. the space exploration is not impossible

23. The main idea of the passage is "............".
    a. Necessities can be postponed
    b. Conditions create inventions
    c. The needs are motivated by possibilities
    d. The agriculture and civilisation

24. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

I think Doctor Magdy Yacoub is the best role model for young generations. He has always worked hard for the good of patients.

a. أعتقد أن الدكتور مجدى يعقوب هو أفضل قدوة للأجيال القادمة. لقد عمل دائما بجد من أجل مصلحة المرضى.
b. أعتقد أن الدكتور مجدى يعقوب هو أفضل قدوة للأجيال الشابة. لقد عمل دائما بأهمال من أجل مصلحة المرضى.
c. أعتقد أن الدكتور مجدى يعقوب هو أفضل قدوة للأجيال الشابة. لقد عمل دائما بجد من أجل مصلحة الصابرين.
d. أعتقد أن الدكتور مجدى يعقوب هو أفضل قدوة للأجيال الشابة. لقد عمل دائما بجد من أجل مصلحة المرضى.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

يجب أن تتكاتف الدول العربية لمواجهة التحديات والأخطار التى تحيط بالأمة العربية.

a. Arab countries must unite to face the challenges and dangers that surround the Arab nation.
b. Arabic countries must unite to face the challenges and dangers that surround the Arab nation.
c. Arab countries must unit to face the challenges and dangers that surround the Arab nation.
d. Arab countries must unite to face the challenges and dangers that round the Arab nation.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"No house can be good without the mother. Illustrate."

....

15 Beni Suif Governorate — Biba Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. The last year wheat harvest was really successful. "successful" has the same meaning as ....
   a. familiar b. kidnapped c. fruitful d. crucial e. profitable
2. Students who are supported by their parents do well at school. The antonyms of support here are ....
   a. motivated b. ignored c. assisted d. encouraged e. rejected

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. After falling off his bike, the boy's finger began to ....
   a. give up b. look up c. swell up d. clean up
4. A/An .... is a very young child who is just learning to walk.
   a. youth b. teen c. adult d. toddler
5. What a great decision you have .... ! It was a hit.
   a. made b. done c. swallowed d. endangered
6. I dropped my sunglasses, but .... they didn't break.
   a. fortunately b. unfortunately c. unluckily d. unsurprisingly
7. Due to the rapid growth of the world population, the shortage of food will reach to great .... limits.
   a. legal b. secure c. minor d. serious
8. Most of wealthy people weren't born .... rich families.
   a. in b. with c. into d. on
9. Being questioned, the criminal denied .... the crime.
   a. committed b. committing c. to commit d. commits
10. Arrangements for the wedding are completed, we .... next Friday.
    a. will celebrate b. celebrate
    c. are going to celebrate d. are celebrating
11. Would you like .... soup before the meal ?
    a. some b. a c. any d. few
12. For actions that happened in the past and its effect is clear in present, the .... is used.
    a. simple present b. perfect present c. continuous present d. simple future
13. My room .... every three years.
    a. painted b. is painted c. is being painted d. is painting
14. What time .... the break start in this school ?
    a. do b. is c. has d. does
15. The football players aren't playing as .... as they did last week.
    a. good b. more better c. well d. best
16. The latest recovery of exports will have a great .... on the national income.
    a. damage b. isolation c. donation d. impact

PART 2

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Many people think that having a private car will solve all their transportation problems in a crowded city. However, cars might be a source of trouble to their owners. Spare parts and the cost of fuel have become so expensive. Garages are crowded so many people leave their cars for the night in the streets and that makes them exposed to theft or **fining**.

UBER is a new transport system. It aims at having a car on demand to go anywhere. This system is used in Cairo, Giza and Alexandria. Whether you are heading to your work, going on business or for a visit to someone, UBER connects **you** with a quick and reliable ride. The driver knows exactly where to go as he uses GPS maps. You can pay with either cash or a card. This system depends on the internet so you don't have to worry as it is controlled and followed online. When you have UBER application on your mobile, you can decide where you are going. Then you will have many cars to choose. You can easily know how long the journey takes and what you will pay. Surely you will ride a clean car which is air-conditioned. In addition, the driver, the car owner is a polite person who is usually highly educated.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. GPS maps are related to .... maps.
    a. booking b. online c. offline d. unreal
18. The underlined pronoun "**you**" refers to any ....
    a. driver b. car owner c. passenger d. system
19. The writer is in favour of using .... to travel around the mentioned cities.
    a. UBER b. private cars c. special cars d. driverless cars
20. The underlined word "**fining**" in the fourth line is closest in meaning to ....
    a. having a good health b. paying money c. achieving goals d. using UBER app
21. UBER users shouldn't be worried of getting easily to their destinations because ....
    a. the streets are full of traffic jams
    b. the UBER drivers know how to repair breakdowns
    c. you can easily know how long the journey takes
    d. UBER cars are linked to Global Positioning System
22. Owners of private cars in busy cities may face the trouble of ....
    a. parking b. extinction c. unemployment d. applications
23. .... is one of the UBER drivers' personality traits.
    a. Illiterate b. Hasty c. Knowledgeable d. Careless

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Wasting too much time playing video games may distract your mind and hinder your progress. Instead, gain its precious value and do what helps you to succeed.

a. إن إضاعة الكثير من الوقت فى الألعاب الإلكترونية قد لا يثرى العقل ويحقق لك التقدم. وبدلا من ذلك اغتنم قيمته الرخيصة وافعل ما يساعدك على النجاح.

b. إن إضاعة الكثير من الوقت في الألعاب الإلكترونية قد يملأ العقل ويوقف تقدمك. وبدلا من ذلك اغتنم قيمته الدقيقة وافعل ما يساعدك على النجاح.

c. إن إضاعة الكثير من الوقت في الألعاب الإلكترونية يجذب عقلك ويبطئ تقدمك. وبدلا من ذلك اعتنم قيمته الهادفة وافعل ما يساعدك على النجاح.

d. إن إضاعة الكثير من الوقت فى الالعاب الالكترونية يشوش عقلك ويعيق تقدمك. وبدلا من ذلك اغتنم قيمته الثمينة وافعل ما يساعدك على النجاح.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تعتبر المواقع الاثرية المصرية من أهم عوامل جذب السياحة التي توفر فرص العمل. ولقد أصبحت السياحة المصدر الرئيسي للدخل القومي ونشر الثقافة المصرية في شتى أنحاء العالم

a. The Egyptian historic sites are considered the most important means of tourist attraction which provide job opportunities. Tourism has become the main source of the national income and spreading the Egyptian culture all over the world.

b. The Egyptian historic sites is considered one of the most important means of tourist attractive which provide job opportunities. Tourism has become the minor source of national income and spreading the Egyptian culture all over the world.

c. The Egyptians historical sites are considered one of the most important means of tourist attraction which provides job opportunities. Tourism has become the main source of the national income and publishing the Egyptian culture all over the world.

d. The Egyptian historic sites is considered one of the most important means of touristic attraction which provide job opportunities. Tourism will become the main source of the international income and spreading the Egyptian culture all over the world.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"The importance of learning foreign languages"

....

16 Minya Governorate — Minya Educational Directorate

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Reclaiming the desert and turning it into green land .... more job opportunities.
   a. provides b. results c. leads d. creates e. gets
2. Many students take part in the race every year. The antonyms of "take part in" are ....
   a. defeat b. avoid c. keep away from d. win e. participate

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. We haven't seen Amr .... the last visit.
   a. for b. yet c. already d. since
4. You bought me sandwiches yesterday, so I owe you some money. The word owe means ....
   a. have to pay back b. can't give c. am happy to give d. might give
5. He can solve the problem, he is very ....
   a. bad b. resourceful c. isolated d. quiet
6. Hana is .... honest girl.
   a. a b. no article c. the d. an
7. The Komodo dragon is .... to Indonesia. It doesn't live any where else.
   a. impact b. unique c. sustainable d. ecotourism
8. I .... meeting this boy last year.
   a. am remembering b. will remember c. remember d. remembers
9. I don't think this boy .... such punishment.
   a. preserves b. deserves c. reserves d. reforms

10. To .... is to take hold of something suddenly.
   a. guard   b. see   c. grab   d. search
11. Tigers .... as much as in the past.
   a. aren't hunted   b. isn't hunted   c. have hunted   d. was hunted
12. I don't mind .... at home during holiday.
   a. stay   b. to stay   c. to staying   d. staying
13. Kareem used to play chess but now he ....
   a. doesn't   b. isn't   c. hasn't   d. wasn't
14. My friend had lost much weight I couldn't .... him.
   a. recognize   b. realize   c. analyze   d. support
15. Ghada helps charity organizations, she is so ....
   a. donate   b. stingy   c. generous   d. volunteer
16. Students complain about being .... in the class for a long time.
   a. struck   b. studied   c. studying   d. stuck

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

What if you could simply take a medicine that would instantly make you more intelligent ? One that would improve your abilities including attention, memory, focus, motivation, and other higher executive functions ?

Some scientists think that healthy adults and children may one day take medicines to improve their intelligence and thinking. A research group has suggested that such medicines might become as common as coffee or tea within the next 20 years. Students taking exams might have to take drugs tests like athletes. There are already medicines that are known to improve mental performance and are given to children with problems concentrating. A medicine given to people with trouble sleeping also helps them remember numbers.

These medicines raise serious moral questions, but people already take vitamins to help them remember things better, so it will not be a simple problem to solve. It will probably be very difficult to decide at what point a food supplement becomes an unfair medicine in an examination. Exercise and nutrition also play an important role. Many vitamins and ingredients found naturally in food products have been shown to improve thinking abilities. Some of these include vitamins B6 and B12, caffeine found in chocolate can make you feel happier and more relaxed as it motivates the brain to release Serotonin.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. The main idea of this article is ....
   a. sleeping   b. B6   c. vitamins   d. intelligence medicines
18. Who will take medicine to improve thinking ?
   a. children   b. adults
   c. healthy adults and children   d. scientists
19. Who might take drugs tests ?
   a. students   b. athletes   c. adults   d. children
20. A food can become an unfair medicine in ....
   a. thinking   b. studying   c. intelligence   d. an examination

21. .... can help people remember numbers.

a. Sleeping pills b. Vitamins c. Caffeine d. Serotonin

22. Serotonin can help you ....

a. improve thinking b. feel happier c. remember numbers d. sleep

23. .... can improve thinking abilities.

a. Caffeine b. Chocolate
c. Serotonin d. Many vitamins and ingredient

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

The football world cup has attracted millions of fans in stadiums and viewers on the internet. It was an event that got the attention of men, women, and children.

a. جذب كاس العالم لكرة القدم مليارات المشاهدين في الملاعب والانترنت. لقد كان حدث جاذب لانتباه الرجال والنساء والأطفال.

b. جذب كاس العالم لكرة القدم ملايين المشجعين في الملاعب والمشاهدين على الانترنت. لقد كان حدث جاذب لانتباه الرجال والنساء والأطفال.

c. جذب كاس العالم لكرة القدم ملايين الدولارات من الملاعب والمشاهدين على الانترنت. لقد كان حدث جاذب لانتباه الرجال والنساء والأطفال.

d. جذب كاس العالم لكرة القدم مليارات المشجعين من الملاعب والمشاهدين على الانترنت. لقد كان حدث جاذب لانتباه الرجال والنساء والأطفال.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدر مباشر للدخل القومي في مصر. تمتلك مصر الكثير من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التي يرغب السياح في زيارتها.

a. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

b. Ecotourism is considered a direct sources of national income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated natural palaces that tourists desire to visit.

c. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated places that tourists desire to visit.

d. Ecotourism is considered direct source of income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated natural palace that tourists desire to visit.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"What are your favourite hobbies"

....

17 Assiut Governorate — Assiut Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. This bird is exotic. It is unusual and rarely seen here. The antonyms of the word "exotic" are .... and ....

a. ordinary b. strange c. rare d. foreign e. usual

2. He was over the moon when he won the race. The phrase "over the moon" means .... and ....

a. very excited b. very disappointed c. very angry d. very happy e. very depressed

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. The badly injured people in the accident need blood .... to save them.

a. takers b. levels c. guardians d. donors

PART 2

4. When she was bitten by a mosquito, her arm .... up.
   a. leaned b. swelled c. spelled d. trekked
5. Robert Louis Stevenson was a great .... He wrote a lot of poems.
   a. storyteller b. poet c. novelist d. playwright
6. My school never allows .... among the students there.
   a. bullying b. helping c. connecting d. contacting
7. Don't .... on a link you don't recognize.
   a. sink b. think c. pick d. click
8. Farmers sometimes give their animals .... to eat especially in winter.
   a. milk b. meat c. hay d. currant
9. Governments should put strict rules to save animals which are ....
   a. angry b. endangered c. danger d. dangerous
10. This stadium .... in 2000.
   a. built b. were built c. was built d. was building
11. Father is used to buying tasty sweets for us. This sentence means :
   a. This on longer happens. b. This never happened.
   c. This is a present habit. d. This was a past habit.
12. Have you finished this exercise .... ? - You're supposed to take a longer time.
   a. for b. ever c. since d. already
13. My brother had an important exam yesterday, but he spent .... hour watching TV.
   a. the b. an c. a d. no article
14. My friend gave me some .... about how to finish the project.
   a. advice b. advices c. advises d. advise
15. Don't worry. I .... you the money you need.
   a. am lending b. am going to lend c. will lend d. lend
16. On her way home, Laila stopped .... to her friend Dalia who met her.
   a. to talk b. talking c. to talking d. talks

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the loud opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed the warm blanket aside and slowly got out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her own footsteps on the stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and she stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost from the past since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour.

The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen where the noise seemed to be coming. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. **The dark figure** stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother Ken ! He couldn't help laughing at poor Sally. He had gone out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly for having thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh too.

'hoose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. The strange sound, the darkness and the dark figure .... Sally.
a. screamed b. scared c. cared d. caked

18. At the beginning, Sally .... reading ghost stories.
a. enjoyed b. did not enjoy c. avoided d. feared

19. Who does the underlined phrase "The dark figure" refer to ?
a. the strange noise b. Sally's brother c. The ghost d. Sally

20. The main idea of the passage is "...........".
a. Reading is important
b. Sally's brother's trick
c. Sally's dream
d. Scary stories effect

21. "He couldn't help laughing". The phrase "couldn't help" means ....
a. couldn't stop b. couldn't breathe c. couldn't give a hand d. couldn't sleep

22. Ken .... when Sally started reading the story.
a. had been on the roof
b. had been in the house
c. had been outside
d. had hidden under the bed

23. Sally thought it was a ghost because all of her family ....
a. got out b. went shopping c. didn't like tricks d. were asleep

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a , b , c or d :

Everything can be useful or harmful according to the way we use them.

a. كل شئ يمكن ان يكون مفيذا او نامفا طبقا للطريقة التى لستخدمه بها.
b. كل شئ يمكن ان يكون مفيذا او ضارا طبقا للطريقة التى نستخدمه بها.
c. كل شئ يمكن ان يكون هاما أو ضارا طبقا للطريق التى نستخدمه بها.
d. كل شئ مفيذا و ضارا طبقا للطريقة التى نتعامل معها.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

من الممكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيذا إذا تم استغلاله فى تطوير شخصية المرء.

a. It was possible that free time is useful if it is used to develop one's character.
b. It is impossible that free time is useful if it is used to develop one's character.
c. It is possible that free time is useless if it is used to develop one's character.
d. It is possible that free time is useful if it is used to develop one's character.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Voluntary work and its benefits"

....

18 Sohag Governorate — Tema Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. When I saw her, she was .... her white dress.
a. dressing b. dressed c. putting off d. putting e. wearing

2. Nearby is to neighbouring as isolated is to ....
a. distant b. near c. insulated d. remote e. reachable

PART 2

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. My grandfather regrets .... my talkative grandmother.
   a. to marry b. marrying c. marry d. marries
4. .... working hours, you mustn't use the mobile.
   a. During b. When c. While d. On
5. I'm busy today. I have .... of things to do.
   a. lot b. loads c. much d. downloads
6. He is driving at a high speed. He .... have an accident.
   a. will b. shall c. will not d. is going to
7. A thief .... me of my wallet last night.
   a. stole b. stealing c. robbed d. robbing
8. Don't ask me about this matter. It is very ....
   a. personal b. personnel c. personality d. personally
9. My teacher gave me .... advice on how to study hard.
   a. a b. an c. pieces of d. many
10. .... teachers in my school are friendly.
   a. No article b. The c. An d. A
11. .... friends is essential as man is sociable by nature.
   a. Doing b. Killing c. Making d. Rejecting
12. She always works hard as she doesn't want to .... failure.
   a. experiment b. experience c. have d. aspire
13. Have you watched this film yet ? – Yes, I .... it just now.
   a. have b. have watched c. watched d. have had
14. As a child, he had a lot of .... problems.
   a. healthy b. healthily c. healthier d. health
15. .... her departure, we sobbed.
   a. When b. During c. While d. On
16. A lot of animals are .... so they must be kept in national parks.
   a. danger b. dangerous c. endangered d. endanger

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

In Egypt, the tourism industry has come to hold a position of great importance lately. It is felt that it could help increase the national income. In some European countries, tourism has brought in millions of dollars yearly, although they lack the natural and historical attractions. In Egypt, we have two seas. We could teach fishing, swimming, diving and sailing there. Another good idea would be a village in the New Valley for horseback riding. And what about villages for people with health problems like rheumatism ? The warm dry climate of Aswan and Helwan would certainly help them get better.

Our tourist today wants efficient and friendly service. He would probably prefer to try our samples of our local food rather than eat the international meals, which are served, in some places. It must also be remembered that most tourists nowadays are seldom rich. Many of them are students or hardworking employees. So what is needed is not expensive hotels but clean comfortable places to sleep and eat at reasonable prices. This, too, would encourage Egyptians to travel more and more around their lovely country.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. The writer feels that Egypt has got .... the other countries which make so much money from tourism.
   a. less attractions than
   b. the least attractions of
   c. the same attractions as
   d. more attractions than

18. According to the writer, if someone has pains in his muscles and joints, he should go to ....
   a. Europe
   b. Aswan
   c. The Red Sea
   d. The New Valley

19. Most tourists nowadays are ....
   a. rich
   b. poor
   c. miserable
   d. wretched

20. The main idea of the passage is ....
   a. Tourism industry
   b. Encouraging tourism
   c. How to encourage tourism in Egypt
   d. Egypt is a piece-loving country

21. The prices should be .... to encourage tourism locally.
   a. affordable
   b. unreachable
   c. unreasonable
   d. high

22. The underlined word "<u>meals</u>" can be replaced by ....
   a. eats
   b. dishes
   c. fruits
   d. services

23. We can teach .... in the New Valley.
   a. swimming
   b. fishing
   c. horse riding
   d. gambling

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a , b , c or d :

To better your income, you must be patient, hardworking and ambitious.

a. لكى تأتى جيدًا، يجب عليك أن تكون صبورًا وجاد فى العمل وطموح.

b. لكى تحسن دخلك، يجب عليك أن تكون صبورًا وجاد فى العمل وطموح.

c. لكى تحسن دخولك، يجب عليك أن تكون صبورًا وجاد فى العمل وطموح.

d. لكى تحسن دخلك، يجب عليك أن تكون مريضًا وجاد فى العمل وطموح.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

يدعو الدين السماوى إلى الحب والتعاون ونبذ العنف والتسامح وحب الوطن.

a. The sky religion invites to love, co-operation, the rejection of violence, tolerance and patriotism.

b. The heavenly religion invites to love, co-operation, the rejection of violence, tolerance and patriotism.

c. The sky religion calls for love, co-operation, the rejection of violence, tolerance and patriotism.

d. The heavenly religion calls for love, co-operation, the rejection of violence, tolerance and patriotism.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Friendship"

....

....

PART 2

19 Aswan Governorate — Aswan Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Ali is over the moon visiting Dubai for the first time "That means he feels ....
   a. happy b. forced c. excited
   d. sad e. miserable

2. "Adel Imam is a famous actor". The antonyms of the word "famous" are ....
   a. well known b. unknown c. usual
   d. remarkable e. outstanding

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. Mohammed Salah .... for his speed and ability to score goals.
   a. admired b. is admired c. has admired d. admires
4. Snow has prevented .... with the outside world for three days.
   a. security b. safety c. collection d. communication
5. Julia .... in London since she was a child.
   a. lived b. has lived c. is lived d. live
6. Kangaroos use their back legs to .... from one place to another.
   a. hop b. see c. eat d. hear
7. Do you own .... house or do you rent one ?
   a. any b. a c. an d. some
8. Yesterday Karim went to the hospital, his blood .... was too high.
   a. desire b. pressure c. pleasure d. fire
9. She .... out of her house and drove her car.
   a. got b. get c. gets d. getting
10. .... is a job that people do for no money.
    a. Homework b. Voluntary work c. Team work d. Hard work
11. They agreed .... to Paris next week.
    a. travel b. travelling c. to travel d. travelled
12. Carol needs some advice about how to .... friends.
    a. do b. play c. catch d. make
13. They .... be home about eight.
    a. are going b. going to c. will d. are
14. Mr. Plump is poor and .... money to several people.
    a. lends b. gives c. owes d. wins
15. While I was watching television, mother .... dinner.
    a. was preparing b. prepares c. prepare d. preparing
16. John and his friends are going .... in Sahara Desert.
    a. trekking b. tricking c. ticking d. clicking

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

William Shakespeare (1564 – 1616) wrote many plays and poems which are known the world over. But perhaps you think the works of an Elizabethan playwright are not important today. Well, think again. Shakespeare's works have survived the years and then some ! For example, Romeo and Juliet has not only been performed again and again in theatres around the world, but it has also been made into a very popular movie, twice !

During the late 1500s, however, Shakespeare's plays were often performed at the Globe Theatre in London. The Globe was a large open-air theatre that used only natural lighting. Shows at the Globe were always interesting and exciting because the audience yelled at, cheered and talked with the performers. The Globe was a great success. However, in 1613, during a performance of Shakespeare's Henry VIII, there was a horrible fire. The fire completely destroyed the theatre. The Globe was fixed a year later, but it did not stay open for long. The Globe never opened again and the building was finally torn down in 1644.

Theatre lovers in England never forgot the Globe, and in 1970, a decision was made to rebuild it as close to the original design as possible. The new Globe was opened in 1999. Since the new theatre opened hundreds of thousands of people attended Shakespearean performances.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. The main idea of this reading passage is ....
    a. Interesting attraction in Europe
    b. Shakespeare and the Globe Theatre
    c. Shakespeare's plays and poems
    d. The first play at the Globe Theatre

18. The fire at the Globe started during the performance of ....
    a. Romeo and Juliet
    b. Henry VIII
    c. Henry V
    d. A Midsummer Night's Dream

19. Many plans were made to .... the Globe.
    a. set fire on
    b. close
    c. rebuild
    d. perform

20. In the Globe .... lights were not used at all.
    a. artificial
    b. real
    c. sun
    d. natural

21. According to the passage, The Globe was an interesting place because ....
    a. it was a large open-air theatre
    b. it was closed many times
    c. it used very few props
    d. the audience interacted with the performers

22. From the writer's point of view, Shakespeare's works have survived the years by ....
    a. acting them in theatres
    b. remaking them in movies
    c. watching them on televisions
    d. searching them on the internet

23. Related to what you've read above, in the future the Globe will ....
    a. show more of Shakespeare's works
    b. never show any of Shakespeare's works
    c. be closed and torn down
    d. be destroyed and moved



PART 2

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a , b , c or d :

Do you think people can change their opinions about previous experiences ? And why is it important to do so ?

a. هل تعلم أن الناس تستطيع أن تغير أرائها عن تجاربها السابقة ؟ ولماذا نهتم لعمل ذلك ؟

b. هل تعتقد أن الناس يمكن أن تغير افكارها عن تجاربها السابقة ؟ ولماذا فعل ذلك مهم ؟

c. هل تعتقد أن الناس يمكن أن تغير أفكارها عن حياتها السابقة ؟ ولماذا من المهم أن تفعل ذلك ؟

d. هل تعتقد أن الناس يمكن أن تغير أرائها عن تجاربها السابقة ؟ ولماذا من المهم أن تفعل ذلك ؟

25. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

يجب أن نتعلم أشياء جديدة للحفاظ على البيئة امنة، وتشجع استخدام المواد الغير مضرة للبيئة.

a. We should learn new ideas about keeping the environment safe and encourage environmentally-friendly materials.

b. We should learn new things about keeping the environment safe and encourage using environmentally-friendly materials.

c. We should learn new things about keeping the environment clean and encourage using environmentally-friendly materials.

d. We should learn bad things about keeping the environment safe and encourage using environmentally-friendly materials.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Using the internet and how to stay safe online"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

For Al Azhar & Inclusive students.

اختبارات الأزهر الشريف وطلاب الدمج.

1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — منطقة الفيوم الأزهرية (القسم الأدبى)

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My son got angry when his classmates .... him rudely.
   a. honoured b. paid c. bullied d. pampered
2. He suggested .... to the club.
   a. goes b. went c. to go d. going
3. There are very few of these kinds of giraffes now, they are ....
   a. endangered b. dangerous c. safe d. isolated
4. My brother is saving money, he .... a new bike.
   a. is buying b. is going to buy c. will buy d. is going buying
5. My neighbour was sent to prison because he was heavily in ....
   a. debt b. profit c. indebted d. debate
6. Before the operation, a nurse should check the blood .... of the patient.
   a. leisure b. temperature c. pressure d. treasure
7. Yesterday evening, my family .... a very wonderful film together.
   a. were watching b. watch c. has watched d. are watching
8. My account was easily .... into as my password was so easy.
   a. broken b. picked c. backed d. hacked
9. Some kinds of mobiles .... in Egypt.
   a. are made b. are making c. have made d. had been made
10. .... girl who I met yesterday, is my new neighbour.
    a. A b. The c. An d. No article

2 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :

" Tom is talking with his Egyptian friend Ahmed about his journey to Egypt "

Tom : I have been to the Valley of the Kings.
Ahmed : (1)........................ ?
Tom : I saw the Temple at Karnak.
Ahmed : (2)........................ ?
Tom : It was fantastic.
Ahmed : Did you take photos there ?
Tom : (3)........................ .
Ahmed : (4)........................ ?
Tom : I'll visit the Egyptian Museum next.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Reading is fun. It's the food of the mind. Through reading, we gain the experience of others. It provides us with information in all branches of knowledge. Reading has a good

effect on our behaviour. It shows us the best conduct to follow. So, it helps us acquire good qualities to be good citizens. Moreover, reading helps us develop our characters and widen our horizons.

It enables us to understand the world we live in. Reading enriches our cultural life and creates generations of thinkers, writers and scientists.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What does reading provide us with ?
2. What does reading create ?
3. How can we gain the experience of others ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. Reading .... our information.
   a. decreases   b. reduces   c. increases   d. provides
5. Reading affects our behaviour ....
   a. well   b. bad   c. badly   d. good

Islamic Selections

4 Choose the correct answer :

1. Muslims perform prayers .... times a day.
   a. two   b. three   c. four   d. five
2. Major .... are forgiven by Allah through sincere repentance.
   a. signs   b. sins   c. signals   d. signature
3. The fourth pillar of Islam is ....
   a. Poor Dues   b. pilgrimage   c. fasting   d. prayer

5 Write a paragraph of (100) words on :

"A place you would like to visit"

6 A. Translate into Arabic :

A muslim must believe in Allah the one and Mohammed is His Apostle.

B. Translate into English :

فضل طريقة لعمل صداقات هو أن تنضم لنوادي أو تؤدي ألعاب جماعية.

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة أسيوط الأزهرية (القسم الأدبي)

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Tourism is .... when we protect touristic places.
   a. crowded   b. sustainable   c. bad   d. noisy
2. Villagers build their houses with local ....
   a. tourists   b. environments   c. animals   d. materials
3. The email said it was from a bank, but we all knew it was really a ....
   a. software   b. lock   c. scam   d. map
4. It is taken for .... that bullying is a bad behaviour which we must change.
   a. granted   b. refusal   c. denial   d. decided

5. While I was revising my lesson, my mother .... dinner.

a. prepares b. is preparing c. preparing d. was preparing

6. I .... my friend since September.

a. didn't see b. hadn't seen c. haven't seen d. wasn't seen

7. Egyptian clothes .... all over the world.

a. are selling b. sell c. are sold d. sold

8. Basel offered .... me with my homework.

a. to help b. helps c. helped d. help

9. In Egypt, students in primary school have to wear .... uniform.

a. the b. a c. an d. no article

10. You will find information about the sports club on the school ....

a. noticeboard b. notice c. connection d. toilet

B. Usage

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Nader and Hany are talking about a holiday.

Nader : (1)........................ ?

Hany : I went to the North Coast.

Nader : Really! Did you go there with your family ?

Hany : (2)........................ . I went there with friends.

Nader : (3)........................ ?

Hany : We went by bus.

Nader : When did you come back ?

Hany : (4)........................ .

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

In my project, I have to write about two powerful women in history. I'm going to start with Hatshepsut who was the ruler of ancient Egypt for longer than any woman. She was the daughter of Thutmos I. During her time as a ruler, she helped to build many important buildings and started trade with new countries. She died in around 1458 BCE. Next, I want to write about Emperor Wu Zetian. Wu Zetian had a good education. She was the ruler of China in the first century BCE and helped to improve the Chinese people's education. She also helped to improve China's agriculture. She was impressive because she was the only woman in China to have ruled as an emperor.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Who was Hatshepsut's father ?
2. What did Hatshepsut do during her time as a ruler ?
3. Why was Wu Zetian impressive ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. .... started trade with new countries.

a. Thutmos I b. Hatshepsut c. Wu Zetian d. Ramses

PART 2

5. Many women ruled ancient Egypt for .... periods than Hatshepsut.
a. longer b. equal as c. shorter d. as long

Islamic Selections

4 Choose the correct answer :

1. .... is the fourth pillar of Islam.
a. Witness b. Prayer c. Fasting d. Zakat
2. A Muslim must perform prayers .... times every day.
a. two b. three c. four d. five
3. Prayer should be preceded by ....
a. fasting b. ablution c. Zakat d. rak'a

E - Writing

5 Write a paragraph of not less than (100) words on :

"How to stay safe online"

F - Translation

6 A. Translate into Arabic :

Donating blood is very useful for ill people and also for the healthy.

B. Translate into English :

إن مصر تطور السياحة البيئية لكي تحمي الطبيعة على ساحل البحر الأحمر.

3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية (القسم العلمي)

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer :

1. .... your parents usually donate blood ? Yes, they always do so.
a. Do b. Did c. Why d. When
2. When Aya visited me, I .... my room. So, she offered to help me.
a. decorate b. was decorating c. am decorating d. decorating
3. I remember .... that young man last summer when I was in Sharm El Sheikh.
a. to see b. see c. seeing d. had seen
4. Sadly, my uncle has been ill .... he was a young man.
a. for b. when c. ago d. since
5. The tennis player is .... for doing a lot of voluntary work.
a. admired b. not respected c. interested d. disliked
6. The Galapagos Island in Ecuador are famous for the .... animals such as the turtles which live there.
a. unknown b. unique c. wild d. huge
7. The police .... the young man of stealing the money.
a. excused b. thanked c. accused d. rewarded
8. It is taken for .... that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change.
a. granted b. refusal c. denial d. decided
9. Egyptian cotton clothes .... all over the world.
a. are selling b. sell c. are sold d. sold

10. I have a new .... on my smartphone which helps me practise foreign languages.
a. hack b. app c. connection d. scam

B. Usage

2 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :

Ali : Hi Saleem. (1)...................... ?
Radio show host : I'm well, thank you. How are you this evening ?
Ali : (2)...................... , but last week was really hard. Two boys in my class hid my rucksack. It had all my school books in it. I hate going to school now !
Radio show host : Oh no! (3)...................... . Did you tell a teacher ?
Ali : (4)...................... I was too scared. I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.
Radio show host : Well, Ali, I really think you should talk to a teacher.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The word **cyberbullying** refers to bullying on the internet or on a smartphone. Most teenagers have experienced some kind of cyberbullying, and it affects both girls and boys. One problem is getting offensive messages on social media, in texts or by email. Another problem is when bullies post personal information or pictures of someone. Sometimes it can be anonymous, and that means the victims don't know who is attacking them, which can be very stressful.

Teenagers need to know that they can talk to an adult about what is happening. It's important to report bullies on websites and the police can also help. Any kind of bullying can have serious consequences, so most schools have systems to deal with cyberbullying. It is very important to report any problems and help everyone stay safe online.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What are the best ways of staying safe online ?
2. What can you do if you discover someone you know is a cyberbully ?
3. Why do some people become bullies ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

4. Cyberbullying affects ....
a. boys b. girls c. boys and girls
5. To stay safe online, it's important to .... any problem.
a. deny b. cover c. report

The Novel

4 Choose the correct answer :

1. Captain Smollett had a .... to save the ship from Silver and his men.
a. plane b. plan c. plain d. pain
2. Pew is .... ; he has lost his sight.
a. deaf b. blind c. dumb d. crippled
3. Flint and his men are .... They attack ships and take money and goods by force.
a. pirates b. drivers c. pilots d. divers

5 Write a paragraph of (100) words on :

"A famous person you admire."

6 Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

It's the first time I have ever done voluntary work.

B. Translate into English :

اضطررت أن أعيد كتابة واجب اللغة الانجليزية لأنى أجبت على سؤال بطريقة خاطئة.

4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة قنا الازهرية (القسم العلمى)

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you have a .... you should go to hospital.
   a. branch b. share c. ill d. disease
2. Khaled .... into the forest this morning.
   a. trekked b. trek c. is trekking d. treks
3. I usually .... my grandparents by phone and e-mail.
   a. communicate b. contact c. phone d. call
4. The first lesson .... at 8:15.
   a. started b. starts c. will start d. is starting
5. We .... much to our great teachers.
   a. take b. blend c. owe d. borrow
6. He has .... phoned me.
   a. ever b. yet c. so far d. never
7. The police tried to catch the thief, but he ....
   a. caught b. escaped c. celebrated d. arrested
8. I think we .... computers in all schools.
   a. are going to use b. will use c. using d. is using
9. She is expert .... cooking recipes.
   a. in b. of c. for d. to
10. Do you enjoy .... a sport ?
   a. do b. doing c. to doing d. to do

B. Usage

2 Finish the following dialogue :

"Hazem is talking to a tourist."

Hazem : Have you enjoyed your visit to Egypt ?

Tourist : (1)...................... .

Hazem : (2)...................... ?

Tourist : The Pyramids, the Citadel and the Egyptian Museum.

Hazem : Have you been to Upper Egypt ?

Tourist : Not yet ! (3)...................... Aswan ?

Hazem : By plane, by train or on a Nile cruise.

Tourist : That sounds good. Thank you very much.

Hazem : (4)........................ . Have a nice trip!

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The sun is a star. The sun is at the centre of the solar system. The sun is the largest object in the solar system. From Earth, the sun looks like a yellow ball in the sky. A long time ago, people didn't know what the sun was. People in many countries told stories about the sun. In some stories, people thought that the sun was a God. Some people gave names to the sun. The Greeks named it Helios. The Romans named it Sol. The name Solar System comes from the Roman name Sol.

People, animals and plants need the sun's heat and light to live. Plants make food with sunlight. People and animals eat the plants. Plants also use the sun to make oxygen. People and animals need to breathe oxygen. Today, people do not tell stories about the sun. Today, people do not think the sun is a God. But, people know that the sun is necessary for life on earth.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the sun ?
2. How did the ancient people think of the sun ?
3. Why do people, animals and plants need the sun ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. The name Solar System comes from the .... name.
   a. Roman b. Greek c. Egyptian d. Chinese
5. It's .... to look directly at the sun.
   a. safer b. OK c. dangerous d. not known

D. The Novel

4 Choose the correct word in the following :

1. The ship .... helped each other to control the situation well.
   a. gang b. staff c. crew d. team
2. The captain had a .... to save the ship from the gang.
   a. plane b. plain c. plan d. pain
3. The referee .... his whistle and ended the match.
   a. blew b. said c. fed d. bit

E. Writing

5 Write a paragraph of not less than (80) words on :

"How to protect the environment."

F. Translation

6 A. Translate into Arabic :

Street children are a timed bomb that can explode at any time.

B. Translate into English :

تحقيق النجاح يحتاج الكثير من العمل والجهد

ART 2

5 Fayoum Governorate

Itssa Educational Directorate امتحان طلاب الدمج

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous ....
   a. teachers   b. footballers   c. doctors   d. writers   e. players
2. Egypt is developing ecotourism to .... the environment along the Red Sea coast.
   a. endanger   b. protect   c. provide   d. save   e. isolate

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A lot of .... come to Egypt on holidays especially in the winter.
   a. animals   b. stars   c. tourists   d. planets
2. Some animals live in very .... parts of the world.
   a. provided   b. easy   c. real   d. isolated
3. The generous rich man donated .... to the poor in his hometown in Egypt.
   a. money   b. paper   c. notes   d. many
4. Tourists like to go diving in the .... Sea in Egypt.
   a. Brown   b. Red   c. Yellow   d. Dark
5. They are .... They go to school every day.
   a. doctors   b. farmers   c. soldiers   d. students
6. While I .... home, I met one my best friends.
   a. go   b. was going   c. goes   d. to go
7. Adel has been in London .... a week.
   a. to   b. since   c. for   d. with
8. Ali .... to London by plane last summer.
   a. went   b. go   c. goes   d. going
9. This is my sister. .... name is Mona.
   a. His   b. She   c. Her   d. Hers
10. We sometimes .... football at school.
   a. plays   b. player   c. playing   d. play

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Do you know the rules of driving ? Drivers should stop when the traffic light is red. When the traffic light is yellow they should get ready. They should go when the traffic light is green. It is dangerous for drivers to drive too fast. They may have accidents. If the traffic police chase you, you should stop. If you break the traffic rules, the traffic officer will make you pay a fine. We should all follow traffic rules.

• **Choose the correct answer to the following questions :**

1. When should drivers stop ? When the light is ....
   a. green   b. blue   c. brown   d. red
2. What should the drivers do when the traffic light is yellow ? They should ....
   a. stop   b. go   c. get ready   d. come

3. Where can you see the traffic lights ? In the ....

a. market b. street c. school d. hospital

4. When can the driver go ? When the light is ....

a. yellow b. black c. green d. red

5. If drivers drive fast, they may have ....

a. sweets b. toys c. accidents d. presents

6. If drivers drive fast, they may have ....

a. sweets b. toys c. accidents d. presents

7. How many traffic lights are there ? ....

a. 3 b. 4 c. 5 d. 6

8. What should we do for the traffic lights ? To ....

a. endanger b. destroy c. eat d. follow

C. Writing

4 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

The weather is really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.

a. أن السيارة حار جدًا لذلك نحن نقضى معظم الوقت فى الماء.

b. أن الطقس حار جدًا لذلك نحن نقضى معظم الوقت فى الماء.

c. هل الطقس حار جدًا لذلك نحن نقضى معظم الوقت فى الماء ؟

d. أن الطقس بارد جدًا لذلك نحن نقضى معظم الوقت فى الماء.

B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لقد سافرت الى لندن بالسفينة هذه المرة.

a. I went to Tanta by ship this time.

b. I went to Cairo by ship this time.

c. I have travelled to London by ship this time.

d. I went to Assiut by ship this time.

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c, or d :

a. They like to come in the winter.

b. Tourists come to Egypt.

c. They are taught to avoid damaging the environment.

d. They can stay in hotels.

a. They like to come in the winter. Tourists come to Egypt. They are taught to avoid damaging the environment. They can stay in hotels.

b. Tourists come to Egypt. They like to come in the winter. They can stay in hotels. They are taught to avoid damaging the environment.

c. They can stay in hotels. Tourists come to Egypt. They like to come in the winter. They are taught to avoid damaging the environment.

d. They are taught to avoid damaging the environment. Tourists come to Egypt. They like to come in the winter. They can stay in hotels.

General Exercises collected from SB&WB

تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات.

Practice Exercises 1

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Dalia didn't have .... friends when she started at her new school.
   a. the b. some c. a d. any
2. In Egypt, students in primary school have to wear .... uniform
   a. the b. a c. an d. no article
3. The teacher gave us .... homework for the next lesson.
   a. a b. many c. some d. any
4. A: What do you intend to study when you join the university ?
   B: I .... engineering.
   a. will study b. am going to study
   c. study d. would study
5. Why .... you volunteer at the new youth club next summer ?
   a. don't b. didn't c. do d. did
6. Did you .... your arm yesterday ?
   a. broke b. break c. breaking d. broken
7. We should .... money to charities to help the poor.
   a. donate b. steal c. take d. refuse
8. The beach was really .... , so we couldn't find a place to sit.
   a. beautiful b. exotic c. crowded d. isolated

2 Fill in the gaps with one word :

Next week, our school (1) .... holding a special event to help students to (2) .... what to do after their exams. In the morning, we're (3) .... to watch videos about career and listen to speeches by people with different jobs. I think we (4) .... be able to ask questions, but I'm not certain. In the afternoon, we're going (5) .... work in groups and do some more research about the jobs we (6) .... interested in.

3 Translate into Arabic :

1. Ecotourism aims at providing holidays to places which are endangered and isolated.
   ....
2. Try to avoid mixing with bad friends who have bad habits.
   ....

4 Translate into English :

1. ذهبنا إلى الشاطىء فى نهاية الأسبوع الماضى واستمتعنا بالسباحة فى البحر.
   ....

٢. هل سبق لك أن قضيت إجازة الصيف مع أصدقائك خارج القاهرة ؟

....

5 Read the text and answer the questions :

Cyberbullying

The word cyberbullying refers to bullying on the internet or on a smartphone. Most teenagers have experienced some kind of cyberbullying, and it affects both girls and boys. One problem is getting offensive messages on social media, in texts or emails. Another problem is when bullies post personal information or pictures of someone. Sometimes it can be anonymous, and that means the victims don't know who is attacking them, which can be very stressful.

Teenagers need to know that they can talk to an adult about what is happening. It's important to report bullies on websites and the police can also help. Any kind of bullying can have serious consequences, so most schools have systems to deal with cyberbullying. It is very important to report any problems and help everyone to stay safe online.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

1. Cyberbullying affects ....
   a. boys b. girls c. boys and girls
2. Most teenagers have to ....
   a. talk to adults about cyberbullying
   b. have been bullies
   c. experience cyberbullying
3. Cyberbullying is not ....
   a. unusual b. anonymous c. a problem
4. Who needs to be safe online ? ....
   a. Friends b. Adults c. Everyone

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What are the best ways of staying safe online ?
   ....
   ....
6. What can you do if you discover someone you know is a cyberbully ?
   ....
   ....
7. Why do some people become bullies ?
   ....
   ....

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic :

1. Write a three-paragraph essay about the advantages and disadvantages of living in a place which is a popular tourist destination. Include your opinion on whether it is a good or bad thing.

PART 2

2. Write an email to a friend telling him about a place you would like to visit on holiday. Include reasons why you want to go there, what you would do there and what time of year you would like to go.

....

....

....

....

....

Practice Exercises 2

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Have you finished .... your room yet?
   a. to clean b. cleaning c. clean d. cleaned
2. I forgot .... my calculator to school.
   a. bring b. brings c. brought d. to bring
3. Basel offered .... me with my homework.
   a. helped b. helping c. to help d. help
4. Egyptian cotton clothes .... all over the world.
   a. are selling b. sell c. are sold d. sold
5. The .... is the natural world around us.
   a. atmosphere b. environment c. location d. situation
6. I have a new .... on my smartphone which helps me practise foreign languages.
   a. hack b. app c. connection d. scam
7. A person who writes poetry is called a ....
   a. journalist b. novelist c. poem d. poet
8. A novel usually tells a .... story.
   a. long b. true c. travel d. historical

2 Fill in the gaps with one word :

I am always careful when I (1) .... my shopping online. I use different passwords for each site, and my passwords (2) .... usually quite complicated. This is because I (3) .... a bad experience once when I (4) .... buying a pair of shoes online. I got a strange email from the website and I (5) .... know what to do with it. In the end, I opened the email and my computer turned off and on again. Some criminals (6) .... attacking my computer.

3 Translate into Arabic :

1. The Internet Of Things (IOT) is developing very fast in a lot of fields.

....

2. I'm going to buy some new clothes for the party next weekend.

....

4 Translate into English :

١. اضطررت أن أعيد كتابة واجب اللغة الإنجليزية لأنى أجبت على سؤال بطريقة خاطئة.

....

٢. سوف يستعمل الفندق الجديد مواد وطاقة آمنة على البيئة.

....

5 Read the text and answer the questions :

Tourist or Traveller ?

Some people say that a tourist visits the sights, but a traveller talks to the local people. This is because different people want different experiences when they go on holiday.

Some tourists prefer food which is familiar to them and so they often look for famous fast food restaurants, or food from their own country. They want to see the famous museums, monuments and beaches, and they will usually speak in their own language when they go abroad.

On the other hand, travellers will usually learn a few phrases in the local language, and they want to eat in typical cafés and restaurants. Sometimes they will look for places to visit that are less famous because they enjoy finding something a little different.

Today, both travellers and tourists are learning about their impact on the environment. It seems that whatever type of traveller you are, it's always good to respect the places you visit so that other people can enjoy them, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

1. Why do travellers go to foreign countries ?
   a. To see the sights. b. To meet new people. c. To take photographs.
2. Tourists do not usually ....
   a. speak English b. go to local restaurants c. visit famous monuments
3. Travellers try to ....
   a. speak the local language b. eat at fast food restaurants c. go to famous beaches
4. These days, tourists and travellers both ....
   a. visit famous monuments
   b. reduce their impact on the environment
   c. eat at local restaurants

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What type of damage can tourism cause ? Why is it important not to damage the places we visit ?
6. Which type of visitor do you think you are most similar to ? Why ?
7. Do you think that travelling to different countries changes how you see the world ? Why ? / Why not ?

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic :

1. Write a summary of a story you read and enjoyed.

2. Write an autobiography describing your life so far. Include your interests and experiences, and say what you hope to do in the future.

....

....

....

....

....

....

Practice Exercises 3

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... your parents usually donate blood ? - Yes, they always do so.
   a. Do   b. Did   c. Why   d. When
2. When Aya visited me, I .... my room. So, she offered to help me.
   a. decorate   b. was decorating   c. am decorating   d. decorating
3. I remember .... that young men last summer when I was in Sharm El-Sheikh.
   a. to see   b. see   c. seeing   d. had seen
4. Sorrowfully, my uncle has been ill .... he was a young man.
   a. for   b. when   c. ago   d. since
5. The tennis player is .... for doing a lot of voluntary work.
   a. admired   b. not respected   c. interested   d. disliked
6. The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for the .... animals such as the turtles which live there.
   a. unknown   b. unique   c. wild   d. huge
7. The police .... the young man of stealing the money.
   a. excused   b. thanked   c. accused   d. rewarded
8. It is taken for .... that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change.
   a. granted   b. refusal   c. denial   d. decided

2 Fill in the gaps with one word :

Last year, we learnt about pollution at school, so in the summer I decided to (1) .... on a volunteering holiday (2) .... my friends. We had to clean (3) .... beaches along the north coast. There (4) .... a lot of plastic rubbish like water bottles and plates in the sand. We worked in teams, and each team cleaned a different part (5) .... the beach. We were careful not to damage (6) .... shells or wildlife.

3 Translate into Arabic :

1. I remember playing that card game when I was a child.

....

2. Which do you prefer : reading a poem or a short story ?

....

4 Translate into English :

١. ولد روبرت ستيفنسن في اسكتلندا في عام ١٨٥٠ ومات عن عمر يناهز ٤٤ عامًا.

....

٢. لقد انتهيت توًا من تناول الغذاء وسوف أتصل بك في خلال عشر دقائق.

....

5 Read the text and answer the questions :

Mary Shelley

In 2018, it was two hundred years since the publication of the Gothic novel Frankenstein, or the Modern Prometheus. It was written by Mary Shelley, who was born in London in 1797. She was the daughter of the famous writer, Mary Wollstonecraft, and the philosopher, William Godwin. Mary didn't go to school, but she educated herself using her father's library at home.

In 1812, Mary met the poet, Percy Bysshe, and in 1816, they got married in France. Then, in 1817, Mary wrote a travel book about the journey she took with Shelley to France and Switzerland. After her husband's death in 1822, Mary returned to England and she continued to write novels. Many people think that The Last Man (1826) is her best book, but Frankenstein is Mary Shelley's most famous novel. It tells the story of what happens when a scientist creates a human being. There have been many different films about the story. Some of them are frightening but others are comedies.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

1. When was the first publication of Frankenstein ? ....
   a. 2018 b. 1818 c. 1797
2. Mary Shelley was born in London and became a ....
   a. poet b. writer c. philosopher
3. Mary Shelley's most famous book is ....
   a. a travel book b. The Last Man c. Frankenstein
4. Frankenstein is a ....
   a. Gothic novel b. comedy c. poem

B. Answer the following questions :

5. Mary Shelley didn't go to school. Do you think it is easier or more difficult to educate yourself today ? Why ?
6. Why do you think so many film versions of Frankenstein have been made ?
7. What kind of stories frighten you ? Why do they frighten you ?

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic :

1. Write about a website that you think is useful for school work. Explain what information is on the site and why it is useful for students.
2. Write a blog post on the age you think children should start using the internet. Add photos if you can.

....

....

....



PART THREE

Skills

1. Reading Skill مهارة القراءة

تنويه للمزيد من التدريب على المهارات اللغوية في كل وحدة Part 3

ما المشكلات التي تواجه الطالب عند التعامل مع قطع القراءة والفهم في الامتحانات؟

التحدي الأول

كلمات في القطعة معناها غير معروف بالنسبة لي، وهذا يؤثر على فهمي لموضوع القراءة وبالتالي هناك احتمال للخطأ في إجابة الأسئلة المتعلقة بها، والأصعب أن تكون المفردات الرئيسية التي يدور حولها الموضوع غير معروفة بالنسبة لي، فماذا أفعل؟

الحـــل:

وجود كلمات جديدة عليك في قطعة القراءة أمر طبيعي بل ومقصود، فمن أهداف سؤال القراءة قياس قدرتك على تخمين المعنى من النص وكذلك فهم المحتوى العام للموضوع دون الوقوف على كل كلمة، والحل الأمثل للتغلب على هذه المشكلة هو التدريب المستمر على هذا السؤال دون استخدام قاموس وذلك لتنمية مهارة التخمين واستنباط المعنى من السياق.

عزيزي الطالب: لا تمل من التدريب على حل قطع الفهم بداعي الصعوبة، فالصعوبة ستقل مع كثرة التدريب ... فقط قم بالحل وتوجه لمعلمك ليصحح لك، وتذكر أنه لا استخدام للقاموس وإلا فالتدريب لا فائدة منه ويمكنك استخدام القاموس فقط بعد أن يتم تصحيح الأسئلة لك.

التحدي الثاني

حل قطع القراءة يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً نسبياً وهذا يؤثر على مذاكرتي لباقي أنواع الأسئلة وكذلك المواد الأخرى!

الحـــل:

هذا الكلام صحيح فقط بالنسبة لشخص لم يحصل على تدريب كافٍ خاص بهذا السؤال، أما من يتدرب كثيراً فيستطيع الحل في وقت قياسي، وتذكر عزيزي الطالب أنك ستتعرض لهذا السؤال في الامتحان لا محالة، ولابد أن تتدرب عليه جيداً حتى لا يستهلك وقتك داخل لجنة الامتحان.

التحدي الثالث

أحياناً أجد أسئلة ليس لها إجابة في قطعة القراءة!؟

الحـــل:

هذا ليس دقيقاً إلا إذا كان هناك خطأ من واضع الامتحان، لكن هناك أسئلة مرتبطة بقطعة القراءة لكن إجابتها غير موجودة بها، ومن أمثلتها أسئلة الفهم والتطبيق والتحليل والإبداع، وسيتم ذكر أمثلة لها لاحقاً.

التحدي الرابع

هناك أنواع من الأسئلة الخاصة بقطع الفهم لا أفهما ولا أجيد التعامل معها!

الحـــل:

سيقدم لك كتاب المعاصر في هذا الملف جميع أنماط الأسئلة التي يمكن أن تستخدم في قطع الفهم والمفردات الخاصة بها وكيفية التعامل معها.

Types of Comprehension Questions أنواع أسئلة قطع الفهم

هناك أنواع كثيرة من الأسئلة على قطع القراءة في الامتحانات أهمها ما يلي:

1 Literal/Factual questions أسئلة الحقائق (الأسئلة المباشرة)

وهي أسئلة تتعلق بمعلومات مذكورة نصاً في قطعة القراءة وهي أسهل أنواع الأسئلة، ومن أمثلتها:

1. Give three examples of ... أعط ثلاثة أمثلة لـ ...
2. List/Mention two ways to / of ... اذكر طريقتين لـ ...

What did the hero/heroine do before the ...? — ماذا فعل البطل / البطلة قبل...؟
What is the main reason for ...? — ما هو السبب الرئيسي في...؟
Write down one word/expression which shows ... — اكتب كلمة واحدة/عبارة تُظهر أن ...

Model factual questions :

I have always been interested in preparing educational material. Joining El-Moasser team in two thousand and fourteen, I worked on changing the traditional concept of the educational book. I have been doing my best to benefit not only my fellow teachers, but their students as well. ...

- When did the writer join El-Moasser team?
  a. 2004 b. 2014 c. 2024 d. 2042

2 Reorganization questions أسئلة إعادة التنسيق والترتيب

تستند أسئلة إعادة التنظيم في الأخرى على الفهم الحرفي للنص، حيث يقوم الطالب بتجميع معلومتين أو أكثر من أجزاء مختلفة من النص. وتعد أسئلة إعادة التنظيم مهمة لأنها تعلّم الطالب فحص النص ككل، مما يساعدهم على الانتقال من النظر في النص جملة بجملة إلى نظرة أكثر شمولية

Model reorganization questions :

I have always been interested in preparing educational material. Joining El-Moasser team in two thousand and fourteen, I worked on changing the traditional concept of the educational book. I have been doing my best to benefit not only my fellow teachers, but their students as well. ...

1. How long has the writer worked with El-Moasser team?
   a. about ten years b. about twenty years c. about five years d. few years
2. What is the writer? - The writer works as a ....
   a. fellow b. student c. teacher d. novelist

3 Main-idea/moral/title questions أسئلة الفكرة الرئيسية/الدرس/العنوان

وهذا النوع من الأسئلة يكاد لا يخلو منه أي امتحان في السنوات الأخيرة، وقد يسأل واضع الامتحان عن الفكرة الرئيسية لفقرة معينة في نص القراءة، وهناك صياغات عديدة لهذا النوع من الأسئلة مثل:

1. What is the main/central idea topic of the first/second/third .... paragraph?
ما هي الفكرة الرئيسية في الفقرة الأولى / الثانية / الثالثة....؟
2. The sentence that summarizes the first / second paragraph is ..... .
الجملة التي تلخص الفقرة الأولى / الثانية ...... هي .....
3. What does the writer want to say in the first/second/third .... paragraph?
ماذا يريد الكاتب أن يقول في الفقرة الأولى / الثانية / الثالثة....؟

وقد يسأل واضع الامتحان عن الفكرة الرئيسية للنص ككل، وهناك صياغات عديدة مثل:

1. What is the main idea of the passage/text? — ما هي الفكرة الرئيسية لموضوع القراءة / النص؟
2. What message does the writer want to convey in this passage/text?
ما هي الرسالة التي يريد الكاتب توصيلها من خلال هذا الموضوع/النص؟
3. What is this passage about? — عمّا تتحدث هذه القطعة؟

4. What is the core/essence of this passage? ما هو جوهر هذه القطعة؟

5. The core/essence / thrust of this passage is .... جوهر / محوى هذه القطعة هو............

وفي النصوص السردية (القصصية) قد يستخدم واضع الامتحان أسئلة مثل:

1. What is the moral of this story/narrative/text? ما العبرة من هذه القصة / الرواية / النص؟

2. What lesson does this story/narrative teach us? ما الدرس الذي تعلمنا إياه هذه القصة / النص؟

وقد يسأل واضع الامتحان عن أفضل عنوان:

1. What is the best title for the passage? ما هو أفضل عنوان للقطعة؟

2. What would be a suitable title for the text? ما هو العنوان المناسب للنص؟

→ **Model main-idea question :**

Education is the most important investment in the future of a nation. Imagine the majority of people in a country had good education, how would life be like? There would be solutions to all problems. The rate of crime would go down. The quality of life would go up ...

- What is the main idea of the passage/text?
  a. How to get good education   b. Good education models
  c. How can good education help   d. How to improve education

→ **Model moral question :**

That difficult situation has left a permanent influence on me. I am no longer wasteful. Now, I know well how to be careful with my money. I know what, how much, and when to buy ...

- The moral of this situation is "............".
  a. One should be careful with their money.
  b. Never spend any money
  c. Spend what is in your pocket
  d. It is a waste of money buying anything.

4 Tone questions أسئلة خاصة بالطابع العام للنص

وهذا النوع من الأسئلة يسأل عن الطابع العام أو الجو النفسي للنص أو الحالة المزاجية للكاتب، ويمكن أن تكون صياغة السؤال كالتالي:

- What is the tone of the text/writer?
- The writer's tone is ....

ومن أهم الصفات التي تصف الطابع العام للنص ما يلي:

approving	مُستحسِن	critical	نقدي
angry	غاضب	defensive	مؤيد
appreciative	مُقدِّر	depressing	كئيب
arrogant	متغطرس	disapproving	غير مُحبِّذ
cautionary	تحذيري	disappointed	مُحبَط
celebratory	احتفالي	encouraging	مُشجِّع

confused	مرتبك	enthusiastic	متحمس
comic	كوميدي	formal	رسمي
compassionate	متعاطف	frustrated	مُحبط
intense	حاد	loving	ودود
ironic	ساخر	objective	موضوعي
joyful	بهيج	tolerant	متسامح
sad	حزين	worried	قلق

5 Word-in-context questions أسئلة تتعلق بالكلمة في السياق

يستهدف هذا السؤال تقييم الحصيلة اللغوية للطالب وقدرته على تخمين المعنى الدقيق للكلمة من خلال السياق، وينقسم هذا النوع من الأسئلة إلى أنواع عديدة منها:

١. أسئلة تسأل عن المعنى أو المرادف (synonym/meaning) ومن أمثلتها:

- What is the synonym/meaning of the word "............" in the passage?
- The word "............" in the text is synonymous ....
- The underlined word "............" in the passage can be replaced by ....

٢. أسئلة تسأل عن المضاد أو العكس (antonym/opposite) ومن أمثلتها:

- What is the opposite/antonym of the word "............" in the passage?
- The word "............" in the text is antonymous with ....
- The underlined word "............" in the passage can't be replaced by ....

ملحوظة هامة : لابد من الدقة في إجابة هذا السؤال لأن الاختيارات قد تحتوي على أكثر من معنى أو مضاد للكلمة، ولكن لابد من اختيار المعنى أو المضاد حسب استخدام الكلمة في النص.

→ Model pronoun-reference questions :

I have always been interested in preparing educational **material**. Joining El-Moasser team in two thousand and fourteen, I worked on changing the traditional concept of the educational book. I have been doing my best to benefit not only my fellow teachers, but their students as well. ...

1. The underlined word "**material**" in the text can be replaced by ....
   a. cloth b. information and ideas c. fabric d. matter
2. The verb "join" in the passage is antonymous with ....
   a. becoming a member b. going on c. taking part in d. leaving

6 Pronoun-reference questions أسئلة ما تشير إليه الضمائر

وفي هذا النوع من الأسئلة يسأل واضع الامتحان عمّا يشير إليه الضمائر، ولاحظ أن:

١. ضمائر الفاعل هي: - I, we, you, he, she, it, they

٢. ضمائر المفعول هي: - me, us, you, him, her, it, them

٣. ضمائر الملكية هي: - mine, ours, yours, his, hers, theirs

٤. الضمائر المنعكسة هي:

- myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves

٥. كلمات أخرى تستخدم كضمائر:

- this, that, these, those, here, there ...
- some, any, each, all, both, none, one, ones, two ...
- many, much, a little, a few, first, second, ... latter ....



→ Model word-in-context questions :

My first interest in life is to find new ideas that can help people. <u>These</u> might be solutions to some problems. Last month, I introduced two very important ideas. The first was a suggestion that would help the traffic problems in my town. The <u>latter</u> was how to make electricity at home.

1. The underlined word "These" in the text can refers to ....
   a. people   b. ideas   c. solutions   d. problems
2. The underlined word "latter" in the text can refers to one of the ....
   a. two very important ideas   b. traffic problems in my town
   c. solutions to some problems   d. b & c

7 Understanding questions أسئلة تتعلق بالفهم

تختبر هذه الأسئلة قدرة الطالب على تحديد ما يحاول المؤلف التعبير عنه أو توصيله للقارئ، ويتطلب ذلك إلقاء نظرة على المعلومات وتحليلها وفهم محتواها، ومن أمثلة هذا النوع من الأسئلة :

- What does the writer mean by ...? — ما الذي يعنيه الكاتب بـ ...؟
- When the writer says ..., what is his/her intention? — عندما يقول الكاتب .... فما الذي يقصده؟

General tips إرشادات عامة

في ضوء ما سبق، يمكن تلخيص كيفية التعامل مع قطع الفهم في الامتحان في النقاط التالية:

١. في البداية يجب قراءة الأسئلة الواردة على القطعة لتحديد الهدف من القراءة
٢. يجب قراءة القطعة بتركيز لفهم المعنى العام دون التسرع في تحديد اجابات
٣. من الضروري التوقف عند نهاية كل جملة لاستيعاب معناها قبل الانتقال للجملة التالية
٤. لا تتوقف عند كل كلمة صعبة وحاول تخمين معناها من السياق
٥. لابد من قراءة الأسئلة وفهمها جيداً لتحديد الإجابة الصحيحة
٦. دائماً اسأل لنفسك: ما هدف واضع الامتحان من هذا السؤال؟ فذلك سيساعدك على قراءة أفكار الأسئلة وإجابتها بالشكل الأمثل.
٧. بعد الانتهاء من إجابة أسئلة القطعة بالكامل، لابد من مراجعة الإجابات من خلال قراءة القطعة مرة أخرى

وفيما يلي نقدم لكم نماذج مختارة لقطع الفهم :

General Exercises on Reading Skill

○ Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Chinese invented paper, and they were also the first to use paper banknotes for money. Before paper notes were invented in the seventh century, wealthy Chinese traders used metal coins. These had a hole in the middle so that traders could carry them on pieces of material. But these were very heavy to carry. As a result, traders left the money with someone they trusted. Instead, they carried a piece of paper which said how much money they had. The trader could use this paper note to promise anyone that they could pay for the goods that they wanted to buy.

People in Europe only started to use paper banknotes in the seventeenth century. In England, the King needed money to help fight a war with France. Banks encouraged people to leave money with them and gave them handwritten notes saying how much money they had left. The notes said, "I promise to pay the **bearer** the sum of ..." and you can still see the same words on English notes today. Bank workers continued to handwrite notes until 1853, when the first notes were printed.

The paper used for bank notes is usually made from a mixture of paper and cotton, and sometimes other materials. Although these other materials make the notes stronger than normal paper, most banknotes only last for about two years. For this reason, some countries tried using plastic notes in 1983. However, the first plastic notes in England were not very successful because the ink came off the notes onto people's hands! Five years later, in 1988, Australia successfully used plastic notes for the first time. Today, many countries use plastic notes, which are stronger than paper notes, last longer and are harder to copy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why did Chinese traders first use notes instead of coins?
   a. Because the coins were too heavy to carry. b. Because coins had holes in them.
   c. Because traders could not trust everyone. d. Because they preferred paper.

2. Why did banks in England first want people to leave their money with them?
   a. The King needed money to fight a war. b. People preferred notes to coins.
   c. People wanted their money to be safe. d. Banks opened for the first time.

3. Why were notes handwritten until 1853?
   a. It was cheaper this way.
   b. It was faster this way.
   c. There was not any technology to print them before this time.
   d. It was hard to copy the handwriting.

4. What is the main idea of the text?
   a. Why we use money. b. Why we use banks.
   c. The history of paper banknotes. d. The history of trade.

5. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?
   a. The King's men b. The men in France.
   c. The people who had the money. d. The banks.

6. What does the word "bearer" mean?
   a. Someone who works in a bank. b. A Chinese trader.
   c. Someone who carries something d. Someone who works for the King.

7. When and where were paper banknotes first used?
   a. In England in the 17th century. b. In China in the 17th century.
   c. In Europe in the 17th century. d. In Australia in 1983.

2. Translation
٢. الترجمة

إرشادات هامة :

إن إتقان مهارة الترجمة من وإلى الإنجليزية يتطلب مراعاة ما يلي:

١. أن تكون لديك القدرة على القراءة والفهم الصحيح للنص المطلوب ترجمته.
٢. أن تكون لديك قوة ملاحظة تستند على فهم سليم تساعدك على تحديد الاختيار الصحيح.
٣. أن تستطيع تحديد الجملة ذات البناء الصحيح باللغة التي تقوم بالترجمة إليها.
٤. أن يكون لديك قدر مناسب من الثروة اللغوية (المفردات) في المجالات المختلفة.
٥. أن تقوم بحل أكبر عدد ممكن من التدريبات لأنها السبيل الوحيد لإتقان الترجمة.
٦. تذكر أولاً وأخيراً أن الترجمة تهتم بالمضمون والفكرة دون التقيد بالألفاظ.

PART 1 TRANSLATION FROM ARABIC INTO ENGLISH

سنتناول فيما يلي أهم أساسيات الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية من خلال أربع محاور هي:



1 'Yes/No' questions السؤال بـ «هل»

١. هذا النوع من الأسئلة يبدأ في اللغة العربية بـ (هل / أ / أليس/ألا/ألم/ألن).
٢. لا توجد أداة استفهام في اللغة الإنجليزية تعني (هل / أ / أليس/ألا/ألم/ألن). لكن يبدأ هذا النوع من الأسئلة بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الأفعال الناقصة التالية:

Am / Is / Are / Was / Were / Do / Does / Did / Have / Has / Had / Can / Could / Will / Would / Shall / Should / May / Might / Must / Ought / Need ...

٣. يتكون السؤال بـ (هل / أ / أليس/ألا/ألم/ألن) في اللغة الإنجليزية من:

فعل مساعد / ناقص + فاعل / مفعول + تكملة السؤال

Examples :

- هل لديك شك أن تطوير التعليم أصبح أمراً ضرورياً في ضوء مستجدات العصر الحالي؟
- Do you have any doubts that the development of education has become necessary in light of the developments of the current era/age?
- أحقق مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للمناخ الذي عُقد في شرم الشيخ أهدافه؟
- Did the United Nations' Climate Conference held in Sharm El-Sheikh achieve its objectives?

٤. إذا بدأ السؤال في اللغة العربية بـ (أليس/ألا/ألم/ألن) فإن الفعل المساعد الذي تبدأ به في اللغة الإنجليزية يكون منفياً:

Examples :

- ألست تتفق معي في أن التغير المناخي خطر يهدد جميع دول العالم دون استثناء؟
- Don't you agree with me that climate change is a threat to all countries of the world without exception?

- ألا تريد أن تكون نموذجاً يحتذى به في النجاح سواء في العمل أو الحياة الأسرية؟

- Don't you want to be a role model for success, whether in work or family life?

- ألم تتعلم من تجاربك السابقة أن العمل الجاد والتخطيط السليم هما أهم مقومات النجاح؟

- Haven't you learnt from your previous experiences that hard work and proper planning are the most important ingredients of success?

- ألن تتوقف عن إضاعة وقتك في أشياء غير مفيدة؟

- Won't you stop wasting your time on useless things?

practice (1) :

- هل لديك هدف شخصي تسعى لتحقيقه من خلال الدراسة؟

....

- أتطمح أن يكون لك دوراً قيادياً بارزاً في مجتمعك؟

....

- ألا تعلم أن التكنولوجيا الحديثة جعلت التعلُّم أسهل كثيراً من ذي قبل؟

....

- ألم يكن نقص الموارد وقلة الصادرات وزيادة الواردات أسباباً رئيسية لارتفاع الأسعار؟

....

- ألن تتوقف الدول الصناعية المتقدمة عن تدمير البيئة الطبيعية الذي يهدد مستقبل الحياة على الأرض؟

....

Translation vocabulary

advanced industrial countries	الدول الصناعية المتقدمة	prominent leadership role	دوراً قيادياً بارزاً
destruction	تدمير	learning	التعلُّم
Do you have the ambition to	أتطمح	resources	الموارد
exports	الصادرات	rising prices	ارتفاع الأسعار
imports	الواردات	shortage	نقص / قلة
increase	زيادة	than before	من ذي قبل
		threaten	يهدد

2 'Wh-' questions السؤال بأداة استفهام

١. هذا النوع من الأسئلة يبدأ في اللغة العربية بأحد أدوات الاستفهام مثل (ما/ماذا/من/كيف)

٢. أهم أدوات وتعبيرات الاستفهام في اللغة الإنجليزية هي:

How	كيف/كم	Which	أي
How about	ما رأيك في	Who	من
What	ما/ماذا	Whom	من
What about	ما رأيك في	Whose	لمن
When	متى	Why	لماذا/لما
Where	أين	To what extent	لأي مدى

٣. يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في اللغة الإنجليزية في غالب الأحوال من:

أداة استفهام + فعل مساعد / ناقص + فاعل / مفعول + ...

Examples :

- ما النتائج السلبية التي أدت إليها الحرب الروسية الأوكرانية؟

- What are the negative results that the Russian-Ukrainian war has led to?

- من المسئول عن التغير المناخي الذي يهدد مستقبل الحياة على كوكب الأرض؟

- Who is responsible for the climate change that threatens the future of life on Earth?

- أي نمط من الحياة تفضل: الحياة البسيطة في الريف أم حياة المدينة؟
- Which lifestyle do you prefer: the simple life in the country or the city life?

Practice (2):

- كيف يمكنك تحقيق التوازن بين الحياة الشخصية والحياة العملية؟

....

- إلي أي مدي يمكنك أن تتحمل ضغوط العمل والإيقاع السريع للحياة؟

....

- لم لا تنضم لإحدى الجمعيات الخيرية لتقديم المساعدة لمن يحتاجونها؟

....

Translation vocabulary			
balance	التوازن	rhythm/pace	الإيقاع
endure	تتحمل	work life	الحياة العملية
join	تنضم	work pressure	ضغوط العمل
personal life	الحياة الشخصية		

3 Imperatives جملة الأمر

١. تبدأ جملة الأمر المُثبت (افعل) في اللغة الإنجليزية بالفعل في المصدر **(inf.)** أو **(Always + inf.)**:

- Work hard to achieve your goals.
- Always work hard to achieve your goals.

٢. تبدأ جملة الأمر المنفي (لا تفعل) في اللغة الإنجليزية بـ **(Don't/Never + inf.)**:

- Don't waste your time. - Never waste your time.

Examples :

- كن متفائلاً وإيجابياً واعلم أنه لا يوجد مستحيل طالما هناك إرادة قوية وتصميم.
- Be optimistic and positive and put in mind that nothing is impossible as long as there is strong will and determination.
- احرص دائماً على مساعدة الآخرين عندما يحتاجون إليك، فقد تحتاج إلى مساعدتهم يوماً ما.
- Always make sure you help others when they need you; you may need their help one day.
- لا تستسلم عندما تخفق في القيام بشيء ما، ولا تأخذ النصيحة مطلقاً من فاشل.
- Don't give up when you fail at something, and never take advice from a failure.

Practice (3) :

- حاول دائماً أن تكون مستعداً لكل الاحتمالات، ولا تترك شيئاً للصدفة.

....

- لا تنخدع بالمظهر، ولا تعامل منافسك على انه غبي أو أقل ذكاء منك.

....

- عامل الناس كما تحب أن يعاملوك، ولا تظن أنك أفضل من الآخرين لأن ذلك هو الغرور.

....

Translation vocabulary			
appearance	بالمظهر	possibilities	الاحتمالات
chance	الصدفة	treat	يعامل
competitor	منافس	vanity	الغرور
Don't be tricked	لا تنخدع		

4 Statement الجملة الخبرية

١. تتكون الجملة الخبرية المبنية للمعلوم من:

→ Subj. فاعل + verb (حب الزمن) + ________

Examples :

- لقد افتتح السيد الرئيس العديد من المشروعات العملاقة خلال الأشهر الأخيرة.
- Mr President has inaugurated several giant projects over the past months.
- وافقت الحكومة المصرية على التقدم بملف لاستضافة دورة الألعاب الأوليمبية ٢٠٣٤.
- The Egyptian government agreed to submit a bid to host the 2034 Olympic Games.

٢. تتكون الجملة الخبرية المبنية للمجهول من:

→ Subj. فاعل + verb (حب الزمن) + p.p + ________

Examples :

- بُني السد العالي ليحمي مصر من الفيضان ويخزن المياه لوقت الحاجة إليها. كما أنه يساهم في توليد الكهرباء.
- The High Dam was built to protect Egypt from flooding and to store water for the time it is needed. It also contributes to generating electricity.
- ستنقل مقار جميع الوزارات إلى العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة التي تتمتع ببنية تحتية تكنولوجية عالية التطور.
- The headquarters of all ministries will be moved to the New Administrative Capital which has a highly developed technological infrastructure.

٣. يُفضل تحويل جملة المبني للمجهول إلى صيغة المبني للمعلوم إذا كان الفاعل معروف:

Examples :

- نُظم مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للتغير المناخي (كوب ٢٧) بواسطة الحكومة المصرية في شرم الشيخ.
- The Egyptian government organized the United Nations Climate Change Conference (COP27) in Sharm El-Sheikh. ✓
- The United Nations Climate Change Conference (COP27) was organized by the Egyptian government in Sharm El-Sheikh. ✓

Practice (4) :

- أقيمت العديد من مشروعات البنية التحتية العملاقة مثل الغاز الطبيعي ضمن مبادرة حياة كريمة.

....

- أقامت الحكومة المصرية العديد من مشروعات البنية التحتية العملاقة مثل الغاز الطبيعي ضمن مبادرة حياة كريمة.

....

- يجب أن تُكرّم المجتمع بأسره المعلمين على الدور الهام والعبء الثقيل الذي يقع على عاتقهم.

....

- يجب أن يُكرّم المعلمون من المجتمع على الدور الهام والعبء الثقيل الذي يقع على عاتقهم.

....

Translation vocabulary

burden	عبء	infrastructure	البنية التحتية
Decent Life Initiative	مبادرة حياة كريمة	rest on their shoulders	يقع على عاتقهم
giant	عملاق	the whole society	المجتمع بأسره
honour	تكرّم		



Special cases حالات خاصة

١ بناء الجملة

١. تبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية بفاعل إذا كانت مبنية للمعلوم أو مفعول إذا كانت الجملة مبنية للمجهول ثم يأتي الفعل حسب زمن الجملة:

Examples :

- استضافت مصر المؤتمر العالمي للمناخ في دورته السابعة والعشرين.
- Egypt hosted the World Climate Conference in its twenty-seventh session.
- سيُقام احتفال كبير لتكريم العلماء والمفكرين على ما قدموه من إنجازات في جميع المجالات.
- A big celebration will be held to honour scholars and thinkers for their achievements in all fields.

٢. الفاعل في الجملة الإنجليزية يقابله فاعل الجملة العربية أو المبتدأ:

Example :

- العظماء لا يعرفون اليأس ولا يتوقفون طويلاً عند لحظات الفشل، بل يتطلعون دائماً لغد أفضل.
- Great people do not know despair and do not stop at moments of failure for long, but rather always look forward to a better tomorrow.

Practice (5) :

- نهر النيل هو شريان الحياة بالنسبة لنا، ومن يعتدي على حقوقنا في مياه النيل فهو يعتدي على وجودنا في الحياة.

....

- تحتاج الرياضة المصرية إلى ثورة تصحيح للوصول إلى المستوى العالمي في المنافسات.

....

Translation vocabulary			
artery	شريان	level	مستوى
correction revolution	ثورة تصحيح	right	حق
existence	وجود	transgress	يعتدي

٢ المفعول المطلق

- يُحذف المفعول المطلق عند الترجمة للإنجليزية:

Examples :

- يعاني الفقراء معاناة كبيرة خاصة في ظل الارتفاع المستمر في أسعار السلع الأساسية.
- The poor suffer a lot, especially in light of the continuous rise in the prices of basic commodities.
- تأثر الاقتصاد العالمي تأثراً واضحاً بالحرب التي تشنها روسيا على أوكرانيا.
- The global economy has been clearly affected by the war waged by Russia against Ukraine.

Practice (6) :

- يُحب المصريون وطنهم حباً شديداً، وهم على استعداد ليضحوا بأرواحهم من أجله.

....

Translation vocabulary			
homeland	وطن	soul	روح
sacrifice	يضحي		

٣ كيفية ترجمة الجملة التي تبدأ بـ (مصدر) أو (أن + مصدر/اسم)

- المصدر في اللغة العربية هو اسم الفعل مثل (كتابة) من (يكتب) أو (زيارة) من (يزور).
- الجملة التي تبدأ بمصدر أو (إن + مصدر / اسم) في اللغة العربية تبدأ في اللغة الإنجليزية بـ:

Examples :

Gerund (inf. + ing) /Noun ...

- إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية ومهارات الحاسب الآلي ولغات البرمجة تجعل من السهل حصولك على وظيفة جيدة.
- Learning foreign languages, computer skills and programming languages makes it easy to get a good job.

- إن العمل الجاد هو السبيل الوحيد لتحقيق النجاح الحقيقي في الحياة.
- Hard work is the only way to achieve true success in life.

- السعادة هي الغاية التي يسعى جميع البشر إلى إدراكها ولن تكون سعيداً إلا إذا كنت ناجحاً.
- Happiness is the goal that all humans seek to realize. You will not be happy unless you are successful.

Practice (7) :

- إن حُب الوطن والحرص على تقدمه في جميع المجالات هو الدليل الأكبر على الانتماء لهذا الوطن.

....

- التعليم بحاجة ضرورية إلى خطة طويلة الأمد لكي يواكب التقدم العلمي الكبير في الدول المتقدمة.

....

Translation vocabulary			
concern for	الحرص على	long-term plan	خطة طويلة الأمد
cope with	يواكب	loyalty	الانتماء
developed countries	الدول المتقدمة	need	حاجة
evidence	دليل	progress	التقدم
field	مجال		

٤ كيفية ترجمة الجملة التي تبدأ بـ يعمل/يقوم .

- في الغالب يتم اسقاط الفعل (يعمل) أو (يقوم) إذا لم يكن الفعل الأساسي للجملة، ويتم تحويل المصدر المذكور في الجملة العربية لفعل أساسي للجملة الإنجليزية:

Examples :

- تقوم حملات الرعاية الصحية المجانية بفحص ذوي الأمراض المزمنة بالمجان ومتابعة حالتهم الصحية.
- Free health care campaigns examine people with chronic diseases for free and follow up their health conditions.

- تعمل الدولة على مواجهة ظاهرة التنمر بكل حزم من خلال إصدار القوانين التي تضمن أن يواجه المتنمرين عقوبات رادعة.
- The state faces the phenomenon of bullying firmly by issuing laws that ensure that bullies get deterrent penalties.

Practice (8) :

- يقوم المعلمون باستخدام استراتيجيات التعلم المناسبة حسب الموضوع وحسب أعمار الطلاب وقدراتهم العقلية.

....

- يعمل الوالدين على توفير كل ما يحتاجه الأبناء من سكن آمن وطعام صحي وتعليم مناسب.

....



PART 3

Translation vocabulary			
according to	حسب	mental abilities	قدرات عقلية
learning strategies	استراتيجيات التعلم		

٥ كيفية ترجمة الجملة العربية التي لا تحتوي على فعل

- الجملة العربية التي لا يوجد بها فعل غالباً يكون فعلها مستتراً تقديره (يكون) لذلك نستخدم أحد تصريفات (be) عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية:

be, am, is, are, was, were, been

Examples :

- مصر دولة ذات تاريخ عريق وحضارة عظيمة، لذلك من حقك أن تفخر بكونك مصرياً. (= مصر تكون دولة)
- Egypt is a country with long history and a great civilization, so you have the right to be proud of being Egyptian.

- الشباب أمل الأمة في مستقبل أفضل، لذلك يجب أن نوفر لهم كل ما يحتاجونه. (= الشباب يكونون أمل)
- Youth are the nation's hope for a better future, so we must provide them with everything they need.

Practice (9) :

- الإنسان مسئول عن كل الدمار الذي لحق بالبيئة ومسئول عن إصلاح ما أفسده.

....

- المرأة نصف المجتمع ومسئولة عن تربية النصف الآخر، فالمرأة الصالحة حجر الأساس في بناء المجتمع.

....

Translation vocabulary			
bringing up	تربية	man	الإنسان
cornerstone	حجر الأساس	reform	إصلاح
damage	تَخريب	responsible for	مسئول عن
destruction	الدمار		

٦ كيفية ترجمة ضمائر الغائب (هو/هي/هما/هم/هن) إذا جاءت بعد اسم

- إذا جاءت ضمائر الغائب (هو/هي/هم/هم/هن) فإننا نستخدم أحد تصريفات (be) عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية:

be, am, is, are, was, were, been

Examples :

- الأزمة الاقتصادية العالمية هي النتيجة المباشرة لجائحة كورونا والحرب الروسية الأوكرانية. (هي = تكون)
- The global economic crisis is the direct result of the Corona pandemic and the Russian-Ukrainian war.

- المعلمون هم رواد تقدم الأمم، لذلك يجب أن يكون لهم وضع خاص في مجتمعاتهم. (هم = يكونون)
- Teachers are the pioneers of the progress of nations, so they must have a special status in their societies.

Practice (10) :

- كرة القدم هي الرياضة الأكثر شعبية في كل أرجاء العالم ويتابعها مليارات المشجعين.

....

- التسامح هو أحد القيم الإنسانية العظيمة التي يجب أن تسود بين جميع الشعوب بغض النظر عن العرق أو اللون أو الدين.

....

Translation vocabulary			
all over the world	في كل أرجاء العالم	prevail	تسود
billion	مليار	race	العرق
fans	المشجعين	regardless of	بغض النظر عن
human values	القيم الإنسانية	tolerance	التسامح
peoples	الشعوب		

٧ افعال إنجليزية لا تتبعها حروف جر

الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها حرف جر في اللغة العربية ولا يتبعها حرف جر في اللغة الإنجليزية:

admire	يعجب بـ	include	يشتمل على
affect	يؤثر على	join	يلتحق بـ
arrest	يقبض على	obtain	يحصل على
avoid	يتجنب	owe	يدين بـ
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	pass	ينجح / يجتاز
enjoy	يتمتع بـ	reach	يصل إلى
fear	يخشى أن	recognize	يتعرف على
feel	يشعر بـ	sacrifice	يضحي

Examples :

- يؤثر التدخين على الصحة تأثيراً سلبياً خاصة الرئتين والقلب.

- Smoking negatively affects health, especially the lungs and heart.

- يُضحي الوالدين بكل ما يملكون ليضمنوا مستقبلاً جيداً لأطفالهم.

- Parents sacrifice everything they have to ensure a good future for their children.

Practice (11) :

- يحتفل المصريون كل عام بذكرى انتصار أكتوبر المجيد الذي أعاد للأمة أرضها وكرامتها.

....

- نجحت قوات الشرطة في أن تقبض على مجموعة من الإرهابيين الذي يمثلون تهديداً لأمن المجتمع.

....

Translation vocabulary			
dignity	كرامة	security of the society	أمن المجتمع
forces	قوات	terrorists	الإرهابيين
glorious	المجيد	threat	تهديد
nation	الأمة	victory	انتصار

٨ كيفية التعامل مع الأزمنة عند الترجمة من الإنجليزية للعربية

١. الجُمل التي تدل على حقائق أو عادات مضارع تُترجم إلى زمن المضارع البسيط:

Examples :

- تمتص النباتات ثاني أكسيد الكربون من الهواء وتُطلق الأكسجين.

- Plants absorb carbon dioxide from the air and release oxygen.



- تمنحنا الشمس الضوء الذي يساعد النباتات على النمو كما أنها تعطينا الحرارة اللازمة لاستمرار الحياة على كوكب الأرض.
- The sun gives us the light that helps plants grow, and it also gives us the heat needed to sustain life on Earth.

٢. يترجم الفعل المضارع الذي يدل على حدث قائم حالياً إلى زمن المضارع المستمر:

Examples :

- تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لتخفيف آثار الأزمة الاقتصادية العالمية الحالية على المواطنين، خاصة محدودي الدخل.
- The government is doing its best to mitigate the effects of the current global economic crisis on citizens, especially those on low incomes.

يحاول هذا الفريق من العلماء والباحثين حالياً إيجاد علاجات فعالة لمرض السرطان.
- This team of scientists and researchers is currently trying to find effective treatments for cancer.

٣. يترجم الفعل الماضي في اللغة العربية إلى زمن الماضي البسيط أو الماضي المستمر:

Examples :

- عانت جميع شعوب العالم من الموجات المتتالية لفيروس كورونا، خاصة في الفترة بين ٢٠٢٠ و٢٠٢٢.
- All peoples of the world suffered from successive waves of Corona virus, especially in the period between 2020 and 2022.

- بينما كانت الدول المتقدمة تبني اقتصاديات قوية ونُظم اجتماعية عادلة، كانت الدول الفقيرة تتصارع على قضايا تافهة.
- While the developed countries were building strong economies and fair social systems, the poor countries were fighting over trivial issues.

٤. في الغالب يترجم الفعل (كان ... + فعل مضارع) إلى زمن الماضي المستمر:

Examples :

- كان جميع المشجعون يستمتعون بالمباراة عندما انطفأت كل الأنوار فجأة.
- All the fans were enjoying the match when suddenly all the lights went out.

- كان السائحون يقضون أوقاتاً رائعة على شاطئ البحر حيث الشمس الساطعة والهواء النقي.
- The tourists were having a great time on the beach, where the sun was bright and the air was fresh.

٥. يترجم الفعل الذي يسبقه (سوف / سـ ...) إلى صيغة المستقبل المناسبة:

Examples :

- سوف يؤدي الاعتماد على مصادر الطاقة النظيفة إلى تقليل التلوث البيئي وسيخفف حدة التغير المناخي.
- Dependence on clean energy sources will reduce environmental pollution and it will mitigate climate change.

- يوماً ما ستدرك أنه لا أحد يحبك مثل والديك، فهما الوحيدان اللذان يتمنيان أن تصبح أفضل منهما.
- One day, you will realize that no one loves you as much as your parents. They are the only ones who wish you were better than them.

Practice (12) :

- تدور الأرض حول محورها مرة كل ٢٤ ساعة وهذا يؤدي إلى تعاقب الليل والنهار.

....

- تنفذ الدولة حالياً العديد من مشروعات البنية التحتية العملاقة مثل تجديد شبكات المياه والصرف الصحي ومد خطوط الغاز الطبيعي لكل المدن والقرى.

....

- كانت الأمطار تتساقط بغزارة عندما وصل القطار إلى المحطة في منتصف الليل.

....

- سوف تمر هذه الأوقات الصعبة، وسيتحسن الوضع الاقتصادي، وسينعم كل المواطنين بالرخاء.

....

Translation vocabulary			
around its axis	حول محورها	prosperity	الرخاء
implement	يُنفذ	renew	يجدد
infrastructure	البنية التحتية	succession	تعاقب
lay	يمد	water and sewage	شبكات المياه والصرف
natural gas pipelines	خطوط الغاز الطبيعي	networks	الصحي

٩ الصفات

١. تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية قبل الموصوف (عكس اللغة العربية):

Example :

الاحتباس الحراري أو التغير المناخي بصفة عامة يُعتبر نتيجة مباشرة لما نطلق عليه التلوث البيئي.

- Global warming or climate change in general is a direct result of what we call environmental pollution.

٢. تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية بعد الموصوف إذا كانت تصف أي من الضمائر غير المحددة التالية:

Some-	Any-	Every-	No-
someone	anyone	everyone	no one
somebody	anybody	everybody	nobody
something	anything	everything	nothing
somewhere	anywhere	everywhere	nowhere

Example :

كانت الأمور تسير بشكل طبيعي ولم يكن هناك أي شيء غير عادي.

- Things were going on normally and there was nothing unusual.
- Things were going on normally and there was not anything unusual.

٣. قد تأتي الصفة وبعدها الاسم الموصوف أو بدون الاسم الموصوف بعد بعض الأفعال التقريرية مثل:

be (am, is, are, was, were, been)

get/become يصبح **- sound/seem/look** يبدو **- feel** يشعر **- taste** له مذاق **- smell** له رائحة

Example :

كما هو معتاد في شتاء أسوان، تبدو السماء صافية كما أن الطقس يكون دافئاً معظم الوقت.

- As usual in Aswan's winter, the sky looks clear and the weather is warm most of the time.

٤. في الجملة العربية إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان دون أداة ربط فعند الترجمة نبدأ بالصفة الأخيرة:

Example :

تُساعد الجمعيات الخيرية المختلفة الأسر الفقيرة وأطفال الشوارع المشردين.

- Different charitable organizations help poor families and homeless street children.

٥. إما إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان وبينهما أداة ربط فإننا نكتب الصفة الأولى أولاً ثم الثانية:

Example :

إن الطموح المنطقي والقابل للتحقيق هو أهم ما يميز الإنسان الناجح.

- A logical and achievable ambition is the most important characteristic of a successful person.

٦. الصفة إذا سُبقت بأداة التعريف (the) ولم يتبعها الاسم الموصوف فإنها تتحول إلى اسم جمع:

Example :

الفقراء هم الجزء الأكثر تضرراً في المجتمع من التضخم والارتفاع المستمر في أسعار السلع والخدمات.

- The poor are the part of society most affected by inflation and the continuous rise in the prices of goods and services.

= The poor people are the part of society most affected by inflation and the continuous rise in the prices of goods and services.

Practice (13) :

- يجد الشباب المؤهَّل جيداً من السهل الحصول على وظيفة جيدة في سوق العمل خاصة في القطاع الخاص.

....

أخبرني والدي أن أطمئن وأن أركز في دراستي وأنه لن يحدث أي شيء خطير.

....

تبدو السماء ملبدة بالغيوم وأعتقد أنه ستسقط أمطار غزيرة كما هو متوقع.

....

نجحت القيادة المصرية الحكيمة في وضع مصر على خريطة الاستثمار السياحي العالمي.

....

إن العمل المنظم والمُخطَّط له هو السبيل الوحيد للنجاح الحقيقي والدائم.

....

Translation vocabulary			
as expected	كما هو متوقع	labour market	سوق العمل
cloudy	ملبدة بالغيوم	organised and planned	العمل المنظم والمُخطَّط له
feel sure	أطمئن	private sector	القطاع الخاص
heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة	true and permanent success	النجاح الحقيقي والدائم
international tourist investment	الاستثمار السياحي العالمي	well-qualified	المُؤهَّل جيداً
		wise Egyptian leadership	القيادة المصرية الحكيمة

١٠ الظرف

١. ظروف التكرار التالية توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي او بعد (be) والأفعال المساعدة والناقصة:

always, usually, often, sometimes, occasionally, regularly, rarely, scarcely, seldom, hardly, never ...

Example :

- نادراً ما يؤجل الإنسان الناجح عمل اليوم إلى الغد. فالتأجيل والتسويف هما عادة من سمات الفاشلين.

- A successful person rarely postpones today's work until tomorrow. Postponement and procrastination are usually characteristics of failures.

٢. ظروف الكيفية [غالباً تنتهي بـ (ly-)] تأتي بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:

Example :

• يؤدي القائد الناجح عمله بدقة ويتخذ قراراته بحكمة ويسمح لمعارضيه أن ينتقدونه بحرية.

- A successful leader does their work accurately, makes their decisions wisely, and allows their opponents to criticize them freely.

٣. ظروف الدرجة تحدد درجة قوة أو ضعف الصفة، وتوضع قبل الصفة مباشرة

a bit	قليلاً	quite	إلى حد ما
a lot	كثيراً/بشدة	rather	إلى حد ما
absolutely	بشكل مُطلق	really	حقاً
completely	تماماً	so	جداً
even	كثيراً	utterly	كلياً
extremely	للغاية	very	جداً

Example :

- إن الحفاظ على التوازن البيئي أمر ضروري للغاية، فعدم وجود هذا التوازن سيؤثر بشدة على وجود الإنسان على سطح الأرض.
- Keeping environmental balance is extremely necessary. The absence of this balance will affect man's existence on earth badly.

Practice (14) :

- لك الحق أن تُعبّر عن رأيك بحرية، لكن تذكر أن هذه الحرية غير مُطلقة ويجب ألا تؤذي أحداً.

....

....

- يبذل المواطن الصالح دائماً قصارى جهده من أجل أن يكون وطنه في تقدم ورُقي وازدهار.

....

....

Translation vocabulary			
absolute	مُطلقة	progress	تقدم
advancement	ورُقي	prosperity	وازدهار
does their best	يبذل قصارى جهده	than before	من ذي قبل
freedom	الحرية	under medical care	تحت الرعاية الطبية
good citizen	المواطن الصالح		

١١ كيفية التعامل مع الضمائر في الترجمة

١. الضمير المتصل باسم (مثل: قلمي، قلمه، قلمها ...) يُترجم إلى إحدى صفات الملكية التالية:

my, his, her, its, our, your, their, ...'s

Example :

- عندما تكون جزءاً من فريق فلا تقل إنجازي أو إنجازه أو إنجازها، بل هو إنجازنا.
- When you are part of a team, do not say my achievement, his or her achievement, but rather it is our achievement.

٢. ضمير الفاعل المستتر أو المتصل بفعل (مثل: رأيتُ، رأي، رأت...) يُترجم ضمير فاعل:

I, he, she, it, you, we, they

وضمير المفعول المستتر أو المتصل بفعل (مثل: أخبرني، أخبره، أخبرها...) يُترجم ضمير مفعول:

me, him, her, it, you, us, them

Example :

دعاني صديقي كما دعاك لحضور حفل زفاف اخته وأخبرني أن أرافقك إلى هناك.

- My friend invited me as he invited you to his sister's wedding and told me to accompany you there.

PART 3

Practice (15) :

قم بواجبك ودع الآخرين يقومون بواجباتهم، فأنت مسئول عن عملك فقط.

....

....

علمني أبي أن أحب الآخرين وأساعدهم وقت الحاجة وأشكرهم إذا أحسنوا وأسامحهم إذا أخطأوا.

....

....

Translation vocabulary			
do well	يُحسن	make a mistake	يُخطئ
duty	واجب		

١٢ إن - أن - أنْ

١. لا توجد ترجمة لـ (أنْ) إذا جاءت بعد صيغة يقابلها فعل ناقص مثل (should – must ...) في:

Example :

يجب أن نبحث عن حلول لمشكلاتنا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية ولابد أن نطور التعليم تطويراً حقيقياً.

- We must look for solutions to our economic and social problems, and we must truly develop education.

علينا أن نستفيد من تجارب الآخرين في الصناعة والتكنولوجيا، ولابد أن نمتلك مصادر القوة.

- We should benefit from the experiences of others in industry and technology, and it is necessary to have the sources of strength.

٢. غالباً تُترجم (أنْ) في الصيغة (فعل + أنْ + فعل مضارع) إلى:

→ ... verb + to + inf. ...

Example :

يحاول الإنسان الناجح أن يحقق طموحاته في الحياة بالتخطيط السليم والعمل الجاد واستغلال الوقت أحسن استغلال.

- A successful person tries to achieve their ambition in life by proper planning, hard work, and making the best use of time.

٣. تترجَم (إنْ) الشرطية إلى (if/whether) :

Example :

إن تأخذ وقتك وتفكر جيداً فستتخذ القرار السليم.

- If you take your time and think carefully, you will make/take the right decision.

٤. الحرف (إنّ) الخاص بالتوكيد لا يُترجم:

Example :

إن الحياة في معسكرات الشباب تعلمهم التعاون والاعتماد على النفس والتضحية في سبيل الآخرين.

- Life in youth camps teaches them co-operation, independence and sacrifice for the sake of others.

٥. الحرف (أنّ) الخاص بالتوكيد غالباً يُترجم إلى (that) ومن الممكن إسقاطها:

Example :

يُسعدني أنّ وطني أقوى وأغنى الأوطان، ويحزنني أنه ضعيف أو فقير.

- I am happy that my country is the strongest and the richest of all countries, and it saddens me that it is weak or poor.

Practice (16) :

إن دول الغرب يجب أن تعلم أن لنا ثوابتنا التي لا نقبل المساس بها تحت شعارات الحرية الزائفة.

....

....

هل تريد أن تحقق طموحاتك في الحياة؟ إذن فعليك أن تُخطط وتعمل بجد وتستغل وقتك.

....

....

إن تعمل كثيراً تحقق ما تريد، وإن تكتفي بأحلام اليقظة دون عمل فمن المؤكد أنك ستفشل.

....

....

أعجبني أنها لم تتوقف كثيراً عند لحظات الفشل، بل ثابرت حتى حققت ما تريد.

....

....

Translation vocabulary

basics	ثوابت	false freedom	الحرية الزائفة
be content with day dreams	تكتفي بأحلام اليقظة	make use of	تستغل
countries of the West	دول الغرب	persevere	يثابر
do not accept violating it/them	لا نقبل المساس بها	slogan	شعار

١٣ لقد

لا توجد ترجمة لكلمة (لقد) وتُترجم جملتها في زمن الماضي البسيط إذا كان هناك تعبير زمني يدل على الماضي، وتُترجم جملتها إلى زمن المضارع التام إذا لم يكن هناك تعبير زمني يدل على الماضي:

Example :

لقد زرت العديد من أماكن الجذب السياحي مثل الأهرامات والمتحف المصري العام الماضي.

- I visited several tourist attractions such as the Pyramids and the Egyptian Museum last year.

لقد زرت العديد من أماكن الجذب السياحي مثل الأهرامات والمتحف المصري.

- I have visited several tourist attractions such as the Pyramids and the Egyptian Museum.

Practice (17) :

لقد كانت مصر دائماً أكبر داعم لإقامة دولة مستقلة عاصمتها القدس يعيش فيها الفلسطينيون في سلام وحرية.

....

....

لقد أقام المصريون القدماء حضارة عظيمة على ضفاف النيل منذ آلاف السنين.

....

....

Translation vocabulary

bank	ضفة	Palestinians	الفلسطينيون
civilization	حضارة	peace	سلام
independent country	دولة مستقلة	setting up	إقامة
Jerusalem	القدس	supporter	داعم



١٤ قد

١. كلمة (قد) لا توجد لها ترجمة، لكن استخدامها قبل الفعل المضارع غالباً يفيد الشك وتترجم إلى:

→ may/might/could + inf. ...

Example :

قد يُساعد استخدام الطاقة النووية في حل مشكلة نقص الوقود الحفري مثل البترول والفحم والغاز الطبيعي.

- The use of nuclear energy **may help** solve the problem of shortage of fossil fuels such as oil, coal and natural gas.

٢. كلمة (قد) قبل الفعل الماضي تُفيد التوكيد وتترجم إلى ماضي بسيط أو ماضي تام:

Example :

كان جدي يفتخر دائماً بأنه قد كان أحد الجنود البواسل الذين عبروا قناة السويس في حرب أكتوبر.

- My grandfather was always proud that he was one of the brave soldiers who **crossed/had crossed** the Suez Canal in the October War.

٣. التعبير (كان + قد + فعل ماضي) يُترجم إلى ماضي تام غالباً:

Example :

كنت قد حللت المشكلة الخطيرة قبل أن يشعر بها أي فرد من أعضاء الفريق.

- I **had solved** the serious problem before any member of the team could feel it.

٤. التعبير (سيكون + قد + فعل ماضي) يُترجم إلى مستقبل تام غالباً:

Example :

سأكون قد حللت المشكلة الخطيرة قبل أن يشعر بها أي فرد من أعضاء الفريق.

- I **will have solved** the serious problem before any member of the team feels it.

Practice (18):

- قد تستطيع أن تفوز بالميدالية الذهبية، لكن من المؤكد أن المنافسة لن تكون سهلة.

....

- كان المصريون القدماء قد أقاموا حضارة عظيمة قبل أن تعرف الشعوب الأخرى معنى الحضارة.

....

- ستكون مصر قد حققت تقدماً عظيماً عندما يكون أطفالنا في سن الشباب.

....

Translation vocabulary			
competition	المنافسة	peoples	الشعوب

١٥ لي / عندي / لدي / أمتلك

١. الصيغ الدالة على الملكية مثل (لي، له، لها ...) أو (عندي، عنده، عندها ...) أو (لدي، لديه، لديها ...) أو (أمتلك، يمتلك، تمتلك ...) تُترجم إلى:

→ I / You / We / They + have / have got ...

→ He / She / It + has / has got ...

Examples :

لدينا كعرب حضارة كبيرة علمت العالم كله، وعندنا أيضاً قيم ومبادئ راسخة نحترمها وينبغي أن يحترمها العالم بأسره.

- We, as Arabs, **have** a great civilization that taught the whole world. We also **have got** firm values and principles that we respect and the entire world should respect.

Practice (19) :

كل طالب لديه هدف تعليمي يسعى لتحقيقه، فما هو هدفك؟

....

تمتلك مصر ثروة بشرية هائلة يمكن أن تضعها في مصاف الدول المتقدمة بشرط الحصول على تعليم جيد واستغلال علوم وتكنولوجيا العصر الحديث.

....

....

Translation vocabulary			
human wealth	ثروة بشرية	provided that	بشرط
make use of	يستغل	put it in the rank of	تضعها في مصاف

١٦ عليَّ / عليه / عليها / علينا / عليك / عليكم / لابد/ لا مفر

ا. الصيغ الدالة على الضرورة أو الواجب أو الإلزام مثل (عليَّ، عليه، عليها، علينا، عليك، عليكم...) أو (لابد، لا مفر ...) تترجم إلي:

→ Subj. فاعل + have to, has to, must, should, ought to + inf. ...

Examples :

عليكم أن تبذلوا ما بوسعكم حتى تحققوا لأنفسكم ولوطنكم التقدم والرخاء في كل مجالات الحياة.

- You should/must do everything you can to achieve progress and prosperity for yourselves and your country in all aspects of life.

لا مفر من العمل الجاد إذا كنا فعلاً نريد أن تحقق أحلامنا بمستقبل أفضل لنا ولأبنائنا.

- We have to/must work hard if we really want to achieve our dreams for a better future for ourselves and our children.

Practice (20) :

مَن لا يتوقف عن انتقاد الآخرين عليه أن يخبرنا بإنجازاته التي لا يمكن انتقادها!

....

....

لابد أن تفكر جيداً قبل القيام بخطوة جديدة في حياتك حتى تتجنب الوقوع في الخطأ.

....

....

....

Translation vocabulary			
criticise	ينتقد	taking a new step	القيام بخطوة جديدة
making mistakes	الوقوع في الخطأ	the person who never stops	مَن لا يتوقف
others	الآخرين		

١٧ من الـ + صفة + أن

ا. غالباً ما تترجم هذه الصيغة إلي:

It is + adj. صفة + to + inf. ...

Examples :

من الضروري أن نقضي على التلوث بكل أشكاله حتى نواجه التغير المناخي الذي يهدد وجودنا.

- It is necessary to eliminate all forms of pollution to face climate change that threatens our existence.

إنه لمن العدل أن تأخذ حقك فقط وأن تعطي الآخرين حقوقهم.

- It is fair to take only your rights and to give others theirs.

٢. وعندما يكون ضرورياً ذكر الفاعل في هذه الصيغة تكون هكذا:

It is + **adj. صفة** + **for** + **اسم أو ضمير مفعول** + **to** + **inf. ...**

Example :

من المهم بالنسبة للمريض أن يُجري الفحوصات اللازمة في أماكن موثوق بها.

- It is important for a patient to perform the necessary examinations in trustworthy places.

Practice (21) :

من السيء أن تجادل شخصاً لا يسمع إلا نفسه.

....

....

إنه لمن السهل على الجميع أن ينتقدون غيرهم، لكن من الصعب على هؤلاء أن يقدمون البدائل.

....

....

Translation vocabulary			
alternatives	بدائل	argue with	تجادل

١٨ يُعتبر - يُعتبَر

١. تُترجم هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم (يُعتبِر) إلي:

Subj. فاعل + **consider ...**

٢. تُترجم هذه الصيغة في المبني للمجهول (يُعتبَر) إلي:

Obj. + **am, is, are, was, were** + **considered** + **.....**

ويمكن الاكتفاء بـ (am, is, are, was ,were) فقط كترجمة للفعل(يُعتبَر) في المبني للمجهول:

Examples :

- يعتبر المعلمون تطوير التعليم واجب قومي واستثمار في مستقبل الوطن.

- Teachers consider the development of education a national duty and an investment in the country's future.

- يُعتبر تطوير التعليم واجب قومي واستثمار في مستقبل الوطن.

- The development of education is considered a national duty and an investment in the country's future.

= The development of education is a national duty and an investment in the country's future.

Practice (23) :

- اعتبرنا أن التفكير في الماضي مضيعة للوقت فيما لا طائل منه، لذا فإنه من الأفضل أن نفكر بالمستقبل.

....

....

- يُعتبر التفكير في الماضي مضيعة للوقت فيما لا طائل منه، لذا فإنه من الأفضل أن نفكر بالمستقبل.

....

....

Translation vocabulary			
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	in a useless way	فيما لا طائل منه

١٩ كلما ... كلما

١. تُترجم هذه الصيغة بإحدى طريقتين هما:

The + صفة مقارنة + subj. + verb ... + the + صفة مقارنة + subj. + verb ...

OR

If + present simple + , + (... + will + inf.) / (present simple)

Examples :

- كلما زاد عدد الطلاب كلما زادت حاجتنا إلى المدارس والمدرسين.

- The more students there are, the more schools and teachers we need.
- If students increase in number, we need (will need) more schools and teachers.

- كلما قلت كمية الطعام الذي تتناوله كلما تحسنت صحتك.

- The less food you eat, the healthier you are.
- If you eat less food, your health improves (will improve).

Practice (24) :

- كلما ازدادت الصادرات كلما أصبح الوضع الاقتصادي أفضل.

....

....

- كلما تحسنت مهاراتك وقدراتك كلما أصبحت فرصتك في الحصول على وظيفة جيدة أكبر.

....

....

Translation vocabulary

abilities	قدرات	economy	الوضع الاقتصادي
chance	فرصة	exports	الصادرات

PART II TRANSLATION FROM ENGLISH INTO ARABIC

وفيما يلي سنقدم لكم أهم الملاحظات التي تحتاجونها عند الترجمة من العربية للإنجليزية:

1 be : am, is, are - was, were - been

١. عندما يكون الفعل (be) فعلاً أساسياً فهو يُترجم إلى (يكون/يوجد):

Example :

- Egypt was, still is, and will always be the land of peace and tolerance.

- لقد كانت مصر ولا زالت وستبقى دائماً أرض السلام والتسامح.

٢. في المضارع غالباً يتم حذف ترجمة الفعل (be) بمعنى (يكون/يوجد) من الجملة العربية عند الترجمة:

Example :

- Pollution is one the most dangerous threats to man's existence on earth.

- إن التلوث أحد أخطر التهديدات لوجود الإنسان على الأرض.

٣. أحياناً تتم ترجمة الفعل (be) بضمير غائب مثل (هو، هي، هما، هم، هن):

Example :

- Egypt is the cradle of civilisation. The Egyptians are the people who taught the whole world he meaning of civilization.

إن مصر هي مهد الحضارات، والمصريون هم الشعب الذي علم العالم معنى الحضارة.

٤. أحياناً تتم ترجمة الفعل (be) بمعنى آخر في اللغة العربية غير فعل (يكون/يوجد) حسب السياق:





Example :

- Democracy which guarantees responsible freedom is the cornerstone in our world today.

- تُعتبر الديمقراطية التي تضمن الحرية المسئولة حجر الزاوية في عالمنا اليوم.

- A knife is for cutting while a pen is for writing.

- تستخدم السكين للقطع بينما يُستخدم القلم للكتابة.

٥. عند استخدام (be) كفعل مساعد لا يوجد لها معنى في الترجمة إلا في الماضي المستمر:

Example :

- The government is working on the distance-learning file to improve the quality of the learning process.

- تعمل الحكومة على ملف التعليم عن بعد لتحسين جودة العملية التعليمية.

- I was checking the report when suddenly the lights went out.

- كنت أراجع التقرير عندما انقطعت الأنوار فجأة.

Practice (1) :

- Education is not an end in itself, but it is a means to an end.

....

- Your parents are the grant you true love and hope you are better than they are.

....

Translation vocabulary			
doing your best	تبذل قصارى جهدك	grant	يمنح
end	غاية	means	وسيلة
exerting great efforts	يبذل جهوداً عظيمة	provide	يوفر

2 only

١. الظرف (only) بمعنى (فقط) يُستخدم في الانجليزية لتحديد معنى ما يأتي بعده سواء جاء بعده اسم أو فعل أو ضمير أو ظرف آخر، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Examples :

- Only Omar visited me yesterday. — عُمر فقط هو من زارني بالأمس.
- Omar only helped me yesterday. — لم يقم عُمر بالأمس الا بمساعدتي.
- Omar helped only me yesterday. — عُمر ساعدني أنا فقط بالأمس.
- Omar helped me only yesterday. — عُمر ساعدني بالأمس فقط.

٢. تُستخدم كلمة (only) كصفة بمعنى (الوحيد):

Example :

- Egypt is the only country in the Middle East whose population is more than one hundred million.

- إن مصر هي الدولة الوحيدة في الشرق الأوسط التي يتجاوز عدد سكانها ١٠٠ مليون نسمة.

Practice (2) :

- Only intelligent and hard-working students can get the full marks such a difficult exam.

....

- We have only two days before the deadline to make up our minds and make a final decision.

....

General Exercises on Translation

O Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. The World Cup is a professional football tournament held between national football teams. Organised by FIFA, the tournament is held every four years.

a. كأس العالم هي بطولة كرة قدم مهنية تقام بين فرق كرة القدم الوطنية تنظمها الفيفا. وتقام البطولة كل أربع سنوات.
b. كأس العالم هي بطولة كرة قدم احترافية أقيمت بين فرق كرة القدم الوطنية وتنظمها الفيفا. وأقيمت البطولة كل أربع سنوات
c. كأس العالم هي بطولة كرة قدم احترافية تقام بين فرق كرة القدم الوطنية تنظمها الفيفا. وتقام البطولة كل أربع سنوات.
d. كأس العالم هي بطولة كرة قدم احترافية تقام بين فرق كرة القدم الدولية تنظمها الفيفا. وتقام البطولة كل أربع سنوات.

2. In November 2022, Egypt hosted the 27th session of the UN Climate Change Conference (COP27), with a view to building on previous successes.

a. في شهر نوفمبر ٢٠٢٢، استضافت مصر الدورة السابعة والعشرين لمؤتمر المملكة المتحدة لتغير المناخ (COP27) بهدف البناء على النجاحات السابقة.
b. في شهر نوفمبر ٢٠٢٢، استضافت مصر الدورة السابعة والعشرين لمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ (COP27) بهدف البناء على النجاحات السابقة
c. في شهر نوفمبر ٢٠٢٢، استضافت مصر الدورة السابعة والعشرين لمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ (COP27) بالهدف البناء على النجاحات السابقة.
d. في شهر نوفمبر ٢٠٢٢، استضافت مصر الدورة السابعة والعشرين لمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ (COP27) بهدف البناء على النجاحات السابقة.

O Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

1. يحرص السيد رئيس الجمهورية على حضور مؤتمرات الشباب وذلك للاستماع إلى آرائهم وتطلعاتهم من ناحية، وإشراكهم في عملية صنع القرار من الناحية الأخرى.

a. The President of the Republic is keen to attend young conferences in order to listen to their views and aspirations on the one hand, and to involve them in the decision-making process on the other hand.
b. The President of the Republic is keen to attend youth conferences to listen to their views and aspirations on the one hand, and to avoid them in the decision-making process on the other hand.
c. The President of the Republic is keen to attend youth conferences in order to listen to there views and aspirations on the one hand, and to involve them in the decision-making process on the other hand.
d. The President of the Republic is keen to attend youth conferences in order to listen to their views and aspirations on the one hand, and to involve them in the decision-making process on the other hand.

2. إن الأجيال الجديدة من الشباب لديهم أفكار ورؤى تناسب عصرهم، وليس من المنطقي أن نفرض عليهم أفكار قد لا تتفق مع طموحاتهم أو متغيرات عصرهم

a. The new generators of young people have ideas and visions that are appropriate for their era; it is not logical to impose ideas on them that may not be consistent with their aspirations or the changes of their era.
b. The new generations of young people have ideas and visions that are appropriate for their era; it is not logical to impose ideas on them that may not be consistent with their aspirations or the changes of their era.
c. The new generations of young people have ideas and visions that are inappropriate for their era; it is not logical to impose ideas on them that may not be consistent with their aspirations or the changes of their era.
d. The new generations of young people have ideas and visions that are appropriate for their era; it is not illogical to impose ideas on them that may not be consistent with their aspirations or the changes of their era.

3. Writing Skill

٣. مهارة الكتابة

Introduction

أعزائنا مُعلمي وطلاب المرحلة الثانوية:

كالعادة يأتيكم كتابكم المفضل (El-Moasser) بالجديد الموثوق به، والمفيد الذي يوفر وقتكم وجهدكم ويضمن لكم أعلي الدرجات. وفي هذا الجزء نقدم لكم كل ما يخص مهارة الكتابة (Writing) سواء الجزء المقالي (Subjective) والذي يتضمن كتابة مقال (Essay) أو رسالة بريد إلكتروني (Email).

Writing (Subjective)

مهارة الكتابة (مقالي)

Important Tips : إرشادات هامة

عزيزي الطالب: تعلّم من الكتابة واكتب ... لا تحفظ مقدمات وخواتم.

- لابد أن تعلم أنه إذا كانت الكلمة (word) هي وحدة بناء الجملة (sentence)، فإن الجملة هي وحدة بناء الفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph)، والفقرة الإنشائية هي وحدة بناء المقال (essay) بأنواعه أو رسائل البريد الإلكتروني (email)...إلخ.

A group of words ...	make →	a sentence
A group of sentences ...	make →	a paragraph
A group of paragraphs ...	make →	an essay, an email, a letter, a short story, ...etc.

وفيما يلي سنقدم لكم ملفاً كاملاً يجعلكم تحترفون مهارة الكتابة باللغة الإنجليزية، وسيحتوي هذا الملف على:

1. Sentence الجملة
2. Paragraph الفقرة الإنشائية
3. Essay & Types of essays المقال بأنواعه
4. Email: Formal & Informal رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية والودية

1 Sentence : الجملة:

حيث أن الجملة هي وحدة بناء الفقرة الإنشائية والمقال وكل أشكال الكتابة الأخرى، فسنركز هنا على مساعدتك على تجنُّب أهم الأخطاء الشائعة التي يقع فيها الطالب عند كتابة الجُمل:

❶ Avoid using compound & complex sentences

تجنب استخدام الجُمل الطويلة (المركبة)

تجنب استخدام الجمل الطويلة حتى لا تقع في أخطاء، فالجملة البسيطة القصيرة هي أفضل أنواع الجمل وأكثرها تشويقاً وجذباً للقارئ، والجملة البسيطة المبنية للمعلوم تبدأ بفاعل ثم فعل، أما الجملة المبنية للمجهول فهي تبدأ بالمفعول ثم تصريف (be) حسب الزمن ثم التصريف الثالث:

- Pollution affects health badly. (معلوم)
- Health is badly affected by pollution. (مجهول)

(يؤثر التلوث بشدة على الصحة.)

❷ Avoid repeating the beginnings of sentences تجنّب تكرار بدايات الجُمل

لا تكرر بدايات الجمل، فهذا يؤدي إلى شعور القارئ أو المصحح بالملل والسطحية. لاحظ الفقرة الإنشائية التالية:

You should work hard. You shouldn't waste your time. You should have a time plan. You should work to a plan. You should do everything possible to achieve your goals in life.

في المثال السابق بدات جميع الجمل بـ (You should/shouldn't) وهذا أمر غير مرغوب فيه، فمن الأفضل تنويع بدايات الجمل باستخدام أساليب أخرى، لاحظ نفس المثال السابق بدايات متنوعة للجمل وحدد أيهما أفضل:

It is advisable to work hard. You shouldn't waste your time. If I were you, I would have a time plan. You'd better work to a plan. It is important to do everything possible to achieve your goals in life.

❸ Singular or Plural verb استخدام الفعل مع المفرد والجمع

١. تأكد أن الفاعل مفرد أو جمع لكي تستخدم الصيغة الصحيحة للفعل:

- One of the tourists are trying to climb the Great Pyramid. ✗
- One of the tourists is trying to climb the Great Pyramid. ✓

٢. لا تنسى إضافة (s, es, ies) لنهاية الفعل إذا كنت تستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط وكان الفاعل مفرد غائب (he, she, it):

- Smoking destroy your lungs. ✗
- Smoking destroys your lungs. ✓

٣. بعد الضمائر التالية نستخدم صيغة الفعل المفرد (is -was - has - does) وتكون الضمائر في صيغة الجمع:

- someone, anyone, everyone, no one
- somebody, anybody, everybody, nobody

- Everybody have to do his best to help the environment. ✗
- Everybody has to do their best to help the environment. ✓

٤. بعد الأسماء التالية نستخدم صيغة الفعل الجمع (are -were - have - do):

people, police, cattle, livestock, clothes, shoes, scissors, pliers, shorts, slippers, trousers ...

- The police was chasing some criminals. ✗
- The police were chasing some criminals. ✓

❹ Adjectives & adverbs الصفة والظرف

١. الصفة تأتي قبل الاسم الموصوف (عكس اللغة العربية):

- Climate change has a negative effect on health. (Not: effect negative)

٢. قد تأتي الصفة بدون الاسم الموصوف بعدها بعد بعض الأفعال التقريرية مثل:

be - look يبدو **- seem** يبدو **- appear** يبدو **- sound** يبدو **- feel ...**

- Egypt is great. = Egypt is a great nation.
- The problem sounds serious.

٣. يأتي ظرف الكيفية قبل الأفعال أو في نهاية الجملة:

- Pollution badly affects health. = Pollution affects health badly.

٤. هناك صفات تنتهي بـ (ly) ويجب الانتباه إلى أنها ليست ظرف، ومن أمثلتها ما يلي :

(friendly ودود - neighbourly ودود - cowardly جبان)

- He is a friendly man.



٥. تأتي ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الأفعال، لكنها تأتي بعد تصريفات الفعل (be) والأفعال الناقصة والمساعدة:

always - often/frequently غالبا - usually عادة - regularly بانتظام - sometimes - occasionally بين الحين والآخر - rarely/scarcely/seldom نادرا - never ...

- Sama always helps others. = Sama is always helpful.

٦. تأتي ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات لتحدد درجة قوتها أو ضعفها:

slightly بدرجة طفيفة - little/a bit قليلا - even/so/a lot/ much كثيرا ...

- Today is a bit colder than yesterday.
- This year, gold is much more expensive than last year.

5 Sentence Punctuation علامات الترقيم الخاصة بالجملة

١. كل جملة خبرية أو أمرية تبدأ بحرف (Capital) وتنتهي بنقطة (full stop):

- We all work hard for a better future.
- Get enough sleep if you want to keep healthy.

٢. كل سؤال يبدأ بحرف (Capital) وينتهي بعلامة استفهام (Question mark):

- How can we solve the problem of heavy traffic?
- Do you have plans for your future?

٣. في أي مكان في الجملة تبدأ أسماء الإنسان والبلاد والأقاليم الجغرافية والمعالم المشهورة وأيام الأسبوع وأسماء الشهور بحروف (Capital). وكذلك ضمير المتكلم (I):

- On a sunny Friday last January, Ahmed and I travelled to Aswan in Upper Egypt where we visited the High Dam and the Botanical Island.

٤. في الجملة التي تبدأ برابطة نستخدم الفاصلة السفلى (,) بين جزئيها

- Because education is very important, we have to improve it.
- Once I had reached the station, the train left.

2 Writing paragraphs : كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية :

تتكون الفقرة الإنشائية من مجموعة من الجمل تدور حول فكرة رئيسية واحدة. وتنقسم هذه الجُمل إلى ثلاث أنواع رئيسية:



1 Topic sentence (=Introduction sentence) الجملة الرئيسية

غالبًا ما تكون الجُملة الرئيسية هي الجُملة الأولى في الفقرة الإنشائية، وهي توضح الفكرة الرئيسية التي تتحدث عنها الفقرة.

2 Supporting sentences: الجُمل الداعمة

تشرح الجُمل الداعمة المزيد من التفاصيل عن الجُملة الافتتاحية من خلال عرض بعض الحقائق أو الإحصائيات أو الأمثلة المتعلقة بالموضوع، وقد تشمل أيضًا تجربة الكاتب وتحليله الخاص.

❸ Concluding Sentence (= Closing Sentence) الجُملة الختامية

الجملة الختامية هي نهاية الفقرة الإنشائية، وفيها يعيد الكاتب صياغة جملة الموضوع أو يلخص النقاط الرئيسية في الفقرة.

Model Paragraph

Topic sentence → Tourism is one of the main activities in Egypt. It is one of the main sources of national income. It provides thousands of job opportunities for people who support families. It also provides some sort of cultural exchange. Tourism is an important pillar of Egypt's economy. ← Concluding sentence

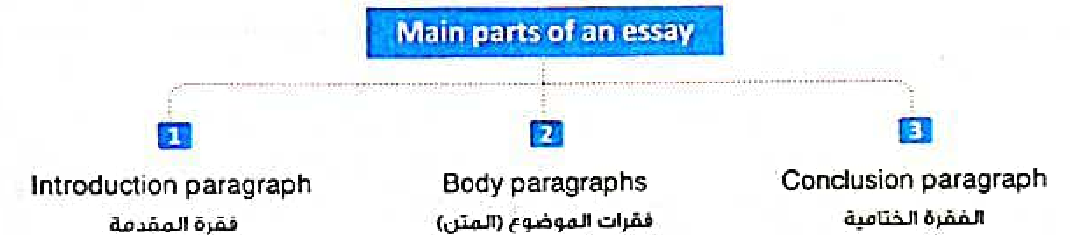
(Supporting sentences)

لاحظ كما في الفقرة الإنشائية السابقة أنه يتم ترك مسافة خمس أحرف (نصف سنتيمتر تقريباً) في بداية السطر الأول فقط في الفقرة الإنشائية، وهي بمثابة إشارة إلى بداية الفقرة.

3 Essay Writing : كتابة المقال :

Remember

- كتابة جملة صحيحة تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية (paragraph) جيدة.
- المقال يتكون من عدد من الفقرات الإنشائية.
- يتحدث المقال عن أطروحة أو فكرة رئيسية واحدة (Thesis) يتم ذكرها في فقرة المقدمة.
- تنقسم الفقرات الانشائية في المقال إلى ثلاثة أنواع هي:



❶ Introduction paragraph فقرة المقدمة

- هي الفقرة الأولى في المقال وتبدأ بجملة افتتاحية لجذب انتباه القارئ تُسمى (hook)
- بعد جملة جذب الانتباه يتم ذكر الأطروحة أو الفكرة الرئيسية للمقال (thesis)
- المقدمة عادة لا تكون طويلة (من ٤ – ٦جمل تقريباً)
- الهدف الرئيسي من فقرة المقدمة هو جذب انتباه القارئ وتعريفه بما سيتم مناقشته في المقال لاحقاً

❷ Body paragraphs : فقرات الموضوع (المتن)

- وهي تتكون من عدد من الفقرات الإنشائية (paragraphs)
- تناقش كل فقرة أحد الأفكار الرئيسية (main ideas) المرتبطة بموضوع المقال
- تتكون كل فقرة إنشائية على حدة من: جملة مقدمة وجُمل داعمة وجملة ختامية

❸ Conclusion paragraph الفقرة الختامية

- هي الفقرة الأخيرة في المقال
- يعيد الكاتب صياغة الفكرة الرئيسية أو الأطروحة (restated thesis) في الفقرة الختامية
- يقوم الكاتب بتلخيص النقاط الرئيسية التي قام بعرضها في المقال (أي أنه يقدم خلاصة المقال)
- تبدأ الفقرة الختامية بتعبيرات مثل:

- In conclusion, … - To conclude, … - To sum up, … - In summary, …
- To put the whole matter in a nutshell, …

PART 3

Model Essay

How to keep healthy ← Title

Hook → It is said that health is a crown on the heads of healthy people only seen by patients. To keep healthy, Thesis → you need to take care of three main things: your diet, your exercise and your sleep. The balance between these three behaviour is very necessary. Let's take a look at each of them in a bit more detail. } Introduction Paragraph

→ Good food is extremely important to your health. Make sure you eat the right amounts of food. Your diet must include suitable amounts of protein, carbohydrates, fat and vitamins. Try not to eat too much carbohydrates in order not to gain weight. Fresh fruit and vegetables are very useful. It is advisable to vary the foods you eat but do not eat too much.

→ Exercise is a key ingredient of a healthy person's lifestyle. It refreshes your blood circle. Doing exercise helps you grow strong muscles and keep fit. It also helps you burn the calories that your body does not need. The more you exercise, the fitter and healthier you are.

→ What about your sleep? Scientists have proved that humans need to get enough sleep to keep good physical and mental health. The number of hours one needs varies according the stage of life they are at. A child needs more sleep than a teenager. Old people need the fewest hours of sleep. An ordinary young person needs about eight-hour sleep a day. Sleep refreshes your physical and mental abilities.

(Topic sentences of body paragraphs) } Body Paragraphs

In conclusion, good health is necessary for happy life. Restated Thesis → In order to keep good health, you need to have good food, get regular exercise, and get enough sleep. If you haven't started to take care of all three elements, it is due time to start. } Conclusion Paragraph

1 Persuasive (Argumentative) Essay المقال الإقناعي (الجدلي)

Remember

- المقال الإقناعي هو نوع من المقالات التي يتبنى فيها الكاتب قضية ما ولا يكون محايداً.
- عادة ما يستخدم كاتب المقال الإقناعي الصور البلاغية للتأثير على رأي القارئ.
- يجب تقديم المعلومات المستخدمة في المقال الإقناعي بشكل تدريجي جذاب.
- يجب أن يطرح المقال المعلومات التي تدعم الموضوع، وتنقل رسالة المؤلف، والتي يمكن أن تؤثر في الجمهور المستهدف.

Model persuasive essay

Mobile phones and education

Mobile phones are in the hands of everybody these days. They are no longer used only for calling or texting. They have become an indispensable multi-tool wonder. With this in mind, should students be allowed to use mobile phones in school?

I believe they should not just be permitted to use mobile phones; they should be required to use them. Mobile phones allow students to stay connected with family. Moreover, they are also a wonderful learning resource, and they encourage the responsible use of technology.

First, mobile phones make it possible for students to stay in touch with family and friends. A student can call home if he or she needs anything. Also, mobile phones allow parents to keep an eye on their children before, during, and after school.

Second, mobile phones -especially smartphones- are an amazing learning resource. Students can use applications such as the calculator, the map finder, and the calendar.

Finally, mobile phones encourage the responsible use of technology. Students can learn when and how to use their mobile phones to enhance their learning. They will become more independent in their work and more motivated to learn.

To conclude, we must accept that we live in the age of technology and that mobile phones are an important and very useful part of that age. We miss out if we fail to take advantage of the educational power of the mobile phone. All in all, mobile phones improve communication, provide learning resources, and encourage appropriate use of technology.

2 Opinion (Reflective) Essay — مقال الرأى / المقال التاملى

Remember

- يندرج مقال الرأي من حيث النوع تحت المقال الإقناعي (Persuasive Essay).
- مقال الرأي هو عمل يعبر فيه الكاتب عن رأيه ويدعم هذا الرأي بالحقائق والأمثلة.
- مقال الرأي لا يحتاج بالضرورة إلى الاعتماد على الحقائق الثابتة؛ بل يمكن الاعتماد على رأي الكاتب بشرط أن يتمكن الكاتب من دعم هذا الرأي بالحجج المعقولة.
- يُكثر كتاب مقال الرأي من استخدام عبارات مثل:

- I think ....
- I believe ...
- I see ...
- In my opinion, ...
- From my own point of view, ...

Model opinion essay

Space exploration

Do you think that space exploration should be continued? Some people think that we should continue exploring the space, but others think that we should stop doing that. These people have their own reasons for or against.

In my opinion, I think that we should continue exploring space because it gives people many benefits. It will solve humans' population and scarce resource problems. It will also improve our technology. If mankind stops exploring space, our world will only be limited to Earth, and it will be so tiny compared to the universe.

Some people think that space exploration is a waste of resources. They think that even if there is a planet suitable for mankind to live on, it will be so far away, and it may take hundreds or thousands of years to reach it at the speed of light. Right now, mankind does not have a spaceship going at the speed of light.

However, I believe that it will be possible in the near future. Could ancient people imagine that humanity will invent airplanes that fly in the sky? No one really knows what will happen in the future, and everything will be possible.

Space exploration can be very profitable, and it will relieve the Earth's burden. As scientists found out, the universe is full of resources. If we continue exploring space, people will find more resources. Thus, humans can save the natural resources on Earth for emergencies, and exploit vast resources on other planets.

4 Email : رسالة البريد الإلكتروني :

1 Writing informal emails كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الودية (غير الرسمية)

Remember

- رسالة البريد الإلكتروني **(email)** هي الصيغة العصرية للخطاب التقليدي **(letter)**.
- يُستخدم البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي **(informal email)** في المراسلات بين الأقارب والأصدقاء.
- يتم كتابة عنوان المُرسَل إليه **(recipient)** في سطر المُرسَل إليه **(To-line)**
- يتم كتابة عنوان موضوع رسالة البريد الإلكتروني في سطر الموضوع **(Subject line)** أو **(About-line)**.
- في بداية موضوع الرسالة، يتم كتابة اسم المُرسَل إليه بعد كلمة **(Dear/ Hello/Hi)** في البريد غير الرسمي **(informal email)** مثل:

Dear Sama,
Hello Fatma,
Hi Youssef,

يبدأ الخطاب غير الرسمي بأحد تعبيرات التحية مثل:

How are you?
I hope you are OK!
I am very happy to send you this email!

- يتم تقسيم الرسالة إلى فقرات إنشائية **(paragraphs)** مستقلة مثل المقال تماماً.
- يمكن استخدام الاختصارات مثل:

(It's ,she'd, we've)

- يمكن إستخدام ضمائر المتكلم **(I / We)**
- قبل توقيع المُرسِل في نهاية الرسالة نستخدم بعض تعبيرات التحية الختامية مثل:

Yours
Talk soon
All the best
Best regards

Model informal email

To : ashraffathi@elmoasser.com ← To line

Subject : An invitation to spend a week in Aswan ← Subject line

Dear Ashraf,

How are you? I hope you are well. I send you this email to invite you to spend a week with me here in Aswan in the next mid-year holiday.

If you accept my invitation, I am sure you will spend a great time here with us. As you know, it is usually sunny and warm in Aswan in winter. You will change the cold weather of Cairo for the warmth of the south of Egypt.

You can stay with me at my house in New Aswan. You can accompany all your family members with you. I am sure they will like it here.

You will visit the great High Dam. We will spend a day sailing on the Nile and walking around Aswan's Botanical Island. Fancy walking in an island in the middle of the Nile among hundreds of types of rare trees and plants.

Aswan is the land of history. There are several archaeological sites we can visit, especially the temples of Philae, the Nubian Museum and the Nile Museum.

You will also enjoy the special meals, especially the fresh Nile fish. Aswan is also famous for its rare spices and medical herbs.

Everything here is quiet, healthy and special. You will forget all about your worries and the stress of the never-ending pressure of work. I really hope you will accept my invitation. I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Closing Salutation → Yours sincerely,

Mohammed

Body of the email

2 Writing formal emails كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية

Remember

- يُستخدم البريد الإلكتروني الرسمي (formal email) في مجالات العمل والتعليم والمراسلات بين الجهات الرسمية.
- يتم كتابة عنوان المُرسَل إليه في سطر المُرسَل إليه (To-line)
- يتم كتابة عنوان موضوع رسالة البريد الإلكتروني في سطر الموضوع (Subject line) أو (About-line).
- يتم كتابة اسم المُرسَل إليه مسبوقاً باللقب الخاص به مثل (Mr, Mrs, Ms ...) بعد كلمة (Dear) في البريد الرسمي:

Dear Mr Mohammed,



عند عدم معرفة اسم المرسل إليه في الخطاب الرسمي، يتم مخاطبته بإحدى الطرق التالية:

Dear Sir,
Dear Madam,
Dear Sir or Madam,

- الأصل في رسائل البريد الالكتروني أن تكون قصيرة، لكن عند الحاجة إلى الإطالة يتم تقسيم الرسالة إلى فقرات إنشائية مستقلة مثل المقال تماماً.
- غالباً لا يحتوي موضوع رسائل البريد الالكتروني الرسمية على تعبيرات تحية.
- في البريد الرسمي لا تُستخدم الاختصارات والتعبيرات الدارجة.
- في الرسائل الإلكترونية الرسمية، يتم إنهاء موضوع الرسالة بطلب القيام بشيء حسب موضوع الرسالة. وهو ما يُعرف بـ (Call-to-action).
- قبل توقيع المرسل في نهاية الرسالة تُستخدم بعض تعبيرات التحية الختامية مثل:

Yours sincerely
Yours faithfully
Best wishes

- يكون توقيع المرسل في رسائل البريد الإلكتروني كما يلي:

[Your name]
[Title]
[Company name]
[Contact information]

Model formal email

To : mohammedbendueshy@elmoasser.com ← **To line**

Subject: An urgent technical meeting ← **Subject line**

Dear Mr Mohammed,

We are having a technical meeting for the staff of the department of English. As a prominent member of the team, you are invited to take part in the meeting. We are discussing the plans for the next academic year.

The meeting is to be held in the main hall on the seventh floor, at 17:00 next Thursday, 19th April.

Check your email for the flight tickets. A car will be waiting for you at the airport at the appointed time. I look forward to seeing you at the meeting. Email back if you have any comments.

(**Body of the email**)

Closing Salutation → Yours sincerely,

Ayman Soliman,
Head of the Team,
Al-Talaba Bookstore.
157 Ramses St., Cairo.
Telephone number: 01234567890
aymanmoasser@gmail.com

(**Contact Information**)

2023

Altfwok.com موقع التفوق

15 Model Tests

شمسة على اختبار على المنهج بالكامل

• Understand • Apply • Create

Model 1

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Can you repeat your question in other words ? It is not clear. The antonyms of "clear" are ....
   a. ambiguous b. obvious c. vague d. bright e. cloudy
2. A good leader should have some qualities as being ....
   a. extremist b. fair c. violent d. wise e. stubborn

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. This party is boring. We .... a good time.
   a. don't have b. aren't having c. didn't have d. hadn't had
4. Sorry, I .... you at the moment.
   a. don't help b. can't help c. am not helping d. am not helped
5. I .... my computer very often.
   a. am not using b. am not used c. doesn't use d. don't use
6. There's .... /s/ sound in the word 'city'.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. I was made .... a fine for not wearing the seat belt.
   a. pay b. paying c. to pay d. paid
8. Have you sent all the invitations .... ? That's so fast!
   a. already b. just c. yet d. ever
9. The teacher wrote the names of the winning students on the ....
   a. chat broad b. noticeboard c. guard room d. changing room
10. A/an .... is someone who hurts or frightens someone who is smaller or less powerful than them .
   a. bully b. biologist c. expert d. archaeologist
11. The .... between smoking and cancer is very clear.
   a. connection b. disconnection c. donation d. transplant
12. The diet he follows makes him go ....
   a. healthy b. powerful c. pale d. strong

13. Do you know the most enormous animal on land ? Another word for "enormous" in this question is ....
   a. passive b. gigantic c. positive d. fantastic
14. After the match, he preferred to .... with a cup of tea.
   a. stress b. sleep c. worry d. relax
15. My grandpa once .... me a present.
   a. is giving b. gives c. gave d. giving
16. I suggest Rodayna .... engineering like her mother.
   a. studies b. studying c. have studied d. study

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A friend of mine once had an amusing experience on a bus. He very **rarely** travels by bus because he has been driving his own car for many years. But it so happened that his car broke down near his home. He was going to buy a fridge after he had taken out of the bank five thousand pounds that could cover the price of the set. He put the money in an envelope in one of his pockets and got on a bus. He met an old friend on the bus and had a conversation with him.

Unconsciously, every now and then he put his hand on his pocket to make sure that the envelope was still there. But suddenly he felt it had gone. He looked at the faces of the people around him but couldn't know which was the thief. **He didn't lose his nerve** and with a smile said to his friend, " A foolish thief has taken from my pocket an envelope which is full of newspaper cuttings about a subject. I am going to write an article for my paper. I think the fool thought it was full of money."

Everybody heard what he said and the man looked down and saw his envelope under the feet of the passengers. He picked it. As he was anxious to count the money in it, he left the bus the next stop. He was happy to find all the five thousand pounds in the envelope.

17. The writer's friend pretended to be a ....
   a. bus driver b. journalist c. policeman d. thief
18. The thief threw the envelope on the bus floor because ....
   a. it contained five thousand pounds
   b. he was tricked into believing that it had no money
   c. he was tricked into believing that it didn't have newspaper cuttings
   d. he was afraid of being arrested
19. The writer's friend had his money back ....
   a. because he knew the thief at once
   b. because he knew the thief but didn't arrest him
   c. because he behaved wisely
   d. because he didn't know the thief at all

20. The thief was really ....
   a. intelligent   b. nervous   c. foolish   d. happy
21. The underlined sentence "**He didn't lose his nerve**" which is mentioned in the passage means most likely that ....
   a. the writer's friend stayed calm
   b. the writer's friend became nervous
   c. the writer's friend became furious
   d. the writer's friend stayed tensioned
   e. the writer's friend didn't get angry
22. After the writer's friend found the envelope, he was .... to count the money in it.
   a. wise   b. worried   c. intelligent
   d. foolish   e. anxious
23. The word "**rarely**" can be replaced by ....
   a. seldom   b. always   c. usually
   d. often   e. scarcely

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

Infectious diseases have become various and dangerous especially in winter, so we should be careful about ourselves and don't use other people's things.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

تعلم الدول المتقدمة أن الاستثمار فى الإنسان من خلال توفير الظروف الملائمة لإيجاد شخص متعلم متحضر قادر على الإنتاج هو أفضل استثمار.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic :**

The four seasons of the year are characterized by different kinds of weather and activities. Which season is your favourite and why ?

....

Model 2

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. It is not good to avoid your problem. The opposites of "avoid" in this sentence are ....
   a. ignore   b. face   c. follow   d. improve   e. confront
2. I didn't enjoy reading that novel. It was boring. The antonyms of "boring" are ....
   a. interesting   b. tiring   c. annoying   d. amazing   e. exhausting

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. Before joining the university, I .... living away from my family.
   a. used   b. didn't use to   c. used to   d. wasn't used to
4. I want to get a carpenter .... the front door of my house.
   a. fix   b. fixed   c. to fix   d. be fixed
5. I know the names of all people in our street, ... little children.
   a. include   b. including   c. includes   d. included
6. My sister has a flat on .... 2nd floor.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
7. **A:** I'm thirsty.   **B:** Just a minute! I .... some cold water.
   a. will get   b. am going to get   c. am going   d. got
8. I prefer .... in the New Capital as it is modern.
   a. to living   b. live   c. lives   d. living
9. You need to work in .... with your team members.
   a. location   b. destination   c. pollution   d. collaboration
10. A/An .... is the operation of moving an organ, piece of skin etc. from one person to another.
   a. experience   b. transplant   c. exploration   d. transmission
11. Sometimes, a/an .... can be as loving as a real parent.
   a. father   b. stepfather   c. orphan   d. attendant
12. He is nervous because he is .... at work.
   a. stress   b. stressed   c. stressful   d. stresses
13. He is accused of .... That means trying to trick a person into giving information over the internet to take money from them.
   a. phishing   b. fishing   c. emptying   d. catching

14. My mother used to nurse us when we were ill. The opposite of "nurse" is to ....

a. support b. look after c. care about d. ignore

15. When .... this house built ?

a. does b. was c. did d. will

16. She is stubborn عنيدة. It .... easy to make her agree to this plan.

a. won't be b. isn't going to be
c. isn't being d. is

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Walking in the street at night, I found a purse full of money and an identity card. I found a photo of a pretty young lady. I put it back in the purse and went directly to the police station. The sergeant made a note of my name and address. Last Friday, I was invited to a party in my friend's house in Shoubra. A neighbour of my friend came to visit his wife. When I looked at her face, I found it familiar to me although we hadn't met before. After a short time, I remembered that she was the lady I had seen in the photo.

I was able to describe the purse and the sum of money accurately. She was surprised and we went together to the police station to get the purse back. After getting out of the police station, she thanked me a lot. She told me that she had looked for her purse for a long time until she lost hope to find it. I went home feeling happy as I was able to make this lady happy. It is good to feel **satisfied** with yourself.

17. The writer met the purse owner in ....

a. the police station b. street
c. their first school d. his friend's house

18. The purse owner was astonished because ....

a. she lost her purse
b. she met the person who found her purse accidentally
c. the person who found her purse was honest
d. she met the writer at her house

19. This passage is extracted from a ....

a. comic b. science book
c. religion book d. story

20. If the lady didn't visit the wife of the writer's friend, she would ....

a. not know about her purse b. not forget about her purse
c. forget about the money d. find her purse

21. If you find a sum of money, it's honest to ....

a. give it to the police b. give it to your friends
c. share it with others d. share it with the police
e. look for its owner

22. The word "**satisfied**" means ....

a. angry b. happy c. cross
d. nervous e. content

23. The lady lost hope about ....

a. getting to the police station b. getting her purse back
c. finding her bag d. getting married
e. making money

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

My father is a famous mechanic in our neighbourhood. He works hard for long hours to earn enough money for us.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

اعتمد المصريون القدماء على النباتات والأعشاب فى علاج العديد من الأمراض، ولقد اعتمد العلم الحديث على نفس الطريقة بسبب الآثار الجانبية للأدوية الكيميائية.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"Famous Egyptian women".

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Model 3

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. When I read two .... of the poem, I liked it very much.
   a. lines b. poets c. verses d. rhymes e. plots
2. Global warming is one of the main .... that must be faced and solved.
   a. rules b. reviews c. roles d. issues e. problems

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. Our teacher asked us to avoid .... our time in useless things.
   a. waste b. to waste c. wasting d. to wasting
4. I can't meet you at five because I .... my duties.
   a. won't have finished b. will be finished
   c. may have finished d. had finished
5. He listened to music while .... his car.
   a. was driving b. driving c. drove d. were driving
6. Many writers .... by Shakespeare, the great English playwright.
   a. influenced b. have influenced c. were influenced d. were influencing
7. **A:** Why have you got so much vegetables?
   B: Because I .... a meal for ten people.
   a. cook b. am going to cook c. will cook d. have cooked
8. What time .... home last night?
   a. did you get b. were you getting c. had you got d. were you got
9. My parents warned me not to .... liars.
   a. trust b. think c. connect d. distrust
10. .... pay for the tickets but children travel for free.
   a. Infants b. Adults c. The young d. The poor
11. The police have found a/an .... that he is the thief.
   a. clue b. cross c. island d. idea
12. He .... much money from exporting vegetables abroad.
   a. makes b. gives c. gains d. does
13. When the little boy went back home, he asked his brother for .... about a science problem.
   a. donation b. verse c. advice d. rhyme
14. When my little brother does anything wrong , I become ....
   a. delighted b. over the moon c. furious d. satisfied

15. The moon .... round the earth.
   a. has moved b. will move c. moves d. moved
16. She .... for work an hour ago.
   a. has left b. left c. is leaving d. will leave

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many animals in the world today are in danger. For many of them, the biggest danger is humans. People have always killed animals for their meat or their skins, others are killed because they eat crops or animals which belong to farmers. Certain animals, such as tigers and elephants, used to live in great numbers in countries like India. People have hunted them so much that there aren't many left alive. However, there are now laws to stop this.

In South America, many different birds and animals have lost their natural homes in the forests because thousands of trees have been cut down or burnt. People then used the land for farming or for building roads and towns.

We are too late to save some animals. A few are now **extinct**. This means there are none left anywhere in the world. Others are only in zoos or special parks. Zoos such as the one in Giza, are important because they can help some animals to live . It also make us able to provide **care** for animals and learn more about them in zoos.

17. After the trees have been cut down, the forest land in South America is not used for ....
   a. roads b. farms c. towns d. zoos
18. According to the passage, zoos are important for animals because ....
   a. they save animals from death b. we enjoy visiting them
   c. animals can be seen there d. people can eat meat there
19. The underlined word "**extinct**" in the passage means ....
   a. active b. not active
   c. existing d. no longer existing
20. The best title to the passage is "........... ".
   a. Animal protection b. Pollution
   c. Climate change d. Animals' life
21. .... do their best to keep animals safe.
   a. Conservationists b. Hunters c. Policemen
   d. Farmers e. Environmentalists

22. The verb "care" can be replaced by ....

a. look for   b. look after   c. look behind
d. look out   e. take care of

23. People used animals' land for ....

a. cutting down trees   b. milking cows
c. planting crops   d. building zoos
e. building roads and towns

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

Before submitting your exam answers, you should revise every item well and to be sure that you have answered all of them.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

لا تدع أطفالك يمارسوا ألعاب الكمبيوتر كثيرًا ، فلقد أثبتت الدراسات الحديثة خطورة مثل هذه الألعاب على الأطفال خاصة إذا كانت ألعاب عنف.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"Exploring the space"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Model 4

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. It's a long walk from my house to the club. The word "walk" can be replaced by ....

a. route   b. flight   c. path   d. destination   e. voyage

2. It's better to invite them all, ... Adham.

a. generally   b. rarely   c. loudly   d. especially   e. particularly

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. We decided .... in a five-star hotel.

a. to stay   b. staying   c. to staying   d. stay

4. **A:** What would you like to start with? **B:** I .... lentil soup, please.

a. would have   b. am having   c. will have   d. going to have

5. I don't have .... friends; just three close ones.

a. any   b. lot of   c. many   d. a few

6. It's two months since we .... in Cairo.

a. have stayed   b. were staying   c. stayed   d. are staying

7. English .... all over the world.

a. speaks   b. is spoken   c. is speaking   d. spoke

8. If he .... the label, he'd know what this drink consists of.

a. read   b. reads   c. is reading   d. was read

9. A / An .... is a dishonest plan to steal money.

a. import   b. deal   c. scam   d. export

10. Sara's .... with Noha started at primary school.

a. friendship   b. diversity   c. salutation   d. expression

11. I know how to overcome this difficult situation as I have .... it before.

a. extracted   b. married   c. owed   d. experienced

12. People who .... the law must be fined.

a. save   b. obey   c. follow   d. break

13. The .... were taken to the public hospital.

a. solutions   b. victims   c. spices   d. adverts

14. To keep the gravel walk means to stay on the ....

a. Indian Wars   b. barrow   c. path   d. wall

15. Would you mind .... me to the airport ?

a. driving b. to driving c. of driving d. to driving

16. To me, either answer .... acceptable.

a. are b. were c. is d. has

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The average age of the population of many countries is getting older. This means that businesses in those countries must adjust to older customers. In fact, many companies are working to respond the special needs of the elderly. One example of this is the medical industry. New medicines and technologies are being developed especially for the health problems of older people. Another business that offers services for the elderly is the tourist industry. Many travel agencies offer special trips for groups of older people. And finally, there are many different kinds of products made for the elderly. These include everything from shoes and shampoos to magazines and furniture.

In industrialized countries today, many elderly people face the **danger** of living alone and lonely. That leads to the feeling of depression. In the past, older people usually lived with other members of the family. They usually had some responsibilities around the home. For example, older women could help take care of the children or prepare meals. These days, married adults often prefer to live **on their own**, far away from other parents. Older people sometimes feel that they do not concern anyone.

17. The best summary to the passage can be ".........." .

a. Medicine industry develops special drugs b. Serving the elderly
c. Tourist companies d. Serving the environment

18. Some elderly people feel they are cut off from the world when ....

a. they can help their sons b. they can't help their sons
c. their sons and daughters live far from them d. they face health problems

19. The idiom "**on their own**" in the passage means ....

a. alone b. belonging to
c. possess d. without help from anyone

20. Those who serve the elderly are ....

a. helpful b. impatient c. evil d. unkind

21. The antonym of "**danger**" is ....

a. responsibility b. safety c. opportunity
d. depression e. security

22. Many travel agencies .... special trips for the elderly.

a. request b. travel c. offer
d. pick e. suggest

23. Living alone and lonely leads to the feeling of ....

a. depression b. confidence c. hope
d. pride e. sadness

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

Many writers depend on their writings on real stories that they might have happened to them or to some people that they knew well.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

من الجيد أن تضع لنفسك أهدافًا تسعى لتحقيقها فى فترة زمنية محددة، ولكن الأفضل أن تكون هذه الأهداف مناسبة لقدراتك فتحققها بسهولة.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

Everywhere we go, we use many modern inventions which help us live a better life. In your opinion, what is the most important invention in your life ?

....

Model 5

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. We have faced many major problems. The antonyms of "major" are ....
   a. important b. main c. minor d. unkind e. unimportant
2. Brilliant scientists .... new devices all the time to make life easier.
   a. discover b. create c. explore d. invite e. invent

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. Do you think that Cairo .... bigger in the future?
   a. is b. is going to be c. will be d. is being
4. He is collecting all the paintings which his friend ....
   a. drew b. had drawn c. draws d. has drawn
5. This playground .... for training.
   a. used b. is used c. uses d. is using
6. "Doctors are supposed to help sick people" means: ....
   a. They help sick people b. They should help sick people
   c. They must be helped by sick people d. They might have helped sick people
7. .... yesterday evening ?
   a. What were you doing b. What you were doing
   c. What doing you were d. What were doing you
8. I want .... bottle of cold water.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
9. A / An .... is a steep piece of land or rock.
   a. scar b. cliff c. area d. island
10. The problem was discussed a lot on the ....
    a. media b. room c. mid d. middle
11. The .... decided that the man was innocent بريء and set him free.
    a. pirate b. sailor c. cook d. magistrate
12. .... conclusion , I'd like to thank you for your attendance.
    a. In b. At c. On d. About
13. It's important to lock your house before going out. The antonym of "lock" is to ....
    a. shout b. separate c. open d. rob
14. I needed help, so I asked my friend to .... me a favour.
    a. push b. take c. send d. do
15. Try .... the aerial over there, it might work better.
    a. to put b. putting c. will put d. put
16. Nurses .... after patients in hospitals. It's their job.
    a. are looking b. looked c. look d. looks

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People may be divided into two groups, winners and losers. Because our families and friends have a great effect on us as we grow, we are born hopeless and dependent on our environment. Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes, they do their own thinking, they listen to, think of what they say and then they make their decisions.

Although they may fall at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners **overcome** their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves, but they can give it up if duty calls.

Losers, on the other hand never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many reasons why people can become losers: disease, poor food, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences, these can slow down the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers don't do anything and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and repeat their own mistakes again and again. Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problems with their lives but never try to change.

17. The passage is mainly about ....
    a. winners and losers b. winners
    c. losers d. all people
18. When the winners fall at times, they ....
    a. are afraid to try new things b. keep their self-confidence
    c. spend their time waiting d. repeat their own mistakes
19. Winners can change their own ideas by ....
    a. using their mistakes as excuses b. blaming others for mistakes
    c. being in charge of their own lives d. waiting for something wonderful
20. The verb "**overcome**" can have the meaning of ....
    a. get up b. get on c. get by d. get over

21. Losers need ....
   a. to change their mind
   b. not to change their ideas about themselves
   c. not to change their ideas
   d. to use their mistakes as excuses
   e. to learn from their mistakes

22. Which of the following is correct ?
   a. People may fail at times but not all times.
   b. People should think of their ways in life.
   c. People can't change their mind.
   d. Winners can't get over their bad experiences.
   e. Winners can't fight dangerous situations.

23. Winners are ....
   a. responsible   b. evil   c. bad
   d. careless   e. careful

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

Although many scientists have warned us recently that mobile phones have bad effects on our health, people often use their mobile phones more than before.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

تسعى الحكومة بجد لحل مشكلة الازدحام فى المدن الكبرى إما بإنشاء العديد من الكبارى أو بناء مدن جديدة وتشجيع المواطنين للانتقال للعيش بها.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"A review of a novel you have read"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Model 6

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. These two mobile phones are similar. The antonyms of "similar" are ....
   a. unlike   b. alike   c. comparable   d. resembling   e. different

2. I think Adham can do this job .... He is very clever.
   a. properly   b. negatively   c. correctly   d. improperly   e. wrongly

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. Esraa .... on her mobile when suddenly the battery went dead.
   a. didn't talk   b. wasn't talking   c. was talking   d. has talked

4. When I was young, I .... much free time, so I played a lot with my friend.
   a. used to having   b. don't use to have
   c. used to have   d. didn't use to have

5. Rokaya .... the washing-up when her father arrived home.
   a. did   b. was doing   c. is doing   d. does

6. I spent .... useful time in the library.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article

7. He prepared everything. He ....
   a. was showering   b. has showered
   c. will shower   d. is going to shower

8. I really hate .... alone.
   a. to living   b. living   c. lives   d. live

9. Every member of the .... must respect the freedom of others.
   a. experience   b. beliefs   c. community   d. merchant

10. My children, Rodayna and Ahmed, are ready to............ and hurt each other for any reason.
   a. call   b. populate   c. fight   d. avoid

11. Sending messages online to frighten or worry someone is called ....
   a. applying   b. sharing   c. blogging   d. cyberbullying

12. I'd like to speak to the head of the department. The word "head" in this sentence is ....
   a. a part of a body   b. a leader of a place   c. a way of thinking   d. a place to stay in

13. I spent the whole day .... on the beach.
   a. spicing   b. impacting   c. sunbathing   d. increasing

14. The governor is giving a .... in the conference.
   a. talk   b. talks   c. talking   d. to talk
15. Yasser plans .... aboard next year.
   a. to work   b. working   c. has worked   d. to working
16. My sister .... a baby. She is pregnant.
   a. is going to have   b. will have   c. is having   d. shall have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Everyone of us dreams of becoming famous one day or another. Sportsmen and champions of games and sports enjoy great fame. Film stars, singers and musicians are known all over the world. They have admirers and fans who send them letters and hang their photographs on the walls of their houses.

The rules of the world, kings, presidents, politicians and great men are famous people and their fame goes far wide. Anyhow, fame is not easily obtained but it is the result of hard work and suffering.

But, the life of famous people is not an easy one. It is very busy and full of troubles and responsibilities. They appear smiling but in fact they are unhappy, and **their time is arranged for them**. Newspapers and magazines write about them and sometimes about their private lives and this annoys them. Their smallest mistakes appear larger by those who dislike them. Though fame has its troubles, a great number of people desires to get fame.

17. Famous people may appear happy ....
   a. although they are not wealthy
   b. despite being far from happiness
   c. in spite of having time arranged for them
   d. because their fame has gone far and wide
18. Famous people feel furious when ....
   a. they are well known all over the world
   b. they have fans
   c. their private lives are talked about
   d. their photographs are hung on the walls
19. The underlined sentence "**their time is arranged for them**" most likely means that famous people ....
   a. have free time as they like
   b. are free to do what they like
   c. are not always busy and have spare time
   d. aren't free to do what they like

20. According to the passage, the life of famous people is ....
   a. an easy one   b. full of hardships and duties
   c. full of fun and pleasure   d. an enjoyable one
21. The best title of the passage is "........".
   a. Sportsmen   b. Champions   c. Film stars
   d. Famous people   e. Celebrities
22. A great number of people desire to get fame. This means they .... to get fame.
   a. want   b. detest   c. meet
   d. mistake   e. wish
23. Fame is not easily .... but it is the result of hard work and suffering.
   a. given   b. obtained   c. achieved
   d. desired   e. got

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

If you go on working without having a rest from time to time, you won't be able to continue, or you will make a lot of mistakes.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

قد لا يعرف الكثير من الناس أن عدم الإهتمام بنظافة الأسنان يؤدى لمشاكل صحية عديدة فى الكثير من أعضاء الجسم منها المعدة والقلب.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"Staying healthy"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Model 7

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. She did a / an .... search for the good hotels in this area.
   a. offline b. online c. disconnected d. connecting e. internet
2. To make sure that no one can use your mobile when you are away, it's better to have a/an ....
   a. lock b. argument c. software d. passport e. password

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. My elder brother .... maths easier because he was good at it.
   a. helped me learn b. helped me learning
   c. helped me from learning d. helped me to learning
4. This is the most interesting novel I've .... read.
   a. never b. yet c. ever d. since
5. The trumpet is a musical instrument that .... by musicians all over the world.
   a. is played b. used to play c. is playing d. plays
6. He walked for a long time till he finally got .... his destination.
   a. of b. off c. on d. to
7. I'm looking forward .... the new art exhibit.
   a. to see b. to be seen c. seeing d. to seeing
8. He was so active that he took .... in different activities at his school .
   a. place b. part c. after d. in
9. The author of this book is a famous man of arts. The best word to replace "author" is ....
   a. designer b. warrior c. writer d. worker
10. Her .... changed once she heard of her success.
   a. expression b. experiment c. disease d. coast
11. I didn't know a lot about them because we didn't get in .... for long.
   a. conduct b. connect c. contract d. contact
12. White blood cells ....the body against infection.
   a. defend b. defence c. offend d. offence
13. They built a .... to protect them against the enemy attacks.
   a. forte b. fruit c. fort d. forty

14. A: Could you lend me L.E. 100? B: ....
   a. Certain b. Certainly c. Currently d. Curtain
15. How long ago .... you visit your uncle ?
   a. do b. does c. did d. had done
16. They plotted .... the new manager fail.
   a. to make b. against making c. to making d. making

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Now all our free time is regulated by TV. We rush home to be in time for this or that programme. We have given up sitting at table and having an evening meal of the day together.

A sandwich will be enough to enjoy the programme to the full. The TV demands absolute silence and attention. If any member of the family dares to open his mouth during a programme, he is quickly **silenced**.

Whole generations are growing addicted to TV. Food is left uneaten, homework undone and sleep is lost. To keep the children quiet, mothers put their children in the living room and turn on the TV. **It doesn't matter** that the children will watch **rubbishy** programmes of crimes and violence, so long as they are quiet. Some say that TV is a waste of time. But it is said that you have the choice. If you don't like it, don't buy a set or switch it off. If you boast you don't watch TV, it's like boasting you don't read books."

17. According to the passage, while watching a programme on TV, ...
   a. nobody can talk
   b. the family are chatting to each other
   c. everybody can give their opinion of the programme
   d. the members of family make noise
18. Nowadays , people rush home to be ....
   a. early enough for a TV programme b. on time for a TV programme
   c. late for a TV programme d. silenced for a TV programme
19. The sentence "**It doesn't matter**" can be replaced by "..........".
   a. It is not your business b. It hasn't happened
   c. It is not important d. Don't care
20. The summary of the last paragraph is ".........."
   a. Everyone has the choice. b. We should watch TV.
   c. We shouldn't watch TV. d. Don't read books.

21. The word **rubbishy** can be replaced by ....

a. cheap b. expensive c. bad
d. good e. worthless

22. Mothers turn TV on to keep their children ....

a. happy b. calm c. angry
d. full e. quiet

23. The verb "**silence**" means stop ....

a. eating b. watching c. talking
d. daring e. speaking

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

Teachers and students need to improve their abilities to be able to keep up with the new educational system in Egypt.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

يحب الشباب ارتداء الملابس المتماشية مع الموضة حتى لو كانت مرتفعة الثمن وبغض النظر عن المواد الخام المستخدمة في صناعتها.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"An important event or competition that you have taken part in recently and what you've achieved."

....

....

....

Model 8

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. He told me that there is no possibility for him to attend the meeting. "Possibility" can be replaced by words as ....

a. responsibility b. potentiality c. actuality d. capability e. reality

2. My sister will .... a presentation next week, so she is worried.

a. make b. save c. give d. take e. get

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. Would you like .... in Aswan forever?

a. to live b. living c. to living d. live

4. I expect the manager .... accept your request.

a. will b. is going to c. is d. was

5. I think the Nile is the longest river in the world. Are there .... rivers longer than it?

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

6. The injured woman .... to the public hospital.

a. takes b. took c. has taken d. has been taken

7. Wait here until the manager .... back at the office.

a. arrive b. arrives c. have arrived d. had arrived

8. While .... a cold drink, my car was being checked.

a. had b. was having c. was had d. I was having

9. The .... of large cities suffer from pollution and traffic jams.

a. resorts b. damages c. residents d. councils

10. The villagers suffer from the .... of lions that kill their livestock.

a. attackers b. attacks c. attacked d. attacking

11. I have the free time needed to do .... work for a nearby charity.

a. paid b. voluntary c. criminal d. disabled

12. A .... is a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them.

a. captain b. pirate c. crew d. lifeguard

13. He is known for his intelligence. The antonym of "intelligence " is ....

a. stupid b. stupidity c. selfish d. selfishness

14. The energy of the .... and their desire to succeed make them the hope of the future.

a. ancestors b. old-aged c. infants d. youth

15. Law does not .... smoking in public places الأماكن العامة.
a. allowing b. allows c. allowed d. allow

16. My reading glasses .... missing.
a. had b. was c. is d. are

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It was a very dark night and extremely cold. I remember that night quite well. It was in the early eighties of the previous century. Electricity had just arrived at our little village some months earlier but on that particular night, it went off. Everybody had already entered their houses and closed their doors. Strong wind began to blow followed with a loud sound of thunder, then I heard some shots of a gun mixed with the horrible sounds of dogs barking. Being a little child, I was really frightened.

When it was early morning and we set out for dawn prayer at the little mosque of our village, we found uncle Fahmy was killed. His body lying on the dusty road by the Nile. I will never forget this scene. Uncle Fahmy used to be a very kind and humble man. I had never heard him shouting. He used to attend prayer at the mosque with us.

I was extremely sad and asked people around me, "Why was he killed?" I was told that he was killed because his grandfather once killed a member of the other family".
I wondered as that wasn't uncle Fahmy's fault. Some people neglected my words, others looked at me with a sad face.

17. The passage is a.......... .
a. poem b. story
c. real accident d. scientific fact

18. Electricity had just arrived at the little village ....
a. in the 16th the previous century
b. in the 19th of the previous century
c. in the 18th of the previous century
d. in the 20th of the previous century

19. The weather that night was .... cold.
a. very b. as c. not d. absolutely

20. The moral of the story is ....
a. we shouldn't take revenge in blood
b. we should be indoors during the storm
c. we should have memories from the past
d. we shouldn't care of others in our village

21. Some people looked at the writer with a sad face as they wanted to say that he was
a. right b. shy c. guilty
d. sad e. correct

22. "Some people neglected my words" this means that they didn't .... my words.
a. speak b. listen to c. dare
d. face e. care about

23. Uncle Fahmy was killed ....
a. without any guilt b. in cold blood
c. without any evil d. without any grudge
e. without any violence

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

The whole world suffers from coronavirus disease, but we should try to live with it or life will stop on this planet.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

لكل منا الحرية فى اختيار هواياته المفضلة التى يرى أنها تعبر عن شخصيته، ولكن لا يجب السخرية من هوايات الآخرين.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"Travelling is a useful and enjoyable hobby."

....

....

....

Model 9

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. El-Moasser always provides us with many questions to .... our skills.
a. prove b. avoid c. improve d. develop e. destroy

2. You should be quiet when you .... an important decision.
a. do b. damage c. take d. protect e. make

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. When I .... my friend on my way back home, he was doing shopping .
a. was meeting b. met c. has met d. had met

4. During the previous conference, he .... a speech.
a. gives b. has given c. gave d. had given

5. He said that he .... doing his maths homework after he wrote the essay .
a. will finish b. would finish c. have finished d. had finished

6. **A:** How is Sama getting to the airport ?
B: She said that her brother .... her a lift.
a. would have given b. should have given c. was giving d. is giving

7. The firefighter ordered .... the building at once.
a. to everyone leaving b. everyone to be left
c. everyone to leave d. leaving everyone

8. I forgot .... the report with me, so I had to go back to get it.
a. to take b. to taking c. taking d. take

9. He is a good captain of our team because he has a good ....
a. person b. character c. family d. company

10. She has done voluntary work for a charity. As a volunteer, she works for the charity for ....
a. free b. pleasure c. treasure d. money

11. In oil industry, a .... is the unit of measurement.
a. bottle b. ton c. metre d. barrel

12. A group of criminals who work together is called a ....
a. tank b. bang c. gang d. bank

13. The woman dressed her children quickly because she was late. The opposite of "dressed" is ....
a. took off b. took on c. looked up d. looked after

14. He always has a .... expression on his face. He never looks happy
a. miser b. miserable c. miserly d. misread

15. We .... the email and replied to it.
a. received b. receive c. have received d. would receive

16. I .... in the chat room since five o'clock when the phone range.
a. am b. was c. had been d. have been

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Searching for a job is not an easy task. You have to keep reading daily newspapers and magazines. Sometimes, advertisers use the most expensive way of advertising. It is the TV advertisement, so, applicants have also to follow watching television. When you reply to a job advertisement, there are some things you should put in your letter. You should show that you are interested in **current** affairs. You should write about your qualities that make you suitable for it. You also need to write the name of someone who can say that you are an honest and good worker. The person who recommends you is a referee. To be successful applicant, you should have good command of English. You should be efficient and well organized. You should also have some computing skills. General knowledge is a must. An applicant who says " Maldives in Africa " will certainly lose probable new job during his interview.

17. According to the passage, a referee ....
a. may know the applicant
b. should know the applicant
c. should know the adviser
d. should be interested in current affairs

18. Applicants should write about ....
a. their qualifications and characteristics
b. their neighbours' qualities
c. why they left their current jobs
d. the person who can say that they are selfish

19. As mentioned in the passage, the applicant should .... English.
a. provide b. eradicate c. master d. neglect

20. The best title of the passage is ".......... ".
a. How to interview an applicant
b. How to be a good applicant
c. How to lose a job
d. What are the bad qualities of an interviewer

21. To be a successful applicant, you should have some .... skills.

a. computing   b. eating   c. cooking
d. industrial   e. language

22. The word "**current**" means ....

a. past   b. recent   c. future
d. ancient   e. present

23. General knowledge is .... to get the job.

a. not important   b. interested   c. essential
d. devised   e. necessary

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

When we get older, we suffer forgetting things all the time. We can overcome it by some activities as doing crossword puzzles.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

يعتقد البعض أن بعض الطيور ترمز للخير أو الشر، فالبعض يرى الغراب كرمز للموت والدمار، والبعض الآخر يرى في النسر القوة والشجاعة.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"What would you like to be after leaving school ?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Model 10

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Modern technology has .... It isn't good all the time, so we should make the best use of it.

a. pros and cons   b. wrong and correct
c. advantages and disadvantages   d. causes and results
e. speakers and listeners

2. Many people left the film before the end because it was very boring. The antonyms of "boring" are ....

a. annoying   b. interesting   c. terrifying   d. exciting   e. frightening

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. A gang of thieves .... into my house yesterday night.

a. were breaking   b. had broken   c. broke   d. break

4. While you .... on holiday, just relax and do not think about work.

a. are   b. are being   c. were   d. were being

5. I .... five clients عملاء today.

a. have met   b. have been met   c. was met   d. meet

6. My brother wants to play .... piano in the future.

a. an   b. the   c. no article   d. a

7. This old-aged tree isn't safe to sit under. It .... at any time.

a. will fall   b. is falling   c. is going to fall   d. falls

8. I haven't finished .... all my jobs yet.

a. do   b. to do   c. to doing   d. doing

9. It was unusual that no one has made any .... on the meeting.

a. face   b. part   c. connect   d. comment

10. "Brown" rhymes with "..........".

a. clown   b. glue   c. draw   d. naughty

11. To .... is to steal something from a person, shop, etc.

a. give   b. donate   c. hide   d. rob

12. He wanted to drink, but his bottle was empty. The antonym of "empty" is ....

a. fill   b. full   c. dull   d. busy

13. I don't think you are fat. You are only ....

a. clumsy   b. obese   c. plump   d. crescent

14. Mr Nasser is a .... friend of mine. He is always helpful and never stops supporting me.
 a. true b. teenager c. physical d. false

15. She gave me .... binoculars.
 a. much b. some c. any d. a

16. He took ....
 a. smoke b. to smoke c. smoking d. to smoking

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

When a family climbs into a vehicle to go on a trip or even a short ride, it is important that everyone is as safe as possible. We know that terrible accidents can occur. That's why devices like seatbelts and airbags have been invented and put into cars, vans and trucks.

Unfortunately, devices that are meant to save lives can be a threat to life. The airbag is such a device. Airbags were designed to inflate quickly in an accident. They were designed to stop an average adult male who didn't **bother** to fasten his seatbelt from smashing into or through the front of a car. Therefore, they inflate at approximately 200 miles per hour. It delivers a blow that can seriously injure or kill a child or a small adult.

Children shouldn't sit in the front passenger seat of a vehicle that has a passenger side airbag. They are always safer in the center rear seat. That day will come when vehicles are equipped with smart airbags that automatically adjust their force to the size and weight of a passenger.

17. Airbags inflate .... in accidents.
 a. manually b. rapidly
 c. gradually d. slowly

18. Airbags save .... life.
 a. a fat adult's b. children's
 c. an average adult's d. a thin adult's

19. The main idea of the passage is that ....
 a. people should take care of car safety
 b. people should go to short rides
 c. families should travel together
 d. cars shouldn't be safe

20. The verb **"bother"** can be replaced by ....
 a. get b. treat c. annoy d. deal

21. The word "occur" can have the meaning of ....
 a. happen b. take place c. take after
 d. look for e. resemble

22. According to the passage, which of the following is not true? ....
 a. Airbags inflate quickly
 b. Airbags were designed to protect travellers
 c. Airbags don't have cons
 d. Airbags don't cause harm at all
 e. Airbags endanger people's lives

23. The passage is about ....
 a. car safety b. trips c. families
 d. short rides e. protecting people's lives

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

Do you know that the human brain is very active during the day dream time and it can solve the most difficult problems easily ?

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

إن تناول وجبة غذائية متوازنة وتدريب يومى منتظم هما الطريق الأمثل لإمتلاك صحة جيدة ومظهر رائع والقدرة على الإبداع فى العمل.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"Lifelong learning"

....

....



Model 11

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. **Nabil** : Do you think Noha can do this exam alone ?
   Adham : Yes, I think so because she is ...
   a. stubborn b. brilliant c. foolish d. tolerant e. intelligent
2. Elephants are one of the giant animals on land now. The synonyms of "giant" are ....
   a. tiny b. enormous c. delighted d. gigantic e. ancient

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. I think I .... well in the next exam .
   a. do b. am going to do c. am doing d. will do
4. Take a taxi when you .... to leave.
   a. want b. will want c. are going to want d. wanted
5. The bag .... into pieces when it fell down .
   a. tear b. was tearing c. tore d. was torn
6. He bought .... goods at this supermarket.
   a. little b. lot of c. lots of d. much
7. **A:** .... visited London? **B:** I hope I go there one day.
   a. Do you ever b. Did you ever c. Had you ever d. Have you ever
8. They .... many subjects since the teacher told them to write their opinion.
   a. have studied b. studied c. are studying d. were studying
9. The child's parents or .... must give their consent إقرار بالموافقة before she has the operation.
   a. designers b. guardians c. donors d. monitors
10. A scientist who studies the natural processes of living things is a/an ....
    a. actor b. physician c. activist d. biologist
11. Students need to be .... to continue their work readily.
    a. donated b. endangered c. encouraged d. scared
12. The police are looking for .... to find the real criminal.
    a. clues b. glues c. officers d. policemen
13. Thanks to your donations, the .... was able to continue its work.
    a. volunteer b. aid c. charity d. belief
14. The .... on the plane did their best to make the passengers pleased.
    a. staff b. stuff c. crow d. crew

15. The thief was seen .... away.
    a. running b. to run c. to running d. a & b
16. I expect uncle Omar .... us tonight.
    a. will visit b. is visiting c. is going to visit d. visited

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Horses are beautiful creatures. They can be different in colours, and can run quickly. People like to watch horses because they are strong and powerful.

Horses are mammals. The mother horse generally has one baby in the spring, and feeds the baby milk. Horses have long legs, and big eyes that can see almost all the way around them. They can walk, trot, gallop and jump.

Young horses that are one year old or younger are called foals. A young female horse is called a filly, and a young male horse is called a colt. After 4 years, a horse is considered an adult. Many people think that a pony is a young horse, but that is incorrect. A pony is a type of horse that does not grow very large.

Horses can live up to 20 or 25 years. Sometimes people can tell how old a horse is by looking at its teeth! They generally sleep standing up, so that if a killer animal approaches, they can run away quickly. Horses only need about three hours of sleep per day! Their hooves need to be taken care of.

For food, horses eat foods such as grass, hay, oats, corn, apples, and carrots. They are herbivores, meaning they do not eat other animals. Their stomachs are small, so they need small, frequent feedings.

There are wild horses, but many people have horses as pets, too. They ride the horses and may teach the horses tricks. When people first started to take horses as pets, they were just used for work. The horses would pull carriages so people could ride tractors, or ploughs so the farmers could more easily tend their fields. Horses were also used to move goods from place to place by carrying objects on their backs. Some horses now work as therapy horses. When these strong creatures are treated with care, they make wonderful companions.

17. The mother horse gives birth to .... a year.
    a. one horse b. two horses c. no horses d. three horses
18. The best summary of the text is ....
    a. horses are beautiful b. kinds of horses
    c. horses' habitat d. mammals
19. Generally, horses sleep ....
    a. upside down b. standing up c. sitting down d. in beds

20. A horse can be a friend when ....

a. you are kind to him
b. you are cruel to him
c. you are greedy with him
d. you are sad with him

21. According to the passage , which of the following is correct ?

a. A pony is a young horse.
b. A pony is an old horse that doesn't work.
c. A pony is a small type of horse.
d. A pony is a large type of horse.
e. One-year old horse is called a foal

22. The best title for this passage is "..........".

a. Horses
b. Animal life
c. Kinds of horses
d. Horses' food
e. Horses are strong creatures

23. According to the passage, horses ....

a. cannot do anything
b. can do many things
c. can do one thing only
d. cannot learn anything at all
e. make wonderful companions if treated with care

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

To keep your youthful appearance over time, you need to have more vegetables and fruits that contain vitamins A and E regularly.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

إن ارتفاع درجة حرارة الأرض أحد أهم المشكلات التى تواجه البشرية فى الفترة الحالية؛ لأنها تؤدى لذوبان الجليد وغرق المدن الساحلية.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"How can all the society be helpful towards the disabled المعاقين ?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Model 12

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. They all admire Mr. Tarek because he is a .... person.

a. generous
b. stingy
c. miser
d. rude
e. kind

2. Farmers usually care about their .... They feed them well.

a. plants
b. cattle
c. kettle
d. villagers
e. livestock

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. She has stopped .... some milk for the hungry baby.

a. buying
b. to buying
c. to buy
d. buys

4. He's booked his ticket. He .... to the USA tomorrow.

a. is travelling
b. is going to travel
c. travels
d. will travel

5. Someone who's broken .... leg finds it difficult to walk.

a. a
b. an
c. the
d. no article

6. He is furious as a tricycle .... his new car.

a. hits
b. was hitting
c. has hit
d. is hitting

7. Giraffes .... on meat. They are vegetarian animals.

a. feed
b. fed
c. don't feed
d. didn't feed

8. I .... to preparing my meals when I started to live away from my family.

a. used
b. got used
c. get used
d. become used

9. The Red Sea coast is a tourist ....

a. party
b. paradise
c. trip
d. flight

10. Mohammed Salah is the best .... in Liverpool.

a. final
b. football
c. footballer
d. cup

11. Different societies have different ....

a. cultures
b. experience
c. prison
d. believes

12. Mr Mohammed is always .... You can chat with him at any time.

a. website
b. blog
c. online
d. offline

13. To .... is to believe that someone is honest أمين or will not do anything bad or wrong.

a. blow
b. doubt
c. lie
d. trust

14. .... is something that sheep and goats can eat.

a. Meat
b. Iron
c. Hay
d. Kebab

15. The sun's energy .... by solar panels الخلايا الشمسية.

a. is collected
b. is collecting
c. collects
d. collected

16. I .... Chinese. I've passed three modules so far.
a. studied b. 'm studying c. was studying d. have studied

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many people like to eat pizza, but not everyone knows how to make it. Making the perfect pizza can be **complicated**, but there are lots of ways for you to make a more basic version at home.

When you make pizza, you must begin with the crust. The crust can be hard to make. If you want to make the crust yourself, you will have to make dough using flour, water, and yeast. You will have to knead the dough with your hands. If you do not have enough time to do this, you can use a prepared crust that you buy from the store.

After you have chosen your crust, you must then add the sauce. Making your own sauce from scratch vegetables can take a long time. You have to buy tomatoes, peel them, and then cook them with spices. If this sounds like too much work, you can also **purchase** jarred sauce from the store. Many jarred sauces taste almost as good as the kind you make at home.

Now that you have your crust and your sauce, you need to add the cheese. Cheese comes from milk, which comes from cows. Do you have a cow in your backyard? Do you know how to milk the cow? Do you know how to turn that milk into cheese? If not, you might want to buy cheese from the grocery store instead of making it yourself.

When you have the crust, sauce, and cheese ready, you can add other toppings. Some people like to put meat on their pizza, while other people like to add vegetables. Some people even like to add pineapple! The best part of making a pizza at home is that you can customize it by adding your own favourite ingredients.

17. The writer's main purpose in writing this passage is to ....
a. describe the history of pizza
b. teach a healthier way to make pizza
c. outline steps to make a basic pizza at home
d. provide tips about how to make your pizza especially delicious

18. The author asked a series of questions in paragraph four to ....
a. support the idea that most people cannot make homemade cheese
b. reinforce the idea that most people probably live on farms
c. prove that store-bought cheese tastes better than homemade cheese
d. emphasize the superiority of homemade cheese over store-bought cheese

19. To .... is to mix the ingredients together using your hand.
a. scratch b. purchase c. knead d. peel

20. When you make pizza, you must begin with the ....
a. vegetables b. crust c. fruits d. meat

21. As used in paragraph one, which word means the opposite of "**complicated**" ?
a. Difficult b. Simple c. Hard
d. Complex e. Easy

22. As used in paragraph three, which is the best synonym for **purchase**? ....
a. forget b. buy c. ask
d. cook e. shop

23. Eating at restaurants ....
a. costs much money b. is so healthy
c. costs less money d. is as healthy as eating at home
e. isn't so healthy as eating at home

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

Countries had realised that energy sources won't last forever, so they began to look for other renewable replacements as solar power.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

أثبت الباحثون أن ممارسة الرياضة تنمى من ذكاء الأفراد. فقد لوحظ أن الطلاب الذين يمارسون رياضة بانتظام أكثر ذكاء ممن لا يمارسون الرياضة.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"Spare time is a double edged weapon سلاح ذو حدين"

....

Model 13

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Be careful ! When you travel to any place for the first time, it is easy to .... so you should have a map and the important numbers of this place.
   a. get promoted b. go missing c. get lost d. go snorkelling e. go losing
2. The doctor asked me to monitor my grandfather because of his illness. "Monitor" can be replaced by ....
   a. observe b. look for c. watch d. see off e. collect

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. When they met their friend, he .... the homework his teacher gave him .
   a. does b. doing c. is doing d. was doing
4. It .... my habit to have coffee at this café when I worked there.
   a. is b. was c. has been d. had been
5. Going back home, I found that the window .... So, I went to get new glass for it.
   a. broken b. was broken c. is breaking d. break
6. We .... met our friend lately . He is still away.
   a. have b. haven't c. had d. hadn't
7. .... in the office, he received a call from his wife .
   a. During b. On c. While d. After
8. He exerts great efforts. They all think his work is ....
   a. amaze b. amazing c. amazed d. amazingly
9. To have a good building, you need to have a good .... first.
   a. donor b. design c. guardian d. ecotourist
10. His good company صُحبة had a good .... on his life.
    a. impact b. cause c. reason d. connection
11. He doesn't know much in science. His science knowledge is ....
    a. limit b. limiting c. limitless d. limited
12. Living near the .... gave him the chance to sit by the sea often.
    a. bleach b. peach c. beach d. cost
13. A lot of rain fell and this caused to .... our streets from the neighbouring ones.
    a. flood b. isolate c. connect d. link

14. The way he tackled the problem was a / an .... one. No one else had had that idea before.
    a. unique b. common c. ordinary d. unsuccessful
15. He is .... HIV patient.
    a. no article b. the c. an d. a
16. He refused .... for what he had done.
    a. apologise b. apologised c. apologising d. to apologise

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Scientists believe that there is a number of reasons for climatic changes. One reason could be the changes in the amount of heat which actually comes from the sun at different times. Another could be volcanic dust. People have also been adding gases such as carbon dioxide to the atmosphere. These are called greenhouse gases because they hang in the atmosphere around the Earth like the roof and walls of a greenhouse. The Earth receives heat and light from the sun which sends this back into space as infrared radiation. Much of this radiation cannot pass through the greenhouse gases and this causes increased temperatures near the Earth.

The amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is increasing mainly because all countries burn fossil fuels such as oil, natural gas and coal. The **destruction** of the big rainforests, which **absorb** carbon dioxide and give out oxygen, makes matters worse.

What can be done to prevent this situation? Global warming is a problem that affects every country and every person in the world. First of all, all governments must agree to stop the destruction of the world's rainforests. Secondly, they must agree to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide that transport and industries emit into the atmosphere. And we can all play a part as individuals. We should all try to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide we emit into the atmosphere. This can be done by driving fuel efficient cars. The best way people can help is to use public transport as much as possible instead of their cars. And finally, we should plant more trees in the cities and on farms to give us back the air we need.

17. To help, people can use ....
    a. their private cars b. their old buses
    c. private cars and bicycles d. public transport
18. Trees are important because they ....
    a. take in oxygen and produce carbon dioxide b. create infrared radiation
    c. produce carbon dioxide d. take in carbon dioxide and emit oxygen
19. If the amount of carbon dioxide doubles, the average temperature will ....
    a. decrease b. reduce c. increase d. improve

20. The best title to this passage is "........".
   a. Driving environment friendly car
   b. Climatic changes
   c. Effects of nature
   d. Using public transport

21. The word "**destruction**" can be replaced by "........"
   a. building
   b. construction
   c. damage
   d. education
   e. ruin

22. Carbon dioxide is considered one of the .... gases.
   a. atmosphere-polluting
   b. greenhouse
   c. increasing
   d. rainforest
   e. decreasing

23. The word "**absorb**" can have the meaning of ....
   a. take off
   b. take in
   c. indulge
   d. melt
   e. soak up

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

Old monuments always represent the great creativity of ancient civilizations. Our role is to keep them safe for our next generations.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

للمتاحف أهمية كبيرة، فهى تحافظ على التراث من الضياع أو السرقة. معظم هذه المتاحف عامة تمتلكها الدولة والقليل منها خاصة يمتلكها أفراد.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"Recycling إعادة تصنيع الأشياء is a way to solve many problems."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Model 14

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. They were .... for the missing ring all the night.
   a. thanking b. looking c. shouting d. searching e. leaving

2. It's good to donate blood to save other people's lives. The antonyms of "donate" are ....
   a. keep b. send c. receive d. offer e. give

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. .... the party, I met several old friends.
   a. On b. During c. While d. As

4. You .... too much sugar to my coffee. It tastes too sweet.
   a. had added b. were adding c. were added d. have added

5. Rodayna isn't in her office. I think she .... home.
   a. will go b. was gone c. has been d. has gone

6. She is carrying too ....
   a. many luggage b. much luggage c. a few luggage d. luggages

7. You look very ill. I .... you to the doctor.
   a. take b. will take c. am taking d. am going to take

8. We intend .... to spend the next weekend on the beach.
   a. to go b. to be going c. to going d. go

9. He paid back all his .... because he didn't want to go to prison.
   a. skills b. debts c. tips d. steps

10. They had a / an .... about the best solution to the problem of air pollution.
   a. debate b. salutation c. teammate d. effect

11. .... means to be connected to the internet or available on the internet.
   a. Network b. Website c. Online d. Offline

12. To achieve your jobs in time, you need to .... your time well.
   a. waste b. do c. make d. use

13. He is known to be severe with his children. The antonym of the word "severe" is ....
   a. cruel b. hard c. gentle d. violent

14. He was very young and weak, so older students .... him.
   a. drove b. gave c. bullied d. went

15. This road .... used anymore.

a. didn't b. doesn't c. isn't d. is

16. It's two weeks .... I last met aunt Nadia.

a. ago b. for c. since d. as

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It was the end of the weekend and Nadia was worried. She had still not done her homework. Nadia had missed the day of school because she had been ill. She had phoned her friend Azza and asked what homework their teacher had **set** for the summer holiday. Azza had told her that the teacher had asked them to write a composition. Nadia had written down the title. <u>**It**</u> was "The best things in life are three".

Nadia didn't know what to write. When she thought about the best things in life, they didn't seem to be "three" at all. She thought about her parents. There were two of them. Her brothers and sisters, there were four of them. She thought about happiness, love and nature. She couldn't count these at all. On the first day at school, Nadia's teacher asked her to read her composition to the class. Nadia stood up and began. "I don't think the best things in life are three at all," she said. "I think they are things you can't count".
The other students started to laugh. "Nadia," said her teacher stopping her,
The title of the composition was: "The best things in life are free not three."

17. The passage is ....

a. scientific b. narrative
c. imaginative d. historical

18. Nadia disagreed with the title of the composition because ....

a. she wrote it down wrongly
b. she couldn't count the best things in life
c. she didn't want to write the composition
d. she didn't have time to write the composition

19. The underlined pronoun "<u>It</u>" refers to ....

a. the homework title b. the book they read
c. the summer holiday d. the telephone

20. Nadia's teacher was .... with Nadia.

a. happy b. pleased c. angry d. worried

21. Nadia had missed the day of school because she had been ill.
This means she was .... from school.

a. absent b. present c. over the moon
d. worried e. not attendant

22. The best title of the passage is ....

a. freedom is not worthy b. freedom is not the best thing
c. life has countless good things d. the best things in life are free
e. freedom is worthy

23. The word "**set**" can have the meaning of ....

a. determined b. dealt c. counted
d. lived e. scheduled

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

Plants, flowers and trees are necessary to breathe clean and fresh air and to have a good view. That's why, we should plant them everywhere.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

بعد انتشار حوادث السطو على المنازل فى المنطقة التى نعيش بها الفترة الأخيرة، بدأنا نفكر فى تركيب كاميرات مراقبة وقيام بعض المتطوعين بالحراسة.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"Without cooperation, there is no success."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Model 15

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. She refused to admit breaking the camera. The antonyms of "admit" are ....
   a. deny b. conceal c. adopt d. consist e. agree
2. All the countries around the world give a great interest to the .... because they are the backbone of any nation.
   a. disabled people b. old people c. children d. youth e. young people

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. The little bird .... by its mother till it can fly.
   a. feeds b. is fed c. fed d. was fed
4. A: .... your work yet ? B: I'm about to finish it, sir.
   a. Do you do b. You haven't done c. Have you done d. Are you doing
5. .... is the protection of natural life.
   a. Conservation b. Reservation c. Admiration d. Organization
6. My father was delighted with my results. The word "delighted" can be replaced by ....
   a. satisfied b. angry c. amazed d. astonished
7. While .... the experiment, my teacher had a severe headache.
   a. did b. were doing c. are doing d. doing
8. They .... here since their grandfather built the house.
   a. have lived b. had lived c. are living d. were living
9. I .... you a lot for your help.
   a. own b. owe c. lend d. borrow
10. They were .... in the lift for an hour when electricity went off.
    a. struck b. stuck c. sick d. stick
11. They had .... of things to do. This means they were very busy.
    a. lot b. loaf c. loaves d. loads
12. They were .... when they won the prize. This means they were pleased.
    a. over the moon b. under the moon c. in a tight corner d. out of the blue
13. Some thieves broke .... the old man's house yesterday.
    a. on b. onto c. into d. in
14. .... you tell him the news? Are you able to do that?
    a. Able b. Dare c. Brave d. Courageous

15. Your grandmother needs help .... some bags into her flat.
    a. carries b. to carry c. carrying d. carried
16. We hardly heard .... news of him since he left the company.
    a. any b. some c. many d. much

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

There are many reasons to use alternative energy sources. One reason is to reduce pollutants and greenhouse gases. Alternative or renewable energy sources help to reduce the amount of toxins that are a result of traditional energy use. These alternative energy sources help protect against the harmful by-products of energy use and help to preserve many of the natural resources that we currently use as energy sources.

There are many alternative energy sources. Wind power, solar power, geothermal power, and hydroelectric power are some examples.

Wind power is the ability to **capture** the wind in a way to propel the blades of wind turbines. When the blades **rotate**, this movement is switched into electrical current with the help of an electrical generator. In older windmills, wind energy turned mechanical machinery to do the physical work like pumping water to get water. Wind towers are built on wind farms, and usually there are several towers built together. There are several advantages of this energy source: there is no pollution, it never runs out, farming and grazing can still take place on the same land as the wind turbines, and wind farms can be built anywhere. One disadvantage is that you need a consistent wind to get enough power. If the wind speed decreases, less electricity is produced.

Geothermal means "earth heat". This energy captures the heat energy under the Earth. Hot rocks under the ground help to heat water to produce steam. If holes are dug in this area of the ground, then the steam shoots up and is purified and used to drive turbines, which in turn gives power to electric generators. The advantages of this type of energy is that there are no harmful by-products, it is self-sufficient, and the plants are generally small so there is no negative visual effect on the area surrounding the plant.

17. In geothermal energy, the main factor of doing the work is ....
    a. the heat of the earth b. steam coming out
    c. digging the earth d. using hard rocks
18. According to the passage wind power is ....
    a. discovered in modern ages b. used along history
    c. used only for generating electricity d. always harmful
19. The suitable title of passage is ....
    a. alternative energy b. electricity
    c. windmills d. population

20. In the future, the more pollution we get, ...

a. the wider ozone layer hole is
b. the narrower ozone layer is
c. the bigger planet is
d. the large planet is

21. The underlined word **"capture"** may be replaced by ".........".

a. catch
b. leave
c. change
d. fix
e. seize

22. The word **"rotate"** can have the meaning of ....

a. turn off
b. turn around
c. turn on
d. turn out
e. spin

23. According to the passage, traditional energy use is .... to the environment.

a. useful
b. harmful
c. friendly
d. useless
e. toxic

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

Robots have become more common in many fields. During coronavirus, many countries as China used them to discover and look after infected people.

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

يعتقد البعض أن أى قصة أو كتاب ناجح من الممكن أن يصبح فيلم ناجح، ولكن الحقيقة أنه لا يوجد دليل على ذلك.

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"What's the role of the society towards old people ?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الجيزة - القسم العلمى

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer : نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. James has .... things to do.

a. many
b. a few
c. a little
d. a lot

2. James is very .... about visiting Egypt.

a. sad
b. upset
c. happy
d. nervous

B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. While I was doing my homework, my mother .... dinner.

a. prepares
b. preparing
c. is preparing
d. was preparing

2. I lived in London .... 2016.

a. for
b. since
c. in
d. ago

3. .... school holidays are starting soon.

a. The
b. An
c. A
d. No article

4. Be careful, the car .... you. It's very near.

a. will hit
b. is going to hit
c. will be hitting
d. hits

5. There are very few of these kinds of giraffes now, they are ....

a. safe
b. isolated
c. endangered
d. dangerous

6. I always try to .... food and clothes to my local charity.

a. sell
b. want
c. owe
d. donate

7. Most people take clean water for ...., but not all place have it.

a. granted
b. given
c. having
d. done

8. The message to transfer money was fake. It was a big ....

a. skim
b. scar
c. scam
d. scan

C. Language Function

3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Omar : I'm bored. I have nothing to do.
Father : Well, (1) .... ?
Omar : The club! That's good idea. Do you know what I can do there ?
Father : Yes, (2) ....
Omar : That's great and I'm good at basketball. When (3) .... ?
Father : You can go (4) ....

D. Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Every year, more and more people are connected to the internet in Egypt. A recent survey found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones so they can listen to music or watch films. Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried about security and the possibility that their computer might be hacked.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What do many people use the internet for ?

....

....

2. Why don't many people use the internet ?

....

....

3. Why do people use apps on their phones ?

....

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. The underlined word "**survey**" means ....
   a. questionnaire b. quiz c. competition d. match
5. Many people thought that their computer might be ....
   a. connected b. hacked c. lost d. stolen

E. Novel (Treasure Island)

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. The thief had a long curved .... on his face, so we could recognize him.
   a. skate b. sky c. skin d. scar
2. A .... is a large container made of wood or metal.
   a. tin b. jar c. barrel d. cup

F. writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

The good and bad things about moving to a new school in another town.

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

The best way to make friends is to join clubs or do team sports you like.

....

....

B. Translate into English :

رغبة صلاح فى مساعدة الآخرين هى أنه يريد أن يمنح الشباب فرصة للنجاح.

....

....

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة المنوفية - القسم العلمي

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer : نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Egypt is developing eco-tourism to protect the environment along the Red Sea ....
   a. Cost b. Cast c. Coast d. Course
2. Tourists are taught how to avoid .... the fish and keep the special coral reefs safe.
   a. staying b. preserving c. damaging d. keeping

B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The .... of other people have to be respected.
   a. believes b. beliefes c. beliefs d. believe
2. The old family house is .... by my grandparents.
   a. populated b. population c. polluted d. populating
3. As a child, I always .... when I took my medicine.
   a. crying b. cries c. cried d. was crying
4. I have had lunch ....
   a. already b. yet c. just d. so far
5. My father .... with pride when he heard that I had come first.
   a. showed b. rose c. swelled d. puffed
6. To be a .... , work hard to a plan.
   a. successfully b. successful c. success d. succeed
7. .... is considered a crime.
   a. Uploading b. Downloading c. Phishing d. Fishing
8. I suggest that Rodayna .... engineering like her mother.
   a. studies b. studying c. has studied d. study

C. Language Function

3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

A customer has a problem with internet service.

Assistant : Hello, we are Customer Service, how can I help you ?
Customer : Hi, (1) .... ?
Assistant : I'm sorry to hear that (2) .... ?
Customer : My connection is dropping out and the speed is very slow.
Assistant : Let me check (3) ....
Customer : My phone number is 0123456789.
Assistant : Thank you . I'll send technician to your house.
Customer : Okay, (4) .... home then.

D. Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

In 1957, scientists said that nothing could live in the waters of River Thames. The river was polluted by the waste which came from hundreds of homes, waste from factories is very dangerous as some of **which** was full of poison, also ran into the river. Things began to change in 1990. Now the river is very clear. It is thought that about 125 kinds of fish live there today. It's a place where many animals visit including dolphins and even whales. Today the river faces a different problem. There is more and more plastic which people dump into the Thames.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Why couldn't anything live in the waters of the Thames ?

....

....

2. What problem does the river face now ?

....

....

3. What should you do to keep rivers clean ?

....

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. What does the underlined word "**which**" refer to ?
   a. the factories b. the river
   c. the waste from homes d. the waste from factories
5. .... in the River Thames in 1957.
   a. Fish started to live b. Nothing lived
   c. Pollution was worst d. Plastic pollution started

E. Novel (Treasure Island)

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This wound might leave .... on your check.
   a. scare b. scar c. scarp d. scary
2. One of the sailors led a/an .... against the captain.
   a. invasion b. murder c. mutiny d. mirror

F. Writing

6 Write an essay of not less than 80 words on :

"Tourism in Egypt and how to encourage it"

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Don't fear when your enemies criticise you. Beware when they applaud.

....

....

B. Translate into English :

لم تعد الوظيفة الحكومية حلمًا يسعى إليه الشباب الطموح

....

....

3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الشرقية - القسم الأدبي

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer : نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Cairo is the .... of Egypt.
   a. port b. capital c. north d. airport
2. All Egyptians speak ....
   a. English b. Spanish c. Arabic d. French

B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When .... you finish your work ?
   a. are b. have c. has d. did
2. We all .... Mohamed Salah as he is polite and generous.
   a. hate b. respect c. discourage d. avoid
3. How .... light is there in the cave ?
   a. much b. many c. often d. far
4. Village people build their houses with local ....
   a. tourists b. environments c. animals d. materials
5. I've already booked the tickets, we .... abroad today.
   a. are travelling b. travel c. travels d. travelled
6. Every year, more and more people are .... to the internet in Egypt.
   a. connected b. connect c. connection d. contact
7. The police .... the young man of stealing the money.
   a. excused b. thanked c. accused d. rewarded
8. A novel is a long written ....
   a. article b. history c. poem d. story

C. Language Function

3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Nader is talking to Ali who has been on holiday.

Nader : Hi! Where have you been ?

Ali : (1) ....

Nader : How was your holiday ?

Ali : It was the best holiday in my life.

Nader : (2) .... ?

Ali : I went to the North Coast. It's fantastic.

Nader : Really! Did you go with your parents ?

Ali : (3) .... I went with my cousins.

Nader : (4) .... ?

Ali : Yes, I'll post them on my Facebook today. You can check them.

D. Reading comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

One day, Tom woke up and saw that it was snowing outside. He decided to go out. There was enough snow to go sledging. He went into the garden shed to find his sledge. He took off the old sheet his father used for covering the sledge and looked at it. His mother called to him. "Take your gloves with you in case your hands get cold". Tom took them and ran towards the big hill where all his friends were playing in the snow.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What was the weather like ?

....

....

2. Why did Tom go to the garden shed ?

....

....

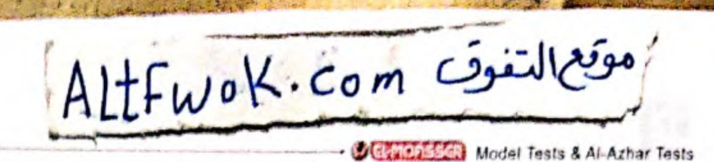
3. How did Tom's father protect the sledge ?

....

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. Tom's mother asked him to take his ....
   a. sledge   b. gloves   c. sheet   d. clothes
5. Tom was ....
   a. obedient   b. disobedient   c. rude   d. lazy



E. Islamic selections

5 Choose the correct answer :

1. The five pillars of Islam are ....
   a. interested   b. excited   c. separated   d. interrelated
2. .... is the second pillar of Islam.
   a. Prayer   b. Zakat   c. Pilgrimage   d. Fasting

F. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

"The age you think children start using the internet"

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

The best way to make friends is to join clubs or do the team sport you like.

....

....

B. Translate into English :

يحب كثير من الناس رجل الأعمال لعطفه وتبرعاته الكريمة للجمعيات الخيرية فى مصر.

....

....

4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة بنى سويف - القسم الأدبى

A. Listening

1 Listen to the text then choose the correct answer : نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. The discovery mentioned in the text is ....
   a. The Femtosecond   b. The Electric light
   c. The radio   d. Television
2. All Egyptians are .... of Dr Ahmed Zewail.
   a. pride   b. proud   c. paid   d. pulled

B. Language Function

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Sami : Excuse me. I advise you not to drink that water from that river.

Tourist : (1) .... I know that the water isn't very clean.

Sami : (2) .... ?

Tourist : I'm from England. I've just spent a week walking across the desert.

Sami : (3) .... ?

Tourist : No, it is not dangerous.

Sami : (4) .... ?

Tourist : I learned skills such as using the sun to find my way.

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Dalia didn't have .... friends when she started at her new school.
   a. the b. some c. a d. any
2. We should .... money to charities to help the poor.
   a. donate b. steal c. take d. refuse
3. I have a new .... on my smart-phone which helps me practise foreign languages.
   a. hack b. app c. connection d. scam
4. The person who writes poetry is called a ....
   a. journalist b. novelist c. poem d. poet
5. Sadly, my uncle has been ill .... he was a young man.
   a. for b. when c. ago d. since
6. It is taken for .... that bullying is as bad behaviour which we all must change.
   a. granted b. refusal c. denial d. decided
7. The local people benefit when lions ....
   a. is protected b. isn't protected c. are protected d. protects
8. The match .... at 10 o'clock.
   a. will start b. starts c. is going to start d. is starting

D. Reading comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Dolphins are regarded as the friendliest creatures in the sea and stories of them helping drowning sailors have been common since Roman times. The more we learn about dolphins, the more we realize that their society is more complex than people previously imagined. They look after other dolphins when they are ill, care for pregnant mothers and protect the weakest in the community, as we do. Some scientists have suggested that dolphins have a language but it is much more probable that they communicated with each other without needing words. Could any of these mammals be more intelligent than man ? Certainly the most common argument in favour of man's superiority over them that we can kill them more easily than they can kill us is the least satisfactory. On the contrary, the more we discover about these remarkable creatures, the less we appear superior when we destroy them.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. How do you think dolphins are like humans ?
   ....
   ....
2. What reason for man's superiority to dolphins does the writer mention ?
   ....
   ....
3. In what way can we be wrong about our superiority to dolphins ?
   ....
   ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. Dolphins have been .... sailors.
   a. drowning b. saving c. sinking d. tricking
5. Dolphins live in .... and have cooperative societies.
   a. isolation b. loneliness c. families d. individuals

E. Islamic selections

5 Choose the right answer :

1. What is the second pillar of Islam ? ....
   a. Zakat b. Prayer c. Fasting d. Pilgrimage
2. Muslims perform prayers .... times a day.
   a. Two b. three c. four d. Five

F. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

"Your role model"

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Eco-tourism aims at providing holidays to places which are endangered and isolated.

....
....

B. Translate into English :

بفضل التقدم الهائل في وسائل التواصل والمراسلات تحول العالم إلى قرية صغيرة.

....
....
....
....

امتحان الدمج 1

A. Language Functions

1 Choose the correct sentence in the following dialogue :

- Hana and Rana are talking about last summer holiday.

Rana : (1) ....
- a. I have a passport.
- b. I went to Indonesia.
- c. I was happy.

Hana : (2) ....
- a. What was it like ?
- b. Who did you go with ?
- c. How did you go there ?

Rana : It was an enjoyable journey.

Hana : (3) ....
- a. How long did you stay there ?
- b. What's your favourite subject ?
- c. What did you see there ?

Rana : I saw orangutans in the forest.

B. Writing and Usage

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

1. Ecotourism doesn't .... the natural environment.
   a. damage b. isolate c. conserve
2. Forests .... us with the oxygen we need.
   a. respect b. dive c. provide
3. Whales are very .... animals that live in seas and oceans.
   a. big b. small c. tiny
4. She had a/an .... on her knee yesterday.
   a. operate b. operation c. cooperation
5. Hesham .... tennis at this moment.
   a. play b. played c. is playing
6. I asked the chef about the .... of the delicious dish.
   a. chemicals b. ingredients c. swimming
7. When I was young, I used to .... swimming.
   a. go b. went c. had gone

3 Match "A" with "B" to make correct sentences :

(A)	(B)
1- Ahmed Zewail was	a- break the rules.
2- The Nile used to	b- protects people from diseases.
3- We mustn't	c- awarded the Nobel Prize.
4- The Egyptian navy	d- make the soil fertile.
5- Vaccination	e- protects Egypt's coasts.

امتحان الدمج 2

A. Language Functions

1 Choose the correct sentence in the following dialogue :

Ola : Do you think moving to a new school is a good or bad thing ?

Lina : (1) ....
- a. That's true. It is possible to make new friends.
- b. As far as I'm concerned, it's not a good idea.
- c. It's really difficult to make new friends.

Ali : (2) .... ?

Salim : I'm fifteen.
- a. How old are you ?
- b. Who are you ?
- c. Hi, Salim. How are you ?

Omar : (3) .... ?

Gamal : Yes, I did my homework yesterday.
- a. Did you do your homework ?
- b. Where did you do your homework ?
- c. When did you do your homework ?

B. Writing and Usage

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

1. While Noha .... her housework, the lights went out.
   a. did b. was doing c. does
2. Don't forget to come on time when you .... to come for the interview.
   a. ask b. are asked c. asked

3. As a personal trainer to the rich and famous, he .... over a million dollars a year.
 a. earns b. wins c. gains

4. I need some advice on which computer to buy. The synonym of the word "advice" is ....
 a. discouragement b. relation c. recommendation

5. You need to update your .... software regularly to look for and remove viruses on your computer.
 a. antivirus b. antibiotic c. antibodies

6. He practices .... the guitar every day.
 a. to play b. playing c. to be played

7. I like outdoor .... such as hiking or climbing.
 a. activities b. subjects c. toys

3 Match "A" with "B" to make correct sentences :

(A)	(B)
1- A food bank is a place	a- I can go instead of him.
2- Contact your local branch	b- to arrange an appointment.
3- She discovered that the job	c- wasn't as easy as it might seem.
4- A professional sportsman is	d- the one who earns money by playing a sport.
5- If Ramy can't attend the meeting,	e- where people collect food to give to others.

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the passage, then answer the questions. Put (✔) or (✗) :

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train, for example, England and Australia. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the train window. We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train there. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings! The train continued to Aswan. We arrived at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us ! It was a wonderful journey.

a. The train left Cairo at 9 o'clock. ( )
b. They arrived at Aswan at 10 o'clock. ( )
c. Few tourists left the train in Luxor. ( )
d. The writer's uncle met them in Aswan. ( )
e. There were lots of people from many countries on the train. ( )

Islamic Selections

Chapter (1) The Five Pillars of Islam

Answer the following questions :

1. What do the Five Pillars of Islam form ?
....
....

2. How can Muslims have their minor sins cleared ?
....
....

3. What are the outcomes of Zakat ?
....
....

4. What would happen if any of the Muslims was ill or on a journey during the fast ?
....
....

5. How does a Muslim become a true Muslim ?
....
....

Chapter (2) Prayer

Answer the following questions :

1. What happens as long as a Muslim adheres to keeping Allah in rememberance ?
....
....

2. Mention the five daily prayers that a Muslim performs every day.
....
....

3. What are the purpose of performing the daily prayers by Muslims ?
....
....

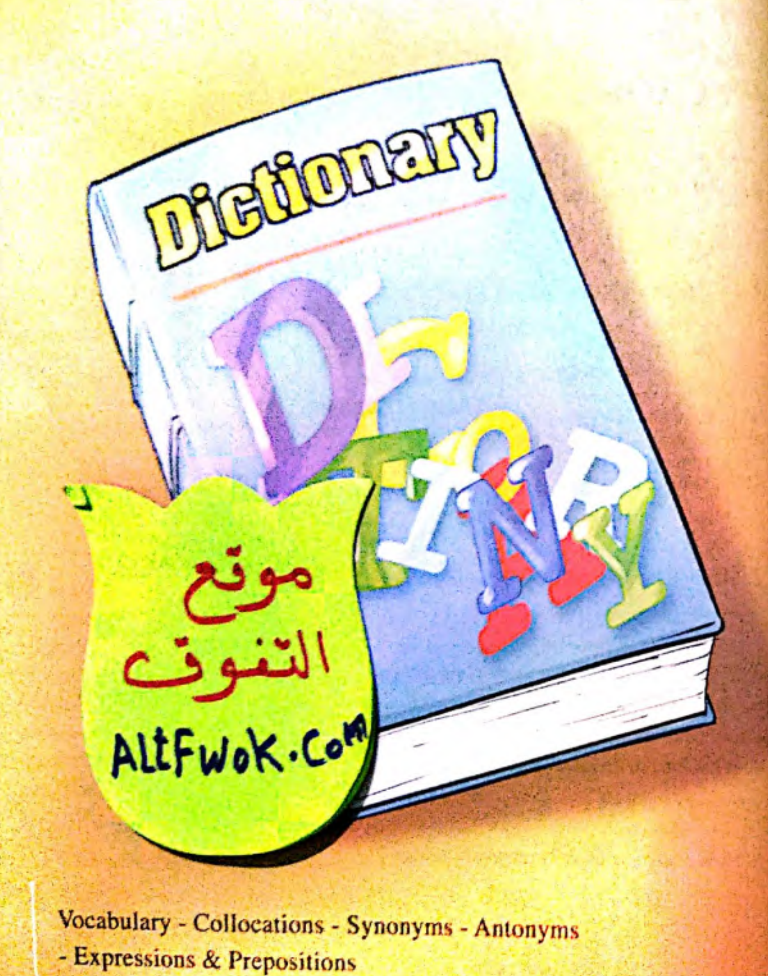
4. What kind of fuel does a Muslim get from prayers ?
....
....

5. How many are the daily prayers in reward ?
....
....

PART 4

El-Moasser Dictionary

القاموس المعاصر للمفردات اللغوية



Vocabulary - Collocations - Synonyms - Antonyms - Expressions & Prepositions

First Term Dictionary

عزيزي الطالب :

نُقدم إليك قاموس المعاصر للصف الأول الثانوي، والذي يتضمن كل ما يخص مفردات الفصل الدراسي الأول، وهو بمثابة مرجع تم تقسيمه إلى عدة أقسام تتضمن المفردات والمتلازمات والمترادفات والمتضادات والتعبيرات والمصطلحات بما في ذلك مفردات القصة (Treasure Island)

والهدف من هذا القاموس هو أن تستفيد به كمرجع يمكن الاستعانة به في البحث عن أي كلمة أثناء حل تدريبات المفردات والمراجعة حيث أنه مرتب أبجديًا، ولابد من الاحتفاظ بهذا القاموس كمرجع لك في السنوات القادمة.

1 Exam Vocabulary

تنويه تمت كتابة المفردات الأكثر أهمية بلون مختلف حتى يسهل حفظها

Aa

ability(n)	قُدْرة	allowed(adj)	مسموح به
abroad(adv)	بالخارج (خارج البلاد)	already(adv)	بالفعل
accident(n)	حادث	although (conj.)	برغم أن
account(n)	حساب (مصرفي أو على النت)	amazing(adj)	مُذهل - رائع جدًا
achievement (n)	إنجاز - نجاح	amongst(prep)	بين / وسط
action(n)	حَدث - فِعْل	ancient(n)	قديم - عتيق
active(adj)	نشيط	angle(n)	زاوية - جانب
activity(n)	نشاط	angry(adj)	غاضب
actually(adv)	في الواقع / بالفعل	anti-virus (adj)	مُكافح الفيروسات
add(ed) (v)	يضيف	anymore(adv)	مرة أخري
address(ed) (v - n)	يخاطب - عنوان	app = application(n)	تطبيق (رقمي)
admire(d) (v)	يُعْجَب بـ	appearance(n)	مظهر
admit (ted) (v)	يُقِرّ بـ / يعترف	area (n)	منطقة
adult (n - adj)	شخص بالغ - راشد	around (adv - prep)	حول - حوالي
advantage(n)	ميزة	arrange(d) (v)	يُرتِّب
adventure(n)	مغامرة	article(n)	مقال
advert = advertisement (n)	إعلان	arts(n)	آداب - فنون
advice(n)	نصيحة	association (n)	جمعية - اتحاد
Africa(n)	إفريقيا	attack(ed) (n - v)	هجوم - يهاجم
again (adv)	مرة أخري	attempt(ed) (n - v)	محاولة - يحاول
against(prep)	ضد	attractions(n)	عوامل الجذب
agreement(n)	عقد - اتفاق - موافقة	author(n)	مؤلِّف
aim(ed) (n - v)	هدف - يَهْدِف	avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتفادى
allow(ed) (v)	يسمح بـ	awful(adj)	فظيع / شديد

Bb

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
baby sister(n)	أخت رضيعة	blood pressure(n)	ضغط الدم
balcony(n)	بلكونة / شرفة	blow - blew - blown (v)	تَهُبّ - ينفخ - يُطيِّر
barrel(n)	برميل خشبي	board(n)	متن سفينة أو طائرة - لوحة
beach(n)	شاطئ	body(n)	الجزء الرئيسي - الجسم
beauty(n)	الجمال	book(ed) (v)	يحجز
become - became - become (v)	يُصبح	boring(adj)	مُمِل
behave(d) (v)	يسلك / يتصرف	borrow(ed) (v)	يستعير - يستلف
behaviour(n)	سلوك	branch(n)	فرع - غصن
belief(n)	اعتقاد	brainstorm(ed) (v)	يستثير الفِكر
benefit(ted) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد	break - broke - broken (v)	يكسر - ينكسر
biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	break down (phr. v)	يتعطل
biologist(n)	عالم أحياء	brief (adj)	مُختَصَر - موجَز
biology(n)	علم الأحياء	brilliant(adj)	رائع - متفوق
birth(n)	ميلاد	bring - brought (v)	يُحضِر - يجلب
bite - bit - bitten (n - v)	عضّة - يعض / يقضم	bully(ied) (v)	يتنمّر - يُبَلْطِج
blind(adj)	كفيف البصر	bully(n)	بلطجي - مُتَنَمِّر
blog(ged) (n - v)	مُدوَّنة على الإنترنت - يُدوِّن	bullying(n)	البلطجة - التَنَمُّر
blood(n)	الدم	businesses(n)	شركات
blood donation(n)	التبرّع بالدم	buy - bought (v)	يشتري

Cc

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
call(ed) (v)	يستدعي - يطلب / يتصل بـ	chance(n)	فُرصة
calm(adj)	هادئ	compassion(n)	رَأفة / رَحْمَة
camping(n)	الإقامة في معسكر	completed(adj)	مُكتمل
canal(n)	قناة - ترعة	concerned(adj)	مهتم - لديه اهتمام
cancer(n)	مرض السرطان	conclusion(n)	خلاصة - خاتمة
candlelight(n)	نور الشمعة	connect(ed) (v)	يربط
cannon(n)	مدفع	connected(adj)	مُتّصِل - مُرْتَبِط
carnival(n)	احتفال / مِهْرَجان	connection(n)	ارتباط - اتصال
case(n)	حالة - قضية	conservation(n)	الصيانة - حماية البيئة
castle(n)	قلعة	conservationist(n)	مُحافظ علي البيئة
cattle(n)	الماشية	consider(ed) (v)	يفكر في - يضع في الإعتبار
cause(d) (n - v)	سبب - يُسَبِّب	contact(ed) (v - n)	يتصل / يتواصل - تواصل
centre(n)	مركز / وسط	contain(ed) (v)	يحتوى على

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
change(d) (v - n)	يُغيِّر - يتغير - تغيير	conversation(n)	محادثة
character(n)	شخصية	cook(ed) (n - v)	طباخ - يطبخ
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية - العمل الخيري	cool(adj)	على الموضة - جميل / جذاب
cheap(adj)	رخيص الثمن	copy(ied) (n - v)	ينسخ - نسخة
cheat(ed) (v - n)	يغش - غشاش	coral reefs / corals(n)	الشعاب المرجانية
cheating(n)	الغش	council(n)	مجلس / ديوان
check(ed) (v)	يتحقق من - يفحص	cow(n)	بقرة
circle(d) (n - v)	دائرة - يرسم دائرة - يحيط بـ	crazy(adj)	مجنون
classroom(n)	حجرة الدراسة	create(d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر - يُوجد
cleaner(adj)	أكثر نظافة	creative(adj)	مُبدع - خلّاق
clear(d) (adj - v)	صافي - واضح - يوضِّح	credit card(n)	بطاقة ائتمان
clearly(adv)	بوضوح	crescent (n)	هلال
click(ed) (n - v)	نقرة - ينقر	crew(n)	طاقم سفينة أو طائرة
cliff(n)	منحدر	crime(n)	جريمة
close (to) (adj)	قريب - مُقَرَّب	criminal (n - adj)	مجرم - إجرامي
closing (n)	إنهاء - ختام	critical(adj)	ناقد - نقدي
coast(n)	ساحل	cross(ed) (n - v)	علامة (✓) أو (✗) - يشطب
collaboration(n)	تَعاوُن / تآزُر	crowded(adj)	مُزدحم
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع - يُحضِر	cruise ship (n)	باخرة سياحية
collection(n)	مجموعة	cruise(n)	نزهة بحرية
colourful(adj)	زاهي الألوان	crutch(n)	عُكاز - ركيزة - دعامة
comic(n)	مجلة مصورة للأطفال	cry(ied) (v)	يبكي
comment(ed) (n - v)	تعليق - يُعَلِّق	culture(n)	الثقافة
common (adj)	عام - مُشْتَرَك - شائع	currant row	صف الكشمش / عنب
communicate(d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل	currant(n)	نبات الكشمش / عنب
communication(n)	تواصل - اتصال	currently(adv)	حاليًا
community(n)	مُجْتَمَع - جماعة	cute(adj)	جذاب - جميل
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	cyberbully (n)	متنمر عبر الإنترنت
contractions(n)	اختصارات	cyberbullying(n)	التنمر الإلكتروني
contrast(ed) (n - v)	تباين / اختلاف - يوضح التباين	cycle (d) (v)	يقود دراجة

Dd

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
damage(d) (v -n)	يُتلف - تلف / ضرر	dig - dug (v)	يحفر - يغرس
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	dirty(adj)	قذر
data(n)	بيانات	disabled (adj)	مُعاق
date(n)	تاريخ اليوم - موعد	disappear(ed) (v)	يختفي - يتلاشى
day(n)	يوم - النهار	disaster(n)	كارثة - مصيبة

debate(d) (n - v)	مناظرة - يناقش	disconnected(adj)	منفصل / منعزل
debt(n)	دَيْن	discussion(n)	مناقشة / نقاش
decide(d) (v)	يقرر - يختار	disease(n)	مرض
dedicate(d) (v)	يخصص	dishonest(adj)	غير أمين - مُخادع
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	dive(d) (v)	يغوص / يغطس
delete(d) (v)	يحذف	diversity(n)	التنوع
describe(d) (v)	يصف	diving(n)	الغوص / الغطس - رحلة غوص
description(n)	وَصْف	document(n)	وثيقة
deserve(d) (v)	يستحق	documentary (n - adj)	فيلم وثائقي - وثائقي
design(ed) (v - n)	يُصمم - تصميم	donate(d) (v)	يتبرع
desire(d) (n - v)	رغبة - يرغب	donation(n)	التَبَرُّع
destination(n)	مقصد - وجْهة سفر	donor(n)	مُتَبَرِّع
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمّر	download (n)	ملف مُنَزَّل
details(n)	تفاصيل	download(ed) (v)	يحمل / يُنَزِّل (من الإنترنت)
determine(d) (v)	يحدد - ينوي أن	downloading (n)	التحميل / التنزيل (من الإنترنت)
develop(ed) (v)	يُنمّي / يُطَوِّر - ينمو / يتطور	dragon(n)	تنين
device(n)	جهاز	dreamer (n)	حالم
dialogue(n)	حوار	dress(ed) (n - v)	فستان - يرتدي ملابس
die (d) (v)	يتوفى / يموت	dried(adj)	مُجَفَّف
difference(n)	اختلاف - فَرْق	driverless(adj)	بدون سائق
differently(adv)	بشكل مختلف	drop(ped) (v - n)	يُسْقِط - قَطْرة
		during	خلال / أثناء

Ee

each (adv - pron- deter)	كُلّ / كُلّ من	environment(n)	البيئة
earn(ed) (v)	يكسب - يجني مال	environmentally(adv)	من الناحية البيئية
eco-hotel(n)	فندق صديق للبيئة	escape(d) (v - n)	يهرب - هروب
ecosystem(n)	النظام البيئي	especially(adv)	بصفة خاصة
ecotourism(n)	السياحة البيئية	essay(n)	مقالة
ecotourist(n)	سائح مُراعي للبيئة	estimate(d) (v)	يُقَدِّر - يفترض
eco-trip(n)	رحلة صديقة للبيئة	Europe(n)	قارة أوروبا
Ecuador(n)	الإكوادور	events(n)	أحداث
educate(d) (v)	يُعَلِّم	everyday (adj)	يومي
effect(n)	أثر	everywhere(adv)	في كل مكان
Egyptians(n)	المصريون	evidence(n)	دليل
electric(adj)	كهربي	exactly(adv)	تمامًا - بالتحديد
electronic(adj)	الكتروني	excited(adj)	سعيد - مُثار

embarrassing(adj)	مُحرج	exciting(adj)	مثير
emotional connection	ارتباط عاطفي	exist(ed) (v)	يوجد / يتواجد
emotions(n)	مشاعر	exotic(adj)	غريب - أجنبي
empathy(n)	تعاطُف - تقدير ظروف الأخرين	expensive(adj)	غالي الثمن
employ(ed) (v)	يُوظِّف - يُشغِّل	experience (d) (n - v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة
employer(n)	صاحب العمل - مُوظِّف	expert (n - adj)	خبير
empty(ied) (adj - v)	فارغ - يُفرِّغ	explain(ed) (v)	يشرح / يوضح / يفسر
encourage(d) (v)	يُشجِّع	explore(d) (v)	يستكشف
endangered(adj)	مُعرَّض للخطر	expressions(n)	تعبيرات
ending (v)	نهاية	extra (adj / adv)	إضافي - آخر
entertain(ed) (v)	يُسلّي - يُرفِّه	extract(ed) (n - v)	مُقتطف / اقتباس - يقتبس / يقتطف
entertainment(n)	تسلية / ترفيه		

Ff

face(d) (n - v)	وجه - يواجه	fly (n)	ذُبابة
fact(n)	حقيقة	follow(ed) (v)	يتبع / يلي - يتتبع
factory(n)	مصنع	fondness(n)	غرام / إعجاب / حُب شديد
factual(adj)	واقعي - متعلق بالحقائق	food bank	بنك الطعام
faculty(n)	كُلِّية	foot - feet(n)	قدم - أقدام
fair(adj)	عادل	footballer(n)	لاعب كرة قدم
famous(adj)	مشهور	forget - forgot - forgotten (v)	ينسى
farmer(n)	فلاح / مُزارع	formal(adj)	رسمي
Faroe Islands(n)	جزر الفارو	fort(n)	حصن
fascinating(adj)	جميل / خلّاب	fortunately(adv)	لحسن الحظ
favourite(adj)	مُفضّل	founder(n)	مؤسس - مُوجد
feed - fed(v)	يُطْعِم	free(adj)	مجاني
feel - felt (v)	يشعر به	frequency(n)	تكرار
fewer(adj)	أقل في العدد	friendly(adj)	ودود
field (n)	مجال - حقل	friendship(n)	الصداقة
fight - fought (v - n)	يقاتل / يتشاجر مع - مشاجرة	full-time(adj)	دوام كامل
finals(n)	النهائيات	fun(n)	مرح / متعة
flexible(adj)	مرن	furious(adj)	ساخط / غاضب جدا
flight(n)	رحلة جوية	fussy eater	متقلب المزاج بشأن الطعام
fly - flew - flown(v)	يطير - يُطَيِّر - يُسرع		

Gg

gang(n)	عصابة	grab(bed) (v)	يخطف بشدة - يخطف
garden(n)	بستان	grammar(n)	القواعد اللغوية
gardener(n)	بستاني (جنايني)	granddad(n)	جد
gardening(n)	بستنة / فلاحة البساتين	grass(n)	عُشب
generous(adj)	كريم - سخي	gravel(n)	الحصى
get along with	يحسن التعامل مع	gravelled (adj)	مغطى بالحصى
get away from	يبتعد عن	great(adj)	عظيم
get to - got(v)	يصل إلى	greeting(n)	تحية
giant (adj - n)	عملاق	group(ed) (n - v)	مجموعة - يحشد / يُجمّع
glad(adj)	مسرور / مبتهج	grow - grew - grown (v)	يزرع - يكبر - يترعرع
go - went - gone (v)	يمضي / يزول	grown-ups(n)	الكبار
goats(n)	ماعز	guard(ed) (n - v)	يحرس - حارس
goods(n)	بضائع (ذات جمع)	guardian(n)	حارس
google (n)	محرك البحث جوجل	guide(d) (n - v)	مُرشد - يُرشد
google(d) (v)	يبحث على جوجل		

Hh

habit(n)	عادة	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يُخفي - يُخبّئ
hack(ed) (n - v)	يخترق - يقرصن	high school(n)	مدرسة ثانوية
hacking(n)	اختراق - القرصنة	highlight(ed) (n - v)	الجزء الأهم - يُبرز
harbour(n)	مرسى - مرفأ	historic(adj)	تاريخي
hard(adj)	صعب	hobby(n)	هواية
harm (ed) (n - v)	ضرر - يضر	hometown(n)	مسقط رأس
hate(d) (v)	يكره	hop(ped) (n - v)	قفزة - يقفز - يحجل
hay(n)	تبن / قش	hopping(n)	القفز - الحَجْل
head(n)	رئيس - قائد - رأس	horrible(adj)	فظيع
header(n)	رأس الصفحة - عنوان رئيسي	host(ed) (n - v)	مُضيف - يستضيف
headquarters(n)	مركز القيادة	however (conj. - adv)	مع ذلك
healthy	صحة جيدة	hunter(n)	صياد
heating(n)	التدفئة	hunting parties	فرق الصيد
helpful(adj)	مفيد - مُعين	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - يُصيب

Ii

idea (n)	فكرة	intelligent(adj)	ذكي
illegally(adv)	بشكل غير قانوني	intention(n)	نية
image(n)	صورة	interesting(adj)	شيّق - مثير للاهتمام
imaginary(adj)	خيالي / غير حقيقي	interests (n)	اهتمامات
imagination (n)	خيال	internal(adj)	داخلي

imagine(d) (v)	يتخيل	Internet of Things (IOT)	إنترنت الأشياء
impact(ed) (n - v)	أثر - يؤثر	internet(n)	الإنترنت
important (adj)	هام	interview(ed) (n - v)	حوار / مقابلة شخصية - يحاور
improve(d) (v)	تحسّن - يتحسّن	introduce(d) (v)	يطرح - يُقدّم - يُعرّف
include(d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن - يُضمّن	iron level(n)	نسبة الحديد في الدم
income(n)	دخل - مورد رزق	iron(ed) (n - v)	حديد - مكواة - يكوي
increase(d) (v - n)	يزيد - يزداد - زيادة	island(n)	جزيرة
Indonesia(n)	إندونيسيا	isolated(adj)	بعيد - منعزل
inform(ed) (v)	يُعلم - يُخبر	isolation (n)	عُزلة - انعزال
injure(d) (v)	تصيب - يؤذي	issue(n)	قضية
injured (adj)	مصاب / مجروح	inn(n)	حانة (فندق صغير)
inspire(d) (v)	يُلهم - يحثّ / يُحفّز		

Jj

job(n)	مهنة - وظيفة	join(ed) (v)	ينضم إلى

Kk

keep - kept (v)	يحافظ على - يحتفظ بـ - يُربّي	kids(n)	الأطفال
keep the gravel walk	يلزم الطريق الممهد بالحصى	killer(n)	قاتل
Kenya(n)	كينيا	kind(adj)	طيّب - نوع
key(n)	مفتاح	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
kidnap(ped) (v)	يختطف	kneel down - knelt(v)	يركع

Ll

lady(n)	سيدة	like (prep - v)	مثل - يحب
large(adj)	كبير - فسيح	limited(adj)	محدود
later (adv)	فيما بعد	line(n)	سطر شعري
laugh(d) (n - v)	ضحكة - يضحك	link(ed) (n - v)	رابط - يربط
law(n)	القانون	list(ed) (n - v)	قائمة - يضع في قائمة
lawyer(n)	محامي	literature(n)	الأدب
lean - leaned / leant(v)	ينحني - يميل / يتكئ	little(adj)	صغير الحجم / السن
leader(n)	قائد	live(d) (v)	يحيا - يسكن
Lemurs(n)	قرد الليمور	livestock(n)	حيوانات المزارع
length(n)	طول	loads of	الكثير من
lesson(n)	درس - حصة	local(adj)	محلي
lettuce(n)	الخس	locals(n)	السكان المحليين
level(n)	مستوى / نسبة	locate(d) (v)	يضع في مكان - يحدد موقع

English	العربية	English	العربية
library(n)	مكتبة	lock(ed) (v - n)	يقفل - يقفل
lie - lay - lain (v)	يرقد - يتمدد	long-term(adj)	طويل المدى
life (lives) (n)	حياة (حيوات)	lucky(adj)	محظوظ
light(n - adj)	الضوء - خفيف الوزن		
lighting(n)	الإضاءة		

Mm

English	العربية	English	العربية
Maasai(n)	شعب الماساي	meaning(n)	معنى
machine(n)	آلة	media(n)	وسائل الإعلام - وسائل التواصل
Machu Picchu(n)	حضارة ماتشو بيكتشو في المكسيك	medicine(n)	الطب - دواء
Madagascar(n)	جزيرة مدغشقر	mention(ed) (v)	يذْكُر
magistrate(n)	قاضي (جنح)	merchant(n)	تاجر
main(adj)	رئيسي / أساسي	Mexican (n - adj)	مكسيكي
mainly(adv)	أساسًا	mind(n)	العقل
major(adj)	كبير	miserable(adj)	تعيس - بائس
make it clear	يوضّح	miss(ed) (v)	يفقد - يفوته
maker(n)	صانع	missing(adj)	مفقود - ناقص
malware(n)	البرمجيات الخبيثة	mix(ed) (v)	يختلط بـ - يخلِط
management(n)	إدارة	model(n)	نموذج
map(n)	خريطة	modern(adj)	حديث - مُعاصِر
market(n)	سوق	monitor(ed) (v - n)	يُراقب / يرصُد - جهاز عرض
marks(n)	درجات	mosquito(n)	ناموسة
master(n)	السيد	movement(n)	حركة
material (n - adj)	مادة / غَرَض - مادي	moving(adj)	مُتحرّك
maybe(adv)	ربما	mutiny(n)	تمرد - عصيان

Nn

English	العربية	English	العربية
name(d) (n - v)	اسم - يُسَمّي - يذكر اسم	nickname(n)	لقب - اسم شهرة
narrate(ed) (v)	يروي / يحكي	niece(n)	ابنة الأخ أو الأخت
narrow(adj)	ضيق	noisy(adj)	مُزعج - صاخب
nasty(adj)	قبيح - ذميم	note (n)	ملاحظة
National Park(n)	الحديقة الوطنية	noticeboard(n)	لوحة الإعلانات
natural(adj)	طبيعي	novel(n)	رواية - قصة طويلة
nearby (adj/ adv)	قريب / مُجاور	nurse(d) (v)	تُمَرِّض - ترعى المرضى
negative(adj)	سلبي	nurse(n)	ممرضة
neighbour(n)	جار	nursing(n)	التمريض
network(ed) (n - v)	شَبَكَة - يتصل عن طريق الشبكة		

Oo

English	العربية	English	العربية
objective(adj)	موضوعي (مُحايد)	orangutan(n)	إنسان الغابة
offer(ed) (n - v)	عَرْض - يعرض	organisation(n)	مؤسسة - مُنظّمة
once(adv)	مرة - ذات مرة	otherwise(adv)	وإلّا
online (adj / adv)	مُتصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت	outside(adv)	بالخارج
opportunity(n)	فُرصة	over the moon	سعيد جدًا
optional(adj)	اختياري	owe(d) (v)	يدين - يكون مدين

Pp

English	العربية	English	العربية
pale(adj)	شاحب اللون - باهت	police(d) (v)	يفرض الأمن والانضباط
paper(n)	ورق - مقال	police(n)	الشرطة
paradise(n)	جنّة	policing(n)	فرض الأمن والانضباط
parrot(n)	ببغاء	polite(adj)	مؤدب - مهذب
particular(adj)	مُعيّن / مُحدَّد	pollution(n)	التلوث
partner(n)	شريك - نظير / قرين	pool(n)	حمام سباحة - بِرْكة
party(n)	فريق - جماعة - حزب	popular(adj)	ذو شعبية
pass(ed) (v)	يجتاز - يَمُر - يُمَرِّر	populate(d) (v)	يُعَمِّر مكان
password(n)	كلمة المرور	population(n)	(عدد) السكان
past(n)	الماضي	Portugal(n)	البرتغال
path(n)	طريق مشاة - ممر	positive(adj)	إيجابي
paw print	آثار أقدام الحيوان	possibility(n)	إمكانية
paws(n)	براثن - مخالب الحيوانات	post(ed) (v - n)	يرسل - منشور
pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال	pound(n)	جُنيه
peace(n)	السلام - السكينة	power station(n)	محطات الطاقة
peaceful(adj)	هادئ / ذو سكينة	practice(n)	ممارسة - تدريب
penny(n)	بنس (١/ ١٠٠ من الجنية)	praise(ed) (n - v)	المديح - يُثني على - يمتدح
perform(ed) (v)	يؤدي - يقوم بـ	prediction(n)	تنبؤ
personal(adj)	شخصي	prefer(red) (v)	يُفَضِّل
personality(n)	شخصية	preparation(n)	إعداد - تجهيز
persuade(d) (v)	يُقنع	present(n)	الحاضر - المضارع
petrol(n)	البنزين	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
phishing(n)	النصب الالكتروني	presenter(n)	مُقدّم برنامج
phone-in(n)	برنامج يُشارك فيه الجمهور هاتفيًا	pressure(n)	ضغط
photograph(ed) (n - v)	صورة - يلتقط صورة	prestige (n - adj)	نُفوذ / هَيْبة / وَجاهة - عالي الجودة
physical(adj)	بدني / جسدي - مادي	prison(n)	السجن

pink (n - adj)	وردي اللون	produce(d) (v)	ينتج
pirate(n)	قرصان	production(n)	إنتاج
place (n)	مكان	programme(d) (n - v)	برنامج - يبرمج
plan(ned) (v - n)	خطة - يخطط	project(n)	مشروع
planning(n)	تخطيط	pronounce(d) (v)	ينطق
play(n)	مسرحية	pronunciation(n)	النُطق
plaza(n)	ساحة	properly(adv)	بشكل صحيح
plot(n)	قطعة أرض	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
plot(n)	الحبكة - ذروة الأحداث	protect(ed) (v)	يحمي
plump(adj)	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً	provide(d) (v)	يوفر - يُزوّد بـ
poem(n)	قصيدة	publish(ed) (v)	ينشر
poet(n)	شاعر	punctuation(n)	علامات الترقيم
poetry(n)	الشعر - النظْم	purpose(n)	غرض
point(ed) (v)	يشير		

Qq

quality(n)	سمة - ميزة	quarter(n)	رُبع
quantity(n)	كمية	quiet (n - adj)	هدوء - هادئ

Rr

rainforest(n)	غابة مطيرة	resort(n)	منتجع سياحي
rat(n)	فأر	respect(ed) (n - v)	احترام - يحترم
read - read (v)	يقرأ	responsibility(n)	مسئولية
reader (n)	قارئ	return (ed) (v)	يعود - يُعيد
realise(d) (v)	يُدرك - يستوعب	review(ed) (v)	يُراجع
reason(n)	سبب	review(n)	عرض نقدي
rebuild - rebuilt (v)	يعيد بناء	revise(d) (v)	يراجع - ينقح
recent(adj)	حديث	reward(ed) (v - n)	يُكافئ - مكافأة
recipient(n)	متلقي - مُستلِم	rhyme(d) (n - v)	القافية - يُقفّي / يسجع
recognise(d) (v)	يتعرف على	rhythm(n)	إيقاع
reduce(ed) (v)	يُقلل / يُخفّض	ride - rode - ridden(v)	يركب
regret(ted) (n - v)	الندم - يندم - يأسف	ring - rang - rang (v)	يرن
regular(adj)	معتاد / مألوف - منتظم	roar(ed) (n - v)	يزأر - زئير
relationship(n)	علاقة	robot(n)	انسان آلي
relaxing(adj)	مُريح	role model(n)	قُدْوة - نموذج يُحتذي
remote(adj)	بعيد / نائي	role(n)	دَور
remove(d) (v)	يُزيل - يُبعد	roleplay (n - v)	(لعبة) تمثيل الأدوار - يُمثّل

repair(d) (v)	يُصلح	romantic(adj)	رومانسي
repeated(adj)	مُتكرر	row(n)	صف
reply (ied) (n - v)	رد - يرد	rucksack(n)	حقيبة الظهر
request(ed) (n - v)	طلب - يطلب	rude(adj)	وقح - سيء الأدب
resident(n)	ساكن / نزيل	rule(ed) (n - v)	قاعدة - يحكم

Ss

sad(adj)	حزين	solve (d) (v)	يحل
safe(adj)	آمن	souvenir(n)	هدية تذكارية - تذكار
Sahara(n)	الصحراء الكبرى	space(n)	الفضاء
sail(ed) (n - v)	يُبحر - شراع	special (adj)	مُميّز - خاص
sailor(n)	بحّار	speed(n)	سرعة
salutation(n)	تحية	spelling(n)	تهجي الكلمات
sand(n)	الرمل	spend - spent (v)	يقضي وقت - ينفق مال
satnav(n)	التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي	spice(d) (v)	يُتبّل (يضع توابل)
save(d) (v)	يُنقذ - يدّخر / يوفر	spices(n)	توابل
scam(n)	احتيال - غش	spicy(adj)	حِرّيف - حار - متبّل بالبهارات
scientist(n)	عالم	spider(n)	عنكبوت
score(ed) (v - n)	يُحرز / يسجل - النقاط المسجلة	stadium(n)	ستاد
Scottish(adj)	إسكتلندي	steal - stole - stolen (v)	يسرق
season(n)	فصل / موسم	stepfather(n)	زوج الأم
section(n)	قسم - جزء	steps (n)	خطوات
security(n)	الأمن	still(adv)	لا يزال
seem(ed) (v)	يبدو	stir(red) (v)	يُقلّب / يحرك
self(n)	النفس - الذات	stone(n)	حجر
self-management(n)	إدارة الذات	storyteller(n)	قصاص (يحكي قصص)
sell - sold (v)	يبيع	strange(adj)	غريب
sense(n)	حاسة	stressed(adj)	مُشدّد / منبّر
sentence(n)	جملة	stressed(adj)	مضغوط (عصبيًا)
serious(adj)	خطير - جادّ	structure(n)	تركيب - بناء
several(adj)	العديد من	stuck(adj)	عالق / محشور - ملتصق
share(d) (v)	يشارك - ينشر	study(ed) (v)	يدرس - يذاكر
short story (n)	قصة قصيرة	subject(n)	موضوع
show - showed - shown (v - n)	يُبيّن / يُوضّح - عرض فني	successful(adj)	ناجح
sick(adj)	مريض	suggestion(n)	اقتراح



English	Arabic	English	Arabic
sight(n)	منظر - البصر - أحد المعالم	summarise(d) (v)	يُلخص
sign(n)	علامة / إشارة / لافتة	summary(n)	مُلخص
single(adj)	منفرد - أعزب	sunbathe(d) (v)	يأخذ حمام شمس - يتعرض للشمس
site(n)	موقع	sunshine(n)	أشعة الشمس
situation(n)	موقف	support(ed) (v - n)	يدعم - دعم
skill(n)	مهارة	suppose(d) (v)	يتعجب
slow(adj)	بطيء	surface(n)	سطح
smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي	surprise(d) (n - v)	مفاجأة / دهشة - يفاجئ
social media(n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	survey(n)	بحث استبياني
socialise(d) (v)	يتواصل عبر وسائل التواصل	sustain(ed) (v)	يحافظ على - يبقى على
society (n)	المجتمع	sustainable(adj)	دائم - صديق للبيئة
software(n)	برامج - برمجيات	swell - swelled - swollen (up) (v)	يتورَّم - يتضخَّم - يتزايد
solution(n)	حل	system(n)	نظام

Tt

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
take ... for granted	يُسلِّم ... بـ	together(adv)	معًا / سويًا
talk(ed) (n - v)	حديث - يتحدث	tonight(adv)	الليلة
Tanzania(n)	تنزانيا	tools(n)	أدوات
teach - taught (v)	يُدرِّس	topic(n)	فكرة رئيسية
team sports(n)	رياضات جماعية	toy(n)	لعبة أطفال
teammates(n)	زملاء الفريق	track(ed) (v - n)	يرصُد - يتابع - ممر
technology(n)	التكنولوجيا	traditional(adj)	تقليدي
teenager (adj - n)	مُراهِق	traditionally(adv)	بشكل تقليدي
temple(n)	معْبَد	transplant(ed) (n - v)	نقل - زراعة أعضاء
terrible(adj)	فظيع - سيء جدًا	travel(led) (v - n)	السفر - يسافر
test(ed) (n - v)	اختبار - يختبر	traveller(n)	مُسافِر - رَحّالة
text(n)	نَص	treasure(n)	كنز
the Pacific(n)	المحيط الهادي	trek(ked) (v - n)	يسير لمسافة طويلة - رحلة طويلة سيرًا
the wild	المناطق البرية	tribe(n)	قبيلة
theatre(n)	المسرح	trick(ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
thief - thieves(n)	لصوص	trouble(n)	مشكلة
thinking(n)	تفكير	true(adj)	حقيقي / صحيح - صادق
tiny(adj)	ضئيل الحجم	trust (ed) (n - v)	ثقة - يثق بـ

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
tip (n)	نصيحة	try(ied) (v)	يُجرِّب - يحاول
tired-looking(adj)	يبدو عليه التعب	turtle(n)	سلحفاة مائية
title(n)	عنوان - لقب	twins(n)	توأم

Uu

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
ugly(adj)	قبيح	unwanted(adj)	غير مرغوب فيه
understand - understood (v)	يفهم - يدرك	upload (n)	ملف مرفوع
		upload(ed) (v)	يرفع ملف
underwater (adj - adv)	تحت الماء	uploading (n)	رفع (ملفات على الإنترنت)
unfriendly(adj)	غير ودود	upset(adj)	منزعج / متضايق - يضايق
unique(adj)	فريد - مميَّز	use(d) (n - v)	استخدام - يستخدم
unusual(adj)	غير مألوف		

Vv

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
variety(n)	تنوع - تعددية	villagers(n)	القرويين
verse(n)	فقرة شعرية	visitor(n)	زائر
victim(n)	ضحية	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
view(n)	وجهة نظر / رأي - منظر	voluntary(adj)	تطوعي
viewers(n)	المشاهدين	volunteer(n)	مُتطوِّع
village(n)	قرية	voluntourist(n)	سائح مُتطوِّع

Ww

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
wake - woke - woken (v)	يُوقِظ - يستيقظ	while(n)	فترة من الوقت
walls(n)	أسوار / جدران	whistle(d) (n - v)	صافرة - يصفر
warm(adj)	دافئ	wild(adj)	بَرّي
warmer(adj)	أكثر دفئًا	wildlife(n)	الحياة البرّية
warning(n)	تحذير	wind(n)	الرياح
wear - wore - worn (v)	يرتدي	winter(n)	فصل الشتاء
weather(n)	الطقس	wish(ed) (n - v)	أمنية - يتمنى
web(n)	شبكة	wonder(ed) (v)	يتساءل
website(n)	موقع على الانترنت	wooden(adj)	خشبي
welcome(d) (v)	يُرحِّب	World Cup(n)	كأس العالم
well(adj)	بصحة جيدة	worldwide (adj)	عالمي / دولي
well-known(adj)	مشهور	worry(ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق
		writer(n)	كاتب

Yy

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
yet(adv)	حتى الآن - ومع ذلك	youth association	جمعية شبابية
youth (n)	الشباب		

2 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

Collocations with 'do':

do	activities	يمارس أنشطة	do	puzzles	يحل ألغاز
do	a favour	يصنع معروف	do	research	يُجري أبحاث
do	a job	يقوم بعمل	do	something to help	يفعل شيء لمساعدة
do	a sport	يمارس رياضة	do	the homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلي
do	exciting things	يقوم بأشياء مثيرة	do	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي
do	extra practice	يقوم بتدريبات إضافية	do	wrong	يُخطئ

Collocations with 'feel':

feel	at home	يشعر بالراحة	feel	safe	يشعر بالأمان
feel	better	يشعر بتحسُّن	feel	so hard	تبدو صعبة جدًا
feel	connected to	لديه ارتباط بـ	feel	stressed	يشعر بضغوط
feel	like	يرغب في / يريد - يشعر كأنه			

Collocations with 'give':

give	food	يُطعم	give	advice on	ينصح بخصوص
give	a chance	يمنح فرصة	give	an opinion	يعطي رأي
give	blood	يتبرع بالدم	give	information	يعطي معلومات
give	work / jobs	يُشغِّل	give	personal details	يعطي تفاصيل شخصية
give	a title	يُلقِّب	give	a presentation	يقوم بعرض تقديمي
give	a sense of responsibility	يعطي إحساس بالمسئولية	give	a reason for	يُبرِّر
give	a nickname	يُلقِّب - يُسَمِّي	give	a rhythm	تعطي إيقاع

Collocations with 'go':

go	diving	يمارس رياضة الغوص	go	missing	يتوه / يضل الطريق
go	trekking	يذهب في رحلة طويلة سيرًا (على الأقدام)	go	online	يدخل على الانترنت
go	wrong	يتعطل / يُصاب بالعطب	go	on a holiday	يسافر في إجازة

Collocations with 'have':

have	a reason	لديه مبرر	have	common interests	لديهم اهتمامات مشتركة
have	a holiday	يحصل على أجازة	have	a desire to	لديه رغبة أن
have	an impact	له أثر / تأثير	have	health benefits	ذو فوائد صحية
have	a strong taste	ذو مذاق قوي	have	long-term illness	يعاني من مرض مُزمن
have	a good time	يقضي وقتًا سعيدًا	have	nothing to do	ليس لديه ما يقوم به

have	a child	لديه طفل - تضع مولود	have	a game	يلعب مباراة
have	no parents	يتيم	have	the ability to	لديه القدرة على
have	debts	عليه ديون	have	skills	لديه مهارات
have	a problem with	لديه مشكلة في	have	a class debate	يُنظِّم مناظرة بين الطلاب
have	bad news	لديه أخبار سيئة	have	an effect on	له أثر على
have	time	لديه الوقت	have	exams	لديه امتحانات
have	no opportunity	ليست لديه فرصة	have	a rhythm	به إيقاع
have	a role	له دور يقوم به	have	fun	يمرح / يلهو
have	a happy ending	لها نهاية سعيدة	have	a vote	يُجري اقتراع / تصويت
have	a suggestion	لديه اقتراح	have	a pen friend	لديه صديق مراسلة

Collocations with 'make':

make	money	يكسب مال - يجمع ثروة	make	a decision	يتخذ قرار
make	brief notes	يُدَوِّن ملاحظات قصيرة	make	life better	يجعل الحياة أفضل
make	a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح	make	a request	يطلب
make	a difference	يُحدِث فرقاً / يصنع الفارق	make	a surface	يمهد سطح
make	friends	يُكَوِّن صداقات	make	preparations for	يُجهِّز لـ
make	sure	يتأكد / يتيقن / يتحقق	make	notes	يدون ملاحظات
make	movements	يقوم بحركات	make	friends with	يُصادق / يُصاحب

Collocations with 'take':

take	a taxi	يأخذ تاكسي	take	a photo	يلتقط صورة
take	a cruise	يقوم برحلة بحرية	take	turns	يتبادل الأدوار
take	to prison	يُسجن - يحبس	take	a long time	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا
take	... for granted	يأخذ ... كأمر مُسَلَّم به	take	practice	يتمرن

Other collocations:

	different to / from	يكون مختلف عن	increase	pollution	يزيد التلوث
be	not welcome here	غير مُرَحَّب به هنا	introduce	a law	يُشرِّع قانون
	right to	يكون مُحق في	join	clubs	ينضم لأندية
become	ill	يمرض	leave	school	يُنهي دراسته
	friends	يصبحون أصدقاء		heavy	تبدو ثقيلة
break	the law	يخالف القانون	look	like	يبدو كأنه
bring	problems	يسبب مشكلات		right	يبدو على ما يُرام

Verb	Collocation	Arabic
call	the police	يطلب الشرطة
change	your opinion	تغيِّر رأيك
check	your understanding	تتحقق من فهمك
	blood pressure	يقيس ضغط الدم
	iron level	يقيس نسبة الحديد في الدم
	satnav	يتحقق من التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي
collect	food	يجمع الطعام
come	home	يعود للبيت
create	jobs for	يوفر وظائف لـ
donate	blood	يتبرع بالدم
	money	يتبرع بالمال
earn	money	يكسب مال
express	ideas	تعبر عن أفكار
face	a problem	يواجه مشكلة
fight	the bullies	يقاتل المتنمرين
find	a solution to	يجد حلًا لـ
follow	the steps	يتبع الخطوات
	rules	يتبع القواعد
forget	your worries	تنسى مخاوفك
	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق
get	the main idea	يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية
	a job	يحصل على عمل
	good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة
	money	يحصل على مال
improve	his health	يُحسِّن صحته
include	information	يُضمِّن معلومات
owe	money to	يدين بالمال لـ
pass	an exam	يجتاز امتحان
play	a role	يلعب دورًا
	a trick on	يخدع
protect	ecosystem	يحافظ على النظام البيئي
provide	a holiday to	ينظم رحلات إلى
reach	the final	يصل للمباراة النهائية
run	the country	يدير البلد
save	wild animals	يُنقذ الحيوانات البرية
send	a message to	يُرسِل
solve	a problem	يحل مشكلة
spend	time reading	يقضي الوقت في القراءة
start	university	يبدأ الدراسة الجامعية
	a conversation	يبدأ حوار
	a new school	ينتقل لمدرسة جديدة
stay	safe	يبقى بأمان
	in bed	يلزم الفراش
study	online	يدرس عَبْر الإنترنت
tell	a story	يحكي قصة
try	a hobby	يجرب ممارسة هواية
win	a prize	يفوز بجائزة
	a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
write	a summary	يكتب تلخيصًا
	a blog	يكتب منشور في مدونة

3 Synonyms المترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
a long-term illness	مرض مُزمن	a serious illness
admire	يُعجَب بـ	praise / approve of / appreciate / respect
admit	يُقِرّ بـ / يعترف بـ	confess

Word		Synonym
advert	إعلان	advertisement / ad
amazing	مُذهل - رائع جدًا	very good - astonishing - awesome
ancient	قديم / عتيق	very old
app	تطبيق	application
blood donation	التبرع بالدم	giving blood
book	يحجز	reserve
cheat(ed)	يغش	deceive / trick
clear	واضح	obvious / understandable / direct / uncomplicated / explicit
clear	صافي	bright / cloudless
closing	إنهاء - ختام	conclusion / end / ending
common	عام - مُشْتَرَك - شائع	widespread / usual / ordinary / customary
concerned	مهتم - لديه اهتمام	interested / involved / affected / connected
connection	ارتباط - اتصال	link / relationship / relation
conservation	حماية البيئة	preservation
cool	على الموضة / جميل / جذاب	fashionable
crowded	مُزدحم	packed - congested - full
desire	رغبة - يرغب	wish
donate	يتبرع	give
earn	يكسب - يجني مال	make (money)
endangered	مُعرَّض للخطر	in danger - threatened
exotic	أجنبي	foreign
exotic	مُدهِش / مُذهِل (غير اعتيادى)	unusual / unconventional
famous	مشهور	well-known
generous	كريم - سَخِيّ	giving / open-handed
giant	عملاق - ضخم	gigantic - enormous - huge
grown-ups	الكبار	adults
hate	يكره	loathe / detest
impact	أثر	effect - influence
intelligent	ذكي	clever - brilliant - bright
isolated	بعيد / ناءٍ - مُنعزِل	remote - faraway
lock-up	سجن صغير (التخشيبة)	small prison



Word	Arabic	Synonym
livestock	الماشية	cattle
malware	برمجيات خبيثة	malicious software
material	قماش	fabric
miserable	تعيس - بائس	unhappy / depressed
monitor	يُراقب / يرصد	track / observe / watch / keep an eye on
nurse(d)	تُمرّض - ترعى المرضى	care for / take care of / look after
over the moon	سعيد جدًا	very happy
peaceful	هادئ / ذو سكينة	serene - calm - tranquil - quiet
police(d)	يفرض الأمن والانضباط	control / keep in order / keep under control / regulate
recent	حديث	new / modern / late
relaxing	مُريح	comforting
satnav	الملاحة بالقمر الصناعي	satellite navigation
scam	احتيال - غشّ	fraud - trick
search for	يبحث عن	look for
spicy	حِرّيف - متبّل بالبهارات	hot
sustainable	دائم - صديق للبيئة	environmentally friendly
trek	رحلة طويلة (سيرًا) - يسير لمسافة طويلة	hike
unique	فريد - مميّز	distinctive - individual - remarkable - special
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	unpaid
walk	طريق للتنزه سيرًا	route / path

4 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (=opposite)	
active	نشيط - فعّال	lazy - inactive	كسول - خامل
admire	يُعْجَب بـ	disapprove of	يستقبح - يستنكر
admit	يُقِرّ بـ / يعترف	deny / conceal	يُنكِر
advantages	مزايا	disadvantages	عيوب - مساوئ
against	ضد	with	مع
agree(d)	يوافق	disagree(d)	يرفض
amazing	مُذهِل - رائع جدًا	ordinary	عادي
ancient	قديم / عتيق	modern - new	حديث - جديد

Word		Antonym (=opposite)	
angry	غاضب	contented / satisfied - pleased	راضي - سعيد
avoid	يتجنب	confront	يواجه
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
boring	مُمل	exciting - interesting	مثير - شيّق
borrow	يستعير - يستلف	lend	يُقرض - يُسلّف
busy	مشغول	free	حُر - غير مشغول - متفرغ
calm - quiet	هادئ	noisy	مُزعج - صاخب
clear	واضح	vague / unclear	غامض
clear	صافي	cloudy	غائم
common	عام - مُشْتَرَك - شائع	unusual / rare	غير مألوف - نادر
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
crowded	مُزدحم	empty	فارغ
donate	يتبرع	keep / receive	يحتفظ بـ / يتسلم
download	تنزيل - يُحمّل (من الانترنت)	upload	الرفع - يرفع (على الانترنت)
dress	يرتدي ملابس	undress - take off	يخلع ملابس
earn(ed)	يكسب - يجني مال	lose	يخسر
effect	أثر	cause / reason	سبب
empty	فارغ	full	مملوء
exciting	مُثير	boring	مُمِلّ
exotic	أجنبي	native	محلي
exotic	مُدْهِش / مُذْهِل (غير اعتيادى)	usual - conventional	عادي - تقليدي
fair	عادل	unfair	ظالم - جائر
forget - forgot - forgotten	ينسى	remember(ed)	يتذكر
formal	بلغة رسمية	informal	بلغة دارجة
full-time	دوام كامل	part-time	جزئي - لبعض الوقت
generous	كريم - سَخِيّ - جَوّاد	mean / selfish	بخيل / أناني
hate	يكره	love / like	يُحب
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين - مُخادع
intelligence	الذكاء	stupidity	الغباء
intelligent	ذكي	stupid	غبي

Word	Meaning	Opposite	Meaning
isolated	مُنعزل / وحيد	sociable	اجتماعي
kind	طَيِّب - عطوف	unkind - cruel	سيء / قاسي
light	النور	dark - darkness	ظلام
lock	يقفل	unlock - open	يفتح
long-term	طويل الأمد	short-term / temporary	قصير الأمد - مؤقَّت
major	كبير - هام - رئيسي	minor - little - unimportant	صغير - غير هام
miserable	تعيس - بائس	happy - contented	سعيد - راضٍ
online	مُتصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت	offline	غير مُتصل بالإنترنت - ليس على الإنترنت
optional	اختياري	compulsory	إجباري
peaceful	هادئ / ذو سَكينة	noisy - agitated - hostile	صاخب - عدائي
personal	شخصي / خاص	public	عام
plump	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلًا	thin / slender / skinny	نحيف
popular	ذو شعبية	unpopular	مغمور - غير معروف
positive	إيجابي	negative	سلبي
regular	معتاد / مألوف - منتظم	irregular	غير مألوف - غير منتظم
relaxing	مُريح	stressful - tiring	مُجهِد - مُتعِب
right	صواب - صحيح	wrong	خطأ
save(d)	يُنقذ	endanger(ed)	يُعَرِّض للخطر
save(d)	يَدَّخِر / يوفِّر	waste(d)	يُهْدِر - يُبدِّد
security	الأمن	danger / insecurity	الخطر / انعدام الأمن
send	يُرسل	receive	يستقبل
similar	متشابه	different	مختلف
sustainable	دائم	unsustainable	غير دائم
unique	فريد - مميَّز	common - ordinary	عادي - شائع
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	compulsory / obligatory / paid	إجباري - مدفوع الأجر
wild	بَرّي	domestic / tame	أليف / مستأنس
with	بـ - ذو	without	بدون

5 Expressions & Idioms التعبيرات والمصطلحات

Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
a boy of four	ولد عمره ٤ سنوات	I'm afraid I can't	يؤسفني أنني لا أستطيع
a cruise to remember	رحلة بحرية لا تُنسى	in a few years	خلال سنوات قليلة
a form of writing	أحد أنواع الكتابة	in a friendly way	بطريقة ودية
a full-time writer	كاتب مُتَفَرِّغ	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
a mind map	خريطة ذهنية	in groups	في مجموعات
a new way to travel	طريقة جديدة للسفر	in my opinion	من وجهة نظري
a radio phone-in	برنامج إذاعي يشارك فيه الجمهور تليفونيًا	in order to	لكي
a sense of responsibility	الإحساس بالمسئولية	in progress	مستمر
a serious problem	مشكلة خطيرة	in trouble	في مأزق
a victim of its own beauty	ضحية جمالها	informal English	الإنجليزية الدارجة
address … by title	يخاطب … بالاسم	instead of	بدلًا من
address … by name	يخاطب … باللقب	its rhythm is too slow	إيقاعه بطيء جدًا
all over	في كل أنحاء	keep … as a souvenir	يحتفظ بـ … كتذكار
all without	كل ذلك بدون	keep … safe	يُبقي … في أمان
an adventure story	قصة مغامرة	key information	المعلومات الرئيسية
an advert for	إعلان عن	kill animals for sport	يصطاد الحيوانات كرياضة
an example of	مثال علي	leave busy city life behind	يبتعد عن ضغوط حياة المدينة
angry with	غاضب من	lines that rhyme	سطور شعرية ذات قافية
any more	مرة أخري	local population	السكان المحليين
around the world	حول العالَم	long-term illness	مرض مُزمن
as far as I'm concerned	بقدر اهتمامي	made him give it back	جعله يُعيدها
as much as	بنفس الكَمّ	make it easy to say	يجعل من السهل قراءتها
as often as I can	كثيرًا لأقصي حد ممكن	make life worse for	يجعل الحياة أسوأ لـ
ask someone to your house	يطلب من شخص أن	make us all laugh	يجعلنا جميعًا نضحك
at a certain time	في وقت معين	my job was to	كانت وظيفتي هي أن
at breaktime	في الفسحة	no longer	لم يعُد
at night	في الليل	none of them	لا أحد منهم
at the end of	في نهاية	not … any more	لن … مرة أخري
at this age	في هذا السِن	nursing people	تمريض الناس

away on holiday	مُسافر في إجازة	on all our flights	على جميع رحلاتنا الجوية
be a role model to	يكون قدوة لـ	on board = aboard	على متن سفينة أو طائرة
be able to	يكون قادر على	on his way home	في طريق عودته للمنزل
be admired for	يحظى بالإعجاب بسبب	on my own	بمفردي
be arranged in	مُرتَّب على شكل	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
be badly injured	يُصاب بشدة	on the balcony	في البلكونة
be based on guesswork	قائم على الظن	on the computer / smartphone	على الكمبيوتر / الهاتف الذكي
be best known for	مشهور أكثر بـ	on the islands	في الجُزُر
be connected to	يكون مُتصل أو مُرتبط بـ	on the moon	على القمر
be interested in	يهتم بـ	on the other hand,	من الناحية الأخرى
be known as	معروف كـ	on the way there	وفي الطريق إلى هناك
be outside playing	يلهو بالخارج	over the moon	سعيد جدًا
be praised for	ينال الثناء بسبب	physical abilities	قدرات بدنية
be special about	الشيء المُميَّز في	pieces of advice	نصائح
be stressed about	مضغوط بسبب	quite the other way	على العكس تمامًا
be tired of	يملّ من	radio show	برنامج إذاعي
busy (with) + (inf. + ing)	مشغول بـ	read aloud	يقرأ بصوت عال
by candlelight	على ضوء الشمعة	Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر
by day	نهارًا	respect for diversity	احترام التنوع
careful about	حريص على	revise for exams	يراجع للامتحانات
click on the link	ينقر على الرابط	riding on boats	ركوب المراكب
close to	لصيق بـ	say unkind things about	يتحدث بسوء عن
compare and contrast	يقارن ويوضح التباين	seem hard to	يبدو صعبًا بالنسبة لـ
continue (up) to	يستمر حتى	send Egypt to the World Cup finals	يصعد بمصر لنهائيات كاس العالم
daily life	الحياة اليومية	show the reason for	يوضّح السبب لـ
date published	تاريخ النشر	similar to you	يشبهك
decision making	صناعة القرار - اتخاذ القرار	Social Media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
difference in meaning	فرق في المعنى	stay abroad	يبقى خارج البلاد
different from / to	مختلف عن	stop it working	يجعله يتوقف عن العمل
disabled children	الأطفال المُعاقين	stressed words	كلمات يرتفع فيها الصوت
disadvantages to	مساوئ لـ	such a remote place	يا له من مكان ناءٍ

early life	مرحلة مبكرة من العمر	summarize the main points	يُلخّص النقاط الرئيسية
easy to remember	من السهل تذكُّرها	take part in	يشارك في
environmentally-friendly	صديق للبيئة	talking to one another	يتحدثون إلى بعضهم البعض
everyday life	الحياة اليومية	thanks to	بفضل
except for	فيما عدا	that's all for now	هذا كل ما لدي الآن
expert at / on / in	خبير في	the details of the story	تفاصيل القصة
Faculty of Arts	كُلّية الآداب	the local council	المجلس المحلي
famous for	مشهور بـ	the poor law	قانون الفقراء - القانون السيء
feel differently	لديه شعور مختلف	the reason for	سبب لـ
find advice for	يجد نصيحة لـ	the space provided	الفراغ المتاح
find him a good job	يجد له وظيفة جيدة	the World Blood Donor Day	اليوم العالمي للتبرع بالدم
first of all	قبل كل شيء	there should be	ينبغي أن يكون هناك
for a while	لفترة من الوقت	there's nothing to do	لا يوجد ما أفعله
for example,	على سبيل المثال	this was where...	هذا كان حيث ...
for no money = for free	مجانًا	to conclude/ in conclusion	والخلاصة هي
for the first time	لأول مرة	tourist destinations	أماكن يقصدها السياح
a piece of writing	عمل كتابي	tourist industry	النشاط السياحي
free time	وقت فراغ	travel books	أدب الرحلات
from all around the world	من كل أرجاء العالَم	true for you	صحيحة بالنسبة لك
from different angles	من زوايا مختلفة	wedding party	حفل زفاف
giving blood	التبرع بالدم	what kind of person	أي نوع من الأشخاص
go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب	when it is light	في النهار
go on a cruise	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	where to go	أين يذهب
go travelling	يذهب في رحلة	who else	من أيضًا
good to hear from you	إنه لشيء جيد أن أتواصل معك	with his mouth open	وكان فمه مفتوحًا
happiness maker	صانع السعادة	words that rhyme	كلمات تُقفّي مع بعضها البعض
health problem	مشكلة صحية	working together	العمل معًا
Here's some advice	ها هي بعض النصائح	worldwide web	الشبكة الدولية

historic buildings	مباني تاريخية
How about ... ?	ما رأيك في ... ؟
at Thanksgiving	في عيد الشكر
at the same time	في نفس الوقت
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر
at the weekends	في العطلات الأسبوعية
bad for	ضار بـ
badly designed	سيء التصميم
banner adverts	لافتات الإعلانات
be addicted to	مُدمن علي
be aware of	علي وعي بـ
be careful about	يحرص علي
be careful with	يحرص علي
be curious about	يشعر بالفضول / لديه حب استطلاع بخصوص
be distracted with / by	مُشتّت بـ
be friendly with	ودود مع
be friends with	يُكوّن صداقات مع
be happy about	يسعد بـ
be interested in	مهتم بـ
be known for	مشهور بـ
be late for	متأخر علي
be right to	يكون محقاً في
be unkind to	يقسو علي
be upset with	غضبان من
become a pioneer in	يصبح رائداً في
become known as	يصبح معروفاً كـ
by 2030	بحلول عام ٢٠٣٠

write in clear simple words	يكتب مستخدمًا كلمات بسيطة وواضحة
young people	الشباب
need help with	يحتاج مساعدة في
negative advice	نصيحة سلبية
no longer able to	لم يعد قادراً علي
normal breathing	التنفس الطبيعي
old-fashioned	عفا عليه الزمن - عتيق
on a flat surface	علي سطح مستو
on different occasions	في مناسبات مختلفة
on social media	علي وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
on the island	علي الجزيرة
on the menu	في القائمة
on the side of	علي جانب
on their phones	علي هواتفهم المحمولة
on top of	فوق
on your profile	علي حالتك (صفحتك الشخصية)
one question at a time	سؤالاً واحداً في كل مرة
open spaces	أماكن مفتوحة
personally	شخصياً
plant life	الحياة النباتية
poor soil	التربة الرديئة
positive advice	نصيحة إيجابية
possible solutions	حلول ممكنة
rather than	بدلاً من - افضل من
reliable sources	مصادر موثقة
see you later	أراك لاحقاً
severe injury	إصابة شديدة

call for help	يطلب المساعدة
climate change	التغير المناخي
come very close to	يدنو جداً من
different from / to	مختلف عن
distant past events	أحداث من الماضي البعيد
due to the fact that	يرجع ذلك إلى أن
each other	بعضهم البعض
eager to	متلهّف لـ
easy to understand	يسهل فهمه
emergency services	خدمات الطوارئ
explanation of / for	تفسير / توضيح لـ
face to face	وجهاً لوجه
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه
fact- checking	توثيق الحقائق
far away	بعيد
farming techniques	أساليب الزراعة
fast food	الوجبات السريعة
feel so alone	يشعر بالوحدة الشديدة
find it hard	يجد من الصعب أن
find us ready to	يجد أننا مستعدين لـ
first aid kit	صندوق الإسعافات الأولية
food production	إنتاج الغذاء
food products	منتجات غذائية
for ages	لمدة طويلة
for many years to come	لسنوات عديدة قادمة
for me	لأجلي
for most people	بالنسبة لمعظم الناس

share food from one plate	يأكلون من نفس الطبق
since = ever since	منذ ذلك الحين
small changes to	تغييرات صغيرة في
small enough to	صغير بما يكفي لكي
so far	حتى الآن
So what?	وماذا في ذلك؟
social media behaviour	سلوك علي مواقع التواصل
solutions to	حلول لـ
sound great	يبدو رائعاً
soup with noodles	حساء المكرونة
South-East Asia	جنوب شرق أسيا
spelling mistakes	أخطاء هجائية
spend money on	ينفق مالاً علي
spicy food	طعام متبل
stay fit	يظل لائقاً بدنياً
stay in touch with	يبقي علي اتصال بـ
stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
such as	مثل
sudden death	الموت المفاجئ
sun cream	كريم واقي من الشمس
sustainable solutions	حلول مُستدَامة
take an interest in	يُظهر اهتماماً بـ
take up a sport	يبدأ ممارسة رياضة
targeted advertising	الإعلان الموجّه
text messaging	التواصل عن طريق الرسائل النصية
the findings of a survey	نتائج دراسة استطلاعية
the flow of water	تَدَفُّق المياه

form of communication	أحد طرق التواصل	the latest software update	أحدث إصدارات البرنامج
formal English	اللغة الإنجليزية الرسمية	the main idea	الفكرة الرئيسية
free ... for	... مجاناً لـ	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
fun to use	ممتع في استخدامه	the negative side of	الجانب السلبي لـ
get cut down	يتم قطعها	the original text	النص الأصلي
get ill more often	يمرض كثيراً	the other day	مؤخراً
get sick from	يصاب بالإعياء من	the reason why	السبب في أن
get something ready	يجهز شيئاً ما	the rest of	بقية
go on a picnic	يذهب في نُزهة	the whole text	النص بالكامل
go past	يمر بـ	think fast	يفكر بسرعة
good for	مفيد لـ	this is why	لهذا السبب
green space	مساحة خضراء	to conclude	الخلاصة أن ...
growing world	العالم المتزايد	to do with	لها علاقة بـ
have nothing to do with	لا علاقة له	treat ... badly	يعامل ... بشكل سيء
healthy hearts	قلوب بصحة جيدة	two-day course	برنامج تدريبي مدته يومان
here he / she is	ها هو / هي	upload ... to a website	يرفع ... على موقع
I can't wait!	أنتظر بفارغ الصبر	urban farming	الزراعة في المدن
I see your point	أفهم ما تقصد	URL (uniform resource locator)	رابط (الموقع او الصفحة)
in a logical order	بترتيب منطقي	use ... positively	يستخدم ... بشكل إيجابي
in a particular situation	في موقف معين	use first and third person	يستخدم ضمير المتكلم / المتكلمين
in a way that shows	بطريقة توضح أن	visit ... for Thanksgiving	يزور ... في عيد الشكر
in an unfriendly tone	بنبرة عدائية	welcome to	أهلاً بكم في
in contact with	على اتصال بـ	well-written essay	مقال مكتوب جيداً
in different colours	بألوان مختلفة	What's up?	ماذا لديك؟ / ما الجديد؟
in difficult situations	في المواقف الصعبة	whether ... or not	سواء ... أم لا
In fact,	في الحقيقة	with clear meanings	ذو معاني واضحة
in general,	بصفة عامة	with help from	بمساعدة من

in response to	رداً على	worried about	قلق على
in the first place	في المقام الأول	wrong with	الخطأ في

6 Verb + Prepositions

add to	يُضيف إلى	hear from	يتلقى أخبار
address ... by	يخاطب ... بـ	hear of	يسمع بـ / يعرف عن
admire ... for	يُعجَب بـ ... بسبب	help ... with	يساعد ... في
agree about	يتفق في	know (...) about	يعرف (...) عن
arrange ... in	يُرتِّب ... على شكل	lean ... on / against	يسند ... على
arrange to	يرتب أن	learn about	يتعلم عن
ask for	يطلب	learn from	يتعلم من
be based in	مَقرّه في (مكان)	learn to	يتعلم أن
be based on	مَقرّه في (الفكرة)	live in	يعيش في
benefit from	يستفيد من	live with	يعيش مع
blow ... off	يُسقط - يُطَيِّر ... من	make ... into	يُحوِّل ... إلى
break into	يقتحم	match ... to	يوصل ... بـ
break up	يُفَتِّت	mix with	يختلط - يتعامل مع
bring ... into / to	يُحضِر ... إلى	move to	ينتقل إلى
care for	يهتم بـ	owe ... to	يدين بـ ... لـ ...
check for	يفحص للوصول لـ	pay back	يَرُد الدين - يُسَدِّد
choose ... to	يختار ... لـ	play for	يلعب لـ (نادي مثلاً)
choose from	يختار من بين	point at / to / towards	يُشير إلى
click on	ينقر على	praise ... for	يمدح ... بسبب
come from	يأتي من	put ... away	يضع ... جانباً
come out	يخرج - تَصْدُر	remove ... from	يُزيل ... من
communicate with	يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع	reply to	يرد على
compare ... with	يقارن ... بـ	rhyme with	يَتَّفِق مع
complete (...) with	يُكمِل (...) بـ	run away	يهرب
connect ... to	يربط ... بـ	run past	يجري متجاوزاً
connect with	يرتبط بـ	say ... about	يقول ... عن
cycle across	يقود الدراجة عبر		
deal with	يتعامل مع / يواجه		

decide to	يقرر أن	search for	يبحث عن
disagree about	يختلف في	send (...) to	يُرسل (...) إلى / يوصل (...) لـ
disappear from	يختفي من	send away	يطرد
donate ... for / to	يتبرع بـ ... لـ	stay with	يقيم مع
drive ... to	يُوصل ... بالسيارة إلى	steal ... from	يسرق ... من
encourage ... to	يُشجع ... لكي	stop at	يتوقف في
escape from	يهرب من	take ... away	يأخذ ... بعيدًا
escape to	يهرب إلى	take ... to	يأخذ ... إلى
find out about	يكتشف - يعرف (عن)	talk about	يتحدث عن
focus on	يُركز على	talk to	يتحدث إلى
get to	يصل إلى	teach ...(how) to	يُعلِّم ... كيف
get up	ينهض	think of	يفكر في
go away	يبتعد - يسافر	trek across / through	يسير مسافة طويلة عبر
go down	يهبط - ينزل - تغرُب الشمس	trek into / in	يسير مسافة طويلة إلى داخل / في
go out	يخرج	turn from ... to	يتحول من ... إلى ...
go past	يمر بـ	work for	يعمل لدى
grow up	يكبر - يترعرع	work in	يعمل في
hack into	يخترق - يُقرصن	work with	يعمل مع / في
happen to	يحدث لـ	worry about	يقلق على
hear (...) about	يسمع (...) عن	write about	يكتب عن
adapt ... to	يُكيِّف ... مع	heat ... up	يُسخِّن - يُسخَّن
add ... to	يضيف ... إلى	help with	يساعد في
addict to	يُدمن على	increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة
advise ... to / not to	ينصح ... أن / ألا	invite ... to	يدعو ... إلى
agree with	يتفق مع	learn about	يتعلم عن
allow ... to	يدع / يترك - يسمح لـ	learn from	يتعلم من
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	live on	يعيش على / في
argue with	يتجادل مع	look after	يرعى / يعتني بـ
ask ... for	يطلب ... من	look around	يبحث في المكان المحيط
ask ... to / not to	يطلب من ... أن / ألا	look back at	ينظر مرة أخرى إلى
belong to	يخص	look for	يبحث عن

care about	يهتم بـ	look forward to + (inf. + ing)	يتطلع إلى
catch up with	ينضم إلى / يتواصل مع - يلحق بـ	lose up to	يفقد ما يقرب من
change ... into	يغير ... إلى	order ... to / not to	يأمر ... أن / ألا
change to	يتحول إلى	pay ... for	يدفع ثمن
chat to / with	يدردش مع	pay ... to	يدفع ... لـ
check ... against / with	يراجع ... على	persuade ... to	يقنع ... أن
choose from	يختار من بين	pick up	يتناول - يلتقط
choose to	يختار أن	place ... on	يضع ... على
come / go back	يعود	plan to	يخطط أن
come into	يدخل	press down	يضغط لأسفل
communicate with	يتواصل مع	protect ... from / against	يحمي ... من
connect to	يدخل على	pull ... out	يرفع - ينزع / يخلع
continue (to+ inf.) / (inf. + ing)	يستمر في أن	put ... down	يترك
continue to	يستمر في	put up	يضع - يرفع
cut down	يقطع / يجتث - يقلل	refer back to	يشير إلى
deal with	يتعامل مع - يواجه	relate to	يتعلق بـ
decide on	يختار / يحدد	remember to	يتذكر أن
decide to	يقرر أن	remove ... from	يزيل ... من
dig out of	يحفر ليستخرجه من	reply to	يرد على
disagree about	يختلف على	rise up	يرتفع - يعلو
encourage ... to / not to	يشجع ... أن / ألا	run off	ينطلق
expect ... to	يتوقع من ... أن	seem to	يبدو أن
explain ... to	يشرح ... لـ	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ
fall down	يسقط / يقع	share ... with	يشارك ... مع
feel about	يشعر تجاه	speak to	يتحدث إلى
fight against	يكافح / يقاتل ضد	start with	يبدأ بـ
fill in	يملأ (استمارة مثلاً)	stay up	يسهر
		take ... away	يُبعد

Listening Al Azhar tests

١. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الجيزة - القسم العلمى

1. James finished studying his term two days ago. He has too much free time as he is on his mid-year holiday. James decided to visit Egypt because he has good and happy memories there.

٢. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة المنوفية - القسم العلمى

2. The Red Sea Coast is developing eco-tourism to protect the environment in Egypt. Tourists are taught to preserve the environment and avoid damaging the sea wealth and keeping coral reefs safe.

٣. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الشرقية - القسم الأدبى

3. Egypt is a great country. It has a lot of interesting places. Egypt's capital is Cairo. All people are kind. The formal language in Egypt is Arabic.

٤. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة بنى سويف - القسم الأدبى

4. Ahmed Zewail was a great and famous Egyptian scientist. He discovered the Femtosecond. All the Egyptians are proud of Dr Zewail.



الصف الأول الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الأول

New Hello!

& Treasure Island

By A Group Of Supervisors

Master Your Skills

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

1st Sec.
2023
FIRST TERM

Preface

Dear Colleagues & Students

It's a pleasure to introduce this guide to cope with the latest trend in our educational system which adopts the assessment process that is based on measuring higher thinking skills (comprehension - application - analysis - synthesis - evaluation). This requires implementing new learning and teaching strategies.

This guide aims at helping teachers to :

- Promote student's abilities through learning in an enjoyable, safe and cooperative setting.
- Enforce students' language skills which prepare them for the employment market.
- Foster students' learning skills to pass tests confidently all the academic year around.

Therefore, this guide is considered a comprehensive resource presenting language skills fundamentals which have already been taught in primary and preparatory stages. Besides, it covers all language skills according to curriculum national standards for the secondary stage.

This guide consists of :

- A comprehensive presentation of structures.
- Reading comprehension passages with higher thinking skills questions.
- Pieces of creative writing, writing skills and how to write essays, letters, e-mails, and short stories.

Finally, a part deals with the principles of translation from English into Arabic and vice versa, in addition to useful language expressions.

We hope you find this guide not only beneficial, but interesting as well.

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا

صدق الله العظيم

اعزائنا المعلمين والطلاب

يسعدنا أن نقدم لحضراتكم هذا الدليل الذي يواكب التطور الذي تشهده العملية التعليمية في السنوات الأخيرة، وما تتميز به من نظام التقويم الذى يهدف إلى قياس مهارات التفكير العليا (الفهم - التطبيق - التحليل - التركيب - التقييم) ومخرجات التعلم. ولتحقيق ذلك، كان لزامًا استخدام طرق تدريس حديثة تعتمد على الفهم والتحليل والاستقصاء، وتنمية المهارات الحياتية وليس على أسلوب الحفظ والتلقين.

ويقدم هذا الدليل الإرشادات وطرق التدريس الحديثة للمعلم التى تمكنه من :

- مساعدة الطلاب على تنمية مهاراتهم اللغوية بشكل عملى داخل بيئة تعليمية تتسم بروح التعاون والإيجابية.
- تحفيز الطلاب على التعلم المستمر باستغلال مهارات التعلم الذاتى ومهارات التواصل التى تؤهله لسوق العمل.
- تدريب الطلاب على مختلف أنواع أسئلة مهارات التفكير العليا ليكون دائمًا مستعدًا لاجتياز الاختبارات بثقة على مدار العام الدراسى بكفاءة.

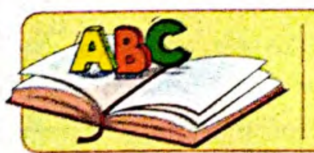
ويتكون هذا الدليل من عدة اجزاء هى :

- عرض شامل لكل القواعد اللغوية التى تم تدريسها فى المرحلة الابتدائية والإعدادية وأيضًا الثانوية.
- فصل كامل يقدم عديد من قطع الفهم وأسئلة تختبر مهارات التفكير العليا.
- فصل كامل يشرح مهارات الكتابة وأنواع الكتابة (المقالات - الخطابات - رسائل البريد الالكترونى - والقصص القصيرة)
- وأخيرًا جزء يتناول مبادئ الترجمة من الإنجليزية إلى العربية والعكس بالإضافة إلى تعبيرات لغوية مفيدة.

نأمل أن يكون هذا الدليل ليس فقط مفيدًا ولكن أيضًا ممتعًا.

CONTENTS





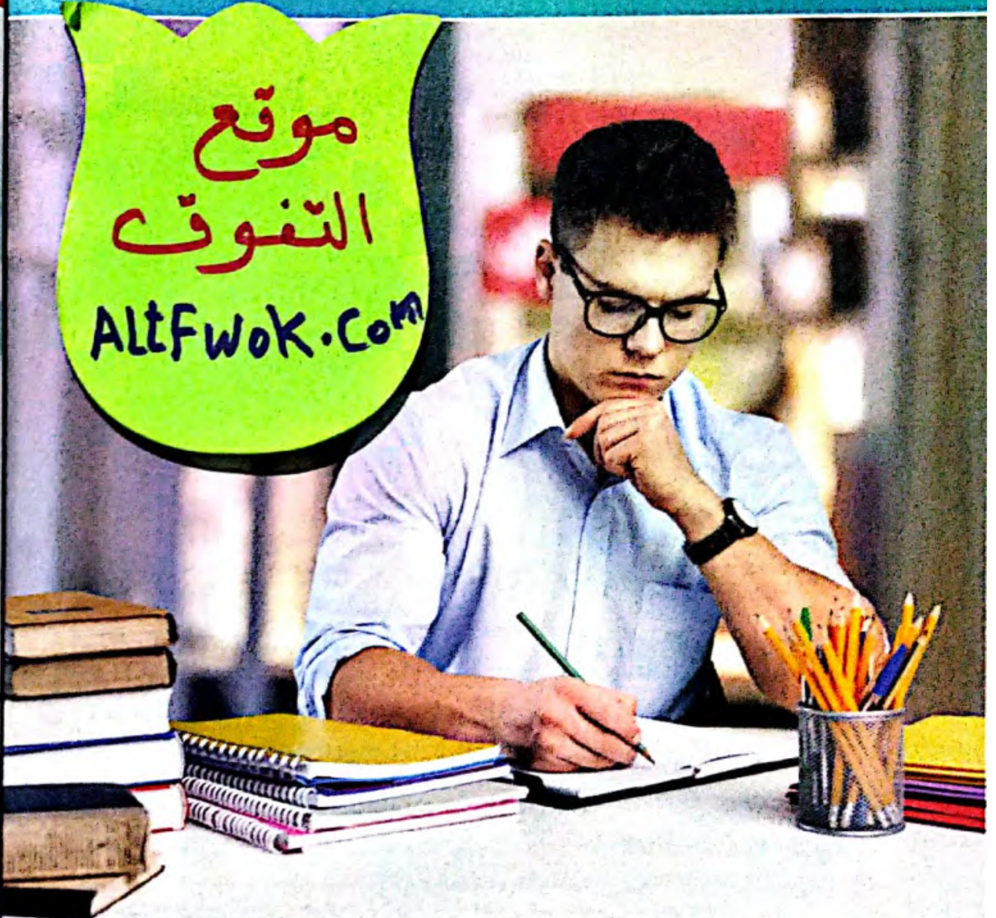
تنويه

استخدام **ملحق المهارات** بصفة مستمرة أثناء العام الدراسى لتتمكن من تنمية مهاراتك اللغوية

PART 1

Grammar

القواعد اللغوية



1- The Structure of the Simple Sentence — ١. بناء الجملة البسيطة
2- Parts of Speech — ٢. أقسام الكلام
3- Tenses — ٣. الأزمنة
4- Kinds of Sentences — ٤. الجمل بأنواعها

تنويه

تابع مستواك أولا بأول إلكترونياً





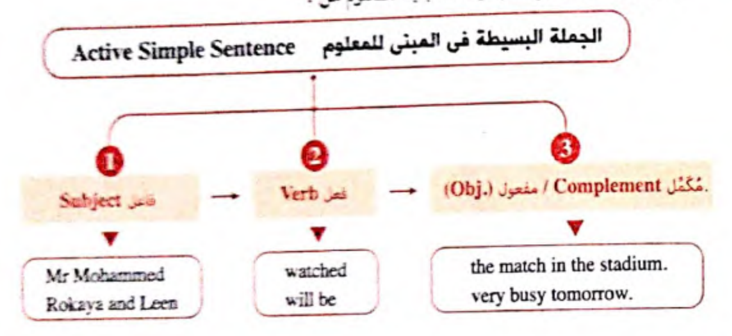
1 The Structure of the Simple Sentence بناء الجملة البسيطة

* في هذا الجزء ستراجع كيف تكتب الجملة، وهذا الموضوع مهم جداً لكي :

١. تفهم ما يقوله الآخرون (مهارة الاستماع).
٢. تُعبِّر عن أفكارك وانطباعاتك وما تريده (مهارة التحدُّث).
٣. تقرأ وتفهم وتحلل وتستنتج (مهارة القراءة والتفكير النقدي).
٤. تُنمِّي القدرة على التعبير الإبداعي (مهارة الكتابة: مقال ـ بريد الكتروني ـ قصة...إلخ).
٥. تُتقن نقل الأفكار (المعنى المراد) من لغة لأخرى (فن الترجمة).

أولاً : الجملة المبنية للمعلوم.

– تتكون الجملة الخبرية البسيطة المبنية للمعلوم من :



– المكونات الرئيسية الثلاثة للجملة البسيطة :

1 Subject الفاعل

١ الفاعل هو الذي يقوم بالفعل :

e.g. : - Ali ate a sandwich. - My horse won the race.

٢ يمكن أن يكون الفاعل هو موضوع الجملة (يقابله المبتدأ في اللغة العربية) :

e.g. : - Mariam is tall. - Sports make us fit.

٣ قد يكون الفاعل اسم انسان / حيوان / مكان / شيء معنوي غير ملموس ... إلخ :

e.g. :- Rodayna studies medicine at university. (اسم انسان)
- The cat caught a rat. (اسم حيوان)
- Our house is in Aswan. (اسم مكان)
- Cooperation makes people happy. (اسم معنوي)

٤ قد يكون الفاعل اسم مفرد أو جمع [انظر الجزء الخاص بالأسماء (Nouns)] :

e.g. : - My sister is at home. - My sisters are at home.

٥ تحل ضمائر الفاعل التالية محل فاعل الجملة :

I - you - he - she - it - we - they

e.g. :- Omar is clever. = He is clever.
- Nada is beautiful. = She is beautiful.
- Esraa and Doaa are sisters. = They are sisters.
- The lion and the tiger are strong. = They are strong.

٦ تُستخدم صفات الإشارة التالية كفاعل للجملة :

- this (للمفرد القريب) هذا / هذه	- these (للجمع القريب) هؤلاء
- that (للمفرد البعيد) ذلك / تلك	- those (للجمع البعيد) أولئك

e.g. :- This is my friend. - These are my friends.
- That was a good present. - Those were good presents.

- وتُستخدم صفات الإشارة أيضاً قبل فاعل الجملة :

e.g. :- This boy got high marks. - These boys got high marks.
- That dog chased a cat. - Those dogs chased a cat.

٧ قد تُستخدم الضمائر غير المحددة التالية كفاعل للجملة :

- someone	- somebody	- something	- somewhere
- anyone	- anybody	- anything	- anywhere
- everyone	- everybody	- everything	- everywhere
- no one	- nobody	- nothing	- nowhere

e.g. :- Someone took my tablet. - No one is at home.
- Everyone wants you to succeed. - Anything can change your opinion.

٨ يمكن استخدام (One) بمعنى (المرء / الفرد) كفاعل للجملة :

e.g. :- One must help other people.

٩ تُستخدم (it) أحياناً كفاعل وظيفي أو مُبْهَم في بعض الجمل :

e.g. :- It has been hot today. (It = The weather)
- It is nine o'clock. (It = The time)
- It was kind of you to help me. (It = The action itself)

⑩ تُستخدم (There) كفاعل في بعض الجمل بمعنى (هناك / ها هو / ها هي / ها هم ...) للإشارة إلى الفاعل الأصلي الموجود بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - There is a fish restaurant on the corner.
- There goes Omar on his bike.

⑪ تُستخدم (Here) كفاعل في بعض الجمل بمعنى (هنا / إلى هنا / ها هو / ها هي / ها هم ...) للإشارة إلى الفاعل الأصلي الموجود بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - Here's my camera.
- Here comes Ranya with her husband.

⑫ وقد يكون الفاعل عبارة اسمية :

e.g. : - The manager of the school wants all students to be clever.
- Some men and women attended the meeting.
- Everyone in our company works hard.

⑬ يمكن استخدام صفة أو أكثر قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - A tall man welcomed us.
- A small car stopped in front of my shop.
- A clever young man wants to marry my sister.

⑭ يمكن استخدام الأرقام والأعداد الترتيبية كصفات قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - Five students got the full marks in the exam.
- The first computer was very big.

⑮ يمكن استخدام صفات الملكية التالية قبل الفاعل :

my - your - his - her - its - our - their

e.g. : - Our grandfather built the family house in 1970.

⑯ يمكن عطف فاعل على فاعل آخر باستخدام الروابط التالية :

and / or / not / either ... or إما ... أو / neither ... nor لا ... ولا
/ as well as = along with = in addition to بالإضافة إلى ... etc.

e.g. : - Ahmed and Abdu are friends.
- My cousins, as well as my uncle, are having lunch with us tomorrow.

⑰ يمكن استخدام ضمائر الملكية التالية كفاعل في بداية الجملة الثانية :

mine - yours - his - hers - ours - theirs

e.g. : - That isn't your bike. Yours is blue. (Yours = Your bike)
- This house is small. Mine is bigger. (Mine = My house)

⑱ يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية كضمائر فاعل في بداية الجملة الثانية :

some / any / a lot / many / much / several / each / every / all / both / one / two / three ... etc.

e.g. : - Not all people liked the film. Some said it was boring.
(Some = Some people)
- I didn't talk to Ayman or Ashraf. Both were very busy.
(Both = Both Ayman and Ashraf)
- You can give students an electronic exam. Each has a tablet.
(Each = Each student)

⑲ يمكن استخدام تعبيرات الكمية والتجزئة التالية قبل الفاعل :

some / any / no / part / a lot of / lots of / plenty of كثير من / many / much / (a) little / (a) few / several عديد / ... etc.

e.g. : - A lot of people visited my uncle in hospital.

⑳ يمكن استخدام التعبيرات التالية في بداية الجملة قبل الفاعل الرئيسي :

.... + say / think / believe / expect / hope / ... + that + جملة رئيسية
It + be + said / thought / believed / expected / hoped ... + that + جملة رئيسية

e.g. : - People say that Omar has a lot of money.
- It is said that Omar has a lot of money.

㉑ يمكن استخدام بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان وبعض التعبيرات الأخرى في بداية الجملة قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - Every day, I go to the gym.
- On my way to school, I stopped to buy a sandwich.
- Unfortunately, I lost my mobile.

㉒ وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (To + inf.) كفاعل للجملة (المبنى للمعلوم) :

e.g. : - To succeed is the dream of all students.

㉓ وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (To be + p.p.) كفاعل للجملة (المبنى للمجهول) :

e.g. : - To be thanked makes some people happy.

㉔ وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (Being + p.p. / adj.) كفاعل للجمل :

e.g. : - Being clever is the dream of everyone. (معلوم)
- Being hurt, he called for a doctor. (مجهول)



2 Verb الفعل

❶ يأتي الفعل غالبا بعد الفاعل :

e.g. : - Magdi ate a sandwich. - We will go shopping.

❷ يحدد الفعل زمن الجملة :

Sentence	الجملة	Tense الزمن
He plays football.	إثبات	Present Simple مضارع بسيط
He doesn't play football.	نفي	
He is playing football.	إثبات	Present Cont. مضارع مستمر
He isn't playing football.	نفي	
He has played football.	إثبات	Present Perfect مضارع تام
He hasn't played football.	نفي	
He has been playing football.	إثبات	Present Perfect Cont. مضارع تام مستمر
He hasn't been playing football.	نفي	
He played football.	إثبات	Past Simple ماضي بسيط
He didn't play football.	نفي	
He was playing football.	إثبات	Past Cont. ماضي مستمر
He wasn't playing football.	نفي	
He had played football.	إثبات	Past Perfect ماضي تام
He hadn't played football.	نفي	
He had been playing football.	إثبات	Past Perfect Cont. ماضي تام مستمر
He hadn't been playing football.	نفي	
He will play football.	إثبات	Future Simple مستقبل بسيط
He won't play football.	نفي	
He will be playing football.	إثبات	Future Cont. مستقبل مستمر
He won't be playing football.	نفي	
He will have played football.	إثبات	Future Perfect مستقبل تام
He won't have played football.	نفي	
He will have been playing football.	إثبات	Future Perfect Cont. مستقبل تام مستمر
He won't have been playing football.	نفي	

❸ هناك أفعال لازمة (intransitive) بمعنى أنها لا تأخذ مفعول به مثل :

be – go – sleep – smile – cry – look = sound = seem = appear يبدو ... etc.

e.g. : - She smiled when she saw her son.

- He looks happy.

❹ هناك أفعال مُتَعَدِّية (transitive) بمعنى أنها تأخذ مفعول به أو أكثر مثل :

eat – play – visit – choose – take – give – like – see ...etc.

e.g. : - We saw a lion under a tree.

- She gave me some food.

❺ الأفعال الناقصة (Modals) التالية يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر :

will – would – can – could – may – might – shall – should – must – needn't

e.g. : - Noha can drive a car. - I will buy this T-shirt.

- You needn't go out now. - You mustn't smoke here.

❻ الأفعال شبه الناقصة (Semi-modals) التالية يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر :

have to – has to – had to – used to – need to – be going to – be able to – be supposed to من المفترض أن – be to من المفترض أن ...etc.

e.g. : - Amir has to arrive at school at seven.

- I used to live in the countryside.

❼ قد تحتوي الجملة علي أكثر من فعل مساعد :

e.g. : - I have been sleeping for eight hours now.

- I will have finished my university course by next month.

❽ هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) وهناك أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافاً له (ing) أو اسم :

e.g. : - She wants to work in a tourist company.

- He suggested having lunch outdoors.

❾ الفاعل المفرد يأخذ فعل مفرد والفاعل الجمع يأخذ فعل جمع :

e.g. : - She is clever. - They are clever.

- Omar works hard. - Omar and Karim work hard.

١٠ هناك أفعال تُسمي أفعال المطاوعة (ergative verbs) وهي الأفعال التي يمكن أن يُستخدم مفعولها كفاعل لها بنفس المعنى، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

bake	يخبز - يجف بفعل الحرارة	melt	يُذيب - يذوب
boil	يغلي	move	يُحرِّك - يتحرك
break	يَكْسِر - ينكسر	open	يفتح - ينفتح
burst	يُفَجِّر - ينفجر	run	يُدير - يجري
cook	يطبخ - ينضج (يستوي)	sail	يقود السفينة - تُبْحِر
drive	يقود - ينطلق - يوَصِّل	shake	يَرُجّ - يهتز / يرتعش
fly	يُطَيِّر - يطير / يسافر جوًا	tear	يُمزِّق - يتمزّق
form	يُكَوِّن - يتكون	transform	يُحوِّل - يتحول
grow	يزرع - ينمو	turn	يلف - يدور من تلقاء نفسه
heal	يُعالج الجرح - يلتئم	walk	يمشي - يأخذ ... للتمشية

e.g. : - The hot weather melted the ice. (أذاب)
The ice melted in the hot weather. (ذاب)
- Farmers grow a lot of plants. (يزرع)
A lot of trees grow in the forest. (تنمو)
- I walked with my wife by the Nile. (يَسير)
I walked my wife by the Nile. (أخذ ... للتمشية)

١١ لوصف طريقة حدوث الفعل نستخدم ظروف الكيفية، ويأتي الظرف بعد الفعل أو في نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : - I walk carefully in this busy street.
- I walk in this busy street carefully.

١٢ تأتي ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) والأفعال المساعدة :

always دائماً – usually عادة – often غالباً – sometimes أحياناً
occasionally بين الحين والآخر – rarely = scarcely = seldom نادراً – never أبداً ... etc.

e.g. : - She always gets up early.
- He is always careful.

3 Complement المُكمِّل (تكملة الجملة)

١ المقصود بالمُكَمِّل هو باقي الجملة الذي يأتي بعد الفاعل والفعل :

e.g. : - I bought some fruit yesterday.

٢ يُمكن أن يكون المُكَمِّل صفة (أو صفة بعدها اسم) تصف الفاعل وتأتي بعد أفعال الربط مثل :

be [am, is, are, was, were, has / have been, being, might have been, etc.]
become = get = grow = turn يصبح – seem = appear = sound = look يبدو –
remain يبقى / يظل – feel يشعر / يكون ذو ملمس – smell يكون ذو رائحة – taste يكون ذو مذاق

e.g. : - She is tired. - Amr looks happy.
- My mother grew old. - Sama got angry.

٣ يُمكن أن يكون المُكَمِّل اسم يُعرِّف الفاعل أو يصفه :

e.g. : - Alaa is a doctor. - Alaa is a clever doctor.

٤ يُمكن أن يكون المُكَمِّل مفعول (اسم / صفة يتبعها اسم / عبارة اسمية ... إلخ) :

e.g. : - I bought a car.
- I bought a new car.
- I bought a large new car.

٥ يُمكن أن يكون المُكَمِّل أحد ضمائر المفعول التالية :

me – him – her – it – you – us – them – one

e.g. : - An old friend called me.
- My friends have arrived. I'll welcome them.

٦ يُمكن أن يكون المُكَمِّل جار ومجرور (حرف جر + اسم) :

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed lives in Aswan.
- Abdulrahman plans to get married next year.
- Bassem works as a police officer.

٧ يُمكن أن يكون المُكَمِّل ظرف زمان أو مكان :

e.g. : - I have always lived here.
- She arrived yesterday.

٨ يُمكن أن يكون المُكَمِّل ظرف كيفية (يدل على طريقة وقوع الفعل) :

e.g. : - This old man walks slowly.
- She didn't sleep well.
- Karim studies hard.

❾ ليس بالضرورة أن يكون هناك مُكَمِّل مع الأفعال اللازمة (التي لا تأخذ مفعول به):

e.g. : - The baby has slept.
- Mr Ashraf didn't arrive.

ثانيًا : الجملة المبنية للمجهول.

Passive Simple Sentence الجملة البسيطة فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول

❶ Obj. مفعول	→	❷ to be	→	❸ p.p.	→	❹ complement مُكمِّل
The match Some money		was has been		played spent		in Cairo Stadium. on clothes.

Sentence	الجملة	Tense الزمن
He sells vegetables.	معلوم	Present Simple مضارع بسيط
Vegetables are sold (by him).	مجهول	
He is selling vegetables.	معلوم	Present Cont. مضارع مستمر
Vegetables are being sold (by him).	مجهول	
He has sold vegetables.	معلوم	Present Perfect مضارع تام
Vegetables have been sold (by him).	مجهول	
He sold vegetables.	معلوم	Past Simple ماضي بسيط
Vegetables were sold (by him).	مجهول	
He was selling vegetables.	معلوم	Past Cont. ماضي مستمر
Vegetables were being sold (by him).	مجهول	
He had sold vegetables.	معلوم	Past Perfect ماضي تام
Vegetables had been sold (by him).	مجهول	
He will sell vegetables.	معلوم	Future Simple مستقبل بسيط
Vegetables will be sold (by him).	مجهول	
He will have sold vegetables.	معلوم	Future Perfect مستقبل تام
Vegetables will have been sold (by him).	مجهول	





- وفيما يلي شرح شامل لكل هذه الأجزاء :

1 Nouns الأسماء

People : man – woman – girl – boy – uncle – Sama – Omar…etc.
Animals : whale – dog – bird – lion – cat – snake … etc.
Things : plant – tree – rock – sea – love – beauty… etc.
Place : Paris – Asia – Space – Kitchen – Europe – Egypt ... etc

Countable and Uncountable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

A Countable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة

❶ الأسماء التى تعد يكون لها مفرد وجمع وهى تجمع بإضافة (s/es/ies) مثل :

- a girl → girls
- a bus → buses
- an egg → eggs
- a library → libraries

❷ هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل :

Singular	مفرد	Plural	جمع
child	طفل	children	أطفال
crisis	أزمة	crises	أزمات
datum	معلومة	data	معلومات
foot	قدم	feet	أقدام
goose	وزة	geese	أوز
man	رجل	men	رجال
medium	وسيلة اعلامية	media	وسائل الإعلام
mouse	فأر	mice	فئران
oasis	واحة	oases	واحات

ox	ثور	oxen	ثيران
phenomenon	ظاهرة	phenomena	ظواهر
tooth	سنة	teeth	أسنان
woman	امرأة	women	نساء

❸ قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
One	- One student got the full marks.
Every / Each	- Every player in the team trains hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
This / That	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

❹ قبل الأسماء الجمع يُمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

these هؤلاء / those أولئك / some بعض / any أي / many كثير / a few قليل / a lot of كثير من / lots of كثير من / several عديد / two / three ....

e.g. : - I met several friends in the party.
- I have a few books in my bag.
- These boys are my cousins.
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

B Uncountable Nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

❶ الأسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع، وتشمل ما يلي :

1. Liquids السوائل

water - juice - tea - coffee - oil - milk - soup - blood ... etc.

2. Gases الغازات

oxygen - hydrogen - nitrogen - carbon dioxide ثاني أكسيد الكربون ... etc.

3. Meals الوجبات

breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper

4. School subjects المواد الدراسية

history - mathematics - physics الفيزياء - biology الأحياء ... etc.

5. Languages اللغات

English - Arabic - French - German ... etc.

6. Different activities الأنشطة المختلفة

reading - smoking - writing - studying - shopping - eating ... etc.

7. Sports الرياضات

football - volleyball - basketball - swimming... etc.

8. Materials أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام

coffee - glass - gold - iron - lime حامض الليمون - stone - sand - soil - sugar - tea - wood ... etc.

9. Natural phenomena الظواهر الطبيعية

lightning البرق - heat - snow - thunder الرعد - light - rain

10. Abstract nouns الأسماء المجردة

honesty أمانة - hope - beauty - help - love - hatred كراهية
- confidence ثقة - courage شجاعة - experience خبرة - progress تقدم
- evidence دليل - patience الصبر - peace السلام - poverty الفقر ..... etc.

11. Other nouns أسماء أخرى

jewellery مجوهرات - money - laughter ضحك - rubbish
- equipment المعدات - furniture اثاث - cash نقدية - work
- clothing الملبس - electricity - traffic مرور - baggage حقائب - luggage أمتعة - machinery - news - information - advice - money
- music - bread - cloth.... etc.

❷ تُستخدم هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that..... etc.

e.g. : - I'd like to have a little juice. (Not : a few juice)
- How much money do you need? (Not : How many)

❸ لا يمكن استخدام (these - those - one - a - an) قبل الاسم غير المعدود :

e.g. : - This equipment is very necessary. (Not : These equipment)
- I bought bread at the baker's. (Not : a bread)

❹ يمكن استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تُعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

e.g. : - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.
- He had a good education at Oxford.

2 Pronouns الضمائر

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية	Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة
I	me	my	mine	myself
He	him	his	his	himself
She	her	her	hers	herself
It	it	its	------	itself
You	you	your	yours	yourself yourselves
They	them	their	theirs	themselves
We	us	our	ours	ourselves
One	one	one's	one's	oneself

1 Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

- تستخدم ضمائر الفاعل لتحل محل فاعل الجملة لتجنب تكراره :

e.g. : - I bought a car last month.
- Ashraf (He) wrote a new article.
- Aya (She) studies hard.
- A lion (It) eats meat.
- You came to school late.
- Rokaya and I (We) like tennis.
- Ayman and Mohammed (They) love mum.
- Cats (They) eat fish.
- One can achieve a goal by working hard.

2 Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول

- تستخدم ضمائر المفعول لتحل محل مفعول الجملة وتأتى بعد الفعل وحروف الجر أيضًا :

e.g. : - Menna helped me with my homework.
- We visited Ahmed (him) last Friday.
- My father bought a bike for Leen (her).
- Rahma chased the rat (it).
- We won't help you.
- They invited Rodayna and me (us).
- She doesn't like goats (them).
- He greeted Ahmed and Omar (them).

3 Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية

- صفات الملكية يأتى بعدها الاسم المملوك :

e.g. : - My sister is a teacher.
- I think it is his coat.
- Hanan decorated her flat.
- An animal cleans its skin.
- Never waste your time.
- We sold our old car.
- They renewed their visa.
- Birds cooperate to look after their young.

4 Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية

- ضمائر الملكية تستخدم بدون اسم بعدها :

e.g. : - The blue bike is mine.
- He used my pen and saved his.
- My bag is small, but hers is big.
- That house isn't yours; it's ours.
- They asked us to leave our seats, but they kept theirs.

- لاحظ استخدام ضمائر الملكية بعد الصيغة التالية :

1. a / an + اسم مفرد + of + ضمير ملكية
   e.g. : - He is a cousin of hers. = He is her cousin.
2. اسم جمع + of + ضمير ملكية
   e.g. : - They are friends of ours. = They are our friends.

ملاحظات على استخدام الضمائر

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية و عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع لكن يفضل استخدام ضمير مفرد يعود على المذكر وضمير مفرد يعود على المؤنث مربوطين بكلمة (or) :

(Someone / somebody / anyone / anybody / everyone / everybody / no one / nobody)

e.g. : - Someone was knocking on the door. They made my sister afraid.
= Someone was knocking on the door. He or she made my sister afraid.
- Somebody took my pen. I didn't see them.
= Somebody took my pen. I didn't see him or her.

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد وضمير مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية :

(Something / anything / everything / nothing)

e.g. : - Something has fallen to the ground. It made a loud noise.

- الضمير (It) يستخدم لغير العاقل المفرد (فاعل / مفعول) وفي حالة الجمع نستخدم (They) للفاعل و(them) للمفعول :

e.g. : - The cat (It) eats fish. - Lions (They) eat meat.
- Amal fed the cat (it). - I don't like rats (them).

- لاحظ استخدام (It) للتعبير عن الزمن والمسافة و الطقس :

e.g. : - It is half past nine. - It is a long way to school.
- It is quite cold today.

- لاحظ أن (its) للملكية و يأتي بعدها اسم أو صفة ثم اسم :

e.g. : - The fox moved its long tail. - The dog ate its food.

- أما (It's) تكون اختصار (It is / It has) :

- It's (It is) a new car. - It's (It has) rained for two days.

- لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

It + (be) + object pronoun ضمير مفعول

e.g : A : Who opened the door ? B : It's me.

It is + subject / object pronoun ضمير فاعل / ضمير مفعول + relative pronoun ضمير وصل

e.g. : - It's I (me) who opened the door.

- يستخدم الضمير (one) بمعنى «المرء» وتدل على الناس بصفة عامة ويمكن استخدام (you) بدلاً منها :

e.g. : - One (You) should eat healthy food.

- وفي حالة الملكية نستخدم (one's) ويمكن استخدام (your) بدلاً منها :

e.g. : - It is easy to lose one's (your) money in a bus in Cairo.

5 Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس عندما يكون الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول :

e.g. : - Ali hurt himself.
- I bought myself a cold drink.
- She saw herself in the mirror.
- We'll pay for ourselves.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس للتأكيد عندما يأتي بعد الفاعل / المفعول :

e.g. : - I myself polished the shoes. = I polished the shoes myself.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد (by) بمعنى «بمفرده» أو «بدون مساعدة» :

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help

e.g. : - I went shopping on my own. (alone).
- He lives on his own. (alone / by himself).
- Did Ali paint that picture on his own (without any help) ?

- يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر after / for / on :

e.g. : - The girls looked after themselves. - Always depend on yourself.

- هناك فرق بين (of his own / on his own) :

on his own = alone / without help

e.g. : - I live on my own. = I live alone.

- I cleaned the kitchen on my own. = I cleaned the kitchen without help.

of his own = belonging to him and to no one else تدل على الملكية

e.g. : - I'd like to have a room of my own. (belonging to me)

- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حرف الجر (with) عندما يكون بمعنى «مع» ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعول (me - him - her - us) :

e.g. : - I went with herself. (✗)

- I went with her. (✓)

- لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر الخاصة بالموقع أو المكان أو الاتجاه ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعول :

e.g. : - She doesn't want anyone to sit next to her.

- The car was coming fast towards me.

- لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد أفعال معينة (تصف أشياء يؤديها الإنسان بنفسه) مثل :

approach	يقترب من	rest	يستريح	stand up	يقف
remember	يتذكر	lie down	ينام	meet	يقابل
shave	يحلق	wonder	يتساءل	sit down	يجلس
wake up	يستيقظ	relax	يسترخي		
complain	يشكو	worry	يقلق		

e.g. : - He shaved in ten minutes.

تعبيرات تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة

- Enjoy yourself. = Have a good time.
- Take care of yourself. = Be careful.
- Help yourself (to). = Take what you want.
- Make yourself at home. = Behave freely as if it were your own home.
- Behave yourself. = Be polite /Behave well.
- He made a name for himself. = He became famous.
- He isn't feeling himself today. = He's feeling ill today.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

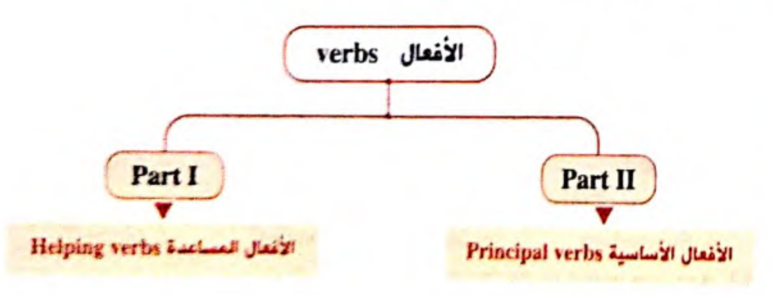
1. We think that those stories are ....
 a. ours b. us c. we d. our
2. The film .... wasn't very good, but I liked the music.
 a. itself b. himself c. herself d. it
3. These books belong to ....
 a. their b. they c. them d. theirs
4. The dog barked on seeing .... in a mirror.
 a. its b. it's c. itself d. it
5. A: Ali, did you and Sami repair the broken window?
 B: Yes, we did. But I cut .... on a piece of glass.
 a. mine b. myself c. ourselves d. me
6. Make .... a cup of tea.
 a. you b. your c. themselves d. yourself
7. A: Is this your sister's bedroom?
 B: No, it's my bedroom. .... is downstairs.
 a. Herself b. She c. Hers d. Her
8. A: Who repaired your bicycle for you ?
 B: Nobody. I repaired it ....
 a. my b. mine c. me d. myself
9. We got out of the water and dried ....
 a. us b. we c. ourselves d. themselves
10. The girl is feeling faint. Take .... to hospital.
 a. herself b. her c. hers d. yourself
11. The door of this room sometimes opens ....
 a. themselves b. by itself c. oneself d. himself
12. Are you going to do this exercise ....?
 a. herself b. themselves c. yourself d. himself
13. My wife and I have just bought a new flat. .... is near to where we live now.
 a. Its b. We c. Itself d. It



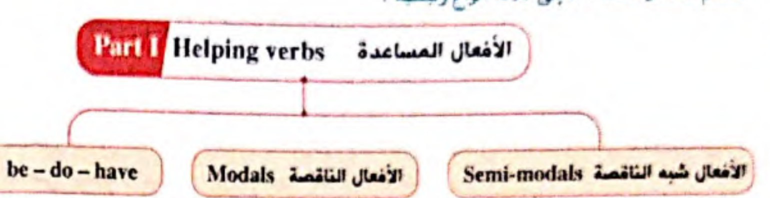
14. Our house is not as modern as ....
   a. their   b. her   c. hers   d. your
15. Children sometimes hurt .... when they are playing.
   a. them   b. themselves   c. ourselves   d. himself
16. Your garden is bigger than ....
   a. we   b. us   c. ours   d. our
17. Did you both hurt ....?
   a. yourself   b. yourselves   c. themselves   d. herself
18. We wanted to buy the table, but .... surface was damaged.
   a. itself   b. it's   c. it   d. its
19. Take an umbrella with .... in case it rains.
   a. yourself   b. you   c. yours   d. your
20. These books aren't .... They are ours.
   a. theirs   b. they   c. them   d. there's
21. I .... and dressed in ten minutes.
   a. showered myself   b. showered with myself
   c. showered by myself   d. showered to myself

3 Verbs الأفعال

في الجزء التالي، يتم شرح الأفعال (verbs) من خلال نقطتين رئيسيتين هما :



- تنقسم الأفعال المساعدة إلى ثلاثة أنواع رئيسية :



Verb to "be"

١ لاحظ تصريف فعل (to be) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

Inf. المصدر	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p. p.
be	am - is - are	was - were	been

٢ لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to be) مع الفاعل :

Pronoun الضمير	Present المضارع	Past الماضي
I	am / 'm / am not	was / was not / wasn't
He / She / It	is = 's / / is not / isn't	was / was not / wasn't
You / We / They	are = 're / aren't / are not	were / were not / weren't

٣ يُستخدم فعل (to be) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يكون / يوجد) :

e.g. : - I am tired.
- She is not / isn't clever.
- They are / They're at school.

٤ تُستخدم (be) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يكون) بعد (to) :

e.g. : - She wants to be a doctor.

٥ يُستخدم (be) كفعل أساسي أو مساعد بعد الأفعال الناقصة : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

e.g. : - Omar will be 17 tomorrow. (فعل أساسي)
- Your eyes must be examined. (فعل مساعد)

٦ يُستخدم كلًا من (am – is - are) كأفعال مساعدة لتكوين المضارع المستمر والمبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط والمستمر : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

e.g. : - Rodayna is having lunch now. (مضارع مستمر)

- The boys are taken to school by their mother. (مضارع بسيط مبني للمجهول)

٧ يُستخدم كلًا من (was - were) كأفعال مساعدة لتكوين الماضي المستمر والمبني للمجهول في الماضي البسيط والمستمر : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

e.g. : - Sama was watching TV. (ماضي مستمر)

- A new school was built in our street last year. (ماضي بسيط مبني للمجهول)

٨ تُستخدم (being) بعد (am – is – are - was - were) كفعل مساعد ثان لتكوين المضارع المستمر والماضي المستمر المبني للمجهول : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

e.g. : - The house is being cleaned. (مضارع مستمر مبني للمجهول)

- TV was being watched by Sama. (ماضي مستمر مبني للمجهول)

٩ تُستخدم (been) في تكوين الأزمنة التامة والمبني للمجهول :

e.g. : - Omar has been ill recently. (مضارع تام المعلوم)

- The player had been sent out before scoring any goals. (ماضي تام مبني للمجهول)

١٠ تُستخدم الصيغة (being + adj.) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالروابط)

e.g. : - Because he was tired, he went to bed early.

= Being tired, he went to bed early.

١١ تُستخدم الصيغة (be to + inf.) للتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات الرسمية أو إعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات :

e.g. : - The manager is to meet some important businessmen today.

- You are to write an essay about tourism.

Verb to "do"

١ لاحظ تصريف فعل (to do) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

Inf. المصدر	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p.p.
do	do - does	did	done

٢ لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to do) مع الفاعل :

Pronoun الضمير	Present المضارع	Past الماضي
I / You / We / They	do ≠ do not = don't	did ≠ did not = didn't
He / She / It	does ≠ does not = doesn't	did ≠ did not = didn't

٣ يُستخدم فعل (to do) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يفعل / يقوم بـ) :

e.g. : - She does / did her homework.

- I do / did the shopping once a week.

٤ يُستخدم كلًا من (do - does) كأفعال مساعدة في النفي والسؤال في المضارع البسيط :

e.g. : - He does not (doesn't) like fish.

- Does he like fish ?

- What does he like ?

- They do not (don't) go out late at night.

- Do they go out late at night ?

- When do they go out ?

٥ تُستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد في النفي والسؤال في الماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - We did not (didn't) see what happened.

- Did you see what happened ?

- What did you see ?

٦ تُستخدم (do – does – did + inf.) بشكل بلاغي في الجمل المثبتة للتوكيد :

e.g. : - I do know who took the money.

- You did hear what I said.

Verb to "have"

١ لاحظ تصريف فعل (to have) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

Inf. المصدر	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p. p.
have	have - has	had	had

٢ لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to have) مع الفاعل :

Pronoun الضمير	Present المضارع	Past الماضي
I / You / We / They	have = 've ≠ have not = haven't	had = 'd ≠ had not = hadn't
He / She / It	has = 's ≠ has not = hasn't	had = 'd ≠ had not = hadn't

(٣) يُستخدم فعل (to have) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يملك / يتناول / يعاني من ...إلخ) :

e.g. : - I have / had a headache.
- She has / had a lot of money.

(٤) لاحظ أن نفي (have / has) كأفعال أساسية في المضارع البسيط هو (don't / doesn't + have) :

e.g. : - He doesn't have meals outdoors. (Not : he hasn't)
- I don't have tea or coffee at night. (Not : I haven't)

(٥) لاحظ أن نفي (had) كفعل أساسي في الماضي البسيط هو (didn't + have) :

e.g. : - Aya didn't have a nice time. (Not: he hadn't)

(٦) يُستخدم كل من (have - has) كأفعال مساعدة في المضارع التام :

e.g. : - He has bought a car. = He's bought a car.
- They have won the match. = They've won the match.

(٧) تُستخدم (had) كفعل مساعد فى الماضي التام :

e.g. : - He had taken a rest before going out.

Modals الأفعال الناقصة

(١) الأفعال الناقصة هي أفعال لا تؤدي معنى بمفردها وتحتاج إلى فعل في المصدر (inf.) بعدها :

e.g. : - I can English well. (✗) - I can speak English well. (✓)
- You should your lessons hard. (✗) - You should study your lessons hard. (✓)

(٢) هناك أفعال ناقصة رئيسية هي :

can - could - will - would - may - might - shall - should - must

e.g. : - I will go home. - She might be late. - Shall we leave now ?

للمزيد حول استخدام الافعال الناقصة يمكن الرجوع إلى الأجزاء المخصصة للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام والقدرة :

Semi-modals الأفعال والتعبيرات شبه الناقصة

(١) هناك أفعال وتعبيرات شبه ناقصة (Semi-modals) مثل :

• ought to - used to - be going to + inf.

e.g. : - You ought to (should) be more careful.
- I used to go to the fields when I was young.
- Sama is going to join university.

• have to (has to / had to / will have to) يجب / من الضروري / من اللازم

e.g. : - I had / have / will have to follow the rules.
- Omar has / had/ will have to renew his passport.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have to / has to) هو (don't / doesn't have to) :

e.g. : - He hasn't to get up early. (✗)
- He doesn't have to get up early. (✓)
- She hadn't to go to work yesterday. (✗)
- She didn't have to go to work yesterday. (✓)

• have got to / has got to يجب / من الضروري / من اللازم

e.g. : - I have got to leave now.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have / has + got to) هو (haven't / hasn't + got to) :

- I don't have got to leave now. (✗)
- I haven't got to leave now. (✓)

- لاحظ أن صيغة الماضي من (have / has + got to) هي (had to) :

e.g. : - She had got to look after her baby sister. (✗)
- She had to look after her baby sister. (✓)

• need / needs / needed to - needn't + inf.
• dare (to) يجرؤ / يستطيع - daren't + inf.

e.g. : - You need to see a doctor.
- No one dares (to) argue يجادل with this manager.

- لاحظ عدم استخدام (to) بعد (daren't / needn't) :

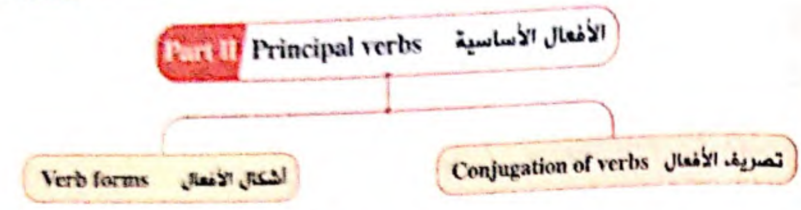
e.g. : - I needn't to buy a new tablet. (✗)
- I needn't buy a new tablet. (✓)
- I don't need to buy a new tablet. (✓)

• had ('d) better + inf. / would ('d) rather + inf.

e.g. : - You'd better find another job. - I'd rather go to the park.

- لاحظ أن نفي ('d better - 'd rather) هو ('d better not - 'd rather not) :

- I wouldn't rather have lunch outdoors. (✗)
- I would rather not have lunch outdoors. (✓)



1 Verb forms أشكال الأفعال

Inf. المصدر	First Form التصريف الأول	Second Form التصريف الثاني	p.p. التصريف الثالث	Present Participle اسم الفعل
be	am - is - are	was - were	been	being
do	do - does	did	done	doing
have	have - has	had	had	having
visit	visit - visits	visited	visited	visiting
go	go - goes	went	gone	going
try	try - tries	tried	tried	trying

– وفيما يلى شرح تفصيلى لكل هذه الأشكال الخاصة بالفعل :

Infinitive مصدر الفعل

① يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات الناقصة مثل :

can - could - will - would - shall - should - may - might - must - dare
- had better - would rather ... + inf.

e.g. : - I can drive a car.
- Omar will arrive soon. - You had better take a rest.

② يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال المساعدة المنفية (don't / doesn't / didn't) :

e.g. : - She doesn't like fish.
- He didn't go out.
- I don't know who broke the glass window.

لاحظ أنه يستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال المساعدة (do / does / did) فى الجمل المثبتة للتأكيد
- Hani does smoke.
- They do know what I mean.
- I did break the vase.

③ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد حرف الجر (to) لأغراض مختلفة :

e.g. : - I want to buy a car. (verb + to + inf.)
- She studies hard to get high marks. (لكى)
- To work hard is a good thing. (استخدام الصيغة المصدرية كفاعل)

④ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل في الصيغة التالية :

let / make / see / hear / watch / notice + ضمير مفعول / اسم + inf. ...

e.g. : - My father let us go to the park.
- I saw Ahmed cross the street.

⑤ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل في بداية الجملة لتكوين الأمر المثبت :

e.g. : - Open your books, please.
- Study your lessons before going out.

⑥ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد أداة الاستفهام (Why) لتقديم اقتراحات :

Why + inf. ...? لِمَ - Why not + inf. ... ? لِمَ لا

e.g. : - Why walk when we can go by bus?
- Why not buy a cold drink?

First form التصريف الأول

① ويستخدم التصريف الأول للفعل لتكوين زمن المضارع البسيط، و يضاف له (s – es – ies) إذا كان الفاعل مفرد (He – She – It) :

e.g. : - Ahmed plays tennis in the club every Saturday.
- Ahmed and Karim play tennis.
- A lion eats meat.
- Lions eat meat.

② لاحظ أن صيغة المضارع البسيط من الفعل (be) هي (am / is / are) :

e.g. : - I am busy. - He /She / It is old.
- You / We / They are hungry

③ لاحظ أن صيغة المضارع البسيط من الفعل (have) هي (have / has) :

e.g. : - He / She / It has a big family.
- I / You / We / They have some friends.

Second form التصريف الثاني

● ويستخدم التصريف الثاني للفعل لتكوين زمن الماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - She went to the library with her friends.

- They watched the match in the stadium.

Third form (p.p.) التصريف الثالث (اسم المفعول)

● ويستخدم التصريف الثالث للفعل في الحالات التالية :

(١) بعد (have / has / had) لتكوين المضارع التام والماضي التام :

e.g. : - He has gone shopping.

- Mum had prepared lunch before we arrived home.

(٢) بعد الأفعال المساعدة لتكوين المبني للمجهول :

e.g. : - The window was broken by him.

- The film is shown on this channel every month.
- Our flat will be decorated soon.
- The old man has been helped by his daughter.

(٣) يُستخدم كصفة :

e.g. : - Polluted air causes a lot of diseases.

- I have some written work to do.

(٤) تُستخدم كاختصار لعبارة الوصل في صيغة المبني للمجهول. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

e.g. : - The trees which were grown by my uncle produce a lot of fruit.

= The trees grown by my uncle produce a lot of fruit.

- The criminal who was arrested last night is very dangerous.

= The criminal arrested last night is very dangerous.

"-ing" Form (present participle) اسم الفاعل

● تُستخدم هذه الصيغة في الحالات التالية :

(١) تُستخدم كفعل بعد (be /am / is / are / was / were / been) لتكوين الأزمنة المستمرة :

e.g. : - He may be sleeping at home. - He is watching TV.

- They were having lunch. - She has been revising her lessons.

(٢) تُستخدم بعد أفعال المكان والحركة مثل (go / lie / come / be busy ....) :

e.g. : - We went fishing last Friday.

- I lay looking at the stars in the dark sky.

(٣) تُستخدم بعد أفعال الإدراك التالية للدلالة على متابعة جزء من الحدث :

see / hear / watch / notice + اسم / ضمير + (inf. + ing) ...

e.g. : - I heard someone crying.

- He saw his friends playing in the park.
- I watched the rabbits eating some carrots.

(٤) تُستخدم في الصيغ التالية :

spend / waste + time / money + (inf. + ing) ...

e.g. : - Don't waste your money (on) buying clothes!

- I've spent three hours shopping.

find / catch + ضمير / اسم + (inf. + ing) ...

e.g. : - His father caught him playing in the street.

- They found their teachers sitting in the garden.

(٥) تُستخدم كصفة :

e.g. : - It was an interesting story.

- I sat on the beach to watch the setting sun.

(٦) تُستخدم كاختصار لعبارة الوصل في صيغة المبني للمعلوم. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

e.g. : - The dog which is sleeping under the tree belongs to our neighbours.

= The dog sleeping under the tree belongs to our neighbours.

- The boy who is wearing a white shirt is my son.

= The boy wearing a white shirt is my son.

(٧) تُستخدم في عبارة اسم الفعل (present participle clause) كبديل للعبارات السببية والزمنية. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

e.g. : - After he had put on his coat, he left the house.

= Putting on his coat, he left the house.

- While I was watching the match at home, I fell asleep.

= Watching the match at home, I fell asleep.

- Because he felt very hungry, he went to the nearest restaurant.

= Feeling very hungry, he went to the nearest restaurant.

PART 1

كيفية تكوين اسم الفعل :

1. مع معظم الأفعال، يُضاف المقطع (ing) لنهاية مصدر الفعل :

e.g. : - read → reading - visit → visiting

2. إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) فإنه يحذف قبل إضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - write → writing - make → making

- ويشذ عن ذلك أفعال مثل :

e.g. : - dye يصبغ → dyeing - singe يلسع → singeing

3. يتضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل اضافة (ing) إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك مع الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد :

e.g. : - run → running - swim → swimming

- stop → stopping

4. يتضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير المسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الكلمات المتكونة من أكثر من مقطع قبل اضافة (ing) بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشدداً في النطق (stressed) :

e.g. : - regret → regretting

- begin → beginning

5. إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) فإنهما يتحولان إلى (y) قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - die → dying - tie → tying

6. إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - panic يَفْزَع → panicking - picnic يتنزه → picnicking

2 Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

- **Regular Verbs الأفعال المنتظمة**
- **Irregular Verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة**

1 Conjugation of Regular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

1. بصفة عامة يتم تصريف الأفعال المنتظمة بإضافة (ed) لنهاية مصدر الفعل :

e.g. : - visit → visited - watch → watched - land → landed

2. إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) يضاف له حرف (d) فقط :

e.g. : - like → liked - change → changed - bake → baked

3. يتضاعف الحرف الاخير قبل إضافة (ed) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد :

e.g. : - stop → stopped - ban → banned

- يتضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير المسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الكلمات المكونة من أكثر من مقطع قبل إضافة (ed) بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشدداً في النطق (stressed) :

e.g. : - deter يعوق / يمنع → deterred - regret → regretted

4. إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن فإنه يتحول الي (i) قبل اضافة (ed) :

e.g. : - study → studied - dry → dried - try → tried

5. إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل اضافة (ed) :

e.g. : - panic يَفْزَع → panicked - picnic يتنزه → picnicked

2 Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

تنويه: الطالب غير مُلْزَم بحفظ كل الأفعال غير المنتظمة، لكن هذا التصنيف يُعتبَر مَرْجِع لكل دارس.
يواجه مُعظم الطلاب مشكلة في حفظ تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة (الشاذة)، ولتسهيل حفظ هذه الأفعال، سنقوم بتقسيم هذه الأفعال إلى مجموعات حسب طريقة تصريفها :

1. أفعال لا تتغير عند تصريفها :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bet (s) يراهن	bet	bet
broadcast (s) يذيع / يبث	broadcast	broadcast
burst (s) ينفجر	burst	burst
cost (s) يُكلف	cost	cost
cut (s) يقطع	cut	cut

hit (s) حرب	hit	hit
hurt (s) يؤلم / يؤذي	hurt	hurt
let (s) يدع / يسمح	let	let
put (s) يضع	put	put
quit (s) يترك / يُقلع	quit	quit
read (s) يقرأ	read	read
set (s) يُعد / يضبط	set	set
shut (s) يُغلق	shut	shut

٢ أفعال يتغير فيها حرف واحد : فقط يتحول حرف (d) إلى (t) في نهاية الكلمة :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bend (s) يلوي / ينحني	bent	bent
build (s) يبني	built	built
lend (s) يُقرض	lent	lent
send (s) يُرسل	sent	sent
spend (s) يقضي وقت / يُنفق	spent	spent

٣ أفعال يتغير فيها (ay) إلى (aid) في نهاية الكلمة :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
lay (s) يُعد / تبيض	laid	laid
pay (s) يدفع (مالا)	paid	paid
say (s) يقول	said	said

٤ أفعال يُضاف حرف (t) لنهايتها (يُستثنى الفعل hear) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P
deal (s) يُوزِّع / يتعامل	dealt	dealt
dream (s) يحلم	dreamt	dreamt
hear (s) يسمع	heard	heard

lean (s) يميل / ينحني	leant	leant
leap (s) يقفز	leapt	leapt
mean (s) يعني / يقصد	meant	meant

٥ أفعال يتحول فيها (ell) إلى (old) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P
sell (s) يبيع	sold	sold
tell (s) يُخبر	told	told

٦ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغير (i) إلى (ou) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bind (s) يَرْبُط	bound	bound
find (s) يجد	found	found
grind (s) يطحن / يَشْحَذ / يسن	ground	ground
wind (s) يَلُف / يَتَعَرَّج	wound	wound

٧ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ee) أو (ea) إلى (e) لتكوين التصريفين الثاني والثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P
bleed (s) يَنْزِف	bled	bled
feed (s) يُطْعِم	fed	fed
flee (s) يَفِرّ / يُخلي	fled	fled
lead (s) يَقود / يؤدي إلى / يَعيش (بطَريقة مُعَيَّنة)	led	led
speed (s) يُسْرِع	sped	sped



PART 1

٨ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (a) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (u) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
begin (s) يبدأ	began	begun
drink (s) يشرب	drank	drunk
shrink (s) ينكمش	shrank	shrunk
sing (s) يغني	sang	sung
sink (s) يَغْرق (للأشياء) / يغوص	sank	sunk
spring (s) يَقْفِز / يبرز	sprang	sprung
swim (s) يسبح	swam	swum

٩ أفعال ينتهي تصريفها بـ (ought / aught) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bring (s) يجلب / يُحْضِر	brought	brought
buy (s) يشتري	bought	bought
fight (s) يقاتل / يواجه	fought	fought
seek (s) يسعى	sought	sought
think (s) يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
catch (s) يمسك / يقبض على / يصطاد	caught	caught
teach (es) يُعَلِّم / يَشْرَح	taught	taught

١٠ أفعال بها (ee) يتم فيها حذف حرف (e) مع إضافة حرف (t) لنهاية الفعل ما لم يكن موجودا (يُستثنى الفعل feed) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
creep (s) يَتَسَلَّل / يزحف	crept	crept
feed (s) يُطعم	fed	fed
feel (s) يشعر	felt	felt
keep (s) يحتفظ بـ / يظل / يربي	kept	kept

kneel (s) يركع على ركبتيه	knelt	knelt
meet (s) يقابل	met	met
sleep (s) ينام	slept	slept
sweep (s) يَكْنُس / يَنْدَفِع / يَجُرّ	swept	swept
weep (s) يَبْكي	wept	wept

١١ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير الحرف المتحرك إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، ثم يُضاف إليه (en) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
awake (s) يَستَيقظ / يوقظ	awoke / awaked	awoken / awaked
break (s) يكسر / ينكسر	broke	broken
choose (s) يختار	chose	chosen
freeze (s) يتجمد / يُجَمِّد	froze	frozen
speak (s) يتحدث	spoke	spoken
steal (s) يسرق	stole	stolen
wake (s) يَسْتَيْقِظ	woke / waked	woken / waked
weave (s) يَنْسُج	wove	woven

١٢ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير المتحرك (i) إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني، وينتهي التصريف الثالث بـ (en) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
arise (s) يَنْشأ	arose	arisen
drive (s) يقود (سيارة)	drove	driven
rise (s) يرتفع / يزداد / تُشرق	rose	risen
ride (s) يركب	rode	ridden
write (s) يكتب	wrote	written

١٣ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ear) إلى (ore) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (orn) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bear (s) تلد / يتحمل / يطيق	bore	borne / born
swear (s) يقسم / يعد / يؤكد	swore	sworn
tear (s) يُمزّق	tore	torn
wear (s) يرتدي	wore	worn

١٤ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ow) إلى (ew) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (own) لتكوين التصريف الثالث (يُستثنى الفعل draw) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
blow (s) يَهُبّ/ ينفخ / يطير مع الريح	blew	blown
draw (s) يَرسم / يَجُرّ / يسحب	drew	drawn
grow (s) ينمو / يزرع	grew	grown
know (s) يعرف	knew	known
throw (s) يرمي / يُلقي	threw	thrown
fly (ies) يطير / يُطَيّر	flew	flown

١٥ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (a) أو (u) لتكوين التصريفين الثاني و الثالث، و يتم حذف حرف (e) من نهاية الفعل إن وُجِد :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
dig (s) يحفر	dug	dug
spin (s) يَدور حَوْل نَفْسه / يَغزِل	spun / span	spun
stick (s) يُلصِق / يَغْرِز / يَعْلَق	stuck	stuck
sting (s) يَلْدَغ	stung	stung
strike (s) يَضْرِب/ يَخْطُر على بال / يَدُقّ	struck	struck

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
swing (s) يتأرجح	swung	swung

١٦ أفعال يتشابه فيها التصريف الأول مع التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P
become (s) يُصبح	became	become
come (s) يأتي	came	come
run (s) يجري / يدير	ran	run

١٧ أفعال يتشابه تصريفيها الثاني و الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
babysit (s) يَرعى الطفل	babysat	babysat
hold (s) يُمسك / يُثبّت	held	held
leave (s) يغادر / يترك	left	left
lose (s) يخسر / يفقد	lost	lost
sit (s) يجلس	sat	sat
slide (s) يَنزلق	slid	slid
stand (s) يقف	stood	stood
understand (s) يفهم	understood	understood
win (s) يفوز	won	won
shoot (s) يُطلِق النار على/ يرمي / يقذف	shot	shot

١٨ أفعال متنوعة في طريقة تصريفها :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
be (am / is / are) يكون / يوجد	was / were	been
do (es) يفعل	did	done
have / has يملك	had	had
go يذهب	went	gone

١٩ أفعال متقاربة في نمط التصريف :

Inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P.
beat (s)	يهزم / يضرب	beat	beaten
bite (s)	يعض / يقضم	bit	bitten
hide (s)	يختبئ	hid	hidden
eat (s)	يأكل	ate	eaten
fall (s)	يسقط / يقع	fell	fallen
forbid (s)	يمنع	forbad / forbade	forbidden
forget (s)	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
get (s)	يحصل على	got	got / gotten
forgive (s)	يسامح	forgave	forgiven
give (s)	يعطي	gave	given
see (s)	يرى	saw	seen
shake (s)	يهز / يرج / يصافح	shook	shaken
take (s)	يأخذ	took	taken

٢٠ أفعال يتم تصريفها بطريقتين دون اختلاف في المعنى :

inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P
awake (s)	يستيقظ	awoke / awaked	awoke / awaked
bear (s)	تلد / يتحمل	bore	borne / born
burn (s)	يحرق	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
dream (s)	يحلم	dreamt / dreamed	dreamt / dreamed
dwell (s)	يقطن / يسكُن	dwelt / dwelled	dwelt / dwelled
forbid (s)	يمنع	forbad / forbade	forbidden
kneel (s)	يجثو على	knelt / kneeled	knelt / kneeled
lean (s)	ينحني	leant / leaned	leant / leaned
learn (s)	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
light (s)	يُشعِل / يُنير	lighted / lit	lighted / lit
mow (s)	يجز العُشب	mowed	mowed / mown
sew (s)	يخيط	sewed	sewed / sewn
show (s)	يعرض	showed	showed / shown
smell (s)	يشم	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled
sow (s)	يَبذُر	sowed	sowed / sown
speed (s)	يُسرع	speeded / sped	speeded / sped
spell (s)	يتهجى	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
spill (s)	يسكب	spilt / spilled	spilt / spilled
spoil (s)	يُتلف	spoilt / spoiled	spoilt / spoiled
swell (s)	يتورَّم	swelled	swelled / swollen
wake (s)	يستيقظ	woke / waked	woke / waked

٢١ أفعال يتم تصريفها بطريقتين أو أكثر مع وجود اختلاف في المعنى :

Inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P.
bid	يعرض	bid	bid
bid (s)	يأمر / يودع	bade	bidden
dive (s)	يقفز إلى الماء برأسه أولا	dove	dived
dive (s)	يغوص بمعدات	dived	dived
fit (s)	يناسب في الحجم	fit	fit
fit (s)	يُعدّل مقاس / يُرَكِّب	fitted	fitted
hang (s)	يُعلِّق	hung	hung
hang (s)	يعدم / يشنق	hanged / hung	hanged / hung
lay (s)	يُعد / تبيض	laid	laid
lie (s)	يكذب	lied	lied
lie (s)	يرقد / يستلقي	lay	lain
shine (s)	يلمع / يسطع	shone	shone
shine (s)	يُسلط الضوء على	shone / shined	shone / shined
shine (s)	يلمّع / يصقُل	shined	shined

4 Adjectives الصفات

الصفة

Adjective :

- الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم وتأتي غالبًا قبله :

e.g. : - Rodayna bought an **expensive** mobile yesterday.
- I saw a **frightening** animal in the fields.

- يمكن أن تأتى الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدونه بعد فعل verb to be وأفعال أخرى مثل :
(look / seem / appear / taste / feel / sound / smell)

e.g. : - Leen **felt** cold.
- Mum's food **smells** delicious.
- Ahmed **looks** happy.
- Ali is **clever**.

- الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقا و لكن تستخدم بعد verb to be وأفعال مثل seem / look / feel (أفعال الحواس):

afraid / awake / asleep / alone / alight مشتعل / absent غائب / alive لا يزال على قيد الحياة

e.g. : - Roaa feels **afraid** when she is left alone.
- We were **happy** that he was **alive**.

1 Similarity التشابه

- هناك أكثر من طريقة للتعبير عن التشابه او تساوي طرفين في صفة ما ومن تلك الطرق ما يلي:

الطرف الثاني + **as** + الصفة + **as** + **be** + الطرف الاول
الطرف الثاني + **as** + الاسم من الصفة + **the same** + **has / have** + الطرف الاول
الاسم من الصفة + **the same** + **have** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الاول
الاسم من الصفة + **of the same** + **be** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الاول
الصفة + **be** + الطرف الثاني ,الطرف الأول + **Like**

e.g. : - Aya is **as beautiful as** Mariam.
= Aya has the **same beauty as** Mona.
= Aya and Mariam have **the same** beauty.
= Aya and Mariam are of **the same** beauty.
= Like Aya, Mariam **is** beautiful.

- لاحظ عند النفى نستخدم (not as/so + صفة + as) :

e.g. : - Nabil is taller than Samy.
= Samy isn't as (so) tall as Nabil.

- لاحظ الاسم الذى يمكن استخدامه بعد (the same + noun + as) من الصفات الآتية :

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
expensive/ cheap	price	deep	depth
big / small	size	wide	width
old / young	age	long	length
far / near	distance	high / tall	height
strong	strength	heavy / light	weight

e.g. : - This house is as high as yours.
= This house has the same height as yours.
- The green blouse is as expensive as the red blouse.
= The green blouse is the same price as the red blouse.

2 Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهما :

e.g. : - Malak is **taller than** Rodayna.
- A car is fast, but a train is **faster**.
- Films are **more exciting than** novels.
- Chicken is **less expensive than** meat.

تكوين صفات المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة والطويلة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين فى صفة مشتركة بينهم :

* تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة :

1 يضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة :

e.g. : - quiet → quieter - cheap → cheaper - narrow → narrower

2 اذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) ساكن(لا ينطق) نضيف في المقارنة (r) فقط :

e.g. : - wide → wider - nice → nicer
- large → larger - simple → simpler

❼ الصفات القصيرة التى تنتهى بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول (y) إلى (ier) :

e.g. : - lucky → luckier - healthy → healthier - easy → easier

❽ يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا جاء قبله حرف متحرك واحد بشرط أن تكون الكلمة مقطع واحد :

e.g. : - hot → hotter - fat → fatter - thin → thinner

* تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات الطويلة :

more / less + adj. الصفة + than

e.g. : - more / less expensive than - more / less terrifying than

- more / less exciting than - more / less dangerous than

ملاحظات عامة علي صفات المقارنة

- يمكن استخدام less قبل الصفات القصيرة :

e.g. : - Ahmed is stronger than Ali. = Ali is less strong than Ahmed.

- يمكن استخدام (even / much /a lot / far...) قبل صفات المقارنة لإعطاء قوة لمعنى الصفة :

e.g. : - Travelling by train is **much** slower than travelling by plane.

- يمكن استخدام (slightly /a bit / a little...) قبل صفات المقارنة لإضعاف معنى الصفة :

e.g. : - I had to drive **a bit** faster.

- يمكن استخدام صفتى مقارنة للدلالة على التغير المستمر فى شىء :

e.g. : - It's become **more and more** difficult to find a flat.

- لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد than (يكون "ضمير فاعل" إذا كان بعده فعل و "ضمير مفعول" فى حالة عدم وجود فعل) :

e.g. : - He is taller **than** I am.

= He is taller **than** me.

-We earn more money **than** they do.

= We earn more money **than** them.

- يمكن استخدام المقارنة للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة (كلما .... كلما ....) :

The + صفة مقارنة + جملة السبب + the + صفة مقارنة + جملة النتيجة

e.g. : - **The harder** you study, **the higher** marks you get.

3 Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

- تستخدم صفات التفضيل لتقارن بين اكثر من طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهم (تمييز فرد عن مجموعة) :

e.g. : - Omar is the cleverest student in class.

- The plane is the fastest means of transport.
- Football is the most exciting sport.
- Fish is the least expensive protein source.

- تكوين صفات التفضيل من صفات قصيرة المقطع :

❶ توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (est) لنهاية الصفة :

e.g. : - old → the oldest - strong → the strongest

- tall → the tallest

❷ اذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) (لا ينطق) و قبلها حرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (st) فقط لنهاية الصفة :

e.g. : - nice → the nicest - wide → the widest

- simple → the simplest

❸ الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم تتحول (y) الي (iest) في نهاية الصفة :

e.g. : - lazy → the laziest - heavy → the heaviest

- noisy → the noisiest

❹ إذا انتهت الصفة قصيرة المقطع بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد نضاعف الحرف الأخير مع إضافة (the) قبل الصفة و (est) فى نهاية الصفة :

e.g. : - big → the biggest - thin → the thinnest

- hot → the hottest

- تكوين صفات التفضيل من صفات طويلة المقطع :

the most / the least + adj. طويلة المقطع

e.g. : - dangerous → **the most / the least** dangerous

- interesting → **the most / the least** interesting

ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

- يمكن استخدام (most) بدون (the) وفي هذه الحالة تساوي في المعنى (very) :

most + adj. (without the) = very

e.g. : - The information I've just heard is most important. = very important

- لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل مع الاعداد الترتيبية (first / second / third/ fourth...etc) :

e.g. : - Cairo is the first largest city in Africa.

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل في حالة وجود ضمير ملكية او ('s) الملكية قبل الصفة :

e.g. : - The femto-second is Zewail's biggest achievement in Chemistry.
- The femto-second is his biggest achievement in Chemistry.

- استخدام (No) بدلاً من أسلوب التفضيل :

باقي الجملة + صيغة التفضيل أو المقارنة + "verb to be" + فاعل
طرف المقارنة + than + صيغة التفضيل أو المقارنة + "verb to be" + فاعل + No

باقي الجملة طرف المقارنة + as +  adj. صفة + as + "verb to be" فاعل + No

e.g. : - Omar was the most courageous man in the city.
= No man in the city is more courageous than Omar.
No man in the city is as courageous as Omar.
- The Nile is the longest river. = No river is longer than the Nile.
- Water is the most important liquid.
= No liquid is more important than water.

- المقارنة والتفضيل باستخدام ever – never :

+ فاعل ثانى + التمييز + صيغة تفضيل + "verb to be" + الفاعل الاول
"have / has" ever + p.p. ...
الفاعل الثاني + "have - has" never + p.p. ... + a /an
فاعل اول + like + تمييز + صفة بدون اضافات

- نلاحظ أن الصفة فى جملة (ever) فى صيغة التفضيل أما الصفة فى جملة (never) صفة من الدرجة الأولى (بدون إضافات) :

e.g. : - Ali is the cleverest boy I have ever seen.
= I have never seen a clever man like Ali.
- I have never watched a funny film like that.
= This is the funniest film I have ever seen.
- Zewail is the most important person I have ever met.
= I have never met an important person like Zewail.

- نلاحظ أن أداة الاستفهام which تستخدم عند السؤال للمفاضلة بين شيئين فى صفة معينة (نستخدم صفة من الدرجة الثانية) :

e.g. : - Which is faster; the train or the plane ?
- Which is more exciting; the pyramid or the tower ?

- لاحظ أن أداة الاستفهام which يمكن أن تستخدم للمفاضلة بين أكثر من شيئين (صفة من الدرجة الثالثة).
- Which is the most expensive car ? – The red car.

Irregular adjectives صفات غير منتظمة

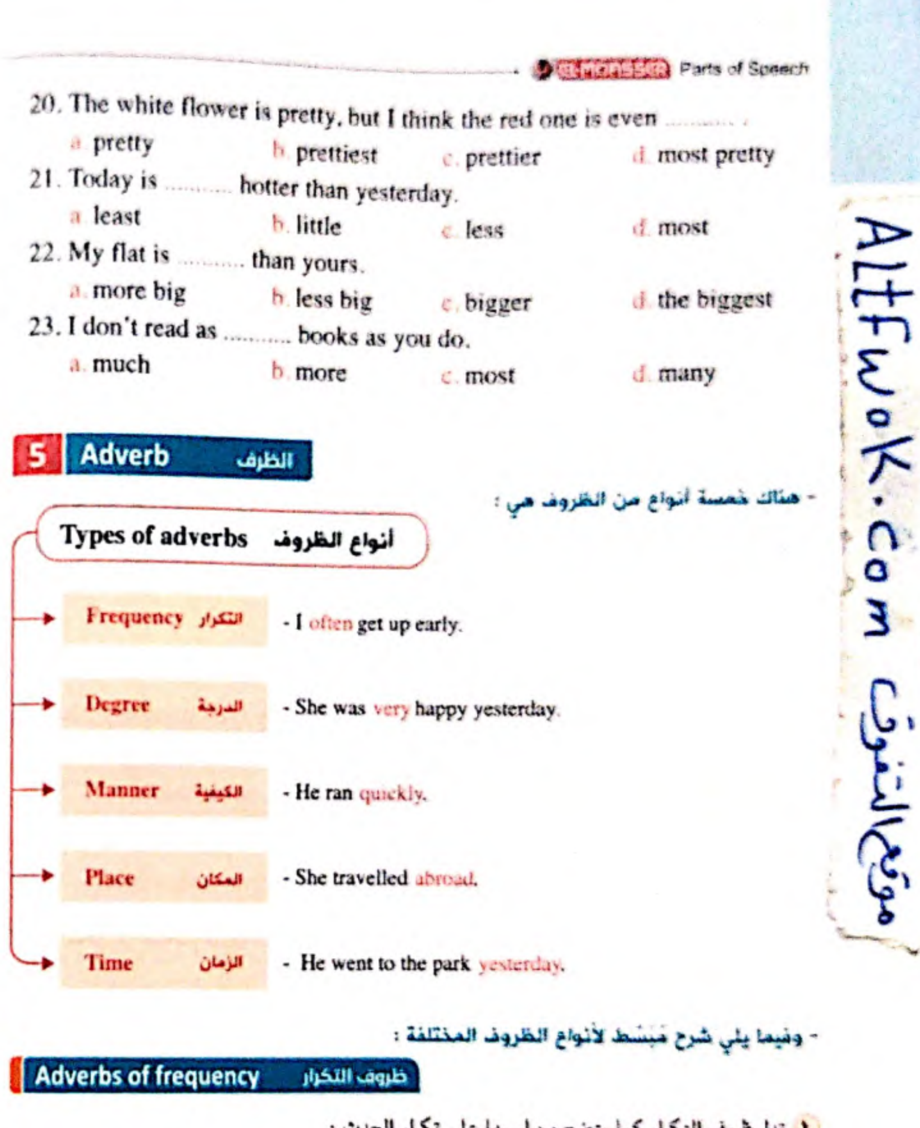
Adj. / adv.	comparative	superlative
bad / badly / ill / wrong	worse than	the worst
far	farther (further) than	the farthest (furthest)
fore	former than	the first
good / well / right	better than	the best
late	latter than / later than	the last / the latest
little	less than	the least
many / much	more than	the most
old	older / elder	oldest / eldest
real	more real	the most real

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A chair is .... comfortable than a sofa.
a. less b. the least c. little d. least
2. This is .... company in the world.
a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. the biggest
3. English is .... than any other language.
a. easy b. easier c. more easy d. the easiest

4. You look much .... than yesterday.
   a. happy   b. happier   c. happiest   d. the happiest
5. Football is .... popular game in Egypt.
   a. more   b. most   c. less   d. the most
6. This is .... picture I've ever seen.
   a. nice   b. nicer   c. nicest   d. the nicest
7. This computer is not .... expensive as the one that I bought yesterday.
   a. more   b. less   c. as   d. most
8. The .... tree in the world is in Sweden.
   a. old   b. older   c. eldest   d. oldest
9. This is the .... test I've ever taken.
   a. hard   b. harder   c. less hard   d. hardest
10. He is not .... reliable as his friend.
   a. so   b. more   c. less   d. most
11. The food is not nearly so .... as it was in the past.
   a. good   b. better   c. worse   d. the best
12. Alaa is a .... doctor than Omar.
   a. good   b. better   c. best   d. the best
13. Water is the .... expensive of all liquids.
   a. much   b. least   c. less   d. more
14. An elephant is .... as a tiger.
   a. fast   b. faster   c. fastest   d. not as fast
15. Nobody in our company is .... Peter.
   a. efficient   b. as efficient as
   c. most efficient than   d. as efficient
16. It was .... of her to waste all her money.
   a. more foolish than   b. less foolish
   c. foolish   d. least foolish
17. Laptops are becoming .... popular nowadays.
   a. less and more   b. more and less
   c. much and more   d. more and more
18. Climbing is the .... dangerous sport in the world.
   a. more   b. most   c. less   d. as
19. Mr Ali has .... friends than me.
   a. many   b. most   c. the least   d. more



20. The white flower is pretty, but I think the red one is even ....
   a. pretty   b. prettiest   c. prettier   d. most pretty
21. Today is .... hotter than yesterday.
   a. least   b. little   c. less   d. most
22. My flat is .... than yours.
   a. more big   b. less big   c. bigger   d. the biggest
23. I don't read as .... books as you do.
   a. much   b. more   c. most   d. many

5 Adverb الظرف

- هناك خمسة أنواع من الظروف هي :

Types of adverbs أنواع الظروف

- **Frequency التكرار** - I often get up early.
- **Degree الدرجة** - She was very happy yesterday.
- **Manner الكيفية** - He ran quickly.
- **Place المكان** - She travelled abroad.
- **Time الزمان** - He went to the park yesterday.

- وفيما يلي شرح مبسط لأنواع الظروف المختلفة :

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

١) تدل ظروف التكرار كما يتضح من اسمها على تكرار الحدث :

e.g. - I go to Alexandria every summer. - She goes to the cinema once a month.

٢) ظروف التكرار التالية مُشتقّة من كلمات زمنية، وتدل على تكرار الحدث كل فترة معينة :

daily – weekly – monthly – yearly / annually = every (day – week – month – year) = once a (day – week – month – year)

e.g. : - We pay the taxes الضرائب yearly.

= We pay the taxes every year.

= We pay the taxes once a year.

٣ ظروف التكرار التالية تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

every + (عدد) + (day – night - week - month – summer – year …)

e.g. : - I visit my aunt every month = Every month, I visit my aunt.

- She calls her mother every three days.

= Every three days, she calls her mother.

٤ ظروف التكرار التالية تدل على تكرار الحدث عدد محدد من المرات كل فترة زمنية، وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : - once مرة واحدة / twice مرتين / three times … + a / an / every + كلمة زمنية

- I go to the club twice a week.

= Twice a week, I go to the club.

٥ تُستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد (to be) والأفعال المساعدة :

always دائماً - constantly بشكل ثابت - usually / normally عادة - regularly بانتظام
- often / frequently غالباً - sometimes أحياناً - occasionally بين حين و آخر
- little قلّما - rarely / seldom نادراً - hardly ever بالكاد - never مطلقا

e.g. : - I sometimes go to the club.

- Tom is often late for work.

- كما يمكن أن تُستخدم ظروف التكرار هذه في بداية أو نهاية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الظرف :

e.g. : - Sometimes, I play football.

= I play football sometimes.

٦ الظروف التالية تدل على النفي، وعند استخدامها في بداية الجملة فإن الفعل المساعد يتقدم على الفاعل :

Scarcely / Rarely / Seldom / Hardly / Little / Never + فعل مساعد + subj. فاعل

e.g. : - We never waste our time.

= Never do we waste our time.

- My mum rarely goes out.

= Rarely does my mum go out.

Adverbs of degree ظروف الدرجة

١ أهم ظروف الدرجة في اللغة الإنجليزية هي :

a bit	قليلاً	nearly	تقريباً
absolutely	بشكل مُطلق	pretty	بالفعل / حقاً
almost	تقريباً	quite	إلى حد ما
completely	تماماً	rather	إلى حد ما
enough	كاف / بما يكفي	really	بالفعل / حقاً
entirely	كُليًا	scarcely	نادراً / قلّما
extremely	للغاية	too	جداً / أكثر من اللازم
hardly	بالكاد	utterly	كُليًا
just	فحسب / تواً	very	جداً
little	قليلاً / قلّما		

٢ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة في الحالات التالية :

- قبل الصفات :

e.g. : - Mr Omar is very tall.

- I'm a bit tired.

- قبل الظروف :

e.g. : - He speaks quite loudly.

- She walks very slowly.

- قبل الأفعال :

e.g. : - Aya has nearly prepared lunch.

- She just smiled and went away.

٣ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات العادية :

little / a bit - rather / quite - very - really - extremely

e.g. : - The water is very hot. - I'm extremely tired.

٤ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية :

absolutely - utterly / entirely - completely

e.g. : - This engine is absolutely excellent.

- The temple is utterly ancient.

٥ يمكن أن تُستخدم (really / pretty) مع كل من الصفات القوية والضعيفة :

e.g. : - He is really angry / furious.

٦ تُعطي (enough) معني إيجابي وتُستخدم قبل الاسم أو بعد الصفة والظرف :

e.g. : - He has enough money. (enough + noun)
- He is old enough to depend on himself. (adj. + enough)
- She works hard enough to pass the exam. (adv. + enough)

٧ تُعطي (too ... to) معني سلبي وتُستخدم قبل الصفة والظرف :

e.g. : - The tea is too sweet to drink. (too + adj.)

Adverbs of manner ظروف الكيفية

١ ظرف الكيفية يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل و يجيب عن السؤال بـ (How) :

e.g. : - A : How does Omar walk? B : He walks quickly.
- A : How do they work? B : They work hard.

٢ يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :

e.g. : - Sama walks slowly. - Ali shouted at me angrily.

٣ تأتي الظروف التالية قبل الفعل وليس بعده :

usually – probably – possibly – definitely – surely – certainly

e.g. : - It is probable he will buy a car. = He will probably buy a car.
- He prays as usual. = He usually prays.

٤ يتكون ظرف الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة :

١. بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة :

e.g. : - slow ⟶ slowly - quick ⟶ quickly

٢. وتُضاف (ly) حتى وإن كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l) :

e.g. : - careful ⟶ carefully - beautiful ⟶ beautifully

٣. الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y) :

e.g. : - possible ⟶ possibly - probable ⟶ probably

٤. الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ily) :

e.g. : - easy ⟶ easily - happy ⟶ happily

٥. الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلى ظرف باستخدام : (in a .... way / manner) :

e.g. : - friendly ودود – in a friendly way
- cowardly جبان – in a cowardly way
- Bassem is a good swimmer = Bassem swims well.

٦. هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل :

e.g. : - good ⟶ well - fast ⟶ fast - hard ⟶ hard
- late ⟶ late - early ⟶ early
- He smiled in a fatherly manner (way).

٥ هناك بعض الظروف لها شكلين ومعنيين مختلفين :

deep	يعمق / عميقاً	deeply	بشدة
free	مجاناً	freely	بحرية
hard	بجد / بصعوبة	hardly	بالكاد / تقريباً لا
high	عالياً	highly	بدرجة كبيرة
late	متأخراً	lately	مؤخراً / حديثاً
most	الأكثر	mostly	أساساً / في الغالب
near	بقرب	nearly	تقريباً
pretty	إلى حد ما	prettily	بشكل جميل

e.g. : - The ship sank deep in the ocean.
- I was deeply affected by your advice.

٦ يمكن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات الطويلة باستخدام :

more أكثر / less أقل + adv. الظرف + than

e.g. : - Rodayna draws more beautifully than Ahmed.
- Mr Ayman drives less fast than Mr Ashraf.

Adverbs of place ظروف المكان

١ أهم ظروف المكان في اللغة الإنجليزية هي :

above	فوق / أعلى	eastwards	شرقاً
abroad	خارج البلاد	everywhere	في كل مكان

across	عبر	far	بعيداً
ahead	للأمام	here	هنا
around	حول	homeward	باتجاه البيت
away	بعيداً	in	بالداخل
back	للخلف	indoors	بالداخل
backwards	للخلف	inside	بالداخل
below	أسفل	nearby	قريب / مجاور
between	بين	outside	بالخارج
beyond	وراء / بعد	overseas	خارج البلاد
down	أسفل	there	هناك
downwards	لأسفل	west	في / باتجاه الغرب

٢ تُستخدم ظروف المكان لتحديد مكان حدوث الفعل :

e.g. : - We are meeting here next October.

٣ توضع ظروف المكان عادة بعد المفعول أو بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - I will wait for them outside.

- I will wait outside for them.

٤ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى الاتجاه :

e.g. : - He went north to enjoy the good weather in Alexandria.

٥ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى المسافة :

e.g. : - There's a gym nearby.

٦ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى مكان شيء بالنسبة لأشياء أخري :

e.g. : - The horse is under the tree.

٧ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى الحركة :

e.g. : - The boat moved backwards.

Adverbs of time ظروف الزمان

١ ظروف الزمان التي تشير إلى وقت وقوع الحدث تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة :

yesterday – tomorrow – today – now – last week – later فيما بعد ... etc.

e.g. : - I'll call you later. - I'm busy studying now.

- يُمكن استخدام هذه الظروف في بداية الجملة للتركيز على معني الظرف :

e.g. : - Later, I'll call you. - Now, I'm busy studying.

٢ ظروف الزمان التي تشير إلى وقت وقوع الحدث تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : for + مدة / since + توقيت / all + مدة

- I have been waiting here for ten minutes.

- She has had this mobile since 2017.

٣ تُستخدم (yet) بمعني (حتي الآن) في نهاية الجملة أو بعد (not) لتدل علي شيء لم يحدث بعد وإن كان يُنتَظَر حدوثه :

e.g. : - Have they arrived yet ? - We haven't decided yet.

- A: Have you finished ? - B: Not yet.

٤ تُستخدم (still) بمعني (لا يزال)، وتوضع قبل الفعل الأصلي وبعد الفعل المساعد :

e.g. : - He is still waiting for his friends.

- Do you still live in Aswan?

- عندما يكون (be) فعلاً أساسياً فإن (still) تُستخدم بعده :

٥ عندما يكون هناك أكثر من ظرف زمان يكون الترتيب كالتالي :

how long المدة + how often التكرار + when التوقيت

e.g. : - I worked for five hours.

- I have worked for five hours every day.

- I worked for five hours every day last year.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He has no money. He is .... poor.
   a. very b. fairly c. quite d. extremely
2. You shouldn't climb the stairs ....
   a. careful b. care c. carelessly d. careless
3. My sister is a good student, she studies her lessons ....
   a. well b. good c. goodly d. willingly
4. My father ran very .... and caught a thief.
   a. fastly b. fast c. fastness d. fasten
5. I sometimes get up .... and miss the school bus.
   a. late b. lately c. later d. lateness
6. The team played the match very ...., so they lost it.
   a. bad b. badly c. badness d. good
7. This girl behaves ....
   a. friendly b. friend c. in a friendly way d. friendliness
8. He couldn't buy the suit because it was .... expensive.
   a. rather b. quite c. never d. hardly
9. I had .... an ordinary childhood.
   a. quite b. quiet c. quit d. quickly
10. We like our English teacher. He is .... a good person.
   a. quite b. never c. lately d. hardly
11. It is raining ....
   a. heavy b. heavily c. heaviness d. heavenly
12. Dalia does her work .... She is efficient.
   a. good b. well c. proper d. prepare
13. Samy was .... exhausted when he finished the race.
   a. utterly b. very c. quite d. rather
14. Bassam doesn't leave his office before he finishes his work. He is quite a .... worker.
   a. harder b. hardly c. hardest d. hard



15. Noha was .... after she had cleaned the house all day. She slept for 12 hours after that.
   a. absolutely exhausted b. absolutely tired c. very exhausted d. not tired
16. Today, car engines burn petrol more .... than in the past.
   a. efficient b. efficiently c. efficiency d. inefficient
17. She's a bad writer. She writes English ....
   a. badly b. worse c. worst d. bad
18. She works ....
   a. hardly b. more hardly c. hard d. hardness
19. Don't behave .... to be popular with people.
   a. rudely b. rude c. rudeness d. rudest
20. She answered the questions ....
   a. accurate b. more accurate c. accuracy d. accurately







الأزمنة
3 Tenses

Part 1 Present Tenses الجزء الأول: أزمنة المضارع

1 The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation : التكوين

- تتكون جملة المضارع المستمر من:
- فى الجمل المثبتة:

Subject فاعل + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) ....

ex.: - Ali is reading a story. - I am running fast.
- Aya and Heba are cooking lunch.

- فى الجمل المنفية :

Subject فاعل + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + inf. + ing.

e.g. : - Ali is not (isn't) reading a story.
- I am not running fast.
- Aya and Heba are not (aren't) cooking lunch.

- كيفية إضافة (ing) للفعل :

• inf. المصدر + ing:

e.g. : - read → reading - visit → visiting

(١) اذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) فانه يحذف قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - write → writing - make → making

- ويشذ عن ذلك الفعلين dye / singe :

e.g. : - dye يصبغ → dyeing - singe يلسع → singeing

(٢) اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد و كان الفعل يتكون من مقطع واحد او اكثر بشرط أن يكون المقطع الاخير مشدداً في النطق فانه يضاعف الحرف الاخير قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - run → running - begin → beginning
- stop → stopping - regret → regretting
- swim → swimming

(٣) إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) فانهما يتحولان الي (y) قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - die → dying - tie → tying

(٤) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - panic → panicking - picnic → picnicking

- السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد معناه هل :

Am / Is / Are + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) .... ?

e.g. : - Is Ali reading a story ? - Yes, he is . / No, he isn't.
- Are you running fast? - Yes, I am.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + am / is/ are + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing).... ?

e.g. : - What is Ali doing ?
- Who is running fast ?

- المضارع المستمر فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object مفعول + am / is / are + being + p.p. ....

e.g. : - Ali is reading a story. (active)
- A story is being read by Ali. (passive)
- She is watering the plants. (active)
- The plants are being watered by her. (passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

❶ **To express actions that are happening now** - التعبير عن إحداث تقع الآن :

e.g. : - I am revising for my test. - They are watching Tom and Jerry.

❷ **To express actions that are taking place around the present**

- التعبير عن احداث تقع حول الوقت الحاضر و ليس بالضرورة الآن :

e.g. : - We are taking exams these days.
- I'm reading a story for Naguib Mahfouz.

❸ **To express future arrangements**

- يعبر عن حدث في المستقبل كامل الترتيبات (الموعد معروف والأطراف المشتركة فى الحدث تعلم ذلك) :

e.g. : - Our aunt is leaving hospital tomorrow morning.
- They are travelling on Monday.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع كلمات زمنية مثل :

Key words :

now - at the moment - at present - still ما زال - Look ! - Listen ! - Watch out! انتبه .... etc.

- لاحظ: لا يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع افعال الحواس و التفكير و العاطفة و التملك بل يأتي معهم زمن المضارع البسيط مثل :

Verb	Meaning	Verb	Meaning	Verb	Meaning
astonish	يدهش	hate	يكره	need	يحتاج
see	يرى	believe	يصدق	hear	يسمع
owe	يدين	seem	يبدو	belong	يخص
know	يعرف	own	يمتلك	smell	يشم
concern	يهتم بـ/يتعلق بـ	lack	ينقص	possess	يمتلك
suppose	يفترض	consist	يتكون	like	يحب
prefer	يفضل	surprise	يفاجئ	contain	يحتوي على
love	يحب	realize	يدرك	taste	يتذوق
depend	يعتمد	matter	يهم	recognise	يتعرف على
understand	يفهم	deserve	يستحق	mean	يعني
remember	يتذكر	want	يريد	have	يملك

• لا يستخدم الفعل **(have)** بمعني "يملك" في المضارع المستمر ولكن يضاف له **(ing)** إذا استخدم بمعنى غير المعنى الأساسي (يملك) :

e.g. : - I have a shower. أمتلك دش
- I'm having a shower. انني آخذ دشا
- I'm having my breakfast now. يتناول أو يأكل

2 The Present Perfect Continuous Tense زمن المضارع التام المستمر

Formation : التكوين

Subject الفاعل + have / has + been + inf. + ing

- وغالبا ما تكون في الجملة كلمات تدل علي الاستمرار:

since... /for... / for... now / all + تعبير زمني مفرد

e.g. : - He has been working there ever since he graduated.
- It has been raining for three days now.
- I have been playing football for about ten years.

- لاحظ صيغة النفي:

Subject الفاعل + hasn't / haven't + been + inf. + ing ...

e.g. : - They haven't been sleeping all night.
- Rodayna hasn't been learning English for this long time.

- لاحظ صيغتي السؤال:

Have / Has + subject الفاعل + been + inf. + ing ... ?

e.g. : - Have you been playing tennis for an hour?
Yes, we have (been playing tennis for an hour).
- Has Rodayna been learning English for this long time?
No, she hasn't (been learning English for this long time).

Question word أداة استفهام + have / has + subject الفاعل + been + (inf. + ing)... ?

e.g. : - How long have you been playing tennis?
- What has Rodayna been learning for this long time?

Usage : الاستخدام

- يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن :

- حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمرا حتي الوقت الحاضر :

e.g. : - He's been training really hard since the last Olympic Games.
- I have been learning English since I was eight years old.
- He has been working for them for about two years.

- حدث تم بانتظام حيث بدأ في الماضي وأستمر حتي الآن :

e.g. : - For the last few months, I've been playing squash regularly.

- حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي وله اثر علي الحاضر (تفسير لموقف في الحاضر) :

A : You look tired. What have you been doing?
B : I have been serving customers all day.

- يستخدم هذا الزمن مع الأفعال التى تستغرق وقتًا طويلًا وتدل على الاستمرارية :

study, teach, learn, read, write, play, run, paint, sit, stand, lie, sleep, cook, wait, rain, ...

e.g. : - It has been raining since I woke up.

- يُستخدم المضارع التام وليس المضارع التام المستمر في الحالات التالية:
- عند بناء جملة المضارع التام المستمر للمجهول تتحول إلى المضارع التام :

Object المفعول + have / has + been + p.p. ..... .

e.g. : - I have been studying English since I was in primary one. (active)
- English has been studied (by me) since I was in primary one. (passive)

- هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموما ومنها المضارع التام المستمر وهي :

❶ أفعال المشاعر والحواس والإدراك والملكية والرغبة بالإضافة إلى (be) كفعل أساسي:

hate	يكره	astonish	يدهش
see	يرى	need	يحتاج
hear	يسمع	believe	يصدق
seem	يبدو	owe	يدين
know	يعرف	belong	يخص
smell	يشم	own	يمتلك
lack	ينقص	concern	يهم/يتعلق بـ
suppose	يفترض	possess	يمتلك
like	يحب	consist	يتكون
surprise	يفاجئ	prefer	يفضل
love	يحب	contain	يحتوى على
taste	يتذوق	realize	يدرك
matter	يهم	depend	يعتمد
understand	يفهم	recognize	يتعرف على
mean	يعنى	deserve	يستحق
want	يريد	remember	يتذكر

e.g. : - I have been knowing Mr Ayman for a few months now. (✗)
- I have known Mr Ayman for a few months now. (✓)
- Ashraf has been being in Aswan for only one night. (✗)
- Ashraf has been in Aswan for only one night. (✓)

❷ مع الأفعال اللحظية التي لا يستغرق حدوثها وقتا (يمكن وصفه بالاستمرار) مثل :

receive – arrive – break down – crash ...

e.g. : - A car has been crashing into a tree. (✗)
- A car has crashed into a tree. (✓)

❸ عند ذكر مرات حدوث الفعل ، ومن الكلمات الدالة علي ذلك :

two / three ...../ many / a few / few / several / a lot of / lots of / all / plenty of ...+ مفعول جمع

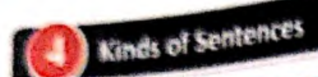
e.g. : - I've been watching all the judo at the Olympics this year. (✗)
- I've watched all the judo at the Olympics this year. (✓)
- I have been scoring lots of goals. (✗)
- I have scored lots of goals. (✓)
- I have been playing for four different teams. (✗)
- I have played for four different teams. (✓)

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. At the moment, she .... to be a primary school teacher.
   a. trains b. was training
   c. is training d. has trained
2. I .... on this English exercise for the last hour !
   a. have been working b. had worked
   c. worked d. were you working
3. They have been doing the homework .... 6 o'clock.
   a. for b. ago c. from d. since
4. She has been cleaning the house .... two hours now.
   a. for b. ago c. from d. since
5. We .... here for 6 years now and we don't intend to move.
   a. lived b. have been living
   c. were living d. has lived
6. The boys .... games for 3 hours now.
   a. have played b. have been playing
   c. are playing d. play
7. He has been learning French .... the age of six.
   a. for b. since c. while d. when
8. Ahmed has been learning English .... he was 7 years old.
   a. for b. ago c. when d. since
9. Ali has been travelling .... the last five days.
   a. for b. ago c. when d. since
10. She .... hard all day.
    a. has been studying b. has been studied
    c. had to be studied d. will be studied

PART 1



4 Kinds of Sentences — الجمل وأنواعها

A Linking words (Conjunctions)

1 Conjunctions that express contrast — أدوات ربط تدل على التناقض

❶ تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على التناقض ويتبع هذه الروابط جملة (فاعل + فعل ...)

although - though - even though - even if - but - yet - however + subject + verb

e.g. : - Although Sami is upset, he keeps smiling.
- Even if this car is expensive, I am going to buy it.
- Ali was born in London, yet he can't speak English well.
- It is hot. However, I won't turn the fan on.

❷ تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على التناقض. ويتبع هذه الروابط (noun or gerund)

In spite of - Despite - Regardless of + (gerund or noun)

e.g. : - In spite of her old age, she isn't married yet.
- Regardless of his wealth, he isn't satisfied with his life.
- Despite being wealthy, he isn't satisfied with his life.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن التعبير عن التناقض باستخدام (Whatever . However) في بداية الجملة كالآتي :

However + صفة / ظرف + فاعل + فعل + ...

e.g. : - However tall he is, he can't play basketball.
- However hard he works, he doesn't get a promotion.

Whatever + اسم + فاعل + فعل + ...

e.g. : - Whatever the wealth he has, he is sad.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن التعبير عن التناقض باستخدام (as) كالآتي :

صفة / ظرف + as + فاعل + فعل + ...

e.g. : - Short as he is, he can jump so high.
- Well as he plays, he doesn't win the match.

- In spite of / Despite + the fact that + subject فاعل + verb فعل ...

- لاحظ أن التركيبة السابقة يتبعها جملة كاملة :

e.g. : - Despite the fact that he is ill, he can work hard.

2 Conjunctions that express cause — روابط تدل على السبب

❶ للتعبير عن السبب تستخدم الروابط التالية ويتبعها جملة (فاعل + فعل + ...) :

(because - as - since) + subject + verb

e.g. : - She won the competition because / as / since she worked hard.
- Because / As / Since Soha has a heart problem, she can't do sport.

❷ للتعبير عن السبب تستخدم الروابط التالية ويتبعها (gerund أو noun) :

because of - due to - owing to - on account of - thanks to - through - for بسبب + noun / (inf. + ing)

e.g. : - My grandpa died due to a heart attack.
- Owing to his intelligence, he can do any difficult sum.
- Because of being ill, he went to hospital.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (Being + adj.) بمعنى (كونه / كونها / كونهم) للتعبير عن السبب :

e.g. : - Being ill, he went to hospital.

- لاحظ أن هذه التعبيرات يمكن أن يأتي بعدها جملة كاملة :

- Because of / Owing to / Due to / Thanks to / On account of the fact that + subject + verb ....

e.g. : - The teacher punished him because of being rude / because of the fact that he was rude.

3 Conjunctions that express result روابط تدل على النتيجة

- تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على النتيجة :

so - that is why - therefore - consequently - As a result of - Hence - thus

e.g. : - He was wet so he had a severe cold.
- Nada was born with a phobia of dogs therefore she can't stand seeing a dog in the street.

- كذلك يمكن استخدام جملة so (adj. / adv.) that / such (adj. + noun) that للتعبير عن النتيجة

e.g. : - The book was so successful that it was sold like sweet.
- It was such a successful book that it was sold like sweet.

4 Conjunctions that express time روابط زمنية تدل على الزمن / الوقت

- تستخدم الروابط الزمنية التالية لتدل على علاقة زمنية بين حدثين ويأتي بعدها جملة (فاعل + فعل) :

When - While - As (Just as) - After - Before
- By the time - till - until - As soon as

e.g. : - While it was raining, I fell down.
- After the train had left, Sally arrived at the station.
- By the time he got the prize, he had expected it.
- She didn't do the shopping till she had had her salary.
- We won't leave home until we have permission.
- As soon as Ali arrives, we will leave.

- لاحظ العلاقة بين الحدثين في الجمل السابقة.
- لاحظ أنه عند حذف الفاعل يستخدم (inf. + ing) بعد بعض هذه الروابط :

e.g. : - While raining, I fell down.

- يمكن استخدام (During) بدلاً من (While) ويتبعها (noun) :

e.g. : - I fell asleep during the film.

- لاحظ أنه تستخدم (On) بمعنى (When) ويتبعها (inf. + ing) أو (noun).

e.g. : - When she got the prize, she felt extremely excited.
- On getting the prize, she felt extremely excited.
- On his arrival, we started the party.

- يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (When):

e.g. : - When reading the new novel written by Tom, he felt shocked.

5 Conditionals الجمل الشرطية

• If Present Simple (زمن المضارع البسيط) , Present Simple (زمن المضارع البسيط) (Zero conditional)

e.g. : - If you put wood in water, it **floats**.

• If Present Simple (زمن المضارع البسيط) , will + inf. (زمن المستقبل البسيط) (First conditional)

e.g. : - If I **remember** her address, I **will tell** you.

• If Past Simple (زمن الماضي البسيط) , would + inf. / could / might + inf. (Second conditional)

e.g. : If I **lost** Ahmed's CD, I **would buy** him another one.

• If Past perfect (زمن الماضي التام) , would have + p.p. / could / might + have + p.p. (Third conditional)

e.g. : If I had been more careful, I wouldn't have lost my book.

- يمكن استخدام "Were" مكان "If" في الحالة الثانية :

- If she were a tour guide, she would tell him about the monuments.
Were she a tour guide, she would tell him about the monuments.
- If he played well, he would win the game.
Were he to play well, he would win the game.

- يمكن استخدام (In case of) مكان (If) في الاثبات ويأتي بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : If Ali worked hard, he wouldn't be fired يطرد من العمل.
In case of working hard, Ali wouldn't be fired.

- يمكن استخدام (But for / Without) مكان (If) فى النفى أو بدلاً من (Unless) ويأتى بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : - If Samia didn't eat vegetables, she wouldn't be healthy.
Without eating vegetables, Samia wouldn't be healthy.

6 Conjunctions that express purpose روابط تعبر عن الغرض

1 Subject + present → so that / in order that / in the hope that من أجل / لكى + فاعل + can / will / may + inf.

e.g. : - We save money in the hope that we will buy a car.

2 Subject + past → so that / in order that / in the hope that + فاعل + could / would / might + inf.

e.g. : - Ali went to the market so that he could buy some vegetables.

3 Subject + verb + to / so as to / in order to لكى + inf. المصدر

e.g. : - She went there in order to enjoy the fine weather.
- I study hard to reach my goal.

4 Subject + verb + not to / in order not to / so as not to + inf. لكى لا

e.g. : - I go to bed early in order not to be late for school.

5 Subject + verb + in the hope of + inf. + ing

e.g. : - I went home quickly in the hope of على أمل أن laying with my children before they slept.

6 Subject + verb + lest خشية أن + فاعل + inf. / should + inf.

e.g. : - She turned away from the window lest any one see / should see her.

7 Conjunctions that express addition روابط العطف والإضافة

1 and تُستخدم "and" لربط جملتين بإضافة شئ إلى شئ آخر (تربط بين جملتين)

e.g. : - We played tennis and went home.
- Ahmed is studying and Rodayna is cooking.

2 Besides + noun or (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - Besides doing homework, she helped her mother.
- She helped her mother besides doing homework.

: Besides that + subject فاعل + inf. بالإضافة إلى ذلك (جملة)

e.g. : - She did her homework. Besides that she helped her mother.

3 in addition to + noun / (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - In addition to doing homework, she helped her mother.
- She helped her mother in addition to doing homework.

4 In addition + جملة بالإضافة إلى ذلك

- تُستخدم in addition فى أول الجملة أو فى وسطها :

e.g. : - In addition she did homework, she helped her mother.
- She did homework . In addition, she helped her mother.

5 As well as + (inf. + ing). إذا كان فاعل الجملتين واحد بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - We went to the market. We went to the zoo.
- As well as going to the market, we went to the zoo.

- إذا كان الفاعلان مختلفين بالجملتين فإن الفعل يتبع فاعل الجملة الأولى فى حالة الربط بـ as well as كالآتى :

فعل يتبع فاعل الجملة الأولى ... + فاعل ثانى + as well as + فاعل أول

e.g. : - I as well as Ali have a car.
- Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.

6 not only ..... but also (as well) ليس هنا فقط ولكن أيضًا

e.g. : - She not only arrived late, but she also forgot her books.
- She not only arrived late, but she forgot her books as well.

- لاحظ : عند إستخدام Not only فى بداية الجملة نستخدم الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - Not only did she arrive late, but she also forgot her books.



8 Both ... and كلاً من

e.g. : - Mr Ahmed is a doctor. His wife is a doctor.

- Both Mr Ahmed and his wife are doctors.

- لاحظ : عند الربط بـ both ... and يكون الفعل فى حالة الجمع

يأتى بعد "Both of" ضمير مفعول جمع (you , us , them) ويمكن استخدامه كفاعل أو مفعول للجملة

e.g. : - Both of the girls are polite.

- My aunt visited both of us yesterday.

9 Neither ... nor لا ... ولا

- تُستخدم neither ... nor لربط جملتين فى حالة النفى :

e.g. : - Rodayna isn't at home. Her brother isn't at home.

- Neither Rodayna nor her brother is at home.

- لاحظ أن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى كالآتى :

e.g. : - Malak isn't lazy. Her sisters aren't lazy.

- Neither Malak nor her sisters are lazy.

- عند استخدام Neither فى أول الجملة يتقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل

e.g. : - I neither watched nor tried to watch the film.

- Neither did I watch nor tried to watch the film.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... Lemuel Gulliver was travelling at sea, there was a storm.
   a. Although b. If c. Because d. While
2. They were accused of stealing money .... they were innocent.
   a. despite b. although c. in spite of d. as
3. He failed the exam .... his intelligence.
   a. although b. however c. despite d. even though
4. Cheap .... the car was, I refused to buy it.
   a. however b. despite c. though d. as

5. They couldn't continue the race .... the bad storm.
   a. owing to b. because c. since d. as
6. He'd like to join the sports club .... he can get fit.
   a. so as to b. as c. so that d. in order
7. We visited Ahmed yesterday .... congratulate him on his success.
   a. so that b. in order to c. so as d. because
8. .... did he get full marks but he was chosen as the ideal student as well.
   a. As well as b. Not only c. Beside d. In addition to
9. .... he was in debt, we decided to help him.
   a. Since b. Because of c. Owing to d. In spite of
10. .... cleaning the house , she did the shopping.
    a. In addition b. As well as c. However d. Also
11. .... you say , I'll never believe you.
    a. Despite b. However c. Whatever d. In spite
12. .... swimming makes me fit, I don't like it.
    a. Although b. Despite c. In spite d. Because
13. I, as well as my friend, ... to leave at once.
    a. am b. is c. are d. were
14. Not only my brothers but also my sister .... going to Alexandria.
    a. are b. is c. were d. have been
15. Neither the library nor the bookshops .... that book.
    a. has b. have c. is having d. are having



PART 2

Skills

المهارات

موقع التفوق

AltFwoK.Com

1- Reading Skill

2- Writing Skill

3- Translation

١. مهارة القراءة

٢. مهارة الكتابة

٣. الترجمة

تنويه

تابع مستواك أولا بأول الكترونياً



1 Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة

How to answer a comprehension :

* كيفية الإجابة على قطعة الفهم :

قطعة الفهم عبارة عن نص، يجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة (تبدأ بأدوات استفهام) :

لابد أن تقيس أسئلة قطعة الفهم المهارات التالية :

1 Giving the main idea or understanding reference

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية او فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Topic الموضوع

- The topic / main idea of the passage is ....

= The text is mainly about ....

- موضوع النص هو / الفكرة الرئيسية للنص هي ....

= What is the topic / main idea of the passage?

= ما هو موضوع النص / الفكرة الرئيسية؟

- Which of the following titles best summarizes the main idea of the passage?

- أي من العناوين التالية توجز الفكرة الرئيسية للنص ؟

Source المصدر

- This passage is part of / taken from / extracted from ....

- هذا النص هو جزء من / مأخوذ من / مقتبس من ....

Title العنوان

- Which of the following would be the best title for the passage / story / article / extract?

- أي مما يلي يُعد العنوان الأفضل للقطعة / للقصة / للمقال / للاقتباس؟

Reference

- The underlined word / pronoun refers to ....

- الكلمة / الضمير الذى تحته خط يشير إلى ....

2 Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Synonym المعنى / المرادف

- In line .... the word .... is closest in meaning to ....

- فى سطر رقم .... ، كلمة .... أقرب ما يكون فى المعنى لـ ....

- The underlined word .... gives the meaning of ....

- الكلمة التى تحتها خط .... تعطى معنى ....

- Which of the following is equivalent in meaning to .... ?

- أى مما يلى مرادف فى المعنى لـ .... ؟

- The word .... in the passage gives the synonym of ....

- كلمة .... فى النص تعطى مرادف ....

Antonym التضاد / العكس

- In the .... paragraph, the word .... is the antonym of ....

- فى الفقرة رقم .... ، كلمة .... مضاد لـ ....

- The word .... in the passage gives the opposite of ....

- كلمة .... فى النص تعطى عكس ....

- Which of the following gives the antonym of .... ?

- أى مما يلى مضاد فى المعنى لـ .... ؟

- The word .... has two meanings in the passage. Explain.

- كلمة .... لها معنيين فى النص. وضح.



3 Understanding details and extracting information

فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Yes / No questions	- أسئلة تبدأ بفعل مساعد
Wh-questions	- أسئلة تبدأ بكلمات استفهام

- أدوات وتعبيرات استفهامية هامة :

about whom	عن من	since when	منذ متى
for how long	لكم من الوقت	to what extent	إلى أى مدى
for whom	لأجل مَن	to whom	إلى مَن
from where	من أين	what	ما / ماذا
how	كيف	what ... for = for what	لماذا
how come	لماذا	what colour	ما لون
how far	كم بعد / لأى مدى	what size	ما حجم
how high	كم ارتفاع	what time	ما وقت
how long	كم طول المدة / المسافة	when	متى
how many	كم عدد	where	أين
how many times	كم مرة	where ... to	إلى أين
how much	كم كمية / كم ثمن	which	أى
how often	كم مرة	who	من (فاعل أو مفعول عاقل)
how old	كم عمر	whom	من (مفعول عاقل)
how tall	كم طول	whose	لمن / ملك من
in / at which	في أي	why	لماذا
in what way	بأي طريقة	with whom	مع من

ونماذج أخرى مثل :

True / Correct صحيح

- According to the passage, all of the following is true EXCEPT ....
- حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي صحيح ما عدا
- Based on the passage, which of the following is true about .... ?
- حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعدُّ صحيحًا فيما يخص .... ؟

False / incorrect خاطئ

- According to the passage, all of the following is false EXCEPT ....
- حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي خطأ ما عدا
- Based on the passage, what is probably untrue about .... ?
- حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعدُّ غير صحيح فيما يخص .... ؟

4 Critical Thinking Skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

عن أسئلة التفكير النقدى المرتبطة بقطع الفهم :

- تعتمد أسئلة التفكير النقدى على الفكرة الرئيسية للنص أو رأى / وجهة نظر القارئ.
- لا تطلب هذه الأسئلة معلومات مباشرة موجودة في النص.
- لابد أن تكون إجابة سؤال التفكير النقدى كما يلي :

١. تدل على فهم الموضوع والسؤال. ٢. منطقية أو عقلانية. ٣. صحيحة من الناحية اللغوية.

- نماذج من أسئلة التفكير النقدى :

❶ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على الرأي الشخصي للطالب بخصوص الكاتب أو الأفكار الموجودة بالنص مثل :

- Do you think this passage was written by a young man or an old person? What showed this to you?
- هل تظن أن كاتب هذا النص شاب أم شخص كبير في السن؟ ما الذي أوحى إليك بذلك؟
- What job do you think the writer of this passage is? How do you know?
- في رأيك، ما وظيفة كاتب هذا النص؟ كيف تعرف ذلك؟

❷ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على قياس القدرة على التعبير عن اتفاق أو اختلاف مع ما ورد في النص مع ذكر السبب :

- Do you agree with the ideas the writer has introduced /raised? Why / Why not?
- هل تتفق مع الأفكار التي طرحها الكاتب؟ لم / لم لا؟
- Does the writer's idea make sense to you? Why / Why not?
- هل فكرة الكاتب مفهومة لديك؟ لم / لم لا؟

❸ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على طلب أمثلة من عند الطالب لإثبات صحة أو خطأ ما ورد بالنص :

- What do you think of what the writer has said? Give examples of your own that can prove / disprove that.
- ما رأيك فيما قاله الكاتب؟ اذكر أمثلة من عندك تثبت صحة أو خطأ ذلك.
- How would you put .... into your own words?
- كيف يمكنك صياغة .... بأسلوبك؟
- What do you think would be an example of .... ?
- ماذا تعتقد أنه مثالاً لـ .... ؟

= Give an example of .... = Illustrate ....

- اذكر مثالاً لـ .... / وضّح ....

❹ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على أن يفترض الطالب أنه في موقف معين وكيف سيكون رد فعله :

- If you were the writer, would you have the same point of view? Give your reason(s).
- لو كنت مكان الكاتب، هل كنت ستتبنى نفس الرأى؟ اذكر السبب / الأسباب.
- What would you (do) if you were in the writer's position? Explain why.
- ما الذي كنت (ستفعله) لو أنك في مكان الكاتب؟ وضح السبب.
- If .... hadn't ...., what do you think would have happened?
- لو .... لم يكن ...., ماذا تعتقد كان سيحدث ؟

5 تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على تقييم عرض الكاتب للموضوع وهل هو مناسب أم لا :

- Has the writer succeeded in making his ideas clear? Explain your opinion in detail.

- هل نجح الكاتب في توضيح أفكاره؟ وضح وجهة نظرك بالتفصيل.

- Is the writer's style suitable for the topic? How did he develop his ideas?

- هل أسلوب الكاتب مناسب للموضوع؟ كيف طوّر أفكاره؟

6 تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على تخيل ردود أفعال فئات معينة من الناس تجاه الأفكار الواردة بالنص :

- How do you think poor people / patients would view these ....? Illustrate.

- فى رأيك، كيف سيكون رأى الفقراء / المرضى تجاه ذلك ....؟ وضح.

- How would people who differ in age or gender react to ....?

- كيف سيكون رد فعل الناس الذين يختلفون فى العمر أو الجنس تجاه ....؟

7 تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على التعبير عن المغزى أو الدروس المستفادة أو القيم الموجودة بالنص :

- How can you make use of (benefit from) ....?

- كيف يمكنك أن تستفيد من ....؟

- How could .... be put into practice?

- كيف يمكن تطبيق ....؟

- What is the moral of the story?

- ما المغزى الأخلاقى للقصة؟

Vocabulary used in Reading comprehension questions :

مفردات شائعة الاستخدام فى الأسئلة المرتبطة بفهم المقروء

- لابد من مراجعة المفردات التالية، فستساعدك على فهم الأسئلة الواردة على نص القراءة :

abbreviation	اختصار	lead to	يؤدى إلى
according to	طبقًا لـ	lesson	درس
advantages	مزايا	line	سطر
analyse	يحلل	main idea	فكرة رئيسية
analysis	تحليل	make a comment	يعلق
antonym	مضاد / عكس	make clear	يوضح
apply to	ينطبق على	meaning	معنى
article	مقال	mention	يذكر
author	مؤلف	merits = advantages	مزايا
back with evidence	يدعم بالدليل	moral	مغزى أخلاقى
based on	قائم على	moralities	قيم أخلاقية
be against	يعارض	opinion	رأى
be for	يؤيد	opposite	عكس
bold	بارز	other than	بخلاف / غير ذلك
case	قضية	paragraph	فقرة
choice	اختيار	paraphrase	يعيد صياغة
claim	يدعى / يزعم	passage	قطعة القراءة
classification	تصنيف	perspective	منظور
classify	يُصَنِّف	point of view	رأى / وجهة نظر
comment	يعلق / تعليق	practical	عملى

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
core	جوهر / لب	predict	يتنبأ
demerits = disadvantages	عيوب	principle	مبدأ
discuss	يناقش	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
effect	أثر / تأثير	quality	سمة / ميزة
equal	مساوي	rather than	بدلًا من
equivalent	مرادف	reject	يعارض / يرفض
essay	مقال	result in	يؤدي إلى
essence	جوهر / لب	short for	اختصار لـ
example	مثال	simplify	يُبسِّط
explain	يشرح / يفسر	state	يَذْكُر
express	يعبر عن	summarise	يُلَخِّص
extra	إضافي / آخر	support	يدعم
impact	انطباع / أثر	synonym	مُرادِف
impression	انطباع / تأثير	underlined	تحته خط
introduce	يطرح / يقدم	value	قيمة
		writer	كاتب

Read and learn

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

All the different plants and animals in a natural community are in a state of balance. This balance is achieved by the plants and animals interacting with each other and with their non-living surrounding. An example of a natural community is woodland, and woodland is usually dominated by a particular species but there are also many other plants.



The plants of a community are the producers : they use carbon dioxide, oxygen, water and nitrogen to build up their tissues using energy in the form of sunlight. The plant tissues form food for the plant eating animals (herbivores) which are in turn eaten by the flesh-eating animals (carnivores). Thus, plants produce the basic food supply for all animals of the community. The animals themselves are the consumers, and are either herbivores or carnivores in a woodland community.

Examples of herbivores in a woodland community are rabbits, deer, mice, and snails, and insects, such as aphids and **caterpillars**. The herbivores are sometimes eaten by the carnivores. Woodland carnivores are of all sizes.

Some carnivores feed on herbivores and some feed on the smaller carnivores, while some feed on both : a tawny owl will eat beetles and shrews as well as voles and mice. These food relationships between the different members of the community are known as food chains or food webs. All food chains start with plants. The links of the chains are formed by the herbivores that eat the plants and the carnivores that feed on the herbivores. There are some organisms at the base of a food chain than at the top : for example, there are many more green plants than carnivores in a community.

Another important section of the community is made up of the decomposers. They include the bacteria and fungi that live in the soil and feed on dead animals and plants. By doing this, they break down the tissues of the dead organisms and release mineral salts into the soil.

Understanding details & extracting information فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Decomposers .... soil for plants.
   a. disturb b. enrich c. kill d. spoil
2. The sun is .... nutrition in plants.
   a. catalyst b. an element
   c. responsible for d. secondary for
3. According to the passage, a natural community comprises ....
   a. living organsisms b. non-living organsisms
   c. neither of them d. both of them

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (تخمين معاني مفردات اللغة في سياق)

4. The underlined word "caterpillars" in the passage is similar in size to ....

a. forests b. mice c. moth d. snails

Critical thinking skill (مهارة التفكير الناقد)

B. Answer the following questions :

5. According to the passage, what do you think the writer's message to man?
   a. Man should interact with the elements of nature to benefit from them.
   b. Man should interact with the elements of nature to damage them.
   c. Man should be indifferent.
   d. Man should leave the earth.

6. What are the three components of a food chain mentioned in the passage ?
   a. Pasta, chili & meat.
   b. Vegetable, carrots & parsley.
   c. Plants, herbivores & carnivores.
   d. Peas, fungi & mushrooms.

7. From your view point, what is meant by the balance in the passage?
   a. balance between man and woman.
   b. balance between companies and producers.
   c. balance between herbivores and carnivores.
   d. balance between elements of nature.

8. Woodland has .... species of plants.
   a. particular b. common c. surrounding d. interacting

9. Woodland .... are of all sizes.
   a. herbivores b. carnivores c. reptiles d. mammals

10. All food Chains start with ....
   a. meat b. plants c. men d. organisms

Practise by yourself (تدرب بنفسك)

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People may be divided into two types, winners and losers. Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes. They do their own thinking. They listen to others and evaluate what they say, and then they make up their minds.

Although they may fail at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners overcome their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves, but they can postpone it if duty calls.

Losers, <u>**on the other hand**</u>, never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many causes why people can become losers : disease, poor nutrition, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. These can interfere with the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers **hang onto them** and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel **anxious**, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When the winners fail at times, they ....
   a. always keep their self-confidence
   b. are afraid to try new things
   c. always repeat their own mistakes
   d. spend their time waiting

2. Losers are people who ....
   a. try to change
   b. blame others for their mistakes
   c. overcome their bad mistakes
   d. learn to take responsibility

3. The opposite of "**hang onto situations**" in the last paragraph is ....
   a. give them up
   b. delay them
   c. dream of them
   d. be independent

4. The underlined phrase "<u>**on the other hand**</u>" means ....
   a. however b. because c. as d. so

5. Winners are ....
   a. responsible b. dependent c. careless d. lazy

6. Losers need to ....
   a. change their ideas about others
   b. stay losers forever
   c. hate winners
   d. fight winners

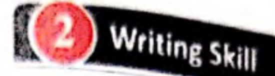
7. Which of the following is correct ?
   a. People should turn failure into success.
   b. People can't succeed.
   c. People can't challenge to win.
   d. People should be careless.

8. The word "**anxious**" has the same meaning of ....
   a. brave b. responsible c. dependent d. worried

9. Losers are afraid to .... new things .
   a. give b. try c. repeat d. stay

10. One of the causes of being a loser is ....
   a. good nutrition b. kindness
   c. bad nutrition d. good relationships





2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

Forms of composition you have to master for the exam
الصيغ التعبيرية التي يجب أن تجيد كتابتها للامتحان

عزيزى الطالب / عزيزتى الطالبة :

- لقد أصبحت مهارة الكتابة ركيزة أساسية فى نظام التقويم الجديد، وعلى الطالب أن ينمى هذه المهارة لتصل لدرجة الإتقان ويكون مستعدًا للكتابة عن أى موضوع ، وبصفة عامة يجب أن يتقن الطالب كتابة جميع الصيغ التالية :

1. A narrative essay /short story — مقال سردى أو قصة قصيرة
2. A descriptive essay — مقال وصفى
3. A comparative/argumentative essay — مقال مقارن (مقارنة بين الأشياء لإظهار التشابه والاختلاف) / مقال جدلى

- Different forms like : formal and informal emails, job description, cooking recipes, letters, invitation cards, a book review or brochure.

صيغ مختلفة مثل: رسالة البريد الإلكترونى الرسمية وغير الرسمية - وصف الوظائف - وصفات الطهى - الخطابات - بطاقات الدعوة - عرض نقدي لكتاب - نشرة ... إلخ

ما المطلوب منك في الامتحان بخصوص الموضوع الإنشائى؟

- كتابة حوالى (١٥٠) كلمة بأحد الصيغ (مقال - قصة ...)
- يتم إعطاء موضوعين أو أكثر لاختيار أحدهم للكتابة عنه
- يتم صياغة رأس الموضوع على شكل:
  - عبارة قد تحتوى علي العنوان المطلوب مباشرة
  - حكمة أو قول مأثور يتخذه الطالب محورًا أساسيًا لكتابة الموضوع الإنشائى
  - سؤال مباشر

أمثلة :

Write about 150 words on ONE only of the following topics :

- An essay or short story about the statement: "For every joy, there is a price to pay."

- An essay or short story about the statement: "Setting a goal for yourself is the first step to achieve your ambition."
- Air pollution
- Why is it necessary to develop education in Egypt?

- وفيما يلى سيتم عرض مبسط لكيفية كتابة أهم ثلاث أشكال تعبيرية وهى :

❶ Essay writing	كتابة المقال
❷ Short story writing	كتابة القصة القصيرة

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

- ما الفرق بين الفقرة (Paragraph) والمقال (Essay) ؟

- الفقرة (Paragraph) عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل تتعلق بفكرة معينة.
- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن مجموعة من الفقرات (Paragraphs) تناقش كل واحدة منها فكرة فرعية متعلقة بالفكرة الرئيسية للمقال ككل.
- يُفَضَّل أن يحتوى المقال على أربعة فقرات على الأقل.

- إرشادات هامة لكتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال:

- عند كتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج المقال بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون:

- من حيث الشكل Form
  - تحسين الخط وترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
  - ترك مسافة صغيرة (١ سم تقريبًا) فى بداية السطر الأول فقط من كل فقرة.
  - لابد أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف (Capital).
  - وضع نقطة (.) فى نهاية كل جملة، أو علامة استفهام (?) فى نهاية السؤال.
- من حيث المضمون Content
  - يجب الاهتمام بالفكرة التى تعبر عنها الفقرة وتسلسلها مع أفكار الموضوع ككل.
  - من المهم جدًا أن تلتزم بالحديث عن الفكرة المطلوبة بموضوعية وبساطة.
  - ابدأ الفقرة بـ (topic sentence) أى جملة رئيسية تحتوى على الفكرة التى تناقشها الفقرة.
  - لابد من تنويع بدايات الجمل.
  - استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذى تكتبه.
  - استخدم جمل بسيطة حتى لا تقع فى أخطاء، أنت فى غنى عنها.



Title العنوان

↓

Education and Technology

Identation المسافة البادئة فى أول كل فقرة

Introduction المقدمة

→ It is clear that technology has made it easier to get, store and use information. That's what has made it important to use modern technology in the field of education. In this essay, I'm going to write about the forms of technology we can use in education and how they will make the educational process more effective and enjoyable.

Body الجزء الأساسى

→ Computers can be used to store and control electronic information. A teacher can use his or her computer to prepare lessons in a more attractive way. Smart boards have partly replaced traditional blackboards. A smart board makes learning more interactive تفاعلى and exciting. Children learn from videos that are available on the internet. This in turn will make the education process more enjoyable and effective.

→ Modern technology will make education more effective. A student will be able to search for information in different sources. With the help of their teachers, students will learn for life not for exams. Most exams will be done online. No stressing exams will make students and their parents suffer any more.

Conclusion الخاتمة

→ To conclude, the use of modern technology in the educational field will be very useful. However, there's a long way to go before achieving this. So, every citizen must be patient and cooperative.

The main parts of the essay الأجزاء الرئيسية للمقال

(1) Introduction : المقدمة

- هي الفقرة الأولى في المقال وتطرح الفكرة أو الهدف من كتابة الموضوع، وكيف سيتم تسلسل وعرض الأفكار.

- بالنسبة للطالب الذي يجيد الكتابة، هناك أساليب مختلفة يمكن أن يبدأ بها فقرة المقدمة مثل :

❶ جملة عامة تعبر بها عن الفكرة التي يدور حولها الموضوع :

- مثال : عند كتابة موضوع عن دور المعلم "The role of teachers" يمكن أن نبدأ كالتالي:

- No one can deny that teachers play a very important role in both students' education and their personal lives.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن المعلمين يلعبون دوراً هاماً في تعليم الطلاب وحياتهم الخاصة على السواء.

Or :

- We all owe much to our teachers and the important influence they have on our lives.

- جميعنا ندين بالكثير لمعلمينا وتأثيرهم المهم في حياتنا.

❷ حكمة أو مثل :

- A good teacher can inspire hope, ignite the imagination, and instill a love of learning.

- يمكن للمعلم الجيد أن يلهم الأمل ويشعل الخيال ويغرس حب التعلم.

❸ جملة تتضمن تعريف بالموضوع :

- A good teacher is not that person who gives the answers out to students but understands their needs and challenges and gives them tools of success.

- المعلم الجيد ليس مجرد شخص يقدم الإجابات للطلاب، ولكنه يفهم احتياجاتهم وتحدياتهم ويوفر أدوات لمساعدتهم على النجاح.

❹ سؤال عام يتم طرحه في البداية لإثارة الموضوع :

- What role do teachers play in shaping the future of the nation?

- ما الدور الذي يلعبه المعلمون في صياغة مستقبل الأمة؟

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التى تصلح لموضوعات المقالات الإيجابية

- بالنسبة للطالب الذى لا يجيد الكتابة، هناك مقدمات يمكن أن تساعده مثل :

- We all agree that ... is one of the most important things in our life and has its vital role nowadays.
  - نتفق جميعًا أن ... واحد من أهم الأشياء فى حياتنا وله دورًا حيويًا هذه الأيام.
- We all admit the importance and necessity of ... in our life.
  - كلنا نقر بأهمية وضرورة... فى حياتنا.
- No wonder if we say that ... has (have) its (their) good and positive effects on us.
  - لا عجب إذا قلنا أن ... له آثار طيبة وإيجابية علينا جميعًا.
- We all agree that .... is (are) very necessary and plays (play) an important part in our life.
  - كلنا نتفق أن ... ضرورى جدًا ويلعب دورًا هامًا فى حياتنا.
- We should put into consideration that ... has (have) become one (some) of the most important things in everyone's life.
  - يجب أن نضع فى الاعتبار أن ... قد أصبح واحدًا من أهم الأشياء فى حياة كل شخص.
- In my opinion, ... is really important and necessary nowadays. It may have good and positive effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring all the good to our society.
  - في رأيى ... هو حقا مهم وضروري هذه الأيام وقد يكون له الأثر الطيب والإيجابي علينا جميعًا وإننى أعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يعود بالنفع على مجتمعنا.
- No one can deny that ... plays a very important role in our life.
  - لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن ... يلعب دورًا هامًا فى حياتنا.
- There is no doubt that this subject has affected our thought and caused a great impact on us.
  - لا شك أن هذا الموضوع قد أثر على فكرنا وأحدث تأثيرًا بالغًا علينا.

* لاحظ أنه إذا كان الموضوع اسم جمع يراعى استخدام أفعال تناسب الفاعل.

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التى تصلح لموضوعات المقالات السلبية

- In my opinion, ... is serious and harmful nowadays. It may have bad and negative effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring evils to our society.
  - من وجهة نظري ... خطير وضار هذه الأيام، وقد يكون له آثار سيئة وسلبية علينا جميعا. وأنني أعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يجلب الشرور إلى مجتمعنا
- There is no doubt that ... is one of the most dangerous phenomena in our life and has its bad and negative effects nowadays.
  - مما لا شك فيه أن ... هي واحدة من أخطر الظواهر في حياتنا وكذلك له آثاره السيئة والسلبية في وقتنا هذا
- Frankly speaking, ... is one of the worst things in our life. Thus, our state spares no effort to fight it.
  - بصراحة أقول أن ... واحدا من أسوأ الأشياء في حياتنا. وعلى هذا فإن دولتنا لا تدخر جهدا لكي تكافح وتقاوم هذا الشيء.

(2) Body :

مثن الموضوع (الجزء الرئيسى)

- لكى يكون المقال الذى تكتبه معبّرًا ومفهومًا ومؤثرًا، عليك بمراعاة ما يلى :

١. اقرأ عناوين الموضوعات جيدًا واختر أفضلهم وأسهلهم بالنسبة لك.
٢. تأكد أنك تكتب عن الموضوع المطلوب.
٣. لابد من تقسيم الموضوع لعدد من الأفكار.
٤. تحدث عن كل فكرة فى فقرة مستقلة.
٥. استخدم جمل بسيطة وواضحة.
٦. تجنب الكتابة بضمير المتكلم (إلا إذا كنت تتحدث عن شيء يخصك مثل هواياتك أو عاداتك أو شيء مفضل لديك ... إلخ).
٧. يجب تنويع بدايات الجمل، ولتحقيق هذا الهدف يمكنك أن تستخدم ما يناسب من العبارات التالية فى بدايات الجمل :

- Everyone knows that + جملة	- يعرف الجميع أن ...
- I don't exaggerate when I say that + جملة	- لست أبالغ عندما أقول أن ...
- I reveal no secret when I say that + جملة	- لا أفشى سرًا عندما أقول أن ...
- It can't be denied that + جملة	- لا أحد يمكنه أن ينكر أن ...
- It goes without saying that + جملة	- غنى عن البيان أن ...
- It is crystal clear that + جملة	- من الواضح تماما أن ...
- It is known that + جملة	- من المعروف أن ...
- It is taken for granted that + جملة	- من المسلم به أن ...
- There is no doubt that + جملة	- مما لا شك فيه ...

٨. عند التعبير عن رأيك الخاص يمكن أن تبدأ جملتك بأحد التعبيرات التالية :

- I think / believe that ... أعتقد أن ...
- In my opinion, ... من وجهة نظرى...
- As far as I am concerned, ... على حد علمى...

٩. عندما تريد أن تعطى مثالًا ابدأ جملتك بـ :

- For example, ... / For instance, ... على سبيل المثال ...

(3) Conclusion :

الخاتمة (الخلاصة)

- غالبًا ما تتضمن فقرة الخاتمة ملخصًا (summary) للأفكار التى تم التعبير عنها أو النتيجة التى وصلت إليها.
- هذه النتيجة قد تكون نصيحة أو تحذير أو إعطاء رأى أو غيره.

بعض الجمل الختامية التى يمكن استخدامها فى الفقرات الختامية للمقال

- Finally, it is quite clear that ...(الموضوع) ... is really...(صفة).
  - أخيرًا، من الواضح أن ... فعلاً ...
- I can end my speech saying that...
  - يمكننى أن أنهى حديثى بالقول أن ...
- In brief, I think that ... is really ...
  - باختصار، أعتقد أن ... يكون حقًا ...
- In the end, I hope I had pointed out all the aspects of this subject and made it clear.
  - في الختام، أتمنى أن أكون قد تطرقت إلى كل جوانب الموضوع وجعلته واضحًا.
- To conclude, I hope my words were enough to illuminate the most vital sides of this subject.
  - ختامًا، أتمنى أن تكون كلماتى كانت كافية لإلقاء الضوء على أكثر جوانب هذا الموضوع أهمية.
- To sum up, one can say that ... is really ...
  - الخلاصة، يمكن للمرء أن يقول أن ... يكون فعلاً ...

2 Short Story writing كتابة القصة القصيرة

- ما الفرق بين المقال (Essay) والقصة القصيرة (Short story) ؟

- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن عرض أو نقاش لفكرة رئيسية عن طريق تقسيمها لمجموعة أفكار جزئية، ويكون العرض موضوعي ومباشر.
- القصة القصيرة (Short story) عبارة عن وصف لموقف معين أو سرد لأحداث معينة.
- للقصة عناصر معينة مثل : الحبكة - الشخصيات - المكان والزمان - الحوار - المغزى الأخلاقي ... إلخ.

- ما أوجه التشابه بين المقال (Essay) والقصة القصيرة (Short story) ؟

- التشابه فقط يكون في استخدام اللغة، فالقصة مثل المقال تنقسم إلى فقرات (Paragraphs) يتناول كل منها فكرة معينة.
- القصة المطلوبة في نفس حجم المقال حوالي (١٥٠) كلمة.
- لابد من استخدام لغة بسيطة واضحة.
- يجب مراعاة التسلسل الزمني للأحداث.
- لابد من مراعاة علامات الترقيم.

إرشادات هامة لكتابة القصة القصيرة :

- عند كتابة كل قصة قصيرة، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج القصة بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون :

(1) Plot حبكة القصة (الأحداث)

- وهي الأسلوب المُحكَم الذي يتم به عرض الأحداث وتصاعدها وصولاً لذروة الموقف حتى الوصول للنهاية .

(2) Setting المكان والزمان

- لابد من تحديد المدى الزمني والمكان الذى تدور فيه الأحداث.

(3) Characters الشخصيات

- يجب الاهتمام بعرض وتطوير الشخصيات حتى تبدو حقيقية بالنسبة للقارئ، فالشخصيات هى التى تقوم بالأحداث فى القصة ولابد أن تتطور مع تطور الأحداث.

(4) Narrating السرد

- يجب الاهتمام بأسلوب الكتابة، واستخدام الجمل القصيرة يعطى تشويقًا ويجعل تسلسل الأحداث أكثر وضوحًا.

(5) Moral المغزى الأخلاقى

- لابد أن يكون للقصة مغزى أخلاقى أو درس مستفاد يخرج به القارئ.

Short Story Model نموذج للقصة القصيرة

A situation of great fear

I lived in a small village where most farmers kept dogs to guard their animals and farms. They regarded اعتبروا dogs as a kind of danger alarm إنذار بالخطر at night because dogs barked كانت تنبح in the streets. When farmers heard dogs' barking at night, they got ready to face the expected danger.

I was a young boy of about five when this situation took place. حدث My uncle, who was a young man then, asked me to go with him to the farm. My father didn't want me to go but when I started to cry, he allowed me to go.

There on the farm, my uncle was busy doing some jobs here and there. I wandered around the field. I didn't realise that I had gone far away from my uncle.

Suddenly, I found myself face to face with a party مجموعة of five large dogs. They all looked at me in a frightening way, their mouths were open and their tongues were hanging out.

I turned around and started to run. Fear made my legs weak. I was breathless and had no power to run. In seconds I was on the ground and the dogs surrounded me. I felt it was the end.

I was saved by a farmer who was in a nearby field. He carried me home where he told my father what had happened. I have never liked dogs since then.

Follow your progress in writing skill

UNIT 1

1. Write an essay of about (150) words on eco-tourism.

....

....

....

UNIT 2

2. Write an essay of about (150) words on a famous person.

....

....

....

UNIT 3

3. Write an essay of about (150) words on describing a character from a book, film or TV who is similar to you.

....

....

....

UNIT 4

4. Write an essay of about (150) words on to a friend telling him about a place you would like to visit on holiday. Include reasons why you want to go there, what you would do there and what time of year you would like to go.

....

....

....

UNIT 5

5. Write an essay of about (150) words on the internet, possible advantages, disadvantages and how to protect yourself online.

....

....

....

UNIT 6

6. Write an essay of about (150) words on a summary of a story you read and enjoyed.

....

....

....



3 Translation

الترجمة

السادة معلمي اللغة الإنجليزية، أبنائنا وبناتنا طلبة و طالبات المرحلة الثانوية :

نقدم لكم هذا الجهد المتواضع "El-Moasser Translation Guide" كإسهام بسيط منا للقضاء نهائيا على مشكلة الترجمة بالنسبة لأبنائنا في المرحلة الثانوية، وذلك باستخدام أسلوب السؤال و الإجابة الراقية السلسة البسيطة في عرض المادة العلمية الخاصة بكيفية الترجمة ، وقد تم تقسيم المادة العلمية في هذا الدليل إلى عدد من الحصص ، و في كل حصة نتناول جزئية محددة ثم نعقبها بتدريبات مُتعلقة بما تم عرضه في الحصة.

تنويه : كل مجموعة تدريبات يتبعها جدول مرتب أبجديا للمفردات الهامة للطالب، كما يوجد جدول لبعض التعبيرات الهامة في نهاية هذا الجزء.

Introduction — Expressing the sense of (words or text) ترجمة المعنى

السؤال : هل المقصود بالترجمة ترجمة الكلمات الموجودة بالجملة حرفيًا ؟

طبعا لا . فالترجمة تعني نقل المعنى من لغة إلى أخرى دون التقيد بالألفاظ . لاحظ ترجمة الجملة التالية:

- Diamond cuts diamond

الماس يقطع الماس.

هذه ترجمة حرفية ولا تؤدي معنى المقولة الإنجليزية . لكن إذا أردنا أن نترجم بشكل صحيح فنقول لا يفل الحديد إلا الحديد :

- It's raining cats and dogs.

إنها تمطر بغزارة.

ولكي تترجم بشكل صحيح عليك بمراعاة ما يلي :

(أ) اقرأ النص الذي تريد أن تترجمه بالكامل لكي تفهم الفكرة العامة له.

(ب) اقرأ النص من جديد قراءة جيدة لتعرف ما الذي يعنيه الكاتب وكيف كان إحساسه حين قال هذا الكلام، فمثلا كيف تترجم الجملة التالية ؟

- Ahmed is always listening to loud music.

أعتقد أنك ستترجمها كالتالي : « يستمع أحمد دائما إلى موسيقى صاخبة »

وتلك بالطبع ترجمة غير سليمة . حيث أن استخدام "always" مع المضارع المستمر "is listening" يوحي بضيق وضجر المتحدث. لذلك فإنه من الدقة أن تترجم الجملة كما يلي: « يستمع أحمد دائما إلى تلك الموسيقى الصاخبة! ».

لاحظ أننا استخدمنا صيغة السؤال و علامة استفهام رغم أن الجملة الأصلية ليست كذلك ، فالأهم هو نقل المعنى بالإحساس الموجود في النص الأصلي.

(جـ) لا تترجم الكلمات كمعاني مستقلة . لكن حسب استخدامها في السياق . لاحظ كيف تترجم الجملة التالية:

- The teacher asks me to use my right hand to draw a right angle right now.

لاحظ تكرار كلمة "right" ثلاث مرات بثلاث معان مختلفة :

- right hand اليد اليمنى - right angle زاوية قائمة - right now الآن على الفور

وهكذا تكون ترجمة الجملة كالتالي: « يطلب مني المعلم أن أستخدم يدي اليمنى لأرسم زاوية قائمة الآن على الفور ».

(د) اقرأ النص الذي قمت بترجمته ، هل فهمت نفس المعنى الذي فهمته من النص الأصلي؟ هل وصل إليك من النص المُترجم نفس الإحساس الذي يصل من النص الأصلي؟ إذا لم يصل إليك نفس المعنى بنفس الإحساس ، فالترجمة غير سليمة.

Part 1 Translation from Arabic into English

الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى الإنجليزية

1 Starting the English Sentence كيفية بدء الجملة الإنجليزية

السؤال : كيف أبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية في الترجمة ؟

(أ) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمعلوم فهي تبدأ بالفاعل:

مثال : اكتشف الدكتور فاروق الباز المياه الجوفية تحت الصحراء الغربية.

- Dr Farouk El-Baz discovered underground water under the Western Desert.

(ب) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمجهول فهي تبدأ بالمفعول الذي ينوب عن الفاعل.

مثال : بُني السد العالي لتخزين مياه النيل.

- The High Dam was built to store the water of the Nile.

(جـ) إذا كانت جملة أمر تكون الترجمة كالتالي :

يتكون الأمر المثبت في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

→ **Inf.** الفعل في المصدر **+ obj.** مفعول **+ comp.** تكملة

مثال : اعمل بجد واحصل على قدر كاف من النوم.

- Work hard and get enough sleep.

- يمكن أن توضع "always" في بداية جملة الأمر المثبت لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : دومًا ساعد الآخرين وقت الحاجة.

- Always help others in need.

- يتكون الأمر المنفى (النهى) في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

→ **Don't + inf.** الفعل في المصدر **+ obj.** مفعول **+ comp.** تكملة

مثال : لا تأخذ أي أدوية دون استشارة الطبيب.

- Don't take any medicines without consulting the doctor.

- يمكن أن تستخدم "Never" بدلًا من "Don't" في بداية جملة النهى لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : إياك أن تُصادق الأشرار.

- Never make friends with evil people.

(د) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالاً بـ «هل»

ابدأ بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة التالية حسب الزمن:

- Am / Is / Are / Was / Were / Do / Does / Did / Have / Has / Had
- Can / Could / Will / Would / Shall / Should / May / Might / Must / Ought / Need / Dare ....

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فاعل إذا كان السؤال مبنيا للمعلوم :

مثال : هل سبق أن قرأت رواية لتشارلز ديكنز؟ (لاحظ الفعل فى زمن المضارع التام)

- Have you ever read a Charles Dickens Novel?

مثال : أتمارس الرياضة بشكل يومى؟ / هل أنت معتاد على ممارسة الرياضة يوميًا ؟ (لاحظ أن الفعل فى صيغة المضارع)

- Do you practise sport every day?

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص مفعول إذا كان السؤال مبنيا للمجهول :

مثال : هل شُرِح لك هذا الدرس بالأمس؟

- Was this lesson explained to you yesterday?

مثال : هل جرت العادة أن تنظف حجرتك كل صباح؟

- Is your room cleaned every morning?

- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ(أليس / ألا) تبدأ الترجمة بالفعل المساعد المنفي:

مثال : ألست تتبع نظاما غذائيا؟ / أليس من عاداتك اتباع نظامًا غذائيًا ؟

- Don't you follow a diet?

مثال : ألا تهتم بمشاهدة الأفلام؟ (عادات فى الحاضر)

- Aren't you interested in watching films?

(هـ) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالا بأداة استفهام إبدأ بأحد أدوات الإستفهام التالية ثم أحد الأفعال المساعدة حسب الزمن:

What	ما / ماذا	Which	أى
Where	أين	When	متى
Why	لماذا	Who	من
Whose	لمن	How	كم / كيف

مثال : ما الذي يجب أن تفعله لتحمي البيئة من التلوث؟

- What should you do to protect the environment from pollution?

مثال : كيف لنا أن نواجه ظاهرة الغش في الامتحانات؟

- How can we fight exam cheating phenomenon ?

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. تعمل اختى مضيفة طيران وترتدى زياً خاصاً بالشركة التى تعمل بها.

٢. تُستخدم الأقمار الصناعية في اكتشاف المياه الجوفية والمعادن و البترول.

٣. فى كل عام يأتى السياح إلى مصر ليستمتعوا بالجو الجميل فى الشتاء.

٤. تُبنى المدارس والجامعات في كل المحافظات لتوفر تعليم مناسب لجميع المصريين.

٥. تتطلع جميع شعوب العالم إلى العيش معًا فى حب وسلام.

٦. ساعد والديك و اعمل بجد.

٧. لا تُكثر من الطعام و لا تنسي ممارسة الرياضة.

٨. اصنع ما شئت ، لكن لا تؤذي الآخرين.

٩. لا تتأخر على مدرستك ، ولا تضيع وقتك.

١٠. ألا تساعد أصدقائك وقت الحاجة؟

١١. هل تقوم بأعمال مفيدة في وقت فراغك؟

١٢. أتغسل أسنانك بالفرشاة مرتين يوميا؟

١٣. كيف تمكّن قدماء المصريين من بناء الأهرامات؟

١٤. لماذا تضيع وقتك فيما لا يفيد؟

١٥. كم مرة تمارس الرياضة أسبوعيا؟

Related Vocabulary

air hostess	مضيفة طيران	minerals	المعادن
brush	يغسل بالفرشاة	peoples	شعوب
governorates	محافظات	special	خاص
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	waste	يضيع
manage to	يتمكن		

2 Tenses of Sentences أزمنة الجمل

السؤال : في اللغة العربية هناك زمني المضارع و الماضي ، و يتم التعبير عن المستقبل بـ «سوف / سـ + الفعل المضارع» ، لكن في اللغة الإنجليزية يوجد حوالي إثني عشرة زمنا ، فكيف يتم ترجمة الأزمنة؟

– تحتاج إجابة هذا السؤال إلى دراسة الأزمنة و معرفة استخدامات كل زمن و هذا متروك لدروس القواعد اللغوية ، لكن هنا سنتكلم في بعض العموميات التى قد تفيد إلى حد كبير في الترجمة:

(أ) الجملة التى تدل علي حقائق ثابتة أو عادات متكررة يُوضع فعلها فى صيغة زمن المضارع البسيط : (inf. / inf. + s, es, ies)

مثال : المخ البشرى يتحكم فى كل شيء نقوم به.

- The human brain controls everything we do.

مثال : يتسلم الكُتاب والعلماء جوائز قيّمة كل عام.

- Writers and scientists receive valuable prizes every year.

مثال : التعليم ليس غاية فى حد ذاته، إنما وسيلة تؤدى إلى غاية.

- Education is not an end in itself, but it is a means to an end.

(ب) الجملة التى تدل علي حدث مستمر فى الوقت الحالى يُوضع فعلها فى صيغة زمن المضارع مستمر : (am / is / are + inf. + ing)

مثال : في الوقت الحالي ، تبذل الحكومة جهودا كبيرة لتحسين الصحة التعليم.

- Nowadays, the government is exerting great efforts to improve health and education.

(جـ) الجملة التى تدل علي خبرات أو أحداث إنتهت للتو أو أحداث ماضية لها تأثير علي الحاضر تُترجم إلى مضارع تام (have / has + p.p.) بشرط عدم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل :

مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين حتي الآن.

- Ahmed has won two gold medals so far.

– أما إذا تم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل فنستخدم الماضى البسيط (التصريف الثانى للفعل) :

مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين العام الماضي.

- Ahmed won two gold medals last year.

(د) عادات الماضي يتم التعبير عنها كالتالي :

- always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / never .... التصريف الثاني

مثال : كان جدي أحيانا يأخذنا لزيارة أقاربنا في الريف.

- My grandfather sometimes took us to visit our relatives in the countryside.

(هـ) عادات الماضي التي تتوقف في الحاضر :

- used to + inf. - be + used to + ing

مثال : اعتدت الذهاب إلى المدرسة الابتدائية بدراجتي الصغيرة.

- I used to go to primary school on my small bike.

مثال : كانت جدتي معتادة علي عمل الخبز في المنزل.

- My grandmother was used to making bread at home.

(و) الجملة التي تعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي(غالبا تحتوي على كلمة «كان + فعل مضارع») تُترجم إلى ماضي مستمر (was / were + inf. + ing) :

مثال : كان أحمد يلعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائه عندما انكسرت ساقه.

- Ahmed was playing football with his friends when his leg broke.

(ز) الجملة التي تدل علي حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي نستخدم ماضي تام (had + p.p.) :

مثال : انتهي المُعلم من شرح الدرس قبل أن يعطي لنا بعض التدريبات.

- The teacher had finished explaining the lesson before he gave us some exercises.

(ح) الجمل التي تدل علي المستقبل (سأفعل / سوف أفعل / لن أفعل) تُترجم إلي الصيغة المناسبة من المستقبل (will + inf. / be going to + inf. / be + inf. + ing) :

مثال : ستحتفل هدى بعيد ميلادها الخامس الشهر القادم.

- Huda is celebrating her fifth birthday next month.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يتم إنشاء المكتبات العامة فى كل مكان لتشجيع أفراد الأسرة على القراءة.

....

٢. يحذر الأطباء الناس من التدخين لأنه السبب فى كثير من الأمراض.

....

٣. لم ينجح العلماء حتى يومنا هذا فى إيجاد علاج لبعض الأمراض.

....

٤. أصبح تعلم اللغات والحاسب الآلي هاما للحصول على وظيفة.

....

٥. في القريب ، سوف تساعدنا التكنولوجيا علي قيادة السيارات بأمان أكثر.

....

٦. في بعض المنازل الحديثة تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية فى تسخين المياه.

....

٧. قد قام السد العالي بحماية مصر من الفيضانات ووفر المياه لوقت الحاجة.

....

٨. لن تتحقق أهدافك دون أن تعمل بجد.

....

٩. كنت عائدا من المدرسة عندما قابلت عمتي في الشارع.

....

١٠. اعتادت جدتي أن تحكي لنا قصصا شيقة.

....

١١. أحاول جاهدا أن أحل هذه المسألة الصعبة.

....

Related Vocabulary

do my best	أحاول جاهدًا	aims	أهداف
come true	تتحقق	smoking	التدخين
floods	الفيضانات	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
problem	مسألة / مشكلة	try hard	يحاول جاهدًا
public	عام	warn (ed)	يحذر
set up	ينشىء	diseases	أمراض
cure	علاج	achieve	يحقق

3 Translating Adjectives and Adverbs كيفية ترجمة الصفات والظروف

السؤال : كيف أترجم الصفة إلى اللغة الإنجليزية وما هو موقع الصفة بالنسبة للموصوف ؟

(أ) تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية قبل الموصوف علي عكس اللغة العربية ، لاحظ:

- interesting stories قصص شيقة - a beautiful girl فتاة جميلة - a clever boy ولد ماهر

مثال : العمل الجاد والخُلق الحسن من سمات الإنسان الناجح.

- Hard work and good manners are some qualities of a successful person.

(ب) علي غير العادة ، تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية بعد الموصوف و ليس قبله إذا كانت تصف أي من الكلمات التالية :

something / anything / everything / nothing - someone / anyone / everyone / none - somebody / anybody / everybody / nobody - somewhere / anywhere / everywhere / nowhere

- something important شيء ما مهم
- someone evil شخص ما شرير

مثال : وضع أحمد شيء ما صغير الحجم في حقيبته

- Ahmed put something small in his bag.

(جـ) تأتي الصفة وبعدها موصوف أو بدون موصوف بعد أفعال مثل :
be - get يصبح - become يصبح - feel يشعر - taste له مذاق - smell له رائحة - sound يبدو
- seem يبدو - look يبدو

مثال : لقد أصبح عجوزا / لقد أصبح رجلا عجوزا.

- He became old. / He became an old man.

(د) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان دون أداة ربط نبدأ بالصفة الأخيرة، لاحظ.

- a famous rich man رجل ثري مشهور.
- an intelligent young lady سيدة شابة ذكية.

مثال : الجمعيات الخيرية المختلفة تساعد أطفال الشوارع المشردين

- Different charitable organisations help homeless street children.

(هـ) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان وبينهما أداة ربط فإننا في الغالب نكتب الصفة الأولى أولا ثم الثانية. لاحظ:

- a rich and famous man رجل ثري ومشهور.
- a young and beautiful lady سيدة شابة وذكية.

مثال : العمل الجاد والمستمر هو الخطوة الأولي نحو تحقيق هدفك في الحياة.

- Hard and continuous work is the first step towards achieving your goal in life.

(و) إذا وضعنا قبل الصفة "the" ولم يتبع الصفة اسم فنقصد بذلك كل من يتصفون بهذه الصفة.

- a blind man رجل كفيف - blind men رجال مكفوفين - The blind المكفوفين

مثال : ينبغى علي الأغنياء مساعدة الفقراء.

- Rich people should help poor people.
= The rich should help the poor.

السؤال : وماذا عن الظرف؟ كيف يُترجم إلى الإنجليزية وأين يكون موقعه في الجملة ؟

(1) ظروف التكرار التالية توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) ويمكن أن يأتي بعضها في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / hardly / never ....

مثال : تحاول أمي دائما الحفاظ علي بيتنا نظيفًا و مُرتبًا.

- My mother always tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

- Always my mother tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

مثال : غالبا ما أكون في عملي في الموعد المحدد.

- I am usually at my work in time.

(ب) ظروف الكيفية التي تدل على كيفية أو طريقة حدوث الفعل تأتى بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :

مثال : أسير إلى مدرستي مسرعا.

- I walk quickly to my school.

مثال : من حقك أن تعبر عن رأيك بحرية.

- It is your right to express your opinion freely.

(جـ) ظروف الدرجة التالية تحدد درجة قوة أو ضعف الصفة ، و توضع قبل الصفة مباشرة :

extremely للغاية / absolutely بشكل مُطلق / utterly كليا / completely تماما / really حقا / very / so جدا / quite إلى حد ما / rather إلى حد ما

مثال : إنني في الحقيقة غاضب جدا من ذلك الجار السيء.

- I'm really angry with that bad neighbour.

(د) في اللغة الانجليزية يُفضل ان يكون ظرف الزمان أو المكان إما في بداية الجملة أو نهايتها وذلك حسب المعنى :

مثال : أسافر إلى أوروبا مرتين كل صيف.

- I travel to Europe twice every summer.
- Every summer, I travel to Europe twice.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١ . لقد حان وقت العمل الجاد من اجل بناء مستقبل وطننا العظيم.

....

٢ . العلم الحديث والتخطيط الجيد ضروريان من أجل حياة أفضل.

....

٣ . هبة تذهب إلى الفراش مبكرًا.

....

٤ . يستخدم الطلاب المصريون أجهزة الحاسب الآلي في مدارسهم.

....

٥ . يقدم العلماء شيء ما جديد كل يوم لخدمه البشرية.

....

٦ . كان الجو حارا للغاية طوال الأسبوع الماضي.

....

٧ . يجب أن تقود السيارة بحرص حتي تبقي بأمان.

....

٨. أحيانا أعمل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

....

٩. المكفوفون يمكنهم التعلم و العمل.

....

١٠. الوجبات الصغيرة الخفيفة مفيدة للصحة.

....

١١. حصلت علي درجات مرتفعة بسبب العمل الجاد و المستمر.

....

١٢. يبدو هذا اللاعب غاضبا بعد خسارة المباراة.

....

Related Vocabulary

home / homeland	الوطن	marks	درجات
light	خفيف	meals	وجبات
look / seem	يبدو	modern	حديث
losing	خسارة	planning	التخطيط
mankind	البشرية	humanity	البشرية

4 Special Cases (1) حالات خاصة (1)

السؤال : كيف أقوم بترجمة الفعل (يعتبر) المبني للمعلوم، وكذلك الفعل (يُعتبر / يُعد) المبني للمجهول؟

(أ) يُترجم الفعل (يعتبر) المبني للمعلوم كالتالي :

- **Subj.** فاعل **+ consider** (حسب الزمن) **+ that +** جملة **....**
- **Subj.** فاعل **+ regard** (حسب الزمن) **+ obj.** مفعول **+ as + noun ....**

مثال : تعتبر الحكومة التعليم استثمارًا في مستقبل مصر.

- The government considers that education is an investment in the future of the country.
- The government regards education as an investment in the future of the country.

(ب) يُترجم الفعل (يُعتبر) المبني للمجهول كالتالي :

- **Obj.** مفعول **+ be** (حسب الزمن) **+ considered ....**
- **Subj.** فاعل **+ be** (حسب الزمن) **+ regarded + as + noun ....**

مثال : يُعتبر التعليم استثمارًا في مستقبل مصر.

- Education is considered an investment in the future of Egypt.
- Education is regarded as an investment in the future of Egypt.

السؤال : أحيانًا يكون من الصعب ترجمة الأفعال (يعمل / يقوم / يتم)، فكيف أترجم الجملة حينئذ ؟

هذا يحدث عندما لا تكون هذه الأفعال هي الأفعال الأساسية للجملة، وفي هذه الحالة يتم استبدالها بفعل مناسب للمعنى أو الاستغناء عنها والاعتماد على الفعل الأصلي :

مثال : تعمل جميع الدول على إيجاد حل لمشكلة التلوث.

هنا كلمة (تعمل) تؤدي معنى (تحاول)، فتترجم الجملة كالتالي :

- All nations try to solve the problem of pollution.

مثال : يقوم مُعلمو اللغة الإنجليزية بمدرستنا بشرح الدروس جيدًا.

- هنا كلمة (يقوم) لا تؤدي أي معني فيتم حذفها واستخدام فعل مشتق من الجملة (يشرح) ، وتُترجم الجملة كالتالي :

- The teachers of English in our school explain lessons well.

مثال : يتم حل المشكلات التي تواجه الطلاب لمساعدتهم علي التعلم بشكل جيد.

هنا كلمة (يتم) لا تؤدي معنى ، فنحذفها و نترجم الجملة مبنية للمجهول كالتالي :

- The problems which face students are solved to help them learn well.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة عربية ليس بها فعل إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

(أ) هناك الجمل الاسمية التي ليس فيها فعل و نستخدم (be) عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية :

مثال : العمل الجاد طريقك إلى النجاح.

- Hard work is your way to success.

(ب) هناك الجمل الاسمية عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية نستخدم (be) كترجمة لـ (هو / هي / هما / هم / هن):

مثال : الطعام الصحي والرياضة هما مفتاحي الصحة الجيدة والسعادة.

- Healthy food and sport are the keys to good health and happiness.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يعتبر المصريون نهر النيل مصدر الحياة لهم.

....

٢. يتم بناء طرق جديدة لحل مشكلة الازدحام المروري.

....

٣. يُعد السد العالي أفضل إنجاز للرئيس عبد الناصر.

....

٤. العمل هو سر الحياة ، و النجاح في العمل هو السعادة.

....

٥. يعتبر أبي مشاهدة المباريات علي التلفاز مضيعة للوقت.

....

٦. تقوم الحكومة بتوفير التعليم لكل المواطنين.

....

٧. التعليم هو الطريق الحقيقي لمستقبل أفضل.

....

٨. يُعتبر الدكتور الباز رمز من رموز العلم في كل أنحاء العالم.

....

٩. إن الإنترنت أضخم مكتبة في التاريخ.

....

١٠. يقوم أبي بزيارة جدى في الريف كل شهر.

....

١١. إن زراعة الصحراء شيء ضروري لتوفير الغذاء.

....

١٢. تقوم الحواس بإرسال رسائل إلى المخ.

....

Related Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز	source	مصدر
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	symbol	رمز
president	الرئيس	traffic jam	الازدحام المروري

5 Special Cases (2) حالات خاصة (٢)

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة بها (لدى / لديه / لديها / عندى / عنده / عندنا / لها / لهم ... إلخ) وليس بها فعل؟

تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب الجدول التالى مع مراعاة زمن الجملة :

I have	عندى - لدى - لى - أملك	You have	عندكم - لديكم - لكم - تملكون
He has	عنده - لديه - له - يملك	We have	عندنا - لدينا - لنا - نملك
She has	عندها - لديها - لها - تملك	They have	عندهم - لديهم - لهم - يملكون
It has	لديه - لديها - له - لها	One has	للمرء - لدى المرء - يمتلك المرء
You have	عندك - لديك - لك - تملك		

مثال : لدينا الكثير من الاهتمامات فى وقت فراغنا.

- We have a lot of interests in our free time.

مثال : كان لأبى دور كبير فى نجاحى.

- My father had a great role in my success.

مثال : سيكون للشباب دور كبير فى تقدم الوطن.

- Youth will have a great role in the progress of the country.

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (عليه / عليها / عليك / لابد / حتما / يجب / ينبغي ....إلخ) ؟

تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب القاعدة التالية :

- Subj. فاعل + must / should / ought to / have to / has to / had to + inf ....

مثال : علينا أن نحافظ على البيئة نظيفة.

- We should keep the environment clean.

مثال : لابد أن تُطيع والديك و تحترم مُعلميك.

- You must obey your parents and respect your teachers.

مثال : كان علىّ أن أراجع دروسي جيدا لأجتاز الإمتحان.

- I had to revise my lessons well to pass the exam.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الكلمات (عسى / لعل / ليت) ؟

(أ) إذا جاء بعد هذه الكلمات فعل مضارع فإنها تُترجم في الغالب إلى :

- I hope / I wish + to + inf.
- I hope + subj. + will + inf.
- I hope + subj. + inf. + (s / es / ies)

مثال : ليتني أقدر أن أساعدك.

- I hope / wish to be able to help you.
- I hope I will be able to help you.
- I hope I am able to help you.

(ب) إذا جاء بعد (لعل / ليت) فعل ماضي فإنها تُترجم في الغالب إلى :

- I wish + subj. + had + p.p. ...
- I regret not + inf. + ing ...

مثال : ليتني ذاكرت جيدا العام الماضي.

- I wish I had studied hard last year.
- I regret not studying hard last year.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم المضاف والمضاف إليه ؟

(1) نضع (of) بين المضاف والمضاف إليه أو نبدأ بالمضاف إليه ثم نضع المضاف بدون (of) :

- standard of living	- living standard	مستوى المعيشة
- pollution of the air	- air pollution	تلوث الهواء
- the rate of birth	- birth rate	معدل المواليد

(ب) تستخدم ('s) الملكية غالبًا عندما يكون المضاف إليه عاقل أو اسم حيوان :

- My mother's house. ('s) ملكية مفرد
- My parents' house. (s') ملكية جمع
- The parrot's tail is very long.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يجب أن نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربيه أطفالنا.

....

٢. تعمل الدولة على رعاية الشباب وتنمية مواهبهم.

....

٣. يجب أن ننشيء الأطفال علي حب الوطن و احترام الوالدين.

....

٤. علينا ان نشارك بإيجابية فى تقدم وطننا.

....

٥. علينا أن نداوم على تحسين ظروف حياتنا.

....

٦. يجب استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم.

....

٧. من الضرورى أن ننمى الإهتمام بالعلم لدى الصغار لإعداد جيل من العلماء.

....

٨. للعلماء دور هام فى إيجاد حلول لمشكلات المجتمع.

....

٩. ليتني لم أنفق كل مالي في شراء هذه السيارة.

....

١٠. للتليفزيون دور مؤثر في ثقافة وسلوك المواطنين.

....

Related Vocabulary

bringing up	تربية	positively	بإيجابية
conditions	ظروف	progress	تقدم
culture	ثقافة	share	نشارك
effective	مؤثر	society	المجتمع
generation	جيل	solutions	حلول
interest	اهتمام	talents	مواهب

6 Special Cases (3) حالات خاصة (٣)

السؤال : كيف أترجم كلمة (لقد) ؟

(أ) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن المضارع التام فى حالة عدم وجود كلمة دالة على الماضى :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.

- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي البسيط في حالة وجود كلمة دالة علي الماضي :

مثال : لقد إجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي.

- My brother passed the driving test last week.

(جـ) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي التام مع الحدث الأول في حالة وجود حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي :

مثال : لقد إجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي قبل أن يقوم أبي بشراء سيارة له بالأمس.

- My brother had passed the driving test last week before my father bought him a car yesterday.

السؤال : حسنا ... فكيف أترجم كلمة (قد) ؟

لا توجد ترجمة لكلمة (قد) ، فهي تُحذف ونستخدم بدلًا منها زمن الماضى البسيط ويمكن المضارع التام :

(أ) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل ماضي) مثل (لقد) :

مثال : قد اجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة مؤخرا.

- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل مضارع) إلى (may / might + inf.) :

مثال : قد يسافر أبي إلى أسوان غدا.

- My father may / might travel to Aswan tomorrow.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بحرف التوكيد (إن) ؟

- الجملة التى تبدأ بمصدر أو (إن + مصدر / اسم) في اللغة العربية غالبا ما تبدأ بـ (noun / inf. + ing) في اللغة الإنجليزية ويكون فعل الجملة مضارع بسيط :

مثال : إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية والحاسب الآلي ضروري في الوقت الحالي.

- Learning foreign languages and the computer is necessary at present.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) وبعد الأفعال الناقصة؟

(أ) الجملة التى تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) في اللغة العربية تبدأ بـ (To + inf.) في اللغة الإنجليزية :

مثال : أن تساعد في الحفاظ علي البيئة نظيفة فهذا شيء جيد.

- To help keep the environment clean is a good thing.

(ب) كلمة (أن) بعد الأفعال الناقصة لا تُترجم :

مثال : يجب أن نجد حلولا لمشكلاتنا الاقتصادية و الاجتماعية.

- We should find solutions to our economic and social problems.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد فاز فريق كره القدم بمباراة هامة.

....

٢. لقد وهب الله مصر الكثير من الاماكن السياحية والطقس الرائع.

....

٣. إن تحقيق التقدم لا يمكن أن يحدث إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

....

٤. لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقا يعيشون حياه أطول.

....

٥. إن هوايتي المفضلة هي قراءة القصص الخيالية ولعب التنس.

....

٦. لقد أصبح ضروريا البدء في إنشاء مدن جديدة في الصحراء.

....

٧. إن إهدار مياة النيل جريمة في حق الوطن.

....

٨. إن مهارات الحاسوب لا غنى عنها للحصول علي وظيفة جيدة في الوقت الحالي.

....

٩. إن البحث العلمي وسيلة هامة لتحديد شكل مستقبل أى أمة.

....

١٠. إن زراعه الصحراء وبناء المدن الجديدة يحل الكثير من المشاكل الاقتصادية والاجتماعية.

....

١١. إن زيادة الانتاج واجب وطني لمواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان.

....

١٢. لقد وهب الله مصر كثير من الموارد الطبيعية.

....

١٣. إن سيناء جزء هام من أرض مصر يجب الاهتمام بتنميتها ورعاية أهلها.

....

Related Vocabulary

against	في حق / ضد	nation	أمة
co-operation	تعاون	national	وطني / قومي
crime	جريمة	production	إنتاج
duty	واجب	research	بحث
fictional	خيالي	resources	موارد
grant (ed)	يهب	skills	مهارات
increasing	زيادة	wasting	إهدار
means	وسيلة		

7 Special Cases (4) حالات خاصة (٤)

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الجمل التى تبدأ بـ (يوجد / كان يوجد / هناك / كان هناك / سيكون هناك .... الخ) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- **There + is / are / was / were / have been / has been / had been / will be/ can be / must be .... + noun** اسم

مثال : يوجد الكثير من الطرق لتجنب الأمراض.

- There are a lot of ways to avoid diseases.

مثال : كان هناك مشكلة في محرك السيارة.

- There was a problem with the car engine.

مثال : سيكون هناك بدائل للبترول في المستقبل.

- There will be replacements for oil in the future.

مثال : لابد أن يكون هناك حل لمشكلة تلوث الهواء.

- There must be a solution to the problem of air pollution.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الجمل التى بها (كلما ... كلما) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- **The + صفة مقارنة + subj. + verb......+ the + صفة مقارنة + subj. + verb .....**

مثال : كلما تمرنت أكثر كلما أصبحت أكثر لياقة.

- The more you exercise, the fitter you get / become.

مثال : كلما تكون أكثر طولا كلما تستطيع أن تجري أسرع.

- The taller you are, the faster you can run.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل بفعل ؟

(١) ضمير الفاعل المتصل بفعل يترجم ضمير فاعل (I - he - she - it - you - we - they). لاحظ :

- I wrote كتبْتُ - She wrote كتبَتْ - We wrote كتبنا

مثال : زرت جدتي مع أخي واشترينا لها هدية.
- I and my brother visited my grandmother and bought her a present.

(ب) ضمير المفعول المتصل بفعل أو حرف جر يُترجم ضمير مفعول (me - him - her - it - you - us - them):

مثال : سمعته يقول بعض المعلومات الهامة فاستمعت إليه بحرص.
- I heard him say something important, so I listened to him carefully.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل باسم ؟

الضمير المتصل بالاسم يُترجم إلى صفة ملكية (my - his - her - its - our - your - their - 's) لاحظ :

- my book كتابى - her book كتابها - our book كتابنا

مثال : يبذل جميع المواطنين ما يوسعهم من أجل وطنهم.
- All citizens do their best for their home.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. توجد بعض قواعد النظافة الشخصية التى يجب اتباعها لتجنب الأمراض.

....

٢. علمتنى الحياة ألا أحزن على ما ضاع منى لأنه ليس لى.

....

٣. كلما ساعدت الناس وقت الحاجة كلما شعرت بالسعادة.

....

٤. كان هناك حادثًا مروعًا على الطريق الصحراوى إلى أسوان.

....

٥. تحتاج الدولة جهودنا نحن الشباب لتحقيق التقدم.

....

٦. أعتقد أن الناس سوف تستمر فى قراءة الكتب من أجل المتعة.

....

٧. كلما زاد العمل والإنتاج كلما ارتفع مستوى المعيشة.

....

٨. لا يوجد دين يدعو إلى القتل وترويع الناس.

....

٩. ندين بالكثير للعلماء لما قدموه لنا من إنجازات.

....

١٠. أفكر جديًا فى دراسة الطب فى الجامعة.

....

١١. تعطينا الشمس الحرارة والضوء، وهى مصدر للطاقة النظيفة.

....

١٢. نعيش الأن عصر الاتصالات الذى جعل العالم عالمًا مفتوحًا.

....

Related Vocabulary

achievements	إنجازات	in need	وقت الحاجة
age	عصر	owe	يدين
for fun	من أجل المتعة	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة

8 Special Cases (5) حالات خاصة (٥)

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الجمل التى تبدأ بـ (من + صفة) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

- تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

. It is + adj. صفة + (for + فاعل أو ضمير مفعول) + to + inf. ....

مثال : من الجيد أن تقضي وقت فراغك بشكل مفيد.
- It is good (for you) to spend your free time in a useful way.

مثال : من الضروري أن يشارك الطلاب في الأنشطة المدرسية.
- It is necessary for students to take part in school activities.

السؤال : كيف أترجم المفعول المُطلَق إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

- بصفة عامة يُحذف المفعول المطلق عند الترجمة للإنجليزية.

مثال : تتأثر الصحة تأثرا كبيرا بالتدخين.
- Health is greatly affected by smoking.

السؤال : هناك أيضًا الأعداد. هل تُترجم أرقامًا حسابية أم حروفًا ؟

(أ) الاعداد من (1 - 9) تكتب هجائياً دائما ، أما إذا زاد عن ذلك فيكتب أرقامًا حسابية :

مثال : أرسلت دعوات الحفل لخمسين صديقًا لكن لم يحضره منهم إلا ثمانية.
- I sent the invitations of the party to 50 friends, but only eight of them attended it.

(ب) عندما تبدأ الجملة الانجليزية بذكر العدد فانه يكتب هجائيًا دائمًا :

مثال : وصل ثلاثون مسافرا إلى المحطة بعد أن غادر القطار.
- Thirty passengers arrived at the station after the train had left.

السؤال : وماذا عن حروف الجر ؟

- لحروف الجر استخدامات يعرفها الطالب بالتدريج من خلال دراسته للّغة ، و المهم هنا أن هناك بعض الأفعال التى لا تأخذ حرف جر مثل :

admire	يعجب بـ	include	يشتمل على
affect	يؤثر على	join	يلتحق بـ
arrest	يقبض على	obtain	يحصل على
avoid	يتجنب	owe	يدين بـ

celebrate	يحتفل بـ	pass	ينجح / يجتاز / يمر على
enjoy	يتمتع بـ	reach	يصل إلى
fear	يخشى أن	recognise	يتعرف على
feel	يشعر بـ	sacrifice	يضحى بـ

مثال : يؤثر التدخين على الصحة بشدة. - Smoking affects health badly.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. من الضرورى أن نهتم أكثر بالتعليم والصحة.

....

٢. من الطبيعى أن يكون لمصر جيش قوى يحمى حدودها وشرطة قوية تحمى أمنها الداخلى.

....

٣. من المتوقع أن تكون الحروب القادمة بين الدول هى حروب للسيطرة على مصادر المياه.

....

٤. تلعب مصر دورًا كبيرًا فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط.

....

٥. تتأثر السياحة تأثرًا كبيرًا بالأحداث الجارية فى العالم.

....

٦. يحذر الأطباء الناس تحذيرًا شديدًا من التدخين.

....

٧. تتطلع مصر تطلعًا كبيرًا لتحسين مستوى معيشة مواطنيها.

....

٨. تهتم الدولة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالموهوبين وتقدم لهم مزايا قيمة.

....

٩. تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالأطفال لأنهم قادة المستقبل.

....

١٠. من الحكمة ألا تتخذ قرارًا إلا بعد تفكير عميق.

....

Related Vocabulary

current events	الأحداث الجارية	pay attention	تولى اهتمامًا
deep thought	تفكير عميق	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
It is wise	من الحكمة		

Part II Translation from English into Arabic

الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية :

- الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية أمر سهل وبسيط، ولقد تم تناول معظم الملاحظات التى قد تفيدك فيها ضمن الملاحظات الخاصة بالترجمة من اللغة العربية للغة الإنجليزية ولم يتبقى سوى بعض الملاحظات البسيطة سنتناولها فيما يلى :

السؤال : ما الذى يتطلبه ترجمة نص من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية ؟

(أ) قراءة وفهم النص الإنجليزى لمعرفة الفكرة العامة للموضوع.

(ب) قراءة النص مرة أخرى بعناية للوقوف على الكلمات والتراكيب الصعبة.

(جـ) تخمين معنى الكلمات الصعبة من سياق الجملة فالمطلوب هو استنتاج المعنى.

(د) بعد الانتهاء من الترجمة، اقرأ الترجمة العربية لتتأكد من أنها مكتوبة بأسلوب عربى سليم مع تجنب الترجمة الحرفية والأخطاء النحوية.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الفعل (be) عندما يكون فعلًا أساسيًا ؟

هناك طرق مختلفة لترجمة هذا الفعل حسب استخدامه فى الجملة الإنجليزية، منها :

(أ) المعنى الأساسى للفعل (be) فى اللغة العربية وهو (يكون / يوجد) :

e.g. - My life was difficult when I was abroad, away from home.

كانت حياتى صعبة عندما كنت بالخارج بعيدًا عن الوطن.

(ب) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بفعل أخر فى اللغة العربية غير (يكون / يوجد) حسب المعنى العام للنص :

e.g. - The wedding was last week. — تم الزفاف الأسبوع الماضى.

- A knife is for cutting food. — تستخدم السكين لتقطيع الطعام.

(جـ) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بضمير شخصى مثل (هو / هى / هما / هم / هنَّ) فى اللغة العربية مثل :

e.g. - My mother is everything to me. — إن أمى هى كل شىء بالنسبة لى.

- Our children are the joy of our life. — أطفالنا هم بهجة حياتنا.

(د) يمكن إسقاط الفعل (be) نهائيًا من الترجمة العربية للجملة :

e.g. - Ahmed is a hard-working student. — أحمد طالب جاد فى العمل.

- My house is in a quiet part of the city. — يقع منزلى فى جزء هادئ من المدينة.

السؤال : قالوا لى أن الفعل (have) متعدد المعانى، فكيف أترجمه الى العربية ؟

- هذا كلام صحيح، فهذا الفعل يستخدم بمعانى كثيرة منها :

(أ) المعنى الأصلى للفعل (have) هو (يمتلك / عنده / لديه) حسب الزمن :

- I have a house with a small garden. - لدى / عندى / أمتلك منزلًا ذو حديقة صغيرة.

(ب) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يتناول طعامًا أو شرابًا) :

- I had some meat and rice for lunch yesterday.

- تناولت بعض اللحم والأرز فى الغداء أمس.

(جـ) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يُقيم / يعقد / يحضر) :

- I will have a big party on the occasion of my daughter's success.

- سأقيم حفلًا كبيرًا بمناسبة نجاح ابنتى.

(د) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يعانى / لديه معاناه) :

- She had a bad headache after the party.

- لقد عانت من صداع شديد بعد الحفل.

السؤال : هل بالفعل كلمة (only) تحتاج لمعاملة خاصة فى الترجمة ؟

نعم بالفعل، ولكى تترجم بشكل سليم لابد أن تتذكر دائمًا أن هذا الفعل يقصر الكلمة التى تأتى بعده مباشرة:

- Only my mother helped me with my homework.

- أمى فقط هى من ساعدتنى فى واجبى المنزلى.

- My mother only helped me with my homework.

- لم تقم أمى إلا بمساعدتى فى واجبى المنزلى.

- My mother helped only me with my homework.

- ساعدتنى أمى أنا فقط فى واجبى المنزلى.

- My mother helped me with only my homework.

- ساعدتنى أمى فى واجبى المنزلى فقط.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل إذا كان فعل الجملة الإنجليزية مبنيًا للمجهول ؟

(1) يفضل تحويل الجملة الإنجليزية المبنية للمجهول إلى المبنى للمعلوم عند الترجمة للعربية طالما كان الفاعل معروفًا :

- The operation was performed by a well-known surgeon.

- لقد أجرى العملية جراح مشهور. / أجريت العملية الجراحية عن طريق جراح مشهور.

(ب) من الممكن استخدام الفعل (تم) يليه الاسم من الفعل الأصلى مثل :

e.g. - The task was carried out on time. - تم تنفيذ المهمة فى الوقت المحدد.

Now, test yourself

Translate into Arabic :

1. A good friend is a source of strength that keeps you going through all ups and downs of life.
2. Always do right. This will please some people and astonish the rest.
3. Awareness should be spread among citizens to make great efforts to reduce pollution.
4. Be free and respect others' freedom.
5. Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilised behaviour.
6. Children learn good habits by imitating of their elders.
7. Creative thinking is essential for success in life.
8. Currently, there're major powers trying to dominate the whole world through technology.
9. Don't cry over spilt milk.
10. Eat less, exercise more, and fill your eyes with sleep.
11. Egypt is one of the earliest cradles of human civilisation.
12. Everyone has the right to express their opinion freely and take part in the social life.
13. Experts believe that solar energy may have replaced oil by the 2050.
14. Good citizens are ready to sacrifice their lives when their country is in danger.
15. Great efforts have been made for the equality between men and women.
16. Growing older is a natural process that we cannot stop.
17. Habits, good or bad, are acquired in childhood.
18. Has technology made the world a better place to live in?
19. If an object causes you pain, you respond by moving away from it.
20. If you risk nothing, then you risk everything.
21. In order to be successful, you should have courage, ambition, self-confidence and self-dependence.
22. In the future, the world's supplies of oil will dry up.
23. In the third world countries, the number of smokers is increasing, mainly due to ignorance.
24. Inside their homes, children get their first lessons in behaving towards others.

El Moasser's Glossary for Translation Vocabulary

- قاموس المعاصر للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالترجمة.

Economy and work الاقتصاد والعمل

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
ambitions	تطلعات / طموحات	low income	دخل منخفض
bargains	صفقات	manufacture	يُصنِّع
budget	ميزانية	manufacturer	مُصنِّع
capital	رأس المال	marketing	تسويق
capitalism	رأسمالية	monopolist	محتكر
commerce	تجارة	monopoly	احتكار
commercial	تجارى	national duty	واجب وطني
compete	ينافس	national economy	الاقتصاد القومي
congestion	التكدس / الزحام	national income	الدخل القومي
consume	يستهلك	nationalization	تأميم
consumer	مستهلك	nationalize	يؤمم
consumption	استهلاك	necessitate	يستلزم
cost of living	تكاليف المعيشة	overpopulation	الانفجار السكاني
creation	خَلق / إيجاد	price control	ضبط الأسعار
crime	الجريمة	priorities	أولويات
current stage	المرحلة الراهنة	products	منتجات
dealer	وكيل	profits	أرباح
development	تنمية / تطوير	promote	يُرقِّي / يُرَوِّج
discount	تخفيض / خصم	prosperity	ازدهار
dissatisfaction	عدم إشباع	rate	مُعدَّل
due care	الاهتمام اللازم	rationalise	يضبط / يُرشِّد
economic	اقتصادى	rationalization	ترشيد
economic crisis	الأزمة الاقتصادية	reclaim	يستصلح
economical	موفر / اقتصادى	reclamation	استصلاح
economics	علم الاقتصاد	recycling	إعادة تصنيع
economist	خبير اقتصادي	reduction	تخفيض
enterprise	مشروع / منشأة	reform	إصلاح
expenses	نفقات	renaissance	نهضة
facing	مجابهه / مواجهة	resources	موارد
famine	مجاعة	revenue	عائد
finance	مال / يموِّل	risky	خطير
financial	مالى	sales / discounts	مبيعات / تخفيضات
food shortage	نقص الطعام	shares	أسهم
		short-term	قصير الأجل
		slogan	شعار
		slums / squatters	العشوائيات

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
foreign aids	معونات خارجية	long-term	طويل الأجل
funds	مدخرات	spread	انتشار / ينتشر
goods/commodities	السلع / البضائع	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
grant(ed)	يهب / يمنح	statistics	إحصائيات
greed	جشع / طمع	stock market	بورصة
growth	نمو	strict measures	معايير صارمة
handmade	صناعة يدوية	strict procedures	إجراءات صارمة
hard currency	عملة صعبة	subsidy	الدعم
high income	دخل مرتفع	tax	ضريبة
humour	الفكاهة / المرح	trade	يتاجر / تجارة
in turn	بدوره	trader	تاجر
inflation	التضخم	unemployment	البطالة
inhabitants	سكان	unrest	اضطراب
inject	يضخ	vast	كبير / شامل
insurance	تأمين	via	من خلال / عَبْر
investment	استثمار	violence	العنف
investor	مستثمر	welfare	رخاء / رفاهية
job opportunities	فرص عمل	youth	الشباب
labour force	القوى العاملة		

The Nile and saving water النيل وتوفير المياه

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
a matter of life or death	مسألة حياة أو موت	improve relationships	تحسين العلاقات
artery of life	شريان الحياة	International Treaty	معاهدة دولية
civilisation	الحضارة	lack of water	نقص المياه
constructive dialogue	الحوار البناء	majority	معظم / أغلبية
cradle	مهد	must	ضرورة
dam	سد	national security	الأمن القومي
date back to	يعود تاريخه إلي	Nile Basin	حوض النيل
demand for	الطلب علي	Renaissance Dam	سد النهضة
downstream countries	دول المصب	shortage	نقص
drought	جفاف/قحط	supplies	موارد
Egypt's share	حصة مصر	main source	المصدر الرئيسي
emergency meeting	اجتماع طارئ	thirst	الظمأ
essential	ضروري	tributaries	روافد
generate	يُولِّد	upstream countries	دول المنبع
company	صُحبة	water security	الأمن المائي

English	Arabic
consequently	لذلك
contributions	إسهامات
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية
creativity	الأبداع
creatures	مخلوقات
deforestation	إزالة الغابات
destructive	مدمّر
developed countries	دول متقدمة
developing countries	دول نامية
deviation	إنحراف
diabetes	مرض السكر
diagnose	يُشخّص
diagnosis	تشخيص للمرض
disaster	كارثة
disastrous	مدمر / كارثي
distance learning	تعلُّم عن بُعد
donation	تبرع
drugs	عقاقير / مخدرات
eagle	صقر
ecology	علم البيئة
Egyptology	علم المصريات
end / target / goal	غاية / هدف
endanger	يعرِّض لخطر
epidemic	وباء
erosion	تآكل / تعرية
evergreen	دائم الخضرة
evils	شرور
existence	وجود
extinction	إندثار / إنقراض
females	إناث
fever	حمى

English	Arabic
noncommunicable	غير ساري
noninfectious	غير معدي
nuclear	نووي
nuclear waste	النفايات النووية
observatory	مرصد
owe	يَدين
pathology	علم امراض الدم
pharmaceutical	خاص بالصيدلة
philosophy	الفلسفة
photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئى
physical illness	مرض بدني
physiology	علم وظائف الأعضاء
physiotherapy	العلاج الطبيعي
pillars	ركائز
positive	بنّاء / إيجابي
potentials	قدرات
power plant	محطة توليد طاقة
preservation	صيانة
prevention	وقاية
properly	بشكل صحيح
proportional to	متناسب مع
psychiatrist	طبيب نفسى
psychologist	عالم نفسى
psychology	علم النفس
public opinion	الرأي العام
radiation	إشعاع
rare species	فصيلة نادرة
reactor	مفاعل
reform	إصلاح
regional	إقليمي
remarkable progress	تقدم ملحوظ
remedy	علاج

English	Arabic
field	مجال
fragile	هش / ضعيف
frustration	إحباط
generation	جيل / توليد (طاقة)
genetic engineering	الهندسة الوراثية
global warming	الإحتباس الحراري
harness	يُسخّر
herbal medicines	الأدوية العشبية
heritage	تراث
hibernation	بيات شتوى
humidity	رطوبة
hurricane	إعصار
ideal solution	حل مثالي
immune system	جهاز المناعة
impact	أثر
incurable	لا علاج له
indigestion	عسر الهضم
individual	الفرد
infection	عدوى
infectious	معدى
injection	حقن
innovation	الإبتكار
insomnia	أرق
instinct	غريزة / فطرة
intensive care	عناية مركزة
issue	قضية
kidneys	كليتين
knowledge	المعرفة
limit	يحد من / يقلل
lungs	رئتين

English	Arabic
respiratory system	جهاز تنفسي
restoration	ترميم
scales	قشور / موازين
scientific research	البحث العلمي
seabed	قاع البحر
self	النفس / الذات
set up	ينشئ
sociology	علم الاجتماع
sooner or later	عاجلا أم اجلا
sterilization	تعقيم
stubborn	عنيد
support	يدعم / دعم
surgery	جراحة
symptoms	أعراض
tame	أليف
techniques	تقنيات
thanks to	بفضل
therapist	معالج
therapy	علاج
thinkers	مفكرين
tide	المد والجذر
tornado	إعصار
transfusion	نقل دم
tropical	إستوائى
tumor	ورم
vaccine	مصل /لقاح
vegetarian	إنسان نباتى
vehicle	مركبة
waterfalls	شلالات
wheel of production	عجلة الإنتاج
zoology	علم الحيوان

Literature & Different Arts الأدب والفنون المختلفة

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
ancestors	أسلاف / أجداد	kindergarten (KG)	حضانة
aware	واع	loyalty	ولاء
awesome	مدهش / رهيب	manners	سلوكيات
barriers	حواجز	manuscripts	مخطوطات
borders	حدود	masterpieces	روائع
brain drain	هجرة المتفوقين	merely	فقط
bringing up	تنشئة	motives	دوافع
bullying	بلطجة	nobility	نبل
censorship	رقابة	non-verbal	غير لفظى
coherence	ترابط / تناغم	nutrition	تغذية
commemorate	يحيى ذكرى	objective	موضوعى
cope with	يجارى / يساير	obstacle	عقبة
core	لب / جوهر	peer	نظير / ند
corner stone	حجر الزاوية	personal interests	مصالح شخصية
craftsmen	أصحاب الحرف	personify	يُجسِّد
creative	مبدع	playwright	كاتب مسرحي
cultural	ثقافى	potentials	قدرات
curriculum	مناهج	pre-historic	يخص ما قبل التاريخ
descendants	ذرية / نسل	principles	مبادىء
deterioration	تخلف / تدهور	procedures	إجراءات
edition	نسخة/ طبعة	producer	مُنتج
elegance	اناقة	professional	مهني
enrich	يُثري	public library	مكتبة عامة
exceed	يتجاوز	public opinion	الرأي العام
faithfulness	إخلاص	reference	مرجع
fashion designer	مصمم أزياء	science fiction	خيال علمي
fashion houses	بيوت الموضة	spiritual	روحي
fashion show	عرض ازياء	sponsor	راعى
fine arts	فنون جميلة	sponsorship	رعاية
for entertainment	من أجل المتعة	storyteller	قصاص
		strategy	خطة

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
fortification	تحصين	sufficiency	إكتفاء
fortress	حصن	suspense	تشويق
glory	مجد	talented	موهوب
graphics	فن الجرافيك	tastes	أذواق
heritage	تراث	timid	متحفظ / جبان
hero	بطل	traditions	تقاليد
heroine	بطلة	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو
honest	صادق	unique	فريد
imagination	خيال	values	قيم
immigrants	مهاجرين	verbal	لفظى
immortal	خالد	vision	رؤية
incidents	أحداث	warmth	دفء
inspiration	الهام	weave	ينسج
invaders	غزاة	willingness	إستعداد
justice	العدالة	wonders	عجائب

Politics & Society السياسة والمجتمع

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
activist	ناشط	military	حربى / عسكرى
administrative capital	العاصمة الإدارية	military secrets	اسرار عسكرية
ambassador	سفير	miracles	المعجزات
armed forces	قوات مسلحة	Muslims	المسلمين
assassinate	يغتال	nation	أمة
assassination	إغتيال	national security	الامن القومي
belonging	الإنتماء	national unity	وحدة وطنية
betray home	يخون الوطن	nationalism	القومية
bomb	قنبلة/ يفجر قنبلة	negotiate	يفاوض
carry out	يُنفذ	negotiation	التفاوض
citizen	مواطن	obstacles	عقبات
citizenship	المواطنة	parliament	برلمان
civilian	مدني	partner	شريك
civilized	متحضر	party	حزب
commitment to	الإلتزام بـ	peace	السلام
conflict	صراع		

congested	مكدس	peace makers	صناع السلام
conspiracy	مؤامرة	policy	سياسة
constitution	دستور	politician	سياسي (شخص)
contribute to	يساهم في	politics	علم السياسة
cooperation	التعاون	pray	يدعو / يصلي
Copts	الأقباط	president	رئيس
crossroad	مُفترق	prevail	يسود / ينتشر
democracy	ديموقراطية	prime minister	رئيس الوزراء
democratic	ديموقراطي	principles	المبادئ
devote	يكرّس	progress	التقدم
dictatorship	ديكتاتورية	protective	واقي
difficulty	صعوبة- مأزق	rebel	يتمرد
diplomacy	دبلوماسية	rebellion	تمرد / متمرد
domination	هيمنة / سيطرة	refugee	لاجئ
efforts	جهود	regime	نظام حكم
eliminate	يقضي على	rejecting	رفض - نبذ
emigration	الهجرة	require	يتطلب
equality	مساواة	resistance	مقاومة
exert	يبذل	restrictions	القيود - الضوابط
extremism	تطرف	revolutions	الثورات
extremist	متطرف	rights	حقوق
fatal	قاتل / خطير	sacrifice	يضحي - تضحية
flourish	يزدهر	secret agent	عميل سرى
formal request	طلب رسمي	security forces	اجهزة الامن
freedom	حرية	service	خدمة
government bodies	المؤسسات الحكومية	shield	درع
governorate	محافظة	spy	جاسوس
heavenly religions	الديانات السماوية	spying	تخابر
housing	الإسكان	stability	استقرار
human rights	حقوق الإنسان	strictness	الحزم
human values	القيم الإنسانية	subjects	رعايا
ignorance	الجهل	tendency	تَوَجُّه
illegal	غير شرعي		

illiteracy	الأمية	terrorism	الإرهاب
impose	يفرض	terrorist	إرهابي
independence	إستقلال	the state	الدولة
injustice	الظلم	tolerance	التسامح
intelligence	المخابرات	transitional stage	مرحلة إنتقالية
leak secrets	يسرب أسرار	treason	خيانة عظمى
legal	شرعي / قانوني	treaty	معاهدة
lethal	قاتل	truce	هدنة
liberation	تحرير	tyranny	طغيان
loyalty	انتماء	victim	ضحية
major	كبير - رئيسي	violate	ينتهك
martyr	شهيد	violation	انتهاك
		weapons	أسلحة

Various Issues قضايا متنوعة

accommodation	إقامة	intimacy	ألفة - مودة
acquire	يكتسب	journalism	صحافة
amateur	هاو	local tourism	سياحة داخلية
amuse	يمتع / يسلي	magical	ساحر - خلّاب
ancient / long-standing	عريق	major powers	قوى عظمى
annually	سنويا	manufacturer	صانع
athlete	لاعب ألعاب قوي	mass tourism	سياحة جماعية
attractions	أماكن جذب	miss the record	يفشل في تحطيم الرقم القياسي
audience	جمهور		
ban	يحظر	monuments	آثار
bear	يحمل	motivate	يحث / يدفع
broaden	يُوَسِّع	mountaineers	متسلقو الجبال
champion	بطل رياضي	multinational	متعدد الجنسيات
championship	بطولة رياضية	news agency	وكالة أنباء
coach/ trainer	مدرب	Olympic games	الالعاب الاوليمبية
competition	منافسة	outlet	مُتَنَفَّس - مخرج
competitors	منافسين	pay	راتب / أجر
conference tourism	سياحة المؤتمرات	pharaohs	فراعنة
critical	نقدي / حرج	physical fitness	لياقة بدنية
criticism	نقد	professional	محترف
criticize	ينقد	prohibition	حظر - منع

English	Arabic
cultural tourism	سياحة ثقافية
current events	الأحداث الجارية
decisive	حازم / حاسم
deprive	يحرم
deviation	الإنحراف
dignity	كرامة
disasters	كوارث
disputes	النزاعات
dominance	هيمنة / سيطرة
dominate	يهيمن / يسيطر علي
earner	مصدر دخل
eco-tourism	سياحة صديقة للبيئة
enrich	يُثرى
equality	المساواة
erosion	التعرية
fair play	اللعب النظيف
farming	الزراعة
finals	نهائيات
flourish	يزدهر
flow of traffic	انسياب المرور
free press	صحافة حرة
migration	هجرة
friendship	الصداقة
gallantry	الشهامة
generous	كريم
glory	المجد
grateful	شاكر / ممتن
greed	جشع / طمع
hard currency	عملة صعبة
homesickness	حنين للوطن
honour	شرف / يكرم
hospitality	كرم الضيافة
humour	فكاهة
hurricanes	أعاصير
ideal	مثالى
ignorance	الجهل
impression	إنطِباع
instruct	يُعَلم
interpret	يترجم فوري
interpreter	مترجم فوري
propaganda	الدعاية
public relations	علاقات عامة
public transport	المواصلات العامة
purity	نقاء
rapprochement	التقارب
rare	نادر
recreational tourism	سياحة ترفيهية
reinforce	يعزز - يدعم
relationship	العلاقة
resort	منتجع
rights	الحقوق
risk	خطر
rumour	إشاعة
satisfy	يُرضي / يُشْبِع
security	أمن
seek	يسعي / يرغب في
self-confidence	الثقة بالنفس
self-dependence	الإعتماد علي النفس
selfishness	الأنانية
set a record	يسجل رقما قياسيا
set an example	يعطي قدوة
settlement	تسوية / حل
sightseeing	زيارة المعالم
silver	الفضة / فضي
source	مصدر
stamina	قوة الاحتمال
stream	التيار
surroundings	الأشياء المحيطة
take drugs	يتعاطى المخدرات
teamwork	العمل الجماعي
therapeutic tourism	سياحة علاجية
tourist site	موقع سياحي
tournament	دورة
traffic regulations	قواعد المرور
transition	تَحَوُّل
travel agency	وكالة سفريات
unite peoples	توحد الشعوب
unselfishness	الإيثار
vacations	عطلات/ اجازات
victory	نصر
virtues	الفضائل